

THIS BOOK IS. PRESENTED BY THE  
GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES OF  
AMERICA AS AN EXPRESSION OF THE FRIEND-  
SHIP AND GOOD-WILL OF THE PEOPLE OF THE  
UNITED STATES TOWARDS THE PEOPLE OF  
INDIA.



तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

SANTINIKETAN  
VISWA BHARATI  
LIBRARY

L. C

580(T)

T343

V. 2







# THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

FOUNDED BY JAMES LOEB, LL.D.

EDITED BY

† T. E. PAGE, C.H., LITT.D.

E. CAPPS, PH.D., LL.D.

W. H. D. ROUSE, LITT.D.

L. A. POST, M.A.

E. H. WARMINGTON,

M.A., F.R.HIST.SOC.

## THEOPHRASTUS ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS

II



**THEOPHRASTUS**  
**ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS**  
**AND MINOR WORKS ON ODOURS AND**  
**WEATHER SIGNS**

WITH AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION BY  
**SIR ARTHUR HORT, BART., M.A.**  
FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

IN TWO VOLUMES  
II



CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS  
**HARVARD UNIVERSITY PRESS**  
LONDON  
**WILLIAM HEINEMANN LTD**  
**MCMXXIX**

*First printed 1916*  
*Reprinted 1949*

*Printed in Great Britain*

# CONTENTS

## BOOK VI

### OF UNDER-SHRUBS

	PAGE
Of the classification of under-shrubs : the wild kinds : the chief distinction that between spinous and spineless . . . . .	3
Of spineless under-shrubs and their differences . . . .	7
Of certain specially important spineless under-shrubs— silphium and <i>magydaris</i> —belonging to ferula-like plants . . . . .	15
Of spinous under-shrubs and their differences . . . . .	21
Of cultivated under-shrubs (coronary plants), with which are included those coronary plants which are herbaceous . . . . .	35
Of the seasons at which coronary plants flower, and of the length of their life . . . . .	49

## BOOK VII

### OF HERBACEOUS PLANTS, OTHER THAN CORONARY PLANTS : POT-HERBS AND SIMILAR WILD HERBS

Of the times of sowing and of germination of pot-herbs	59
Of the propagation of pot-herbs, and of differences in their roots . . . . .	67
Of the flowers and fruits of pot-herbs . . . . .	75
Of the various forms of some pot-herbs . . . . .	81
Of the cultivation of pot-herbs ; manure and water . .	93
Of the pests which infest pot-herbs . . . . .	95
Of the time for which seed of pot-herbs can be kept . .	97
Of uncultivated herbs : the wild forms of pot-herbs . .	99

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
Of other uncultivated herbs, which may be classed with pot-herbs . . . . .	103
Of the differences in stem and leaf found in all herbaceous plants . . . . .	107
Of other differences seen in herbaceous plants in general, as compared with one another and with trees . . .	111
Of the seasons at which herbs grow and flower . . . .	115
Of the classes into which herbaceous plants may be divided, as those having a spike and chicory-like plants . . . . .	119
Of herbs which have fleshy or bulbous roots . . . . .	125
Of certain properties and habits peculiar to certain herbaceous plants . . . . .	135

## BOOK VIII

### OF HERBACEOUS PLANTS: CEREALS, PULSES, AND 'SUMMER CROPS'

Of the three classes and the times of sowing and of germination . . . . .	143
Of differences in the mode of germination and of subsequent development . . . . .	149
Of differences in development due to soil or climate . .	155
Of differences between the parts of cereals, pulses, and summer crops respectively . . . . .	159
Of the differences between cereals . . . . .	165
Of the differences between pulses . . . . .	173
Of sowing, manuring, and watering . . . . .	177
Of the degeneration of cereals into darnel . . . . .	183
Of the peculiar character of chick-pea . . . . .	183
Of special features of 'summer crops' . . . . .	185
Of treatment of cereals peculiar to special localities . .	185
Of cereals which grow a second time from the same stock . . . . .	187
Of the effects of climate, soil, and manuring . . . . .	189
Of different qualities of seed . . . . .	191

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Of degeneration of cereals, and of the weeds which infest particular crops . . . . .	193
Of the conditions in the seeds of pulses known as 'cookable' and 'uncookable,' and their causes . .	197
Of the grains and pulses which most exhaust the soil, or which improve it . . . . .	199
Of the diseases of cereals and pulses, and of hurtful winds . . . . .	201
Of seeds which keep or do not keep well . . . . .	205
Of the age at which seeds should be sown . . . . .	209
Of artificial means of preserving seed . . . . .	211
Of the effect of heat on seeds . . . . .	211
Of certain peculiarities of the seed of lupin and <i>aigilops</i>	213

## BOOK IX

### OF THE JUICES OF PLANTS, AND OF THE MEDICINAL PROPERTIES OF HERBS

Of the various kinds of plant-juices and the methods of collecting them . . . . .	217
Of resinous trees and the methods of collecting resin and pitch . . . . .	223
Of the making of pitch in Macedonia and in Syria . . .	229
Of frankincense and myrrh: various accounts . . . .	233
Of cinnamon and cassia: various accounts . . . . .	243
Of balsam of Mecca . . . . .	245
Of other aromatic plants—all oriental, except the iris .	247
Of the medicinal juices of plants and the collection of them: general account . . . . .	251
Of the cutting of roots for medicinal purposes, and of certain superstitions connected therewith . . . .	255
Of the medicinal uses of divers parts of plants . . . .	261
Of hellebores, the white and the black: their uses and distribution . . . . .	265
Of the various kinds of all-heal . . . . .	269
Of the various plants called <i>strykhnos</i> . . . . .	271
Of the various kinds of <i>tithymallos</i> . . . . .	275



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Of the two herbs called <i>libanotis</i> . . . . .	277
Of the two kinds of chamaeleon . . . . .	277
Of the various plants called 'poppy' . . . . .	279
Of roots possessing remarkable taste or smell . . . . .	281
Of the time for which roots can be kept without losing their virtue . . . . .	287
Of the localities which specially produce medicinal herbs	289
Of the medicinal herbs peculiar to Crete . . . . .	295
Of wolf's-bane and its habitat, and of meadow-saffron .	299
Of two famous druggists and of the virtues of hemlock .	303
How use diminishes the efficacy of drugs, and how they have not the same effect on all constitutions .	305
Of plants that possess properties affecting lifeless objects . . . . .	309
Of plants whose properties affect animals other than man . . . . .	309
Of plants possessing properties which affect the mental powers . . . . .	311
Of plants said to have magical properties . . . . .	313
A problem as to cause and effect . . . . .	313
Of certain plants, not yet mentioned, which possess special properties . . . . .	315

## MINOR WORKS

INTRODUCTION TO THE TREATISES CONCERNING ODOURS AND CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS . . . . .	324
---	-----

### CONCERNING ODOURS

Introductory: Of odours in general and the classifi- cation of them . . . . .	327
Of natural odours; of those of animals and of the effect of odours on animals . . . . .	329
Of smell and taste . . . . .	331
Of odours in plants . . . . .	333
Of artificial odours in general and their manufacture; especially of the use of perfumes in wine . . . . .	333

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Of the oils used as the vehicle of perfumes . . . . .	341
Of the spices used in making perfumes and their treatment . . . . .	347
Of the various parts of plants used for perfumes, and of the composition of various notable perfumes . . .	351
Of the properties of various spices . . . . .	355
Of the medicinal properties of certain perfumes . . . .	359
Of rules for the mixture of spices, and of the storing of various perfumes . . . . .	361
Of the properties of certain perfumes . . . . .	365
Of other properties and peculiarities of perfumes . . .	373
Of the making of perfume-powders and compound perfumes . . . . .	377
Of the characteristic smells of animals, and of certain curious facts as to the smell of animal and vegetable products . . . . .	381
Of odours as compared with other sense-impressions . .	383

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS

Introductory: general principles . . . . .	391
The signs of rain . . . . .	397
The signs of wind . . . . .	407
The signs of fair weather . . . . .	427
Miscellaneous signs . . . . .	431

INDEX OF PLANTS . . . . .	435
---------------------------	-----

## KEY TO THE INDEX—

I.—List of plants mentioned in the Enquiry under botanical names . . . . .	487
II.—List of plants mentioned in the Enquiry under popular names . . . . .	494



THEOPHRASTUS  
ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS  
BOOK VI

## ΘΕΟΦΡΑΣΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΥΤΩΝ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΑΣ

### Ζ

Ι. Περὶ μὲν οὖν δένδρων καὶ θάμνων εἴρηται πρότερον· ἐπόμενον δ' εἰπεῖν περὶ τε τῶν φρυγανικῶν καὶ ποιωδῶν καὶ εἴ τινες ἐν τούτοις ἕτεροι συμπεριλαμβάνονται φύσεις· οἷον ἥ γε σιτηρὰ ποιωδῆς ἐστί.

Πρῶτον δὲ λέγωμεν περὶ τῆς φρυγανικῆς· αὕτη γὰρ ἐγγυτέρω τῶν προειρημένων διὰ τὸ ξυλῶδης εἶναι. πανταχοῦ μὲν οὖν ἴσως αἰεὶ τὸ ἄγριον τοῦ ἡμέρου πλεῖον, εἰ δὲ μή, περί γε τὴν φρυγανικὴν οὐσίαν· ὀλίγον γὰρ τὸ ἡμερον αὐτῆς, ὅπερ σχεδὸν ἐν τοῖς στεφανωτικοῖς ἐστίν, οἷον ῥοδωνία ἰωνία διόσανθος ἀμάρακος ἡμεροκαλλές, ἔτι δὲ ἔρπυλλος σισύμβριον ἐλένιον ἀβρότονον. ἅπαντα γὰρ ταῦτα ξυλῶδη καὶ μικρόφυλλα, δι'  
2 δ καὶ φρυγανικά. καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν λαχανηρῶν δ'

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. 6. 6. 1.

<sup>2</sup> This hardly corresponds to the definition of φρύγανα

# THEOPHRASTUS

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS

### BOOK VI

#### OF UNDER-SHRUBS.

*Of the classification of under-shrubs: the wild kinds: the chief distinction that between spinous and spineless.*

I. WE have spoken already of trees and shrubs, and next we must speak of under-shrubs and herbaceous plants and of any other natural classes which are included with these; for instance, cereals come under herbaceous plants.

But first let us tell of under-shrubs, for this class comes near those mentioned above because of its woody character. Now it may be said that with all plants the wild kinds are more abundant than the cultivated, and this is certainly true of the under-shrubs. For the cultivated kinds of this class<sup>1</sup> are not numerous, and consist almost entirely of coronary plants, as rose gilliflower carnation sweet marjoram martagon lily, to which may be added tufted thyme bergamot-mint calamint southernwood. For all these are woody and have small leaves; wherefore<sup>2</sup> they are classed as under-shrubs. This class covers given in 1, 3. 1, nor do some of the plants here mentioned come under the description. St. considers the text defective.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Of the two herbs called <i>libanotis</i> . . . . .	277
Of the two kinds of chamaeleon . . . . .	277
Of the various plants called 'poppy' . . . . .	279
Of roots possessing remarkable taste or smell . . . . .	281
Of the time for which roots can be kept without losing their virtue . . . . .	287
Of the localities which specially produce medicinal herbs	289
Of the medicinal herbs peculiar to Crete . . . . .	295
Of wolf's-bane and its habitat, and of meadow-saffron .	299
Of two famous druggists and of the virtues of hemlock .	303
How use diminishes the efficacy of drugs, and how they have not the same effect on all constitutions .	305
Of plants that possess properties affecting lifeless objects . . . . .	309
Of plants whose properties affect animals other than man . . . . .	309
Of plants possessing properties which affect the mental powers . . . . .	311
Of plants said to have magical properties . . . . .	313
A problem as to cause and effect . . . . .	313
Of certain plants, not yet mentioned, which possess special properties . . . . .	315

## MINOR WORKS

INTRODUCTION TO THE TREATISES CONCERNING ODOURS AND CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS . . . . .	324
---	-----

### CONCERNING ODOURS

Introductory: Of odours in general and the classifi- cation of them . . . . .	327
Of natural odours; of those of animals and of the effect of odours on animals . . . . .	329
Of smell and taste . . . . .	331
Of odours in plants . . . . .	333
Of artificial odours in general and their manufacture: especially of the use of perfumes in wine . . . . .	333

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Of the oils used as the vehicle of perfumes . . . . .	341
Of the spices used in making perfumes and their treatment . . . . .	347
Of the various parts of plants used for perfumes, and of the composition of various notable perfumes . . .	351
Of the properties of various spices . . . . .	355
Of the medicinal properties of certain perfumes . . . .	359
Of rules for the mixture of spices, and of the storing of various perfumes . . . . .	361
Of the properties of certain perfumes . . . . .	365
Of other properties and peculiarities of perfumes . . .	373
Of the making of perfume-powders and compound perfumes . . . . .	377
Of the characteristic smells of animals, and of certain curious facts as to the smell of animal and vegetable products . . . . .	381
Of odours as compared with other sense-impressions . .	383

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS

Introductory: general principles . . . . .	391
The signs of rain . . . . .	397
The signs of wind . . . . .	407
The signs of fair weather . . . . .	427
Miscellaneous signs . . . . .	431

INDEX OF PLANTS . . . . .	435
---------------------------	-----

## KEY TO THE INDEX—

I.—List of plants mentioned in the Enquiry under botanical names . . . . .	487
II.—List of plants mentioned in the Enquiry under popular names . . . . .	494





THEOPHRASTUS  
ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS  
BOOK VI

## ΘΕΟΦΡΑΣΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙ ΦΥΤΩΝ ΙΣΤΟΡΙΑΣ

### Ζ

Ι. Περὶ μὲν οὖν δένδρων καὶ θάμνων εἴρηται πρότερον· ἐπόμενον δ' εἰπεῖν περὶ τε τῶν φρυγανικῶν καὶ ποιωδῶν καὶ εἴ τινες ἐν τούτοις ἕτεροι συμπεριλαμβάνονται φύσεις· οἷον ἥ γε σιτηρὰ ποιώδης ἐστί.

Πρῶτον δὲ λέγωμεν περὶ τῆς φρυγανικῆς· αὕτη γὰρ ἐγγυτέρω τῶν προειρημένων διὰ τὸ ξυλώδης εἶναι. πανταχοῦ μὲν οὖν ἴσως αἰεὶ τὸ ἄγριον τοῦ ἡμέρου πλεῖον, εἰ δὲ μή, περὶ γε τὴν φρυγανικὴν οὐσίαν· ὀλίγον γὰρ τὸ ἡμερον αὐτῆς, ὅπερ σχεδὸν ἐν τοῖς στεφανωτικοῖς ἐστίν, οἷον ῥοδωνία ἰωνία διόσανθος ἀμάρακος ἡμεροκαλλές, ἔτι δὲ ἔρπυλλος σισύμβριον ἐλένιον ἀβρότονον. ἅπαντα γὰρ ταῦτα ξυλώδη καὶ μικρόφυλλα, δι'  
2 δ καὶ φρυγανικά. καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν λαχανηρῶν δ'

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. 6. 6. 1.

<sup>2</sup> This hardly corresponds to the definition of φρύγανα

# THEOPHRASTUS

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS

### BOOK VI

#### OF UNDER-SHRUBS.

*Of the classification of under-shrubs: the wild kinds: the chief distinction that between spinous and spineless.*

I. WE have spoken already of trees and shrubs, and next we must speak of under-shrubs and herbaceous plants and of any other natural classes which are included with these; for instance, cereals come under herbaceous plants.

But first let us tell of under-shrubs, for this class comes near those mentioned above because of its woody character. Now it may be said that with all plants the wild kinds are more abundant than the cultivated, and this is certainly true of the under-shrubs. For the cultivated kinds of this class<sup>1</sup> are not numerous, and consist almost entirely of coronary plants, as rose gilliflower carnation sweet marjoram martagon lily, to which may be added tufted thyme bergamot-mint calamint southernwood. For all these are woody and have small leaves; wherefore<sup>2</sup> they are classed as under-shrubs. This class covers

given in 1, 3. 1, nor do some of the plants here mentioned come under the description. St. considers the text defective.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὁμοίως, οἷον ῥάφανος πήγανον καὶ ὅσα παραπλήσια τούτοις ἐστίν. ὑπὲρ ὧν οὐχ ἤττον ἴσως ἀρμόττει κατὰ τὴν οἰκείαν προσηγορίαν εἰπεῖν, ὅταν περὶ στεφανωμάτων καὶ λαχάνων ποιῶμεθα μνείαν. νῦν δὲ πρῶτον περὶ τῶν ἀγρίων λέγωμεν. ἐστὶν αὐτῶν εἶδη καὶ μέρη πλείω, ἃ δεῖ διαιρεῖν καὶ τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστον γένος καὶ τοῖς ὅλοις εἶδεσι.

Μεγίστην δ' αἶν τις λάβοι διαφορὰν τῶν ὅλων γενῶν, ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἀνάκανθα τὰ δὲ ἀκανθώδη τυγχάνει. πάλιν δ' ἐν ἑκατέρῳ τούτων πολλαὶ διαφοραὶ γενῶν καὶ εἰδῶν, ὑπὲρ ὧν καθ' ἑκάτερα πειρατέον εἰπεῖν.

- 3 Τῶν ἀκανθικῶν δὴ τὰ μὲν ἀπλῶς εἰσιν ἄκανθαι, ὥσπερ ἀσφάραγος καὶ σκορπίος· οὐ γὰρ ἔχουσι φύλλον οὐδὲν παρὰ τὴν ἄκανθαν. τὰ δὲ φυλλάκανθα, καθάπερ ἄκανος ἡρύγγιον κνήκος· ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐπὶ τῶν φύλλων ἔχει τὴν ἄκανθαν, δι' ἃ καὶ φυλλάκανθα καλεῖται. τὰ δὲ καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἄκανθαν ἕτερον ἔχει φύλλον, ὥσπερ ἡ ὀνωνὶς καὶ ὁ τρίβολος καὶ ὁ φέως, ὃν δὴ τινες καλοῦσι στοιβήν. ὁ δὲ τρίβολος καὶ περικαρπιάκανθος ἐστίν· ἔχει γὰρ ἀκάνθας ἐν τῷ περικαρπίῳ, δι' ἃ καὶ τοῦτο ἴδιον πρὸς ἅπαντα ὡς εἰπεῖν· ἐπεὶ πτορθάκανθά γε πολλὰ καὶ τῶν δένδρων καὶ τῶν θαμνωδῶν ἐστίν, οἷον ἀχρὰς ῥόα παλίουρος βάτος ῥοδωνία κάππαρις. ἐν μὲν οὖν τοῖς ἀκανθικοῖς ταύτας αἶν τις ὡς εἰπεῖν τύπῳ λάβοι τὰς διαφοράς.

<sup>1</sup> ἐστὶν . . . εἶδεσι : text needlessly altered by Sch. and W. Sch. himself shews that T. uses εἶδος and γένος almost indiscriminately. Here τῶν ὅλων γενῶν means the same as τοῖς

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. 1. 2-3

also pot-herbs, such as cabbage rue and others like them. Of these it is perhaps more appropriate to speak under their proper designation, that is, when we come to make mention of coronary plants and pot-herbs. Now let us first speak of the wild kinds. Of these are several classes and subdivisions, which we must distinguish by the characteristics of each sub-division as well as by those of each class taken as a whole.<sup>1</sup>

The most important difference distinguishing class from class which one could find is that between the spineless and the spinous kinds. Again under each of these two heads there are many differences distinguishing kinds and forms, of which we must endeavour to speak severally.

<sup>2</sup> Of spinous kinds some just consist of spines, as asparagus and *skorprios*; for these have no leaves except their spines. Then there are the spinous-leaved plants, as thistle eryngo safflower; these and the like have their spines on the leaves, whence their name. Others again have leaves as well as their spines, as rest-harrow caltrop and *pheos*,<sup>3</sup> which some call *stoibe*. Caltrop is also<sup>4</sup> spinous-fruited, having spines on the fruit-vessel. Wherefore this peculiarity marks it off from almost all other plants; though many trees and shrubs have spines on the shoots, as wild pear pomegranate Christ's thorn bramble rose caper. Such<sup>5</sup> are the general distinctions which may be made among spinous plants.

ἅλως εἶδеси; and below γενῶν and εἰδῶν both refer to the smaller divisions called μέρη above. <sup>2</sup> Plin. 21. 91.

<sup>3</sup> ὁ φέως δν conj. Sch.; ὁ φλέως δ Ald.H.; καὶ δ δὴ τινες καλ. στ. P<sub>2</sub>. cf. 6. 5. 1 and Index.

<sup>4</sup> καὶ περικαρπᾶκανθος conj. Sch.; καὶ ἡ περικαρπία φυλλᾶ-κανθον UMV Ald. cf. 6. 5. 3. <sup>5</sup> εὖν add. Sch.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 4 Ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἀνακάνθοις οὐκ ἔστιν οὕτως διαλαβεῖν τοῖς γένεσιν· ἡ γὰρ τῶν φύλλων ἀνωμαλία μεγέθει καὶ μικρότητι καὶ σχήμασιν ἄπειρος καὶ ἀσαφής· ἀλλὰ δεῖ πειρᾶσθαι κατ' ἄλλον τρόπον διαιρεῖν. πλείω δέ ἐστι τὰ γένη τὰ τούτων καὶ διαφορὰς ἔχοντα μεγάλας, οἷον κίσθος μῆλωθρον ἐρευθεδανὸν σπειραία κνέωρον ὀρίγανος θύμβρα σφάκος ἐλελίσφακος πράσιον κόνυζα μελισσόφυλλον ἕτερα τοιαῦτα· πρὸς τούτοις ἔτι τὰ ναρθηκώδη καὶ ἐννευρόκαυλα, καθάπερ μάραθρον ἱππομάραθρον ναρθηκία νάρθηξ καὶ τὸ καλοῦμενον ὑπὸ τινῶν μυοφόνον καὶ ὅσα ὅμοια τούτοις. ἅπαντα γὰρ ἂν τις καὶ ταῦτα καὶ ὅλως εἴ τι ναρθηκῶδές ἐστι τῆς φρυγανικῆς θείῃ φύσεως.

II. Εἶδη δὲ καὶ διαφοραὶ καθ' ἕκαστον τῶν εἰρημένων εἰσὶ τῶν μὲν φανερώτεραι τῶν δὲ ἀφανέστεραι. καὶ γὰρ κίσθου δύο γένη διαιροῦσι, τὸ μὲν ἄρρεν τὸ δὲ θῆλυ, τῷ τὸ μὲν μείζον καὶ σκληρότερον καὶ λιπαρώτερον εἶναι καὶ τὸ ἄνθος ἐπιπορφυρίζον· ἄμφω δὲ ὅμοια τοῖς ἀγρίοις ῥόδοις, πλὴν ἐλάττω καὶ ἁοσμα.

- 2 Δύο δὲ εἶδη καὶ τοῦ κνεώρου· ὁ μὲν γὰρ λευκός, ὁ δὲ μέλας. ἔχει δὲ ὁ μὲν λευκὸς τὸ φύλλον

<sup>1</sup> i.e. there is a gradation.

<sup>2</sup> κίσθος conj. Sch.; κισσὸς Ald. H.

<sup>3</sup> σπειραία conj. Sch. from Plin. 21. 53; σμηρέα Ald. G.

<sup>4</sup> θύμβρα σφάκος conj. Sch.; θύμβρας φακὸς UMVAld.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 6. 2. 5.

<sup>6</sup> ναρθηκώδη = hollow-stemmed, ἐννευρόκαυλα = plants with a plain unjointed stem, solid with 'immersed' fibres. In the

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. 1. 4-II. 2

With spineless plants it is not possible to make such 'generic' distinctions; for the variation of the leaves in size and shape is endless, and the differences are not clearly marked<sup>1</sup>; but we must try to distinguish on another principle. There are many classes of such plants and they differ widely, as rock-rose<sup>2</sup> bryony madder privet<sup>3</sup> *kneoron* marjoram savory *sphakos*<sup>4</sup> (sage) *elelisphakos*<sup>5</sup> (salvia) horehound *konyza* balm, and others like these; and in addition to these we have the plants with a ferula-like stem<sup>6</sup> or with a stem composed of fibre, as fennel horse-fennel<sup>7</sup> *narthekia* (ferula) *narther* (ferula) and the plant called by some wolf's bane,<sup>8</sup> and others like these. All these, as well as any other ferula-like plants, may be placed in the class of under-shrubs.

### *Of spineless under-shrubs and their differences.*

II. The various forms and the differences between the above mentioned plants are in some cases more, in some less easy to distinguish. Of rock-rose<sup>9</sup> they distinguish two kinds, 'male' and 'female,' in that the one is<sup>10</sup> larger, tougher, more glossy,<sup>11</sup> and has a crimson flower; both however are like the wild rose,<sup>12</sup> save that the flower is smaller and scentless.

There are also two kinds of *kneoron*, one white, the other black. The white has a leathery oblong

examples given here the two classes are taken together, *ναρθηκία* being *ναρθηκώδης*, the others *ἐννευρόκαυλα*; hence the article is not repeated. <sup>7</sup> cf. 6. 2. 7.

<sup>8</sup> Lit. 'mouse-bane': for other Greek names see Index.

<sup>9</sup> *κίσθου* conj. Sch., cf. 6. 1. 4; *κισσοῦ* Ald.H.; Plin. 24. 81; Diosc. 1. 97.

<sup>10</sup> *εἶναι* conj. W.; *ἔχειν* UMVAld (τὸ φύλλον *ἔχειν* conj. Sch.).

<sup>11</sup> i.e. has more glossy leaves.

<sup>12</sup> cf. Plin. 21. 55; Theocr. 5. 131. See Index.



## THEOPHRASTUS

δερματώδες πρόμηκες ὁμοίοςχημον τρόπον τινα τῇ ἐλάᾳ, ὁ δὲ μέλας οἶον ἢ μυρική σαρκῶδες· ἐπίγειος δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ λευκός· ἔστι δὲ ὁσμώδης, ὁ δὲ μέλας ἄσμος. τὴν δὲ ῥίζαν τὴν εἰς βάθος ἄμφω μεγάλην ἔχουσι καὶ τοὺς ἀκρεμόνας πολλοὺς καὶ παχεῖς καὶ ξυλώδεις ἀπ' αὐτῆς τῆς γῆς ἢ μικρὸν ἄνω σχιζομένους, ξυλωδεστάτην δέ. γλίσχρον δὲ σφόδρα, δι' ὃ καὶ χρώνται πρὸς τὸ καταδεῖν καὶ περιλαμβάνειν, ὥσπερ τῷ οἴσφ. βλαστάνει δὲ καὶ ἀνθεῖ μετ' ἰσημερίαν μετοπωρινὴν καὶ ἀνθεῖ πολὺν χρόνον.

- 3 Καὶ τῆς ὀριγάνου δὲ ἡ μέλαινα ἄκαρπος ἢ δὲ λευκὴ κάρπιμος. καὶ θύμον τὸ μὲν λευκὸν τὸ δὲ μέλαν εὐανθές δὲ σφόδρα· περὶ τροπὰς γὰρ ἀνθεῖ θερινάς. ἀφ' οὗ καὶ ἡ μέλιττα λαμβάνει τὸ μέλι, καὶ τούτῳ φασὶν οἱ μελιττουργοὶ δῆλον εἶναι πότερον εὐμελιτοῦσι ἢ οὐ· καλῶς γὰρ ἀπανθήσαντος εὐμελιτεῖν· βλάπτει δὲ καὶ ἀπόλλυσι τὴν ἀνθησιν ἐὰν ὕδωρ ἐπιγένηται.

- Σπέρμα δὲ κύρπιμον ἢ μὲν θύμβρα καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ ὀρίγανος ἔχει φανερόν, τοῦ θύμου δ' οὐκ ἔστι λαβεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ ἀνθεὶ πῶς ἀναμύκται· σπείρουσι γὰρ τοῦτο καὶ ἀναβλαστάνει.
- 4 ζητοῦσι δὲ καὶ λαμβάνουσιν οἱ ἐξάγειν Ἀθήνησι βουλόμενοι τὸ γένος. ἴδιον δὲ ἔχει καὶ πρὸς ταῦτα καὶ σχεδὸν πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα τὸ κατὰ τοὺς τόπους· οὐ γάρ φασι δύνασθαι φύεσθαι καὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. 1. 10. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Apparently an afterthought, suggested by the mention of the woodiness of the branches.

<sup>3</sup> περιλαμβάνει conj. W. from G; περιλαμβάνειν Ald.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 21. 55.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. II. 2-4

leaf, somewhat like that of the olive; the leaf of the black is like that of the tamarisk<sup>1</sup> and fleshy; the white grows more on the ground and is scented, while the black is scentless. In both the root, which runs deep, is large (and the branches which divide at the ground level are numerous thick and woody), and the root is also very woody.<sup>2</sup> It is also very tough, wherefore it is used for binding and to put<sup>3</sup> round things, like the withy. It grows and flowers after the autumnal equinox, and remains in flower a long time.

<sup>4</sup> Of marjoram the black form is barren, the white bears fruit. <sup>5</sup> There is a black and a white thyme, and it flowers very freely: it is in bloom about the summer solstice. It is from this flower that the bee gets the honey, and by it <sup>6</sup> beekeepers say that it is made known whether they have a good yield of honey or not; for, if the thyme flowers abundantly,<sup>7</sup> they have a good yield, but the bloom is injured or even destroyed if it is rained upon.

Savory, and still more marjoram, has a conspicuous fruitful seed, but in thyme it is not easy to find, being somehow mixed up with the flower; for men sow the flower and plants come up from it. <sup>8</sup> This plant is sought and obtained by those in Athens who wish to export such herbs. But it has a peculiarity as compared both with similar plants and with most others, namely the kind of region which it affects<sup>9</sup>; they say that it can not be grown or become

Plin. 21. 56 and 154.

τούτω conj. Sch.; τοῦτο Ald.

καλῶς mBod.; ἄλλως UMVAld H.

Plin. 21. 57.

τὸ κατὰ τοὺς τόπους conj. W.; καὶ κατὰ τοὺς τ. Ald.; καὶ κατὰ τόπους P.

## THEOPHRASTUS

λαμβάνειν ὅπου μὴ ἀναπνοὴ διῴκνεϊται ἢ ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάττης· δι' ὃ οὐδ' ἐν Ἀρκαδίᾳ γίνεται· θύμβρα δὲ καὶ ὀρίγανος καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πολλὰ καὶ πολλαχοῦ. παραπλήσιον οὖν τὸ συμβαῖνον τοῦτο καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἐλάας· οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδ' ἐκείνη δοκεῖ τριακοσίων σταδίων ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἐπάνω φύεσθαι.

- 5 Σφάκος δὲ καὶ ἐλελίσφακος διαφέρουσιν ὥσάν τὸ μὲν ἡμερον τὸ δὲ ἄγριον· λειότερον γὰρ τὸ φύλλον τοῦ σφάκου καὶ ἔλαττον καὶ αὐχμηρότερον, τὸ δὲ τοῦ ἐλελίσφακου τραχύτερον.

Δύο δὲ γένη καὶ τοῦ πρασίου· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔχει ποῶδες τὸ φύλλον καὶ μᾶλλον ἐπικεχαραγμένον, ἔτι δὲ τὰς ἐντομὰς ἐνδήλους σφόδρα καὶ βαθείας, ὧ καὶ οἱ φαρμακοπῶλαι χρῶνται πρὸς ἔνια· τὸ δὲ ἕτερον στρογγυλότερον καὶ αὐχμῶδες σφόδρα, καθάπερ τοῦ σφάκου, καὶ τὰς ἐντομὰς ἀμαυροτέρας ἔχον καὶ ἐπικεχαραγμένον ἥττον.

- 6 Κονύζης δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄρρεν τὸ δὲ θῆλυ. διαφορὰς δὲ ἔχει καθάπερ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ οὕτω διαιρούμενα· τὸ μὲν γὰρ θῆλυ λεπτοφυλλότερον καὶ ξυνεστηκὸς μᾶλλον καὶ τὸ ὅλον ἔλαττον, τὸ δὲ ἄρρεν μεῖζόν τε καὶ παχυκαυλότερον καὶ πολυκλωνότερον καὶ τὸ φύλλον μεῖζον καὶ λιπαρώτερον ἔχον, ἔτι δὲ τὸ ἄνθος λαμπρότερον. καρποφόρα δὲ ἄμφω· τὸ δὲ ὅλον ὀψιβλαστεῖ καὶ ὀψιανθεῖ περὶ Ἀρκτοῦρον καὶ μετ'

<sup>1</sup> λαμβάνειν P<sub>2</sub>Ald.: lit. 'take hold,' cf. 6. 2. 6 ; βλαστάνειν conj. W.

<sup>2</sup> σφάκος conj. Sch.: σφάκελος UMVP<sub>2</sub>Ald.; Plin. 22, 146 and 147.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. II. 4-6

established<sup>1</sup> where a breeze from the sea does not reach. This is why it does not grow in Arcadia, while savory marjoram and such plants are common in many parts. (A similar peculiarity is found in the olive; for it appears that it likewise will not grow more than three hundred furlongs from the sea.)

The difference between *sphakos*<sup>2</sup> (sage) and *elelisphakos* (salvia) is like that between cultivated and wild; for the leaf of *sphakos*<sup>3</sup> is smoother smaller and less succulent,<sup>4</sup> while that of *elelisphakos* is rougher.<sup>5</sup>

There are also two kinds of horehound: one has a narrow leaf with a more jagged edge, and the notches are very conspicuous and deep, and this is the plant used by druggists for certain purposes; the other has a rounder<sup>6</sup> leaf, which, like that of *sphakos*, is not at all succulent; the notches are less conspicuous and the edge less jagged.

Of *konyza*<sup>7</sup> there is a 'male' and a 'female' kind, the differences between them being such as are usual between forms so distinguished; the 'female' has slenderer leaves, is more compact, and a smaller plant; the 'male' is larger, has thicker stalks, is more branched, has larger glossier leaves, and moreover the flower is more conspicuous. Both bear fruit; the plant as a whole is late in growing and in blooming; it blooms about the rising of

<sup>3</sup> σφάκου conj. Sch.; σφακέλου UMVP<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>4</sup> W. omits ἥττον before ἀνχμηρότερον.

<sup>5</sup> τραχύτερον conj. Scal. from G; βραχύτερον Ald.H.

<sup>6</sup> στρογγυλότερον: cf. 1. 10. 4 n

<sup>7</sup> See Index. Plin. 26. 58. cf. Nic. Ther. 875; Diosc. 3. 121.

## THEOPHRASTUS

Ἄρκτουρον λαμβάνει. βαρεῖα δὲ ἡ ὁσμὴ τοῦ ἄρρενος, ἡ δὲ τῆς θηλείας δριμυτέρα, δι' ὃ καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία χρησίμη.

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ὥσπερ διαφέροντα. πάλιν δὲ ἄλλα μονοειδῆ τυγχάνοντα καὶ τῶν πρότερον εἰρημένων καὶ ἕτερα παρὰ ταῦτα· πλείω γάρ ἐστι.

- 7 Τὸ δὲ ναρθηκῶδες, καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο τῶν φρυγανικῶν, πολλὰς περιείληφεν ἰδέας· ἐν οἷς πρῶτον ὑπὲρ τοῦ κοινοῦ πᾶσι λεκτέον, ὑπὲρ νάρθηκός τε καὶ ναρθηκίας, εἴτε τὸ αὐτὸ γένος ἐστὶν ἀμφοῖν διαφέρον δὲ κατὰ μέγεθος, εἴτε καὶ ἕτερον ὥσπερ τινὲς φασιν. ἡ δ' οὖν φανερὰ φύσις ἀμφοῖν ὁμοία πλὴν κατὰ τὸ μέγεθος· ὁ μὲν γὰρ νάρθηξ γίνεται μέγας σφόδρα ἡ δὲ ναρθηκία μικρά. μονόκαυλα δ' ἄμφω καὶ γονατώδη, ἀφ' ὧν τὰ τε φύλλα βλαστάνει καὶ καυλοί
- 8 τινες μικροί· βλαστάνει δὲ παραλλὰξ τὰ φύλλα· λέγω δὲ παραλλὰξ ὅτι οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ μέρους τῶν γονάτων ἄλλ' ἐναλλάξ· περιειληφότα δὲ τὸν καυλὸν ἐπὶ πολὺ, καθάπερ τὰ τοῦ καλάμου, πλὴν ἀποκεκλιμένα ταῦτα μᾶλλον διὰ τὴν μαλακότητα καὶ τὸ μέγεθος· μέγα γὰρ τὸ φύλλον καὶ μαλακὸν καὶ πολυσχιδές, ὥστε εἶναι σχεδὸν τριχῶδες· ἔχει δὲ μέγιστα τὰ κάτω πρὸς τὴν γῆν καὶ ἀεὶ κατὰ λόγον. ἄνθος δὲ μηλινοειδὲς ἀμαυρόν, καρπὸν δὲ παρόμοιον τῷ ἀνήθῳ πλὴν

<sup>1</sup> λαμβάνει Ald.; ἄδρύνει conj. W. But cf. the somewhat similar use 6. 2. 4.

<sup>2</sup> *contra bestiarum morsus* Plin. l.c.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 13. 132 and 133.

<sup>4</sup> The form of expression in the repeated ὑπὲρ seems loose,

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. II. 6-8

Arcturus and is full grown<sup>1</sup> after his setting. The smell of the 'male' plant is strong, but that of the 'female' more pungent; wherefore both of them are of use against wild beasts.<sup>2</sup>

These plants then and others like them have, as it were, different forms. Again there are some which have but one form both among those already mentioned and others as well; for there are numerous plants of this class.

<sup>3</sup> The class of ferula-like plants (for this too belongs to the under-shrubs) comprises many kinds: here we must first speak of the characteristic which is common to all, including ferula itself<sup>4</sup> (*narthex*) and *narthekia*, whether they both belong to the same kind and differ only in size, or whether, as some say, they are distinct. The obvious character of both is alike, except as to size; for *narthex* grows very tall, while *narthekia* is a small plant. Each of them has a single stalk, which is jointed; from this spring the leaves and some small stalks; the leaves come alternately—by which I mean that they do not spring from the same part of the joint, but in alternating rows. For a considerable distance they embrace the stalk, like the leaves of the reed, but they turn back from it more owing to their softness and their size; for the leaf is large soft and much divided, so that it is almost hair-like; the largest leaves are the lowest ones next the ground, and so on in proportion. The flower is quince-yellow<sup>5</sup> and inconspicuous, the fruit<sup>6</sup> like dill, but larger.<sup>7</sup> The and above ἐν οἷς is hardly satisfactory. Sch. suspects corruption.

<sup>1</sup> μηλινοειδές: cf. 7. 3. 1.

<sup>2</sup> ἀμαυρόν, καρπὸν δὲ conj. Sch.; ἀμαυρόκαρπον Ald.

<sup>7</sup> μείζω conj. Sch.; μείζον Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μείζω. ἐξ ἄκρου δὲ σχίζεται καὶ ἔχει τινὰς οὐ  
μεγάλους καυλοὺς· ἐνταῦθα δὲ τό τε ἄνθος  
καὶ ὁ καρπός. ἔχει δὲ καὶ ἄνθος καὶ καρπὸν  
καὶ ἐν τοῖς παρακαυλίζουσι δι' ὅλου, καθάπερ  
τὸ ἄνηθον. ἐπετειόκαυλον δέ, καὶ ἡ βλάστη-  
σις τοῦ ἥρος πρῶτον μὲν τῶν φύλλων ἔπειτα  
τοῦ καυλοῦ, καθάπερ τῶν ἄλλων. ῥίζαν δὲ ἔχει  
βαθεῖαν, ἔστι δὲ μονόρριζον. ὁ μὲν οὖν νάρθηξ  
τοιούτος.

Τῶν δ' ἄλλων τὰ μὲν ὁμοιώτερα τούτῳ τὸν  
καυλὸν ἔχει <κοῖλον>, καθάπερ ὁ μανδραγόρας καὶ  
τὸ κώνειον καὶ ὁ ἐλλέβορος καὶ ὁ ἀνθέρικος· τὰ  
δ' οἷον ἐννευρόκαυλα τυγχάνει, καθάπερ μάραθον  
μυοφόνον τὰ ὅμοια τούτοις. ἴδιος δὲ ὁ καρπὸς τοῦ  
μανδραγόρου τῷ μέλας τε καὶ ῥαγώδης καὶ οἰνώδης  
εἶναι τῷ χυμῷ.

III. Μέγισται δὲ καὶ ἰδιώταται φύσεις ἡ τε  
τοῦ σιλφίου καὶ ἡ τοῦ παπύρου ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ·  
ναρθηκώδη γὰρ καὶ ταῦτά ἐστιν· ὑπὲρ ὧν τοῦ  
μὲν παπύρου πρότερον εἵπομεν ἐν τοῖς ἐνύδροις,  
ὑπὲρ θατέρου δὲ νῦν λεκτέον.

Τὸ δὲ σίλφιον ἔχει ῥίζαν μὲν πολλὴν καὶ  
παχεῖαν, τὸν δὲ καυλὸν ἡλίκον νάρθηξ, σχεδὸν  
δὲ καὶ τῷ πάχει παραπλήσιον, τὸ δὲ φύλλον, ὃ  
καλοῦσι μάσπετον, ὅμοιον τῷ σελίνῳ· σπέρμα

<sup>1</sup> κοῖλον add. W.

<sup>2</sup> See Index: the *stalk* is specially in question here.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 6. 1. 4 n. ἐκνευρόκαυλα P<sub>2</sub>Ald., cf. ἔκλευκος, 'whitish';  
ἐννευρόκαυλα conj. Sch. as in 6. 1. 4; but οἷον indicates the  
coinage of a fresh term. κώνειον seems to be placed in the  
wrong list.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 25. 147-150 describes *mandragoras*, but his descrip-  
tion is not taken from T. cf. Diosc. 4. 75, where three kinds

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. II. 8—III. I

plant divides at the top and has some small branches, on which grow the flower and the fruit. It also bears flowers and fruit on the side-stalks all the way up, like dill. The stalk only lasts a year, and the growth takes place in spring, the leaves growing first and then the stem, as with other plants. It roots deep and has but a single root. Such is the ferula.

Of the others some to a certain extent resemble ferula, that is, in having a hollow stem<sup>1</sup>; for instance deadly nightshade hemlock hellebore asphodel<sup>2</sup>: while some have a stem more or less, as it were, consisting of fibre,<sup>3</sup> as fennel aconite and others like these. The fruit of deadly nightshade<sup>4</sup> is peculiar in being black and like a grape and like wine in taste.

*Of certain specially important spineless under-shrubs—silphium and magydaris—belonging to ferula-like plants.*

III. Most important and peculiar in their characters are the silphium and papyrus of Egypt. These too come under the class of ferula-like plants; of these we have spoken<sup>5</sup> of the papyrus already under the head of plants living in water; of the other we have now to speak.

<sup>6</sup>The silphium has a great deal of thick root; its stalk is like ferula in size, and is nearly as thick; the leaf, which they call *maspeton*, is like celery: it has a broad fruit, which is leaf-like,

of *μανδραγόρας* are described: there being only two known species of *mandragora*, the third may be *atropa Belladonna*; and to this plant may also refer an interpolated sentence in Diosc. 4. 73 (ἄθος . . . σταφυλήν).

<sup>5</sup> 4. 8. 3 and 4. Papyrus is loosely classed with ferula-like plants, as it has not a hollow stem. <sup>6</sup> Plin. 19. 42-45.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- δ' ἔχει πλατύ, οἶον φυλλῶδες, τὸ λεγόμενον φύλλον. ἐπετειόκαυλον δ' ἐστίν, ὥσπερ ὁ νάρθηξ. ἅμα μὲν οὖν τῷ ἡρι τὸ μάσπετον τοῦτο ἀφήσιν, δὲ καθαίρει τὰ πρόβατα καὶ παχύνει σφόδρα καὶ τὰ κρέα θαυμαστὰ ποιεῖ τῇ ἡδονῇ· μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα καυλόν, <ὄν> ἐσθίεσθαι πάντα τρόπον ἐφθὼν ὀπτόν, καθαίρειν δὲ καὶ τοῦτόν φασι τὰ σώματα
- 2 τετταράκοντα ἡμέραις. ὀπὸν δὲ διττόν ἔχει, τὸν μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ καυλοῦ τὸν δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς ῥίζης, δι' ὃ καλοῦσι τὸν μὲν καυλίαν τὸν δὲ ῥιζίαν. ἡ δὲ ῥίζα τὸν φλοιὸν ἔχει μέλανα, καὶ τοῦτον περιαιροῦσιν. ἔστι δὲ ὥσπερ μέταλλα τῶν ῥιζοτομιῶν αὐτοῖς, ἐξ ὧν ὅποσον ἂν δοκῇ συμφέρειν ταμιευόμενοι πρὸς τὰς τομὰς καὶ τὸ προῦπάρχον τέμνουσιν· οὐκ ἔξεστι γὰρ οὔτε παρατέμνειν οὔτε πλείον τῶν τεταγμένων· καὶ γὰρ διαφθείρεται καὶ σήπεται τὸ ἄργον ἐὰν χρονίζῃ. κατεργάζονται δὲ ἄγοντες εἰς τὸν Πειραιᾶ τόνδε τὸν τρόπον· ὅταν βάλωσι εἰς ἀγγεῖα καὶ ἄλευρα μίξωσι, σείουσιν χρόνον συχνόν, ὅθεν καὶ τὸ χρῶμα λαμβάνει καὶ ἐργασθὲν ἄσηπτον ἤδη διαμένει. τὰ μὲν οὖν κατὰ τὴν ἐργασίαν καὶ τομὴν οὕτως ἔχει.
- 3 Τόπον δὲ πολὺν ἐπεχει τῆς Λιβύης· πλείω γάρ φασιν ἢ τετρακισχίλια στάδια· πλείστα δὲ γίνεσθαι περὶ τὴν σύρτιν ἀπὸ τῶν Εὐεσπερίδων. ἰδίου δὲ τὸ φεύγειν τὴν ἐργαζομένην καὶ αἰεὶ συνεργαζομένης καὶ συνημερουμένης ἐξαναχωρεῖν,

<sup>1</sup> οἶον φυλλ. τὸ λεγ. conj. W.; φυλλ. οἶον τὸ λεγ. Ald. H.

<sup>2</sup> I have added ὄν.

<sup>3</sup> μέταλλα U; μέτρα Ald.; ? ἐν μετάλλοις μέτρα.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 9. 1. 7; Diosc. 3. 80.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. III. 1-3

as it were,<sup>1</sup> and is called the *phyllon*. The stalk lasts only a year, like that of *ferula*. Now in spring it sends up this *maspeton*, which purges sheep and greatly fattens them, and makes their flesh wonderfully delicious; after that it sends up a stalk, which<sup>2</sup> is eaten, it is said, in all ways, boiled and roast, and this too, they say, purges the body in forty days. It has two kinds of juice, one from the stalk and one from the root; wherefore the one is called 'stalk-juice,' the other 'root-juice.' The root has a black bark, which is stripped off. They have regulations, like those in use in mines,<sup>3</sup> for cutting the root, in accordance with which they fix carefully the proper amount to be cut, having regard to previous cuttings and the supply of the plant. For it is not allowed to cut it wrong nor to cut more than the appointed amount; for, if the juice is kept and not used, it goes bad and decays. When they are conveying it to Peiraeus, they deal with it thus<sup>4</sup> :— having put it in vessels and mixed meal with it, they shake it for a considerable time, and from this process it gets its colour, and this treatment<sup>5</sup> makes it thenceforward keep without decaying. Such are the facts in regard to the cutting and treatment.

The plant is found over a wide tract of Libya, for a distance,<sup>6</sup> they say, of more than four thousand furlongs, but it is most abundant<sup>7</sup> near the Syrtis, starting from the Euesperides islands. It is a peculiarity of it that it avoids cultivated ground, and, as the land is brought under cultivation and tamed,

<sup>1</sup> ἄργασθέν: ἐξοργασθέν conj. Salm; from Plin. *l.c.*, *argumentum erat maturitatis color siccitasque sudore finito*.

<sup>6</sup> cf. Strabo 2. 5. 20; 17. 3. 20; Scyl. *Periplus*, Libya.

<sup>7</sup> πλείστα conj. W.; πλείονα U; τὰ πλείονα MAld.; γίνεσθαι conj. W.; γενέσθαι Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὥς οὐ δεομένου δῆλον ὅτι θεραπείας ἀλλ' ὄντος ἀγρίου. φασὶ δ' οἱ Κυρηναῖοι φανῆναι τὸ σίλφιον ἔτεσι πρότερον ἢ αὐτοὶ τὴν πόλιν ὥκησαν ἑπτὰ· οἰκοῦσι δὲ μάλιστα περὶ τριακόσια εἰς Σιμωνίδην ἄρχοντα Ἀθήνησιν.

- 4 Οἱ μὲν οὖν οὕτω λέγουσιν. οἱ δὲ τοῦ σιλφίου τὴν ῥίζαν φασὶ γίνεσθαι πηχυαίαν ἢ μικρῷ μείζω. ταύτην δὲ ἔχειν ἐπὶ τοῦ μέσου κεφαλὴν, ὃ καὶ μετεωρότατόν ἐστι καὶ σχεδὸν ὑπὲρ γῆς, καλεῖσθαι δὲ γάλα· ἐξ ἧς δὴ φύεσθαι μετὰ ταῦτα καὶ τὸν καυλόν, ἐκ δὲ τούτου μαγύδαριν τὸ καὶ καλούμενον φύλλον· τοῦτο δ' εἶναι σπέρμα· καὶ ὅταν νότος λαμπρὸς πνεύσῃ μετὰ Κῦνα διαρρίπτεσθαι, ἐξ οὗ φύεσθαι τὸ σίλφιον. τῇ αὐτῷ δὲ ἔτει τὴν τε ῥίζαν γίνεσθαι καὶ τὸν καυλόν· οὐθὲν δὲ τοῦτο ἴδιον, καὶ γὰρ ἐπ' ἄλλων, εἰ μὴ τοῦτο λέγουσιν ὅτι εὐθὺς φύεται μετὰ τὴν διάρριψιν.

- 5 Καὶ τοῦτο ἴδιον καὶ διάφορον τοῖς πρότερον, ὅτι φασὶ δεῖν ὀρύττειν ἐπέτειον· ἐὰν δὲ ἐαθῇ, φέρειν μὲν τὸ σπέρμα καὶ τὸν καυλόν, χεῖρω δὲ γίνεσθαι καὶ ταῦτα καὶ τὴν ῥίζαν, ὀρυττομένας δὲ βελτίους γίνεσθαι διὰ τὸ μεταβάλλεσθαι τὴν γῆν. ἐναντίον δὲ τοῦτο τῷ φεύγειν τὴν ἐργάσιμον. ἐσθίεσθαι καὶ τὰς ῥίζας προσφάτους κατατεμνομένας εἰς ὄξος. τὸ δὲ φύλλον τῇ χροιᾷ χρυσοειδές

<sup>1</sup> cf. Hdt. 4. 158.

<sup>2</sup> B.C. 310.

<sup>3</sup> ταύτην δὲ . . . τὸ σίλφιον: text as restored conjecturally by W., chiefly by alteration in the order of the words in Ald.

<sup>4</sup> καλεῖσθαι δὲ γάλα after φύεσθαι in Ald.

<sup>5</sup> In 6. 3. 7 this name is applied to a distinct plant. μαγ. τὸ καὶ conj. Salm.; μαγ. καὶ τὸ P<sub>2</sub>Ald.H. <sup>6</sup> cf. 6. 3. 2.

<sup>7</sup> τοῦτο conj. Salm.; τούτον UMVAld.; τούτον P<sub>2</sub>.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. III. 3-5

it retires, plainly shewing that it needs no tendance but is a wild thing. The people of Cyrene say that the silphium appeared<sup>1</sup> seven years before they founded their city; now they had lived there for about three hundred years before the archonship at Athens of Simonides.<sup>2</sup>

Such is their account. Others however say that the root of the silphium grows to the length of a cubit or a little longer, and in the middle of this is a head,<sup>3</sup> which is the highest part and almost comes above ground, and is called the 'milk';<sup>4</sup> from this then presently grows the stalk, and from that the *magydaris*,<sup>5</sup> which is also called the *phyllon*<sup>6</sup>; but it<sup>7</sup> is really the seed, and, when a strong south wind blows after the setting of the dog-star, it is scattered<sup>8</sup> abroad and the silphium grows from it. The root and the stalk grow in the same year; nor is this a singular feature—unless they mean that it grows immediately after the dispersal<sup>9</sup> of the seed—since the same thing occurs with other<sup>10</sup> plants also.

There is this singular statement, which is inconsistent with what was said above, that, it is said, it is necessary to dig the ground every year, and that, if it be left alone, it bears<sup>11</sup> the seed and the stalk, but these are inferior and so is the root; on the other hand, that with digging they are improved because the soil is changed. (This is inconsistent with the statement that silphium avoids cultivated land.) They add that the roots are cut up into vinegar and eaten fresh, and that the leaf is of a golden

<sup>1</sup> διαρρίπτεσθαι conj. Sch.; διαρρίπτεται Ald.; διαρρίπτειται U; διαρρίπτηται M.

<sup>2</sup> διάρριψιν conj. Sch.; δέριψιν UM; ξκριψιν Ald.

<sup>10</sup> ἐπ' ἄλλων conj. W.; τῶν ἄλλων Ald. H.

<sup>11</sup> μὲν conj. Sch.; πᾶν Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

6 εἶναι. ἐναντίον δὲ καὶ τὸ μὴ καθαίρεσθαι τὰ πρόβατα τὸ φύλλον ἐσθίοντα· φασὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦ ἡρος καὶ τοῦ χειμῶνος εἰς ὄρος ἀφίεναι, νέμεσθαι δὲ τοῦτό τε καὶ ἕτερον ὅμοιον ἀβροτόνῳ· θερμαντικά δ' ἄμφω δοκεῖ εἶναι καὶ κάθαρσιν μὲν οὐ ποιεῖν, ἀναξηραίνειν δὲ καὶ συμπέττειν· ἐὰν δέ τι νοσοῦν ἢ κακῶς ἔχον εἰσέλθῃ πρόβατον, ὑγιάζεσθαι ταχέως ἢ ἀποθνήσκειν, ὥς δ' ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ σώζεσθαι μᾶλλον. ταῦτα μὲν ὅποτέρως ἔχει σκεπτέον.

7 Ἡ δὲ καλουμένη μαγύδαρις ἕτερόν ἐστι τοῦ σιλφίου μανότερόν τε καὶ ἥττον δριμὺ καὶ τὸν ὀπὸν οὐκ ἔχει· διάδηλος δὲ ἐστὶ καὶ τῇ ὄψει τοῖς ἐμπείροις. γίνεται δὲ περὶ Συρίαν καὶ οὐκ ἐν Κυρήνῃ· φασὶ δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ Παρνασίῳ ὄρει πολλήν· ἔνιοι δὲ σίλφιον τοῦτο καλοῦσιν. εἰ δὲ φεύγει τὴν ἐργάσιμον ὥσπερ τὸ σίλφιον σκεπτέον, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ εἴ τι ὅμοιον ἢ παραπλήσιον ἔχει φύλλον τε πέρι καὶ καυλοῦ, καὶ εἰ ὅλως ἀφίησί τι δάκρυον. τὴν μὲν οὖν ναρθηκώδη [καὶ ὅλως τὴν ἀκανθώδη] φύσιν ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις θεωρητέον.

IV Τῆς δ' ἀκανθικῆς, ἐπόμενον γὰρ τοῦτο εἰπεῖν, ἐπειδὴ διήρηται τὸ μὲν ἀκανθῶδες ὅλως τὸ δὲ φυλλάκανθον, ὑπὲρ ἐκατέρου χάρις λεκτέον,

<sup>1</sup> cf. Arr. *Anab.* 3. 23. 6 and 7.

<sup>2</sup> *Artemisia camphorata* : Index App. (24).

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 19. 46 ; Diosc. 3 94 ; Hesych. s.v. ; Photius, *Gloss.* s.v. ; cf. 6. 3. 4 n.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. III. 5-IV. 1

colour. We have also the inconsistent statement that sheep are not purged by eating the leaves; for they say that in spring and in winter they are driven into the hill-country, where<sup>1</sup> they feed on this and on another plant<sup>2</sup> which is like southernwood; both these plants appear to be heating and not to cause purging, but, on the contrary, to have a drying effect and promote digestion. It is also said that, if a sheep which is sick or in bad condition comes to that district, it is quickly cured or else dies, but usually it recovers. Which of these accounts is true is matter for enquiry.

<sup>3</sup>The plant called *magydaris* is distinct from silphium, being of later growth and less pungent, and it does not produce the characteristic juice; experts can also easily distinguish it by its appearance. It grows in Syria and not in Cyrene, and they say that it is also abundant on Mount Parnassus, and some call it silphium. Whether however, like silphium, it avoids cultivated ground is matter for enquiry, as also whether it has any resemblance or likeness in leaf and stalk, and, in general, whether it produces a juice. In these examples we may consider the class of ferula-like plants [and, in general, that of spinous plants.<sup>4</sup>]

*Of spinous under-shrubs and their differences.*

IV. Taking next the class of spinous plants (for we must next speak of them), we have already distinguished<sup>5</sup> those which are altogether spinous and those which have spinous leaves, and now we must

<sup>4</sup> καὶ . . . ἀκανθώδη. These words occur only in U: they cannot belong here. Note that τὸ μὲν ἀκανθώδες ὅλως occurs just below. <sup>5</sup> 6. 1. 3.

## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ τρίτου δὴ περὶ τοῦ καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἄκανθαν ἔχοντος φύλλον, ὥσπερ ὃ τε φέως καὶ ὁ τρίβολος. καὶ ἡ κάππαρις ἴδιον ἔχει τὸ μὴ μόνον τὴν ἐκ τῶν καυλῶν ἄκανθαν ἔχειν ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ φύλλον ἐπακανθίζον. τῶν δὲ διηρημένων εἰδῶν πλεῖστον μὲν ἐστὶ τὸ φυλλάκανθον, ἐλάχιστον δὲ ὡς εἰπεῖν τὸ ἀκανθῶδες ὅλως. βραχὺ γάρ τι πάμπαν ἐστίν, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ σχεδὸν οὐ ῥάδιον λαβεῖν παρὰ τε τὸν ἀσφάραγον καὶ τὸν σκορπίον.

- 2 Ἀμφότερα δὲ ταῦτα ἀνθεῖ μετὰ ἰσημερίαν φθινοπωρινήν. ὁ μὲν σκορπίος ἐν τῷ σαρκώδει τῷ ἐποιδοῦντι τῷ ὑπὸ τὸ ἄκρον τῆς ἀκάνθης ἔχων τὸ ἄνθος ἐξ ἀρχῆς μὲν λευκὸν ὕστερον δ' ἐπιπορφυρίζει. ὁ δὲ ἀσφάραγος ἐκφύων παρὰ τὰς ἀκάνθας κορυνώδες μικρόν, ἐκ τούτου δέ ἐστὶ τὸ ἄνθος μικρόν. ὁ δὲ σκορπίος μονόρριζον καὶ βαθύρριζον, ὁ δὲ ἀσφάραγος βαθύρριζόν τε εὐμάλα καὶ πολύρριζον πυκναῖς ταῖς ῥίζαις, ὥστε τὸ ἄνω συνεχὲς εἶναι αὐτῶν, ἀφ' οὗ καὶ αἱ βλαστήσεις αὐτῶν τῶν καυλῶν ἀναβλαστάνει δὲ ὁ καυλὸς ἐκ τῆς ἀσφαραγιᾶς τοῦ ἥρος καὶ ἐδώδιμός ἐστιν· εἰθ' οὕτως ἀποτραχύνεται καὶ ἐξακανθοῦται προϊούσης τῆς ὥρας· ἡ δὲ ἄνθησις οὐκ ἐκ τούτου μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν πρότερον· οὐ γὰρ ἐπετειόκαυλόν ἐστι. τὰ μὲν οὖν ὅλως ἀκανθώδη τοιαύτην τινὰ ἔχει φύσιν.

- 3 Τῶν δὲ φυλλακάνθων τὸ πλεῖστον γένος ὡς

<sup>1</sup> φέως conj. St.; φλεῶς Ald. cf. 6. 1. 3.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 6. 1. 3. <sup>3</sup> Plin. 21. 91; 22. 39.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. IV. 1-3

speak of each of these classes separately, and also, in the third place, of those which have leaves as well as their spines, such as *pheos*<sup>1</sup> and caltrop. Moreover caper has the peculiarity of possessing not only spines on its stems but also a spinous leaf. Of the classes thus distinguished that with spinous leaves is the largest, while that which is altogether spinous is about the smallest. It is indeed, as was said, a very small class, and it would not be easy to find examples of such plants besides asparagus and *skorprios*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Both of these flower after the autumnal equinox. *Skorprios* produces its flower in the fleshy swelling<sup>4</sup> below the top<sup>5</sup> of the spinous twig; at first it is white, but afterwards it becomes purplish. Asparagus produces alongside of the spines a small knob, and from this grows the flower, which is of small size. *Skorprios* has a single root which runs deep; asparagus roots very deep and its roots are numerous and matted, the upper part of them being in one piece,<sup>6</sup> and from this the actual shoots spring. The stalk comes up from the plant in spring and is edible; afterwards, as the season advances, it acquires its rough and spinous character<sup>7</sup>; the bloom appears not only on this stalk, but on those of previous years, for the stalk is not annual. Such is the character of plants which are altogether spinous.

<sup>8</sup> Of those which have spinous leaves the largest class, one may say, consists of those plants which

<sup>1</sup> ἐποιδούντι conj. Scal.; ἐπωδούντι U; ἐσποδούντι MAld.

<sup>2</sup> τὸ ἄκρον conj. Scal.; τὸ ἄκρατον UMald.; τῆς ἀκάνθης om. Scal.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. tuberous. cf. Col. 11. 3. 43; Pall. 3. 24. 8; 4. 9. 11.

<sup>4</sup> ἐξάκανθούται conj. Link. ap. Sch.; ἐξανθούται UM; ἐξανθεῖται Ald. <sup>5</sup> Plin. 21. 94.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἀκανῶδες τυγχάνει· λέγω δὲ τὸ ἀκανῶδες, ὅτι τὸ κῆμα καὶ ἐν ᾧ τὸ ἄνθος ἢ καὶ ὁ καρπὸς ἄκανος ἢ ἀκανῶδες πάντων ἐστί. διαφορὰν δὲ ἔχει ἐν ἑαυτῷ καὶ μεγέθει καὶ σχήματι καὶ χρώματι καὶ πλήθει καὶ ὀλιγότητι τῶν ἀκανθῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων. ἔξω γὰρ ὀλίγων πάννυ, καθάπερ τοῦ στρουθίου τε καὶ τοῦ σόγκου καὶ εἴτινων ἐτέρων, τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα ὡς εἰπεῖν τοιαύτην ἔχει τὴν φύσιν· ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ σόγκος τὴν γε φύσιν ἀκανθῶδη ἔχει, τὸ δὲ σπερματικὸν οὐχ ὅμοιον· ἀλλὰ τὰ γε τοιαῦτα πάντα οἶον ἄκορνα λευκάκανθα χάλκειος κνήκος πολυάκανθος ἀτρακτυλὶς ὀνόπυξος ἰξίνη χαμαιλέων· πλὴν οὗτος οὐ φυλλάκανθος, σκόλυμος δέ, ὃς καὶ λειμωνία, φυλλάκανθος· καὶ τᾶλλα, πλείω γάρ ἐστι. διαφέρουσι δ' ἀλλήλων πρὸς τοῖς εἰρημένοις τῷ τὰ μὲν πολυκαυλα εἶναι καὶ ἀποφύσεις ἔχειν, ὥσπερ ὁ ἄκανος, τὰ δὲ μονόκαυλα καὶ μὴ ἔχειν, ὥσπερ ὁ κνήκος, ἔνια δ' ἄνωθεν ἔχειν ἐξ ἄκρου, καθάπερ τὸ ῥύτρος. καὶ τὰ μὲν εὐθύς τοῖς ἡρωτοῖς ὑετοῖς βλαστάνειν τὰ δ' ὕστερον, ἔνια δὲ καὶ τοῦ θέρου, ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ τετράλιξ ὑπὸ τινων καλουμένη καὶ ἡ ἰξίνη· καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνθῶν ὁμοίως· ὀψιανθὴς γὰρ ὁ σκόλυμος καὶ ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον.

<sup>1</sup> ἀκανῶδες mBas.; ἀκανθῶδες Ald. cf. 1. 13. 3, where ἀκανῶδες is restored by W.'s certain conj.

<sup>2</sup> ἀκανῶδες conj. Sch.; ἀκανθῶδες Ald.H.; *acanaceum* G.

<sup>3</sup> ἄκανος ἢ ἀκανῶδες Ald.; ἄκανθος ἢ ἀκανθῶδες mBas. v. *supra*.

<sup>4</sup> σόγκος conj. Sch.; κνήκος Ald. The correction seems necessary in view of 6. 4. 8.

<sup>5</sup> ἄκορνα conj. Sch.; ἄκαρνα Ald. cf. Plin. l.c.

<sup>6</sup> ὃς καὶ λειμωνία I conj.; ἢ καὶ λειμωνία conj. Scal. from

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. IV. 3-4

are thistle-like,<sup>1</sup> by which <sup>2</sup> I mean that the swollen part, that part which contains the flower, or, it may be, the fruit, is in all cases a thistle-head,<sup>3</sup> or has that appearance. However there are differences in the 'head' itself, in size shape colour number of spines and in other respects. For, apart from quite a few plants, such as soap-wort sow-thistle and possibly some others, nearly all the rest have this character (even sow-thistle <sup>4</sup> has a spinous character, but its seed-process is different). The list includes all the following: *akorna*<sup>5</sup> milk-thistle *khalkeios* safflower *polyakanthos* distaff-thistle *onopyxos* *ixine* chamaeleon (the last-named, however, has not spinous leaves, though golden thistle, which is also called 'meadow-thistle,' <sup>6</sup> has<sup>7</sup>), and so on, for there are many more. These differ from one another not only in the aforesaid ways, but in that some of them have many stalks and side-growths, like the pine-thistle, while some have a single stalk and no side-growths, like the safflower, and some again have out-growths above from the top of the plant, like the globe-thistle.<sup>8</sup> Again some grow directly the first rains come, others at a later time, some again in summer, as the plant which some call yellow star-thistle, and *ixine*.<sup>9</sup> So too <sup>10</sup> the flowering-time differs: golden thistle blooms late <sup>11</sup> and is in bloom for a long time.

Plin. 22. 86; ἡλυλειμωνία UM<sub>1</sub>; ἡλυλειμωνία M<sub>2</sub>Ald. καὶ λειμωνία conj. W. But λειμωνία is not mentioned again in the following description, which is against its being a distinct plant from σκόλυμος.

<sup>7</sup> φυλλάκανθος I conj.; φυλλάκανθα MSS.

<sup>8</sup> ῥύττος: *rhutrum* G; but Plin. l.c. has *eryngen*.

<sup>9</sup> Plin. 22. 23. <sup>10</sup> καὶ ἐπὶ conj. Sch.; καὶ ἡ ἐπὶ Ald.H.

<sup>11</sup> ὁψιανθής conj. Bod. from Plin. l.c. *floret sero et diu*; εὐανθής Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 5 Διαφοραὶ δὲ τῶν μὲν ἀκάνων οὐκ εἰσὶ, τῆς κνήκου δ' εἰσὶν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ ἀγρία ἡ δ' ἡμερος. τῆς δ' ἀγρίας δύο εἶδη, τὸ μὲν προσεμφερὲς σφόδρα τῷ ἡμέρῳ πλὴν εὐθυκαυλότερον, δι' ὃ καὶ πηνίοις ἔνιαι τῶν ἀρχαίων ἐχρῶντο γυναικῶν. καρπὸν δὲ ἔχει μέλανα καὶ μέγαν καὶ πικρόν. ἡ δ' ἑτέρα δασεῖα καὶ τοὺς καυλοὺς ἔχει σογκώδεις, ὥστε τρόπον τινὰ ἐπιγειόκαυλος γίνεται· διὰ γὰρ μαλακότητα τῶν καυλῶν κατακλίνεται πρὸς τὰς ἀρούρας· καρπὸν δ' ἔχει μικρὸν πώγωνος· σπερματώδεις πᾶσαι, πλὴν μειζόσι καὶ πυκνοτέροις αἱ ἄγριαι. ἴδιον δὲ ἔχει πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα ἄγρια· τὰ μὲν γὰρ σκληρότερα καὶ ἀκανθωδέστερα τῶν ἡμέρων, αὕτη δὲ μαλακωτέρα καὶ λειοτέρα.
- 6 Ἡ δ' ἄκορνα προσεμφερῆς ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν κατὰ τὴν πρόσοψιν τῇ κνήκῳ τῇ ἡμέρῳ, χρώμα δ' ἐπίξανθον ἔχει καὶ χυλὸν λιπαρόν. ἀτρακτυλὶς δὲ τις καλεῖται καὶ λευκοτέρα τούτων· ἴδιον δὲ ἔχει τὸ περὶ τὸ φύλλον, ὅτι ἀφαιρούμενον καὶ τῇ σαρκὶ προσφερόμενον αἵματώδη ποιεῖ τὸν χυλόν, δι' ὃ καὶ φόνον ἔνιοι καλοῦσι τὴν ἄκανθαν ταύτην· ἔχει δὲ καὶ τὴν ὁσμὴν δεινὴν καὶ φονώδη· ὅψε δὲ καὶ τελειοῖ τὸν καρπὸν πρὸς τὸ μετό-

<sup>1</sup> ἀκάνων Ald.; ἀκαρνῶν mBas.; ἀκάνου or ἀκόρνῃς conj. Sch., the plural being awkward.

<sup>2</sup> πηνίοις conj. R. Const.; σπληνέοις U; σπληνίοις MAld; colu G and Plin. l.c.; cf. Diosc. 3. 107.

<sup>3</sup> σογκώδεις: Plin. l.c. seems to have read ὀγκώδεις (*torosiore caule*).

<sup>4</sup> καυλῶν conj. Scal. from Plin. l.c.; φύλλων Ald.

<sup>5</sup> μικρὸν conj. Spr. from Plin. l.c. (*minutum semen*); πικρὸν Ald.

<sup>6</sup> πώγωνος· σπερματώδεις Ald.: so U, but πωγωνος, and M, but

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. iv. 5-6

Pine-thistle<sup>1</sup> has but one kind, but there are different kinds of safflower, the wild and the cultivated. Again of the wild kind there are two forms, one very like the cultivated except that the stalk is straighter; wherefore in ancient times women sometimes used it to make distaffs.<sup>2</sup> It has a fruit which is black large and bitter. The other is leafy, and its stalks are like those of the sow-thistle,<sup>3</sup> so that to some extent it comes to have a prostrate stem; for on account of the softness of the stalks<sup>4</sup> it bends down towards the ground; and it has a small<sup>5</sup> fruit, which is bearded. All the forms produce abundant seed,<sup>6</sup> but it is larger<sup>7</sup> and more crowded in the wild forms. This kind has also a peculiarity as compared with other wild plants; these are usually coarser and more spinous than the cultivated forms, but in this plant the wild form is softer and smoother.

The *akorna* resembles in a general way in appearance the cultivated safflower, but has a yellowish colour and a sticky juice.<sup>8</sup> There is also a plant called distaff-thistle, which is whiter than these. A peculiarity of the leaf of this is that, if it is stripped off and applied to the flesh, the contact makes the juice blood-coloured,<sup>9</sup> wherefore some call this kind of spinous plant 'blood-wort'; also it has an abominable smell, like that of blood; it matures its fruit late,

πωγωνός: G. has *fructum amarum* (see last note) *frequentem barbaeque modo hirsutum gignit: sunt ambo seminosa*. W. conj. πωγωνοσπέρματα δ' εἰσι πάσαι, which is not convincing. I have retained the corrupt text and translate in the light of G.

<sup>1</sup> μέλίζοι: sc. σπέρμασι, but σπερματώδεις cannot be right.

<sup>8</sup> χυλόν add. St.; om. Ald.; *succo pingui* G; *pinguiore succo* Plin. l.c. <sup>9</sup> cf. 9. 1. 1. Plin. 21. 95.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πωρον. τὸ δ' ὅλον ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἅπαντα ἡ ἀκανικὴ φύσις ὀψίκαρπος. ἅπαντα δὲ ταῦτα φύεται καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ σπέρματος καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ρίζης, ὥστε βραχύν τινα γίνεσθαι τὸν ἀνὰ μέσον χρόνον τῆς ἐκφύσεως τε καὶ τῆς τοῦ σπέρματος τελειώσεως.

- 7 Τοῦ σκολύμου δὲ οὐχ ὅτι τοῦτο μόνον ἴδιον, ὅτι τὴν ρίζαν ἐδώδιμον ἔχει καὶ ἐφθὴν καὶ ὠμήν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅτι τότε ἀρίστην ὅταν ἀνθῇ καὶ ὅτι σκληρυνομένη ἀφήσιν ὀπόν. ἴδιον δὲ καὶ τὸ τῆς ἀνθήσεως· ἐπεὶ περὶ τροπᾶς.
- 8 Σαρκώδης δὲ καὶ ἐδώδιμος ἡ τοῦ σόγκου· ἡ δὲ κύησις οὐκ ἀκανώδης ἀλλὰ προμήκης αὐτοῦ· καὶ τοῦτ' ἴδιον μόνον ἔχει τῶν φυλλακάνθων ἀντεστραμμένως ἢ ὁ χαμαιλέων· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἀφυλλ-ἀκανθος ὦν ἀκανίζει. γηράσκον δὲ τὸ ἄνθος ἐκπαπποῦται, καθάπερ τὸ τῆς ἀπάπης καὶ τὸ τῆς μυρίκης καὶ ὅσα παραπλήσια τούτοις. παρακολουθεῖ δὲ μέχρι τοῦ θέρους τὸ μὲν κυοῦν τὸ δὲ ἀνθοῦν τὸ δὲ σπέρμα τίκτον, μικρὰν ἱκμάδα καὶ κέντρον ἔχον· ξηραίνόμενον δὲ τὸ φύλλον διαχεῖται καὶ οὐκέτι κεντεῖ.
- 9 Ἡ ἱξίνη δὲ φύεται μὲν οὐ πολλαχοῦ, ριζόφυλλον δὲ ἐστίν. ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ρίζης μέσης ὁ σπερματικὸς ἄκανος ἐπιπέφυκεν, ὥσπερ μῆλον εὖ

<sup>1</sup> ἀκανικὴ conj. Bod., cf. 6. 4. 4 nn.; ἀκανθικὴ Ald.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Hes. *Op.* 582.

<sup>3</sup> σόγκου conj. C. Hoffmann; ὄγκου Ald.

<sup>4</sup> κύησις : i.e. flower-head. cf. κύημα 6. 4. 3; Plin. 21. 94.

<sup>5</sup> ἀκανώδης conj. Scal.; ἀκανθώδης Ald. cf. 6. 4. 3 nn.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 6. 4. 3. T.'s information seems to be incorrect, as

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. iv. 6-9

towards autumn. Indeed, generally speaking, all plants like the thistle-tribe<sup>1</sup> are late fruiting. All these plants grow both from seed and from the root, so that there is but a short period between the beginning of growth and the maturing of the seed.

Golden thistle has not only this peculiarity, that it has a root which is edible, whether boiled or raw, but the root is best when the plant is in flower, and, as it becomes hard, it produces a juice. The flowering time<sup>2</sup> is also peculiar, about the solstice.

The root of the sow-thistle<sup>3</sup> is also fleshy and edible; but the swollen part<sup>4</sup> is elongated and not thistle-like<sup>5</sup>; and, alone of the spinous-leaved plants, it has this peculiarity, in which it is the reverse of the chamaeleon,<sup>6</sup> (for that plant, though it has not spinous leaves, has a thistle-like flower-head). The flower of the sow-thistle, as it ages, turns into down, as do that of the dandelion<sup>7</sup> the tamarisk<sup>8</sup>, and other plants like these. In its growth<sup>9</sup> there is a succession up to the summer, part forming flowers, part flowering, and part producing seed<sup>10</sup>; this<sup>11</sup> has little moisture in it and has a sharp point. The leaf, as it dries, becomes flaccid and no longer pricks.

*Ixine* does not grow in many places, and it has leaves on the root. From the middle of the root grows the seed-bearing thistle-head, which is like

both of the plants which he calls χαμαιλέον (see Index) have spinous leaves.

<sup>7</sup> ἀράνης conj. Sch., cf. 7. 8. 3; ἀράνης U; δαράνης P; δάφνης Ald.

<sup>8</sup> μυρίκης conj. Sch.; μυρίνης M; μυρρίνης Ald.

<sup>9</sup> cf. Plin. l.c.

<sup>10</sup> σπέρμα τίκτον I conj.; σπέρματος μὲν Ald.H.; σπερμώκουν conj. Sch.

<sup>11</sup> Text perhaps defective.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μάλα ἐπικεκρυμμένον ὑπὸ τῶν φύλλων· οὗτος δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄκρου φέρει τὸ δάκρυον εὖστομον, καὶ τοῦτό ἐστιν ἡ ἀκανθικὴ μαστίχη. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πανταχοῦ σχεδὸν ἐστίν.

- 10 Ἡ δὲ κάκτος καλουμένη περὶ Σικελίαν μόνον, ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι δὲ οὐκ ἐστίν. ἴδιον δὲ παρὰ τὰλλα τὸ φυτόν· ἀφίησι γὰρ εὐθύς ἀπὸ τῆς ρίζης καυλοὺς ἐπιγείους, τὸ δὲ φύλλον ἔχει πλατὺ καὶ ἀκανθῶδες· καλοῦσι δὲ τοὺς καυλοὺς τούτους κάκτους· ἐδώδιμοι δὲ εἰσι περιλεπόμενοι μικρὸν ἐπίπικροι, καὶ θησαυρίζουσιν αὐτοὺς ἐν ἄλμῃ.

- 11 Ἔτερον δὲ καυλὸν ὀρθὸν ἀφίησιν, ὃν καλοῦσι πτέρνικα· γίνεται δὲ καὶ οὗτος ἐδώδιμος πλὴν ἀθησαύριστος. τὸ δὲ περικάρπιον, ἐν ᾧ τὸ σπέρμα, τὴν μὲν μορφήν ἀκανθῶδες, ἀφαιρεθέντων δὲ τῶν παππωδῶν σπερμάτων ἐδώδιμον καὶ τοῦτο καὶ ἐμφερὲς τῷ τοῦ φοίνικος ἐγκεφάλῳ· καλοῦσι δὲ αὐτὸ σκαλίαν. τὰ μὲν οὖν φυλλάκανθα σκεπτέον ἐν τοιαύταις διαφοραῖς.

V. Τὰ δὲ καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἄκανθαν ἔχοντα φύλλον, οἷον τὰ τοιαῦτα φέως ὄνωνις παντάδουσα τρίβολος ἱππόφεως μυάκανθος . . . τε σφόδρα καὶ τὸ φύλλον ἔχει σαρκῶδες· πολυ-

<sup>1</sup> ὑπὸ conj. Sch.; ἐπὶ Ald.; Plin. *l.c.* *malum contextum sua fronde.* <sup>2</sup> cf. 9. 1. 3. <sup>3</sup> cf. Plin. 12. 72.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 21. 97; Athen. 2. 83.

<sup>5</sup> πλατὺ add. Scal. from Athen. *l.c.*, cf. Plin. *l.c.*; om. Ald. H. The 'stems' are the petioles of the leaves.

<sup>6</sup> ἀκανθῶδες conj. Sch.; ἀκανθῶδες Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. IV. 9-V. 1

an apple and well hidden by<sup>1</sup> the leaves; this on its head produces its gum,<sup>2</sup> which is pleasant to the taste, and this is the 'thorn-mastich.'<sup>3</sup> These plants and others like them are found almost everywhere.

<sup>4</sup> But the plant called *kaktos* (cardoon) grows only in Sicily, and not in Hellas. It is a plant quite different from any other; for it sends up straight from the root stems which creep on the ground, and its leaf is broad<sup>5</sup> and spinous: these stems are called *kaktoi*; they are edible, if peeled, and are slightly bitter, and men preserve them in brine.

There is another kind which sends up an erect stem, called the *pternix*. This too is edible, but cannot be preserved. The fruit-vessel, which contains the seed, is in shape like a thistle-head<sup>6</sup>: and when the downy seeds are taken off, this too is edible and resembles the 'brain'<sup>7</sup> of the palm; and it is called *skalias*.<sup>8</sup> Such are the different characteristics in the light of which we may observe the spinous-leaved plants.

V. Examples of plants which have leaves as well as spines are *pheos*<sup>9</sup> rest-harrow star-thistle caltrop 'horse-pheos'<sup>10</sup> (spurge) butcher's broom<sup>11</sup> . . . ,<sup>12</sup> and it has a fleshy leaf: it is much divided and has

<sup>7</sup> i.e. 'cabbage.' cf. 2. 6. 2.

<sup>8</sup> *ascaliam* Plin. l.c.; ἀσκάληρον Athen. l.c. Modern Greek σκάληρα. English 'bottom.' See Index κάκτος (2).

<sup>9</sup> φέως conj. St.; φλέως Ald. cf. 6. 1. 3.

<sup>10</sup> ἱπποφέως conj. Salm., cf. 6. 5. 2; ἱππόφυον Ald. cf. Plin. 21. 91.

<sup>11</sup> Diosc. 2. 125; Plin. 19. 151.

<sup>12</sup> Text defective: the end of one sentence is missing and the beginning of the next, containing the name of a plant. G attaches the following description to φέως. The plants presently described do not correspond to this list.



## THEOPHRASTUS

σχιδές δὲ καὶ πολύρριζον, οὐ μὴν κατὰ βάθους γε τὰς ρίζας ἔχον. βλαστάνει δὲ ἄμα Πλειάδι καὶ τοῖς πρώτοις ἀρότοις καὶ ἀφίησι τότε τὸ φύλλον· οὐ γὰρ ἐστὶν ἐπέτειον ἀλλὰ χρονιώτερον.

- 2 Τὸ δὲ τῆς καππάριος ἴδιον, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, παρὰ ταῦτα· καὶ γὰρ τὸ φύλλον ἐπακανθίζον ἔχει καὶ τὸν καυλόν, οὐχ ὥσπερ ὁ φέως καὶ ἱππόφωος ἀνάκανθα τοῖς φύλλοις· μονόρριζον δὲ καὶ ἐπίγειον καὶ χαμαίκαυλον· βλαστάνει δὲ καὶ ἀνθεῖ τοῦ θέρους καὶ διαμένει τὸ φύλλον χλωρὸν ἄχρι Πλειάδος. χαίρει δὲ ὑφάμμοις καὶ λεπτογείοις χωρίοις· λέγεται δὲ ὡς ἐν τοῖς ἐργασίμοις οὐ θέλει φύεσθαι, καὶ ταῦτα περὶ τὰ ἄσθη καὶ ἐν εὐγείοις τόποις φυομένη καὶ οὐχ ὥσπερ σίλφιον ἐν ὀρεινοῖς· τοῦτο μὲν <οὖν> οὐ πάντως ἀληθές.

- 3 Ὁ δὲ τρίβολος ἴδιον ἔχει, διότι περικαρπι-  
ἀκανθός ἐστι. δύο δ' αὐτοῦ γένη· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔχει φύλλον ἐρεβινθῶδες, ἕτερος δὲ φυλλάκανθος· ἐπίγειοι δὲ ἄμφω καὶ πολλαχῇ σχιζόμενοι· ὀψι-  
βλαστῆς δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ φυλλάκανθος καὶ φύεται περὶ τὰς αὐλὰς. τὸ δὲ σπέρμα τοῦ μὲν πρωΐου σησαμῶδες, τοῦ δὲ ὀψίου στρογγύλον ἐπίμελαν ἐν λοβῷ. καὶ τὰ μὲν οὖν παρὰ τὰ φύλλα καὶ ἄκανθαν ἔχοντα σχεδὸν ἐν τούτοις.

Ἡ δ' ὄνωνις ἐστὶ πτορθάκανθον· ἐπέτειον δὲ τὸ φύλλον ἔχει πηγανῶδες παραπεφυκὸς παρ'

<sup>1</sup> ἀρότοις conj. Bod.; ἀρότροις Ald. cf. 8. 1. 2.

<sup>2</sup> τότε conj. St.; τοῦτο Ald. <sup>3</sup> cf. Pall. 10. 13. 2.

<sup>4</sup> ὁ φέως conj. St.; ὄφως Ald. Bas. Cam. H.; ὁ φλεῶς mBas.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 21. 91.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. v. 1-3

many roots, but is not deep-rooting. It grows at the rising of the Pleiad, the first seed-time,<sup>1</sup> and then <sup>2</sup> puts forth its leaf; for it is not annual, but lives longer than one year.

<sup>3</sup> Caper, as was said, is quite distinct from these; it has a spinous leaf and a spinous stem, whereas *pheos*<sup>4</sup> and 'horse-*pheos*' have no spines on their leaves<sup>5</sup>; it has a single<sup>6</sup> root, is low-growing,<sup>7</sup> and has a creeping stem; it grows and flowers in summer, and the leaf remains green till the rising of the Pleiad. It rejoices in sandy light soils, and it is said that it is unwilling to grow on cultivated land, and that though it grows near towns and in good soil, and not, like silphium, in mountain country. This account however<sup>8</sup> is not altogether accurate.

<sup>9</sup> A peculiarity of caltrop is that it is spinous-fruited.<sup>10</sup> There are two kinds; one has a leaf like that of chick-pea, the other has spinous leaves. Both are low-growing and much divided, but the spinous-leaved form grows later and is found near enclosures. The seed of the early kind is like that of sesame, that of the late kind is round and blackish and enclosed in a pod. These may serve as examples of plants which have spines as well as leaves.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Rest-harrow has spines on the shoots; the leaf, which is annual,<sup>13</sup> is like that of rue, and grows right along the stem, so that the general appearance is

<sup>6</sup> Diosc. 2. 173 gives a different account.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 7. 8. 1.

<sup>8</sup> οὖν add. W. (in comm.) from G.

<sup>9</sup> Plin. 21. 98. <sup>10</sup> cf. 6. 1. 3.

<sup>11</sup> τὰ μὲν οὖν παρὰ τὰ φύλλα conj. Sch. (οὖν add. W.); τὰ μὲν οὖν ὡς περ ἀνάφυλλα Ald. H. <sup>12</sup> Plin. 21. 98.

<sup>13</sup> I have altered the punctuation; πτορθάκανθον, ἐπέτειον δέ- τὸ φ. κτλ. W. after UMP.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὅλον τὸν καυλόν, ὥστε καθάπερ στεφάνου τὴν ὅλην εἶναι μορφήν, διαλαμβανομένων ἐπαλλήλων· κολοβοανθῆς δὲ καὶ ἐλλοβοκαρπος ἀδιαφράκτως· φύεται δ' ἐν τῇ γλίσχρᾳ καὶ γανώδει καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τῇ σπορίμῳ καὶ γεωργουμένη, δι' ἃ καὶ πολέμιον τοῖς γεωργοῖς· καὶ ἔστι δυσώλεθρος· ὅταν γὰρ λάβῃ χώρας βάθος, ὠθεῖται κάτω εὐθύς καὶ καθ' ἕκαστον ἔτος ἀποφύσει ἀφεμένη εἰς τὰ πλάγια πάλιν εἰς τὸ ἕτερον ὠθεῖται κάτω· σπαστέα μὲν οὖν ὅλη· τοῦτο δὲ βραχείσης γίνεται τῆς γῆς καὶ ἀπόλλυται ῥᾶον· ἐὰν δὲ καὶ μικρὸν ἀπολειφθῇ, ἀπὸ τούτου πάλιν βλαστάνει· ἄρχεται δὲ τῆς βλαστήσεως θέρους τελειοῦται δὲ μετοπώρου. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἄγρια τῶν φρυγανικῶν ἐκ τούτων θεωρεῖσθω.

VI. Τὰ δὲ ἡμερα βραχεῖάν τινα ἔχει θεωρίαν, ἅπερ ἐν τοῖς στεφανωματικοῖς ἐστι.

Τὰ δὲ καθ' ὅλου πειρατέον περὶ στεφανωμάτων εἰπεῖν, ὅπως ἅπαν περιληφθῇ τὸ γένος. ἡ γὰρ στεφανωματικὴ φύσις ἰδίαν τινα ἔχει τάξιν, ἐπιμιγνυμένη δὲ τὰ μὲν τοῖς φρυγανικοῖς τὰ δὲ τοῖς ποιώδεσι· δι' ἃ καὶ κεῖνα συμπεριληπτέον ἐπιμιμνησκομένους ὡς ἂν ἡ ὁ καιρός, ἀρξαμένους  
2 πρῶτον ἀπὸ τῶν φρυγανικῶν. διχῇ δὲ ἡ τούτων

<sup>1</sup> Evidently some conventional way of making a wreath.

<sup>2</sup> διαλαμβανομένων ἐπαλλήλων conj. W.; διαλαμβανομένην ὑπ' ἀλλήλων Ald. cf. Plat. Prot. 346 E, where the verb means 'to punctuate.'

<sup>3</sup> κολοβοανθῆς; cf. 8. 3. 3.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. v. 3-vi. 2

that of a garland,<sup>1</sup> the leaves being set at intervals alternately along it<sup>2</sup>; the flower is irregular,<sup>3</sup> and the fruit contained in a pod,<sup>4</sup> which is not divided into compartments.<sup>5</sup> It grows in sticky rich soil and especially in sown and cultivated land; wherefore it is an enemy to husbandmen, and it is hard to kill; for, when it gets hold of a piece of ground, it immediately pushes its roots down deep,<sup>6</sup> and every year it sends up new growths at the sides and the next year<sup>7</sup> it roots these again. Wherefore it has to be dragged up entire<sup>8</sup>; this is done when the ground has been moistened, and then it is easier to destroy. But, if but a small piece is left, it shoots again from this. It begins to grow in summer and completes its growth in autumn. Let these examples serve for a survey of the wild forms of under-shrubs.

*Of cultivated under-shrubs (coronary plants), with which are included those coronary plants which are herbaceous.*

VI. The cultivated kinds need but a brief survey; these<sup>9</sup> come under the class of coronary plants.

Of coronary plants we must endeavour to give a general account, so that the whole class may be included. This group has a somewhat peculiar position, since it overlaps partly the under-shrubs, partly the herbaceous plants; wherefore the latter must also be included and we must mention them as occasion serves, taking first the under-shrubs.

<sup>1</sup> ἑλλοβόκαρπος conj. Sch.; ἑλλοβοάνθης Ald.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 8. 5. 2.

<sup>3</sup> ὡθεῖται κάτω conj. Sch.; ὡθεῖ τὰ κάτω Ald.

<sup>4</sup> εἰς τὸ ἕτερον, sc. ἕτος; τῷ ἐτέρῳ conj. Sch.

<sup>5</sup> σπαστέα μὲν οὖν ὄλη conj. W.; σταθείσα μὲν οὕτως ὄλη Ald.

<sup>6</sup> ἄπερ conj. Sch.; εἴπερ UMald.G.

## THEOPHRASTUS

διαίρεσις ἡ κατὰ τὴν χρείαν. τῶν μὲν γὰρ τὸ  
 ἄνθος μόνον χρήσιμον· καὶ τούτων τὸ μὲν εὖοσμον,  
 ὥσπερ ἶον, τὸ δ' ἄνοσμον, ὥσπερ διόσανθος φλόξ.  
 τῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ κλῶνες καὶ τὰ φύλλα καὶ ὄλως  
 ἡ πᾶσα φύσις εὖοσμος, οἶον ἐρπύλλου ἐλενίου  
 σισυμβρίου τῶν ἄλλων. ἄμφω δὲ φρυγανικά.  
 κάκείνων τῶν ἀνθικῶν πολλῶν ἡ φύσις φρυγα-  
 νώδης, ἡ μὲν ἐπέτειος οὔσα μόνον, ἡ δὲ πολυ-  
 χρονιωτέρα, πλὴν ἰωνίας τῆς μελαίνης· αὕτη  
 γὰρ ἄκλων ὄλως ἀλλὰ προσριζόφυλλος καὶ ἀεί-  
 φυλλος, ὥς δέ τινές φασι καὶ δυναμένη δι' ὅλου  
 φέρειν τὸ ἄνθος, ἐὰν τρόπῳ τινὶ θεραπεύηται.  
 τοῦτο μὲν ἴδιον ἂν ἔχοι.

- 3 Τῶν δὲ ἄλλων μᾶλλον δὲ τῶν πάντων αἱ μὲν  
 ὅλαι μορφαὶ σχεδὸν πᾶσι φανεραί· εἰ δέ τινας  
 ἄλλας ιδιότητας ἔχουσι, ταύτας λεκτέον, οἶον εἰ  
 τὰ μὲν ἀπλᾶ δοκεῖ τοῖς εἶδεσιν εἶναι τὰ δὲ ἔχειν  
 διαφοράς.

Ἀπλᾶ μὲν οὖν τὰ ξυλῶδη, καθάπερ ἔρπυλλος  
 σισύμβριον ἐλένιον· πλὴν εἰ τὰ μὲν ἄγρια τὰ δὲ  
 ἡμερα καὶ <τὰ μὲν> εὖοσμα τὰ δὲ ἀοσμότερα ἐστι·  
 τούτων δὲ καὶ αἱ θεραπείαι καὶ αἱ χῶραι διά-  
 φοροι καὶ οἱ αἆρες. ἔνια δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀνθῶν, οἶον  
 τὸ μέλαν ἶον· οὐ γὰρ ἔχειν δοκεῖ τοῦτο διαφορὰν

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 21. 59.

<sup>2</sup> So Plin. *l.c.*; but Nic. *ap. Athen.* 15. 31 calls this flower fragrant.

<sup>3</sup> πολλῶν conj. W.; πολλὰ UMAld.

<sup>4</sup> οἶον εἰ conj. W.; ὅτι Ald.      <sup>5</sup> οὖν conj. W.; οἶον Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. VI. 2-3

<sup>1</sup> These may be divided into two groups according to their uses. Of some only the flower is serviceable; and of these some are sweet-scented, as gilliflower, some scentless, as carnation<sup>2</sup> and wall-flower. Of others again the branches leaves and in fact the whole growth are sweet-scented, as with tufted thyme calamint bergamot-mint and the rest. Both groups however belong to the under-shrubs. And of the first-mentioned, those valued for their flowers, the growth is in most<sup>3</sup> cases that of under-shrubs, (in some annual merely, in others of longer duration) except in the violet; for this is altogether without branches, its leaves grow close to the root, and it is always in leaf; while, as some say, it is able to bear flowers continuously, if it is tended in a certain way. This may be considered a peculiar characteristic of this plant.

Of the others, or rather of all the group, the general appearance is in each case plain to all; any peculiarities that they may exhibit we must mention, for instance, if<sup>4</sup> some appear to have but a single form, while others have various forms.

Thus<sup>5</sup> those of woody character, as tufted thyme bergamot-mint calamint, have but one form, unless one counts wild and cultivated, scented and scentless plants, as belonging to distinct forms; and again there are with these plants differences of culture of position and of climate. Some also<sup>6</sup> of the group valued for their flowers<sup>7</sup> have each but one form, for instance, the black *ion* (violet); for this does not appear to have different forms

<sup>6</sup> *ἐνία δὲ καὶ* conj. W.; *ἐνιοὶ δὲ* UMAld.

<sup>7</sup> *ἀνθῶν* in the sense of *ἀνθικῶν* § 2, which perhaps should be read here.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- ὥσπερ τὸ λευκόν· ἐμφανὴς γὰρ ἡ τούτων χροιά διαλλάττουσα, καὶ ἔτι δὴ μᾶλλον ἡ τῶν κρίνων, εἶπερ δὴ, καθάπερ φασίν, ἓνια καὶ πορφυρᾶ ἔστι.
- 4 Τῶν δὲ ρόδων πολλαὶ διαφοραὶ πλήθει τε φύλλων καὶ ὀλιγότητι καὶ τραχύτητι καὶ λειότητι καὶ εὐχροίᾳ καὶ εὐοσμίᾳ. τὰ μὲν γὰρ πλεῖστα πεντάφυλλα, τὰ δὲ δωδεκάφυλλα καὶ εἰκοσίφυλλα, τὰ δ' ἔτι πολλῶ πλεῖον ὑπεραίροντα τούτων· ἓνια γὰρ εἶναί φασιν ἃ καὶ καλοῦσιν ἑκατοντάφυλλα· πλεῖστα δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτά ἐστι περὶ Φιλίππους· οὗτοι γὰρ λαμβάνοντες ἐκ τοῦ Παγγαίου φυτεύουσιν· ἐκεῖ γὰρ γίνεται πολλά· σμικρὰ δὲ σφόδρα τὰ ἐντὸς φύλλα· ἡ γὰρ ἑκφυσις αὐτῶν οὕτως ὥστε εἶναι τὰ μὲν ἐκτὸς τὰ δ' ἐντός· οὐκ εὐοσμα δὲ οὐδὲ μεγάλα τοῖς μεγέθεσιν. ἐν δὲ τοῖς μεγά-
- 5 λοις εὐώδη μᾶλλον ὧν τραχὺ τὸ κάτω. τὸ δὲ ὅλον, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ ἡ εὐχροία καὶ ἡ εὐοσμία παρὰ τοὺς τόπους ἐστίν· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ ἐν γῇ τῇ αὐτῇ γινόμενα ποιεῖ τινα παραλλαγὴν εὐοσμίας καὶ ἀοσμίας. εὐοσμότατα δὲ τὰ ἐν Κυρήνῃ, δι' ὃ καὶ τὸ μύρον ἡδιστον. ἀπλῶς δὲ καὶ τῶν Ἴων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθῶν ἄκρατοι μάλιστα ἐκεῖθι

<sup>1</sup> cf. 6. 8. 1 n.; Diosc. 3. 102.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 21. 14-21; Athen. 15. 29.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. of the bark. cf. Plin. 21. 17, *scabritia corticis*.

<sup>4</sup> Sc. in 'double' roses.

<sup>5</sup> i.e. the hip; called ὑμφαλος Arist. *Probl.* 12. 8, where the same statement is made; called μῆλον below, § 6.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. v. 3-5

like the white *ion* (gilliflower) in which the colour evidently varies; as does still more that of the lilies, if it be true, as some say, that there is a crimson kind.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Among roses there are many differences, in the number of petals, in roughness,<sup>3</sup> in beauty of colour, and in sweetness of scent. Most have five petals, but some have twelve or twenty, and some a great many more than these; for there are some, they say, which are even called 'hundred-petalled.' Most of such roses grow near Philippi; for the people of that place get them on Mount Pangaeus, where they are abundant, and plant them. However the inner petals<sup>4</sup> are very small, (the way in which they are produced being such that some are outside, some inside). Some kinds are not fragrant nor of large size. Among those which have large flowers those in which the part<sup>5</sup> below the flower is rough are the more fragrant. In general, as has been said, good colour and scent depend upon locality; for even bushes which are growing in the same<sup>6</sup> soil shew some variation in the presence or absence of a sweet scent. Sweetest-scented of all are the roses of Cyrene, wherefore the perfume made from these is the sweetest. (Indeed it may be said generally that the scents<sup>7</sup> of the gilliflowers<sup>8</sup> also and of the other flowers of that place are the purest, and especially the

<sup>6</sup> τῇ αὐτῇ conj. Sch.; τοιαύτῃ U; τοιαῦτα M.

<sup>7</sup> ἄκρατοι μάλιστα ἐκεῖθι αἱ ὀσμαὶ conj. Sch. after Saracenus on Diosc. 1. 25; Athen. l.c. (ἄκρατοι μάλιστα καὶ θεῖαι αἱ ὀσμαί); ἄκρατοι μάλιστα δ' ἐκείνου αἱ ὀσμαὶ Ald.; ἐκεῖ αἱ ὀσμαὶ (rest uncertain) U. cf. C P. 6 18. 3.

<sup>8</sup> ? violets and gilliflowers; see Index.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- αἱ ὁσμαί, διαφερόντως δὲ τοῦ κρόκου· πλείστον  
 6 γὰρ οὗτος δοκεῖ παραλλάττειν. φύεται μὲν οὖν  
 ἡ ῥοδωνία καὶ ἐκ τοῦ σπέρματος· ἔχει δὲ ὑπὸ τὸ  
 ἄνθος ἐν τῷ μήλῳ κνηκῶδες ἢ ἀκανῶδες, ἔχον δέ  
 τινα χνοῦν ὥστε ἐγγὺς εἶναι τῶν παππωδῶν  
 σπερμάτων· οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ βραδέως παρα-  
 γίνεσθαι κατακόπτοντες, ὡς ἐλέχθη, τὸν καυλὸν  
 φυτεύουσιν. ἐπικαιομένη δὲ καὶ ἐπιτεμνομένη  
 βέλτιον φέρει τὸ ἄνθος· ἐωμένη γὰρ ἐξαύξεται  
 καὶ ἀπολοχμοῦται. δεῖ δὲ καὶ μεταφυτεύειν  
 πολλάκις· καὶ γὰρ οὕτω φασὶ κάλλιον γίνεσθαι  
 τὸ ῥόδον. αἱ δ' ἄγριαι τραχύτεραι καὶ ταῖς  
 ῥάβδοις καὶ τοῖς φύλλοις, ἔτι δὲ ἄνθος ἀχρού-  
 στερον ἔχουσι καὶ ἔλαττον.
- 7 Τὸ δὲ ἱὸν τὸ μέλαν τοῦ λευκοῦ διαφέρει κατὰ  
 τε ἄλλα καὶ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ἰωνίαν, ὅτι πλατύ-  
 φυλλός τε καὶ ἐγγειόφυλλος καὶ σαρκόφυλλός  
 ἐστὶ, πολλὴν ἔχουσα ῥίζαν.
- 8 Τὰ δὲ κρίνα τῇ μὲν χροίᾳ τὴν εἰρημένην ἔχει  
 διαφοράν. μονόκαυλα δὲ ἐστὶν ὡς ἐπὶ πᾶν,  
 δικαυλεῖ δὲ σπανίως· τάχα δὲ τοῦτο χώρας καὶ  
 αἲρος διαφορᾶς. καθ' ἕκαστον δὲ καυλὸν ὅτε μὲν  
 ἐν κρίνον ὅτε δὲ πλείω γίνεται· βλαστάνει γὰρ  
 τὸ ἄκρον· σπανιώτερα δὲ ταῦτα· ῥίζαν δὲ ἔχει  
 πολλὴν σαρκώδη καὶ στρογγύλην· ὁ δὲ καρπὸς

<sup>1</sup> διαφερόντως δὲ τοῦ κρόκου conj. Saracenus from Athen. l.c.; διαφερόντως δὴ τοῦ χρόνου Ald. cf Callim. *Hymn to Apollo* 83, whence it appears that an autumnal crocus (*crocus sativus*) is meant. See below § 10.

<sup>2</sup> ἀκανῶδες conj. Sch. from G, *acanthaceum*; ἀνθῶδες UMald.

<sup>3</sup> παππωδῶν conj. Sch.; πρώτων Ald.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 21. 27.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. vi. 5-8

scent of the saffron-crocus,<sup>1</sup> a plant which seems to vary in this respect more than any other). Roses can be grown from seed, which is to be found below the flower in the 'apple,' and is like that of safflower or pine-thistle,<sup>2</sup> but it has a sort of fluff, so that it is not unlike the seeds which have a pappus.<sup>3</sup> As however the plant comes slowly from seed, they make cuttings of the stem, as has been said, and plant them. If the bush is burnt or cut over, it bears better flowers; for, if left to itself, it grows luxuriantly and makes too much wood. Also it has to be often transplanted; for then, they say, the roses are improved. The wild kinds are rougher both in stem and in leaf, and have also smaller flowers of a duller colour.

<sup>4</sup> The black *ion* (violet) differs from the white *ion* (gilliflower) not only in other respects but in the plant itself, in that in the former the leaves are broad, lie close to the ground, and are fleshy, and there is much root.

<sup>5</sup> *Krina* (lilies) shew the variation in colour which has been already mentioned.<sup>6</sup> The plant has in general a single stem, but occasionally divides into two, which may be due to differences<sup>7</sup> in position and climate. On each stem grows sometimes one flower, but sometimes more; (for it is the top of the stem which produces the flower<sup>8</sup>) but this sort is less common. There is an ample root, which is fleshy and round. If the fruit is taken off, it

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 21. 25. The account of *herbaceous* coronary plants seems to begin here. cf. 6. 6. 10. <sup>2</sup> 6. 6. 3.

<sup>3</sup> διαφορᾶς U; διαφορᾷ W. after Sch.

<sup>4</sup> βλαστάνει. But this word in T. has usually a more general sense. ? 'for in that case the top of the stem branches' (lit. 'makes fresh growth').

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀφαιρούμενος ἐκβλαστάνει καὶ ἀποδίδωσι τὸ κρίνον πλὴν ἑλαττον. ποιεῖ δὲ τινα καὶ δακρυώδη συρροήν, ἣν καὶ φυτεύουσιν, ὥσπερ εἵπομεν.

- 9 Ὁ δὲ νάρκισσος ἢ τὸ λείριον, οἱ μὲν γὰρ τοῦτο οἱ δ' ἐκείνο καλοῦσι, τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ φύλλον ἀσφοδελῶδες ἔχει, πλατύτερον δὲ πολύ, καθάπερ ἡ κρινωνία, τὸν δὲ καυλὸν ἄφυλλον μὲν ποώδη δὲ καὶ ἐξ ἄκρου τὸ ἄνθος, καὶ ἐν ὑμένι τινὶ καθάπερ ἐν ἀγγεῖῳ <καρπὸν> μέγαν εὖ μάλα καὶ μέλανα τῇ χροίᾳ σχήματι δὲ προμήκη. οὗτος δ' ἐκπίπτων ποιεῖ βλάστησιν αὐτόματον· οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ συλλέγοντες πηγνύουσι καὶ τὴν ῥίζαν φυτεύουσιν. ἔχει ῥίζαν σαρκώδη στρογγύλην μεγάλην. ὄψιον δὲ σφόδρα· μετὰ γὰρ Ἀρκτοῦρον ἢ ἄνθησις καὶ περὶ ἰσημερίαν.

- 10 Ὁ δὲ κρίκος ποώδης μὲν τῇ φύσει, καθάπερ καὶ ταῦτα, πλὴν φύλλῳ στενῷ, σχεδὸν γὰρ ὥσπερ τριχόφυλλον ἐστίν· ὄψιανθὲς δὲ σφόδρα καὶ ὄψιβλαστὲς ἢ πρωϊανθές, ὅποτέρως τις λαμβάνει τὴν ὥραν· <μετὰ> Πλειάδα γὰρ ἀνθεῖ καὶ ὀλίγας ἡμέρας· εὐθὺς δ' ἅμα τῷ φύλλῳ καὶ τὸ ἄνθος ὠθεῖ· δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ πρότερον· ῥίζα δὲ πολλή καὶ σαρκώδης, καὶ τὸ ὅλον εὖζων· φιλεῖ δὲ καὶ πατεῖσθαι καὶ γίνεται καλλίων κατατριβομένης

<sup>1</sup> cf. 2. 2. 1 n., 9. 14; C. P. 1. 4. 4-6. Plin. 21. 26 describes a method of artificially producing crimson lilies from the bulbils of a white lily. cf. Geop. 11. 20.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 6. 8. 1 and 3. See Index.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 7. 13. 1.

<sup>4</sup> ποώδη: cf. 4. 10. 3.

germinates and produces a fresh plant, but of smaller size; the plant also produces a sort of tear-like exudation, which men also plant, as we have said.<sup>1</sup>

The narcissus<sup>2</sup> or *leirion* (for some call it by the one name, some by the other) has its ground-leaves like those of the asphodel,<sup>3</sup> but much broader, like those of the *krinon* (lily); its stem is leafless and grass-green<sup>4</sup> and bears the flower at the top; the fruit<sup>5</sup> is in a kind of membrane-like vessel, and is very large, black in colour, and oblong in shape. This as it falls germinates of its own accord; however men collect and set<sup>6</sup> the seed, and also plant the root, which is fleshy round and large. The plant blooms very late,<sup>7</sup> after the setting of Arcturus about the equinox.

<sup>8</sup> The saffron-crocus is herbaceous in character, like the above-mentioned plants,<sup>9</sup> but has a narrow leaf; indeed the leaves are, as it were, hair-like; it blooms very late, and grows either late or early, according as one looks at the season<sup>10</sup>; for it blooms after<sup>11</sup> the rising of the Pleiad and only for a few days. It pushes up the flower at once with the leaf, or even seems to do so earlier. The root<sup>12</sup> is large and fleshy, and the whole plant vigorous; it loves even to be trodden on and grows fairer when the root is crushed into the ground by the

<sup>5</sup> καρπὸν omitted in MSS.; add. Dalec. from Diosc. 4. 158.

<sup>6</sup> πηγνύουσι: cf. 7. 4. 3 n.

<sup>7</sup> cf. C.P. 1. 10. 5; Plin. l.c. (a much confused passage).

<sup>8</sup> Plin. 21. 31-34.

<sup>9</sup> Sc. κρίνον and νάρκισσος; cf. 6. 6. 8 n.

<sup>10</sup> i.e. whether at the end of one season or the beginning of the next. cf. C.P. 1. 10. 5. λαμβάνοι U; λαμβάνει Ald.

<sup>11</sup> μετὰ add. W.

<sup>12</sup> cf. 7. 9. 4.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πάτω τῆς ρίζης· δι' ὃ καὶ παρὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς καὶ ἐν τοῖς κροτητοῖς κάλλιστος. ἡ δὲ φυτεία ἀπὸ ρίζης.

- 11 Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν οὕτω γεννᾶται. τὰ δ' ἄλλα ἄνθη τὰ προειρημένα πάντα σπείρεται, οἷον ἰωνία διόσανθος ἵφυον φλόξ ἡμεροκαλλές· καὶ γὰρ αὐτὰ καὶ αἱ ρίζαι ξυλῶδεις· σπείρεται δὲ καὶ ἡ οἰνάνθη· καὶ γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο ἀνθῶδες. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἀνθικὰ σχεδὸν ἐν τούτοις καὶ τοῖς ὁμοίοις ληπτέον.

- VII. Τὰ δὲ ἕτερα πάντα μὲν ἀνθεῖ καὶ σπερμοφορεῖ, δοκεῖ δὲ οὐ πάντα διὰ τὸ μὴ φανερὸν εἶναί τινων τὸν καρπὸν· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ ἄνθος ἐνίων ἀμαυρόν· ἀλλ' ὅτι βραδέως καὶ χαλεπωτέρως παραγίνεται, τῇ φυτεία χρώνται μᾶλλον,  
2 ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη καὶ κατ' ἀρχάς. καίτοι διατείνονται τινες ὥς οὐκ ἐχόντων καρπὸν· οἳ τε πεπειρᾶσθαι φάσκοντες καὶ τούτων εἰσίν, αὐτοὶ γὰρ ξηρᾶναι πολλάκις καὶ ἀποτρίψαι καὶ σπεῖραι, καὶ οὐδεπώποτε βλαστεῖν οὔτε ἔρπυλλον οὔτε ἐλένιον οὔτε σισύμβριον οὔτε μίνθαν· πεπειρᾶσθαι γὰρ καὶ ταύτης. ἀλλ' ὅμως ἐκεῖνο ἀληθέστερον, ἥ τε τῶν ἀγρίων φύσις ἐπιμαρτυρεῖ· καὶ γὰρ ἔρπυλλός ἐστιν ἄγριος, ὃν κομίζοντες ἐκ τῶν ὀρώων φυτεύουσι καὶ ἐν Σικυῶνι καὶ Ἀθήνησιν ἐκ τοῦ Ἰμμηττοῦ· παρ' ἄλλοις δὲ ὅλως ὄρη πλήρη καὶ λόφοι, καθάπερ ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ· καὶ σισύμβριον

<sup>1</sup> πάτω conj. Turneb. and others; κάτω Ald.

<sup>2</sup> κροτητοῖς; Plin. l.c. *iuxta semitas ac fontes*. Did he read κρουνοῖς?

<sup>3</sup> ἀνθικὰ conj. Scal.; ἀκανθικὰ Ald. cf. 6. 6. 2.

<sup>4</sup> ἀλλ' ὅτι conj. W. from G; ἄλλα δὲ UMPAld.

foot<sup>1</sup>: wherefore it is fairest along the roads and in well-worn places.<sup>2</sup> It is propagated from the root.

These are the ways then in which the above plants are grown. All the above-mentioned flowers are grown from seed, as gilliflower carnation spike-lavender wall-flower martagon-lily; these plants themselves, as well as their roots, are woody. Drop-wort is also grown from seed; for that too is a plant grown for its flower. These and other plants like them may serve as examples of plants grown for their flowers.<sup>3</sup>

VII. All the others flower and bear seed, though they do not all appear to do so, since in some cases the fruit is not obvious. Indeed in some the flower too is inconspicuous, but, because<sup>4</sup> these grow slowly and with some difficulty, men propagate them rather by off-shoots, as was said at the beginning. However some contend that they have no fruit: and there are men who have actually tried with the following plants<sup>5</sup>; they have, they say, themselves often dried and rubbed out and sown the apparent fruit of thyme calamint bergamot-mint and green mint (for even that they have tried) and there was no germination from such sowing. However, the account given above is the truer, and the character of the wild forms testifies to this; for there is also a wild thyme (Attic thyme<sup>6</sup>), which they bring from the mountains and plant at Sicyon, or from Hymettus and plant at Athens; and in other districts the mountains and hills<sup>7</sup> are quite covered with it, for instance in Thrace. There is also a

<sup>5</sup> οἱ τε . . . εἰσὶν transposed by Sch.; in MSS. after ἀληθέστερον.

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 19. 172; Athen. 15. 28.

<sup>7</sup> λόφοι conj. W.; τόποι Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

δὲ καὶ τὰλλα δριμυτέραν ἔχοντα τὴν ὁσμὴν· ἔρπυλλος δ' ἐνίοτε καὶ παντελῶς θυμώδης· ἂ δὴλον ὅτι ταύτην τὴν γένεσιν λαμβάνει.

Ἀβρότονον δὲ μᾶλλον ἀπὸ σπέρματος βλαστάνει ἢ ἀπὸ ρίζης καὶ παρασπάδος· χαλεπῶς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ σπέρματος· προμοσχευόμενον <δὲ> ἐν ὀστράκοις, ὥσπερ οἱ Ἀδώνιδος κήποι, τοῦ θέρους· δύσριγον γὰρ σφόδρα καὶ ὅλως ἐπίκηρον καὶ ὅποι ὁ ἥλιος σφόδρα λάμπει· ἐμβιῶσαν δὲ καὶ αὐξηθὲν μέγα καὶ ἰσχυρὸν καὶ δενδρῶδες ὥσπερ τὸ πήγα-  
νον, πλὴν ξυλωδέστερον πολὺ τοῦτο καὶ ξηρότερον καὶ αὐχμωδέστερον.

Ὁ δὲ ἀμάρακος ἀμφοτέρως φύεται, καὶ ἀπὸ παρασπάδος καὶ ἀπὸ σπέρματος· πολὺσπερμον δέ, καὶ τὸ σπέρμα εὖοσμον ὁσμῇ μαλακωτέρα· δύναται δὲ καὶ μεταφυτεῦσθαι. πολὺσπερμον δὲ καὶ τὸ ἀβρότονον καὶ οὐκ ἄοσμον. τοῦτο δὲ ρίζας μὲν ἔχει ὀρθὰς καὶ κατὰ βάθους. ἔστι γὰρ ὥσπερ μονόρριζον τῇ παχείᾳ τὰς δ' ἄλλας <ἀφίησιν> ἀπ' αὐτῆς· ὁ δ' ἀμάρακος καὶ ὁ ἔρπυλλος καὶ τὸ σισύμβριον καὶ τὸ ἐλένιον ἐπιπολαίους καὶ πολυσχιδεῖς καὶ ταρρώδεις· ξυλώδεις δὲ πᾶσαι, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ἢ τοῦ ἀβροτόνου καὶ διὰ τὸ μέγεθος καὶ τῇ ξηρότητι.

<sup>1</sup> ἐνίοτε conj. W.; ἐνίοις Ald.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 21. 57. Description of various forms of ἔρπυλλος has perhaps dropped out after this word: cf. § 5, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. from seed. ταύτην conj. W.; πάντα UMAld.; ? πάντα ταύτην.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 21. 34: cf. C.P. 1. 4. 2. ἀβρότονον . . . θέρους, text nearly as given by Ald. and by UM (?)—supported by Plin.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. VII. 2-4

wild bergamot-mint, and wild forms of the other plants mentioned, having a more pungent smell. Thyme is sometimes<sup>1</sup> quite like cultivated thyme.<sup>2</sup> Now it is plain that these wild forms possess this means of reproducing themselves.<sup>3</sup>

Southernwood actually grows more readily from seed than from a root<sup>4</sup> or a piece torn off (though it grows even from seed with difficulty); however it can be propagated by layering in pots in summer-time, like the 'gardens of Adonis'<sup>5</sup>; it is indeed very sensitive<sup>6</sup> to cold and generally delicate even where the sun shines brightly; but, when it is established and has grown, it becomes tall and strong and tree-like, like rue, except that the latter is much more woody drier and less succulent.

<sup>7</sup> Sweet marjoram grows in either way, from pieces torn off or from seed; it produces a quantity of seed, which is fragrant with a delicate scent; it can also be transplanted.<sup>8</sup> Southernwood also produces much seed, which has some scent. This plant has straight roots which run deep; it has, as it were, its single stout root, from which the others spring;<sup>9</sup> while sweet marjoram thyme bergamot-mint and calamint have surface<sup>10</sup> roots which are much divided and matted; in all these plants the roots are woody, but especially in southernwood, because of its size and because it is so dry.

*l.c.* so far as that passage is intelligible—but δὲ before ἐν ὀσπράκοις add. W.; after ἐν ὀσπρ. supply βλαστάνει.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Plat. *Phaedo* 276 B and Thompson's n. Sir W. Thiselton-Dyer in *Companion to Greek Studies*, § 99, p. 65.

<sup>2</sup> cf. *C.P.* 4. 3. 2. <sup>7</sup> Plin. 21. 61.

<sup>8</sup> μεταφυτεύεσθαι conj. Sch. from G; μεταφύεσθαι Ald.

<sup>9</sup> ἀφίησιν add. W.

<sup>10</sup> ἐπιπολάλους conj. Scal.; ἐπὶ πολλοὺς MAld. cf. *C.P.* 2. 16. 5.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- 5 Τοῦ δὲ ἐρπύλλου ἴδιος ἢ αὐξησις ἢ τῶν βλαστῶν· δύναται γὰρ ἐφ' ὅσονοῦν προϊέναι κατὰ μήκος χάρακα λαβὼν ἢ πρὸς αἵμασιαν φυτευθεὶς ἢ κάτω καθιέμενος· εὐαυξέστατος δὲ εἰς φρέαρ. εἶδη δὲ τοῦ μὲν ἡμέρου λαβεῖν οὐκ ἔστι, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη. τοῦ δὲ ἁγρίου φασὶν εἶναι. τοῦ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν τὸν μὲν θυμβρώδη τινὰ καὶ δριμύτατον τὸν δ' εὖοσμον εἶναι καὶ μαλακώτερον.
- 6 Ὡρα δὲ τῆς φυτείας πλείστων μετόπωρον, ἐν ᾧ σπεύδουσιν ὡς πρῶτα φυτεύειν· οὐ μὴν ἄλλ' ἔνια καὶ τοῦ ἡρος φυτεύουσιν. ἅπαντα φιλόσκια καὶ φίλυδρα καὶ φιλόκοπρα μάλιστα· αὐχμὸν δὲ δέχεται καὶ ὅλως ὀλιγοῦδρότατος ὁ ἔρφυλλος. κόπρῳ δὲ χαίρει, μάλιστα δὲ καὶ τῇ τῶν λοφούρων· φασὶ δὲ καὶ μεταφυτεύειν δεῖν πολλάκις· καλλίω γάρ. τὸ δὲ σισύμβριον, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ ἐξίσταται μὴ μεταφυτευόμενον.

VIII. Τῶν δ' ἀνθῶν τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἐκφαίνεται τὸ λευκόιον, ὅπου μὲν ὁ ἀῆρ μαλακώτερος εὐθύς τοῦ χειμῶνος, ὅπου δὲ σκληρότερος ὕστερον, ἐνιαχοῦ τοῦ ἡρος. ἅμα δὲ τῷ ἴφῃ ἢ μικρόν τι ὕστερον καὶ τὸ φλόγινον καλούμενον τὸ ἁγριον·

<sup>1</sup> cf. Plin. 20. 245 and 246 (not from T.); C.P. 2. 18. 2; Diosc. 3. 38; Index ἔρφυλλος.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Plin. 19. 172, which refers however to σισύμβριον; Nic. ap. Athen. 15. 31.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 21. 61.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. VII. 5-VIII. 1

<sup>1</sup>The growth of the shoots of thyme is peculiar. If it has a stake, or is planted against a wall, it can send them out to any length; so also if it is let grow downwards; indeed it is most vigorous when grown into a pit.<sup>2</sup> It is not possible to distinguish different forms of the cultivated kind, as has been said, but they say that of the wild kind (Attic thyme) there is more than one form; for that of the kind which grows on the mountains one form is like savory and very pungent, while the other is fragrant and more delicate.

<sup>3</sup>The season for planting most of these is autumn, and then men hasten to plant them as early as possible; however some are planted also in spring. All of them love shade,<sup>4</sup> water, and especially dung; however thyme is patient of drought and, in general, needs moisture less than the others. These plants especially delight in the dung of beasts of burden; and it is said that they should often be transplanted, for that it improves them, while bergamot-mint, as has been said, actually degenerates<sup>5</sup> if it is not transplanted.

*Of the seasons at which coronary plants flower, and of the length of their life.*

VIII. <sup>6</sup>Of the flowers the<sup>7</sup> first to appear is the gilliflower; where the air is mild, it appears as soon as winter comes, but, where it is more severe, later, sometimes in spring. Along with the gilliflower, or a little later, appears the flower called the wild wall-

<sup>4</sup> φιλόσκια conj. Scal. from G; φιλοσκία UMAld. cf. Plin. l.c.

<sup>5</sup> ἐξίσταται conj. Scal. from G, *degenerat*; ἐξήτασται MAld.

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 21. 64-66; Athen. 15. 26 and 27. ἀνθῶν; ? in the sense of ἀνθικῶν, as in 6. 6. 3.

<sup>7</sup> τὸ conj. Scal.; τοῦ Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- ταῦτα γὰρ ὧν οἱ στεφανήπλοκοι χρώνται πολλὸν ἐκτρέχει τῶν ἄλλων. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ὁ νάρκισσος καὶ τὸ λείριον, <καὶ τῶν ἀγρίων ἀνεμώνης γένος τὸ καλούμενον ὄρειον,> καὶ τὸ τοῦ βολβοῦ κώδουν· ἐμπλέκουσι γὰρ ἔνιοι καὶ τοῦτο εἰς τοὺς στεφάνους. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἡ οἰνάνθη καὶ τὸ μέλαν ἶον καὶ τῶν ἀγρίων ὃ τε ἐλειόχρυσός καὶ τῆς ἀνεμώνης ἡ λειμωνία καλούμενη καὶ τὸ ξίφιον καὶ ὑάκινθος καὶ σχεδὸν  
<sup>2</sup> ὅσοις ἄλλοις χρώνται τῶν ὀρείων. τὸ δὲ ῥόδον ὑστερεῖ τούτων καὶ τελευταῖον μὲν φαίνεται, πρῶτον δ' ἀπολείπει τῶν ἑαρινῶν· ὀλιγοχρονία γὰρ ἡ ἄνθησις. ὀλιγοχρόνια δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀγρίων τὰ λοιπὰ πλὴν τῆς ὑακίνθου καὶ τῆς ἀγρίας καὶ τῆς σπαρτῆς· αὕτη δὲ διαμένει καὶ τὸ λευκὸν ἶον καὶ ἔτι πλείω τὸ φλόγινον· τὸ δὲ δὴ μέλαν ἶον, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, δι' ἐνιαυτοῦ θεραπείας τυγχάνον. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἡ οἰνάνθη, καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο ἀνθικὸν μὲν ποῶδες δὲ τὴν φύσιν, εἴαν τις ἀποκνίξῃ καὶ ἀφαιρῇ τὸ ἄνθος καὶ μὴ ἔᾶ σπερματοῦσθαι καὶ ἔτι τόπον εὖειλον ἔχῃ· τὸ δὲ ἄνθος βοτρυνῶδες καὶ λευκὸν καθάπερ τῶν ἀγρίων . . . ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ὥσπερ ἑαρινὰ φαίνεται.
- <sup>3</sup> Τὰ δὲ θερινὰ μᾶλλον ἢ τε λυχνὶς καὶ τὸ διόσανθος καὶ τὸ κρίνον καὶ τὸ ἴφυνον καὶ ὁ

<sup>1</sup> Evidently both distinct from the νάρκισσος ἢ λείριον of 6. 6. 9; 6. 8 3. See Index.

<sup>2</sup> καὶ τῶν . . . ὄρειον ins. Sch. from Athen. l.c. with alteration of ὄρειων to ἀγρίων. cf. Plin. l.c.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. the flower of muscari, mentioned in this way because elsewhere (e.g. 7. 12. 1) the edible root is in question, which was properly called βολβός.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 9. 19. 3.

<sup>5</sup> See Index.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. VIII. 1-3

flower. These, of all the flowers that the garland-makers use, far outrun the others. After these come pheasant's eye<sup>1</sup> and polyanthus<sup>1</sup> narcissus (and, among wild plants, the kind of anemone which is called the 'mountain anemone')<sup>2</sup> and the 'head'<sup>3</sup> of pursuetassels; for this too some interweave in their garlands. After these come dropwort violet, and of wild plants, gold-flower,<sup>4</sup> the meadow kind of anemone corn-flag *hyakinthos* (squill), and pretty well all the mountain flowers that are used. The rose comes last of these, and is the first of the spring flowers to come to an end, as it is the first to appear, for its time of blooming is short. So too is that of the rest of the wild plants mentioned, except *hyakinthos*,<sup>5</sup> the wild kind (squill), and also the cultivated (larkspur); this lasts on, and so does the gilliflower, and for a still longer time the wallflower, while the violet, as has been said,<sup>6</sup> blooms throughout the year, if it receives tendance. So too dropwort<sup>7</sup> (for that too is one of the plants valued for their flowers, though it is herbaceous<sup>8</sup> in character) if one pinches off and removes the flower instead of letting it go to seed, and if, further,<sup>9</sup> it has a sunny position. The flower is clustering and white, like that of the wild . . . .<sup>10</sup> These then are, we may say, the plants of spring.

<sup>11</sup> The following belong rather to summer: rose-campion. carnation *krinon*<sup>12</sup> (lily) spike-lavender and

<sup>6</sup> 6. 6. 2; cf. *C.P.* 1. 13. 12.      <sup>7</sup> cf. 6. 6. 11.

<sup>8</sup> *πωδες*: sense not obvious; *εὐωδες* conj. Dalec. cf. *C.P.* 1. 13. 12.      <sup>9</sup> *ἔτι* conj. W.; *ἔτι* UMAld.

<sup>10</sup> *Ut labruscae* G, perhaps a guess: see *οἰάνθη* in Index.

<sup>11</sup> Plin. 21, 67 and 68.

<sup>12</sup> *κρίνον* Sch. from Athen. l.c.; so also Plin, l.c.; *κρίπινθον* Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀμάρακος ὁ Φρύγιος· ἔτι δὲ ὁ πόθος καλούμενος· οὗτος δ' ἐστὶ διττός, ὁ μὲν ἔχων τὸ ἄνθος ὅμοιον τῇ ὑακίνθῳ, ὁ δὲ ἕτερος ἄχρους λευκός, ᾧ χρῶνται περὶ τοὺς τάφους· καὶ χρονιώτερος οὗτος. ἀνθεὶ δὲ καὶ ἡ ἱρις τοῦ θέρους καὶ τὸ στρούθιον καλούμενον· τῇ μὲν ὄψει καλὸν τὸ ἄνθος ἄοσμον δέ. μετοπώρου δὲ τὸ λείριον τὸ ἕτερον καὶ ὁ κρόκος, ὃ τε ὀρεινὸς ἄοσμος καὶ ὁ ἡμερος· εὐθύς γὰρ ἀνθοῦσι τοῖς πρώτοις ὕδασι. χρῶνται δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀγρίων τῷ τῆς ὀξυακάνθου καρπῷ καὶ τῷ ἀνθει τῷ τῆς μίλακος.

Καὶ ταῖς μὲν ὥραις οὕτως ἐκάστων ἡ γένεσις. ὥς δὲ ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν οὐδεὶς διαλείπεται χρόνος οὐδ' ἔστιν ἀνανθήs, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ χειμὼν ἔχει καίπερ ἄγονος δοκῶν εἶναι διὰ τὴν κατάψυξιν τῶν μετοπωρινῶν μεταλαμβάνοντων, ἐὰν δὲ δὴ καὶ μαλακὸς ᾖ, πολλῷ μᾶλλον. ἀπλῶς γὰρ πάντ' ἡ τὰ πολλὰ καὶ ἐπεκτείνεται τῆς οἰκείας ὥρας, καὶ ἐὰν ὁ τόπος εὖειλος ᾖ μᾶλλον· δι' ὃ καὶ συνέχεια γίνεται. χρόνοι μὲν οὖν οὗτοι καὶ ὥραι κατὰ τὰς γενέσεις.

Βίος δὲ ἰωνίας μὲν τῆς λευκῆς ἔτη μάλιστα τρία· γηρασκουσα δὲ ἐλαττοῦται καὶ ἴα λευκότερα φέρει. ῥοδωνίας δὲ πέντε τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἀκμὴν μὴ ἐπικαομένης· χειρῳ δὲ καὶ ταύτης τὰ ῥόδα γηρασκούσης. πρὸς εὐοσμίαν δὲ καὶ ῥόδων καὶ ἰων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθῶν μέγιστον ὁ τόπος

<sup>1</sup> cf. *C.P.* 1. 4. 1.

<sup>2</sup> cf. the Eng. plant-name 'love-in-absence'; see πόθος in Index.

<sup>3</sup> λευκός. ἐκλευκος, 'whitish,' *Athen. l.c.*

<sup>4</sup> Evidently the νάρκισσος ἢ λείριον of 6. 6. 9; cf. 6. 8. 1 n.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. VIII. 3-5

the Phrygian sweet marjoram<sup>1</sup>; also the plant called 'regret,'<sup>2</sup> of which there are two kinds, one with a flower like that of larkspur, the other not coloured but white,<sup>3</sup> which is used at funerals; and this one lasts longer. The iris also blooms in summer, and the plant called soap-wort, which has a beautiful flower but is scentless. In autumn bloom the other kind of narcissus,<sup>4</sup> the crocus, both the scentless mountain form and the cultivated one (saffron-crocus); for these bloom directly the first rains come. The fruit<sup>5</sup> of the cotoneaster and the flower of the smilax, both of them wild plants, are also used in garlands.

Such are the seasons at which each appears; and, to speak generally, there is no interval of time nor flowerless period, but even winter produces flowers, for all that it seems to be unproductive by reason of the cold, since the autumn flowers continue into winter, and to a much greater extent if the season be mild. For all things,<sup>6</sup> one may say, or at least most of them, extend beyond their proper season, and all the more if the place be sunny; so that there is a continuous succession. These then are the periods and seasons at which the various flowers are produced.

<sup>7</sup> The life of the gilliflower is at most three years; as it ages it degenerates and produces paler flowers.<sup>8</sup> A rose-bush lives five years, after which its prime<sup>9</sup> is past, unless it is pruned by burning<sup>10</sup>; with this plant too the flowers become inferior as it ages. Position and a suitable climate contribute most to

<sup>1</sup> καρπῶ: Plin. l.c. apparently read ἄνθει.

<sup>2</sup> πάντ' ἢ conj. St.; πάντη Ald. H.

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 21. 69.

<sup>8</sup> ἴα conj. St.; ἀεὶ Ald.

<sup>9</sup> ἀκμήν conj. Scal.; ἀκτὴν Ald.

<sup>10</sup> cf. G. 6. 6.

## THEOPHRASTUS

συμβάλλεται καὶ ὁ ἀήρ πρὸς ἕκαστον οἰκεῖος· ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ γὰρ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα πάντ' ἄσσμα καὶ ἄνθη καὶ ἀρώματα, αἱ δὲ μυρρίναι θαυμασταὶ τῇ εὐοσμίᾳ. προτερεῖν δέ φασι τῶν ἐνταῦθα καὶ ῥόδα καὶ ἴα καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἄνθη καὶ διμήνῳ, καὶ διαμένειν πλείω τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν ἢ οὐκ ἐλάττω χρόνον ταῦτα.

- 6 Δοκεῖ δὲ πολὺ πρὸς εὐοσμίαν διαφέρειν, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ ὁ ἐνιαυτὸς τοῖος ἢ τοῖος γενόμενος, οὐ μόνον ἐπομβρίαις καὶ αὐχμοῖς ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ κατὰ καιρὸν γίνεσθαι καὶ ὕδατα καὶ πνεύματα καὶ ἀπλῶς τὰς τοῦ ἀέρος μεταβολάς. τὰ δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν καὶ ῥόδα καὶ ἴα καὶ τὰ ἄλλα <καλῶς μὲν ἀνθεῖν> τῇ δὲ ὁσμῇ πολλὰ χεῖρω γίνεσθαι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν στεφανω-  
ματικῶν καὶ ἀπλῶς τῶν φρυγανικῶν σχεδὸν ἐν τούτοις καὶ τοῖς ὁμοίοις ἐστὶν ἡ ἱστορία.

---

<sup>1</sup> ?violets and gilliflowers ; so also below.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. *l.c.*; cf. *C.P.* 6. 18. 3.

<sup>3</sup> ἄνθη conj. St. from G ; ἀνανθη Ald. cf. *C.P.* 6. 19. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 15. 37.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VI. VIII. 5-6

the fragrance of roses gilliflowers<sup>1</sup> and other flowers. Thus in Egypt,<sup>2</sup> while all other flowers<sup>3</sup> and sweet herbs are scentless, the myrtles<sup>4</sup> are marvellously fragrant. In that country it is said that the roses gilliflowers and other flowers are as much as two months ahead of those in our country, and also that they<sup>5</sup> last a longer, or at least not a shorter, time than those of our country.

And, as has been said, the particular season according to its character, makes a great difference to the fragrance, not only by reason of rains and droughts, but also according as rain, wind, and in general, the changes of climate occur or do not occur at the fitting moment. Also it appears that in general roses gilliflowers and the rest bloom well on the mountains, but many of them have there an inferior scent.<sup>6</sup> Concerning coronary plants and under-shrubs in general these examples and others like them suffice for our enquiry.

<sup>1</sup> ταῦτα conj. W.; τοῦτου Ald.

<sup>2</sup> ἀνθη τῇ ὁσμῇ πολλῶ Ald.; ἀνθη τῇ δὲ ὁσμῇ πολλὰ UM, whence Sch. and W. conj. that some such words as καλῶς μέν have dropped out and ἀνθεῖν has been altered to ἀνθη. cf. C.P. 6. 20. 1.





## BOOK VII

## Η

I. Ἐπόμενον δὲ τοῖς εἰρημενοῖς περὶ τῶν ποιωδῶν εἰπεῖν· τοῦτο γάρ ἐστι λοιπὸν τῶν ἐξ ἀρχῆς διαιρεθέντων γενῶν, ἐν ᾧ συμπεριλαμβάνονται πῶς τὸ λαχανηρὸν καὶ τὸ σιτῶδες. καὶ πρῶτον περὶ τοῦ λαχανώδους λεκτέον ἀρξαμένους ἀπὸ τῶν ἡμέρων, ἐπεὶ γνώριμα μᾶλλον τυγχάνει τῶν ἀγρίων.

Εἰσὶ δὴ τρεῖς ἄροτοι πάντων τῶν κηπευομένων, ἐν οἷς ἕκαστα σπείρουσι διαιροῦντες ταῖς ὥραις. εἰς μὲν οὖν ὁ χειμερινός, ἄλλος δὲ ὁ θερινός, τρίτος δὲ ὁ μεταξὺ τούτων μεθ' ἡλίου τροπὰς<sup>2</sup> χειμερινάς. καλοῦσι δ' οὕτως οὐ πρὸς τὴν σπορὰν βλέποντες ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὴν γένεσιν καὶ τὴν χρεῖαν ἐκάστου· ἐπεὶ ἥ γε σπορὰ σχεδὸν ἐν τοῖς ἐναντίοις γίνεται. τοῦ χειμερινοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἀρχὴ μετὰ τροπὰς θερινὰς τοῦ Μεταγειτνιώνος μηνός, ἐν ᾧ σπείρουσι ῥάφανον ῥαφανίδα γογγυλίδα καὶ τὰ καλούμενα ἐπίσπορα· ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶ τεύτλιον θριδακίνη εὐζωμον λάπαθον νᾶπυ κορίαννον ἄνηθον κάρδαμον· καλοῦσι δὲ

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. C.P. 3. 20. 7 and 8.

## BOOK VII

### OF HERBACEOUS PLANTS, OTHER THAN CORONARY PLANTS : POT-HERBS AND SIMILAR WILD HERBS.

*Of the times of sowing and of germination of pot-herbs.*

I. Next we have to tell of herbaceous plants : for this class remains of those which we distinguished at the outset, and it includes to some extent the classes of pot-herbs and of cereals. And first we must speak of the class of pot-herbs, beginning with the cultivated kinds, since it happens that these are better known than the wild kinds.

<sup>1</sup> There are three seed-times for all things grown in gardens, at which men sow the various herbs, distinguishing by the season. One is the 'winter' seed-time, another the 'summer,' and the third is that which falls between these, coming after the winter solstice. These terms however are given in regard not to the sowing, but to the growth and use of each kind ; for the actual sowing takes place, one might almost say, at the opposite seasons. Thus, the 'winter' period begins after the summer<sup>2</sup> solstice in the month Metageitnion,<sup>3</sup> in which they sow cabbage radish turnip, and what are called 'secondary crops,' that is to say, beet lettuce rocket monk's rhubarb mustard coriander dill cress ; and

<sup>2</sup> *θερινὰς* conj. Scal. ; *χειμερινὰς* U(?)MP<sub>2</sub>Ald.G (ed. Bas. and Par. but not ed Tarv.).

<sup>3</sup> July. δὲ before M. om. Sch.

## THEOPHRASTUS

και πρῶτον τοῦτον τῶν ἀρότων. τοῦ δὲ δευτερου πάλιν μεθ' ἡλίου τροπὰς τοῦ Γαμηλιῶνος μηνός, ἐν ᾧ σπείρουσι καὶ πηγνύουσι πράσον σέλινον γήθουν ἀδράφαξυν. τοῦ τρίτου δέ, ὃν καλοῦσι θερινόν, τοῦ Μουνυχιῶνος· ἐν τούτῳ δὲ σπείρεται σίκυος κολοκύντη βλίτον ὠκιμον ἀνδράχνη θύμβρον. ποιοῦνται δὲ πλείους ἀρότους τῶν ὁμοίων καθ' ἐκάστην ὥραν, οἷον ῥαφανίδος ὠκίμου τῶν ἄλλων. πᾶσι δὲ σπείρεται τοῖς ἀρότοις τὰ ἐπίσπορα.

- 8 Διαφύεται δ' οὐκ ἐν ἴσοις πάντα χρόνοις, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν θᾶπτον τὰ δὲ βραδύτερον ὅσα δυσφυῆ. τάχιστα μὲν οὖν ὠκιμον καὶ βλίτον καὶ εὐζωμον καὶ τῶν χειμερινῶν ῥαφανίς· τριταῖα γὰρ ὥς εἰπεῖν. θριδακίναί δὲ τεταρταῖαι ἢ πεμπταῖαι. σίκυος δὲ καὶ κολοκύντη περὶ τὰς πέντε ἢ ἕξ, οἱ δὲ φασιν ἐπτά· πρότερον δὲ καὶ θᾶπτον ὁ σίκυος. ἀνδράχνη δ' ἐν πλείοσι τούτων. ἄνηθον δὲ τεταρταῖον. κάρδαμον δὲ καὶ νᾶπυ πεμπταῖα. τεύτλιον δὲ θέρους μὲν ἑκταῖον χειμῶνος δὲ δεκαταῖον. ἀδράφαξυς δὲ ὀγδοαῖα. ῥάφανος δὲ δεκαταῖα. πράσον δὲ καὶ γήθουν οὐκ ἐν ἴσοις, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν ἐννεακαιδεκαταῖον ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ εἰκοσταῖον, γήθουν δὲ δεκαταῖον ἢ δωδεκαταῖον. κορίαννον δὲ δυσφυές· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐθέλει βλαστάνειν τὸ νέον ἐὰν μὴ βρεχθῇ. θύμβρα δὲ καὶ ὀρίγανος ἐν πλείοσιν ἢ τριάκοντα. δυσφυέστατον δὲ πάντων τὸ σέλινον· τεσσαρακοσταῖον γάρ φασιν οἱ τὰ συντομώτερα λέγοντες,

<sup>1</sup> January.

<sup>2</sup> April.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 19. 117.

<sup>4</sup> τῶν χειμερινῶν: cf. 7. 1. 1.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. 1. 2-3

this is also called the 'first' period of cultivation. The second period begins after the winter solstice in the month Gamelion,<sup>1</sup> in which they scatter or plant the seed of leeks celery long onion orach. The third period, which is called the 'summer' period, begins in the month Munychion<sup>2</sup>; in this are sown cucumber gourd blite basil purslane savory. Moreover they make several sowings of the same herb at each season, as of radish basil and the others. And at all the periods are sown the 'secondary crops.'

<sup>8</sup> Not all herbs germinate within the same time, but some are quicker, others slower, namely those which germinate with difficulty. The speediest are basil blite rocket, and of those sown for winter<sup>4</sup> use, radish; for these germinate in about three days. Lettuce takes four or five, cucumber and gourd about five or six, or, as some say, seven; however, cucumber is earlier and quicker than the others. Purslane takes a longer time, dill four days, cress and mustard five. Beet in summer takes six days, in winter ten, orach takes eight, and turnip ten. Leek<sup>5</sup> and long onion do not take the same time, but the former nineteen to twenty days, the latter ten to twelve. Coriander germinates with difficulty; indeed fresh seed will not come up at all unless it is moistened.<sup>6</sup> Savory<sup>7</sup> and marjoram take more than thirty days; but celery germinates with the greatest difficulty of all; for those who make the time comparatively short say forty days, and others fifty, and

<sup>5</sup> *πρασον* conj. Bod.; *πράσιον* P<sub>2</sub>Ald.H.

<sup>6</sup> *βρεχθῆ* conj. Bod. cf. C.P. 4. 3. 1; *ἐλιχθῆ* Ald.; *ἐλιχθῆ* I<sup>2</sup>Bas; so also G.

<sup>7</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 3. 1; Plin. 19. 7.

## THEOPHRASTUS

οἱ δὲ πεντηκοσταῖον, καὶ τοῦτο κατὰ πάντας τοὺς ἀρότους· ἐπισπείρουσι γάρ τινες ἐπὶ πᾶσιν.

- 1 "Ὅλως δὲ ὅσα κατὰ πλείους ὥρας σπείρεται, ταῦτ' οὐδὲν θᾶττον τέλεια γίνεται τοῦ θέρους. καὶ θαυμαστὸν εἰ καὶ μηθὲν ἢ ὥρα συμβάλλεται καὶ ὁ ἀῆρ πρὸς τὸ θᾶττον, ἐὰν δὲ μοχθηρὰ καὶ ψυχρὰ καὶ τῷ ἀέρι περισκεπῆς βραδύτερον· ἐπεὶ καὶ χειμῶνων ἢ εὐδιῶν ἐπιγινομένων τοῖς ἀρότοις ὅτε μὲν βραδύτερον ὅτε δὲ θᾶττον ἢ βλάστησις· διαφέρει δὲ ταῦτα κατὰ τοὺς ἀρότους ἐκάστων· πρωϊαίτατον γὰρ ἐν τοῖς εὐείλοις καὶ εὐκρᾶσιν.

- 2 'Ὡς γὰρ ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἐν πλείοσι δεῖ τὰς αἰτίας ὑπολαβεῖν τῶν τοιούτων, ἔν τε τοῖς σπέρμασιν αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ καὶ τῷ ἀέρι καὶ ταῖς ὥραις αἷς ἕκαστα σπείρουσι καὶ χειμῶνων καὶ εὐδιῶν. ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν σκεπτέον, ἐφ' ὧν τε παραλλάττουσιν οἱ χρόνοι καὶ ἐφ' ὧν οὐ· καὶ γὰρ τὴν ῥαφανίδα φασὶ τινες τριταίαν καὶ θέρους καὶ χειμῶνος, τὸ δὲ τεύτλιον, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, παραλλάττει κατὰ τὰς ὥρας. χρόνοι δ' οὖν οὗτοι τῆς βλαστήσεως εἰσι καὶ λέγονται καθ' ἕκαστον.

- 3 Διαφέρει δὲ πρὸς τὸ θᾶττον καὶ βραδύτερον καὶ ἡ τῶν σπερμάτων παλαιότης. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ νέων παραγίνεται θᾶττον, οἷον πρᾶσον γήθυον

<sup>1</sup> ὥρας Vo. H.; χώρας UM; so also G.

<sup>2</sup> τέλεια conj. W. (comm.); γε πολλὰ MSS.; τὰ πολλὰ Vo. Sch. W. (text); γίνεται conj. Sch. from G; γίνεσθαι Ald.

<sup>3</sup> καὶ τῇ ἀέρι . . . βραδύτερον: grammar doubtful and text perhaps defective: so given in UM; καὶ ὁ ἀῆρ περισκεπῆς

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. 1. 3-6

that too, at whichever period it is sown, for some sow it as a 'secondary crop' at all the periods.

Generally speaking, those herbs which are sown at more than one season<sup>1</sup> do not mature<sup>2</sup> faster in the summer. Howbeit it is strange if the season and the state of the atmosphere do not contribute at all to quicker growth, and if, when there is an unfavourable cold season and the atmosphere is cloudy, these conditions do not tend to make growth slower,<sup>3</sup> seeing that, when stormy or fair weather follows the sowing, germination is slower or quicker accordingly. And there is another thing which makes a difference as to the raising of the various herbs; germination begins earlier in sunny places which have an even temperature.

As a matter of fact, to speak roundly, the causes of such differences must be found in several different circumstances, in the seeds themselves, in the ground, in the state of the atmosphere, and in the season at which each is sown, according as it is stormy or fair. However it is a point for consideration with which herbs the time of sowing makes a difference and with which it makes none; thus it is said that radish germinates on the third day whether it be sown in summer or in winter, while beet, as has been said, behaves differently according to the season. Anyway such are and are said to be the seasons of germination in each case.

<sup>4</sup> Another thing which makes a difference as to the rapidity with which the seeds germinate is their age; for some herbs come up quicker from fresh seed, as

πρὸς τὸ βραδύτερον conj. Sch. (with μοχθ. κ. ψυχρὰ supply ἢ ὥρα ᾗ).

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 19. 118. δὲ conj. Scal.; γὰρ Ald. H.



σικυος κολοκυντη· ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ προβρέχουσι τὸν σίκυον πρὸς τὸ θάττον ἢ ἐν γάλακτι ἢ ἐν ὕδατι. τὰ δ' ἀπὸ παλαιῶν, οἷον σέλινον τεύτλιον κάρδαμον θύμβρα κορίαννον ὀρίγανον· εἶπερ μὴ <φυτεύεται> αὐτὰ ἀπὸ τοῦ νέου, καθάπερ εἵπομεν. ἴδιον δὲ φασιν ἐπὶ τοῦ τευτλίου συμβαίνειν· οὐ γὰρ διαφύεσθαι πᾶν εὐθύς ἀλλ' ὕστερον πολλῶ, τὸ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἐχομένῳ ἔτει καὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, δι' ὃ καὶ ἐκ πολλοῦ σπέρματος ὀλίγον βλαστάνειν.

- 7 "Ἐκαστον δὲ τῶν σπερμάτων, ἐὰν ἀδρυνθέντα ἀποπέσῃ, διαμένει πρὸς τὴν ὥραν τὴν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ οὐ πρότερον ἐκβλαστάνει· καὶ κατὰ λόγον ἐστὶ· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀγρίων ὀρώμεν συμβαῖνον, ἐὰν μὴ φθαρῇ. αἱ δὲ τελειώσεις τῶν καρπῶν ἀπάντων γίνονται τοῦ θέρους, πρότερον δὲ καὶ θάττον ὥς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν τῶν πρότερον σπαρέντων. διαφέρει δὲ καὶ ἡ ὥρα· τὰ γὰρ ἐν ταῖς θερμομερίαις σπαρέντα θάττον ἐκκαυλεῖ καὶ ἐκσπερματοῦται, καθάπερ ῥαφανὶς γογγυλὶς. ἔνια δὲ οὐκ ἐνιαύσια φέρει τὸν καρπὸν ἀλλὰ δίενα, καθάπερ σέλινον πράσον γήθουν, ἃ καὶ διαμένει χρόνον πλείονα καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν ἐπέτεια· τὰ γὰρ πολλὰ τούτων ἅμα τῇ τελειώσει τῶν σπερμάτων ἀναίνεται.

- 8 Πάντα δὲ ὥς εἰπεῖν ὅσα ἐκκαυλεῖ καὶ τελειοῖ τὸν καρπὸν ἀποτελειοῦται κατὰ τὸ σχῆμα τοῦ παραβλαστήσεις ἐκ τῶν καυλῶν ἔχειν ἀκρεμονικάς, πλὴν ὅσα μονόκαυλα, καθάπερ πράσον καὶ γήθουν καὶ κρόμμον καὶ σκόροδον.

Φίλυδρα δὲ καὶ φιλόκοπρα πάντα, μᾶλλον δὲ

<sup>1</sup> φυτεύεται αὐτὰ conj. W.; οὐ τὸ UMAld.

<sup>2</sup> Sc. soaking.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. 1. 6-8

leek long onion cucumber gourd; (some even soak the seed of cucumber first in milk or water, to make it germinate quicker). Some come up quicker from old seed, as celery beet cress savory coriander marjoram (unless indeed they are raised<sup>1</sup> from fresh seed in the manner<sup>2</sup> which we have mentioned). There is, they say, a singular feature about beet<sup>3</sup>; the seed does not all germinate at once, but some of it not for some time, some even in the next or in the third year; wherefore it is said that little comes up from much seed.

Any of the seeds, if they are ripe when they fall, last till their own proper season and do not sprout till then. And in this they are consistent; for we note that the same thing happens with the seed of wild plants, unless it is destroyed. However all mature their fruits in the summer, though sooner and quicker, generally speaking, when they are sown earlier. The season also<sup>4</sup> makes a difference; things sown in the hot season push up their shoots and go to seed sooner, as radish and turnip. Some however bear their fruit not in the same year but in the next, as celery<sup>5</sup> leek long onion, which plants also last a longer time, and are not annual; for most herbs wither with the ripening of their seed.

Generally speaking, all those that push up shoots and mature their fruit reach their perfection of form in having side-shoots branching from the main stem—except those which have but a single stem, as leek long onion onion garlic.

All these herbs are lovers of water and of dung,

<sup>3</sup> cf. *C.P.* 4. 3. 2; *Plin. l.c.*

<sup>4</sup> δὲ conj. W.; γὰρ *Ald.H.*

<sup>5</sup> *Plin. l.c.*

## THEOPHRASTUS

τὰ ἀσθενέστερα καὶ πλείονος ἐπιμελείας δεόμενα, τὰ δὲ καὶ τροφῆς.

II. Φύεται δὲ πάντα ἀπὸ τοῦ σπέρματος, ἔνια δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ παρασπάδος καὶ κλωνῶς καὶ ρίζης. ἀπὸ μὲν παρασπάδος ἢ ῥάφανος· δεῖ γάρ τι καὶ ριζῶδες προσλαβεῖν. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν βλαστῶν πήγανον ὀρίγανος ὠκιμον· ἀποφυτεύουσι γὰρ καὶ τοῦτο ὅταν σπιθαμαῖον ἢ μεῖζον γένηται τεμόντες εἰς τὸ ἥμισυ. ἀπὸ ρίζης δὲ σκόροδον καὶ κρόμμυον καὶ βολβὸς καὶ ἄρον καὶ ἀπλῶς τὰ τοιαῦτα τῶν κεφαλορρίζων. φύεται δὲ καὶ εἴ τινων αἱ ρίζαι διαμένουσιν ἐπὶ πλείονα χρόνον ἐπετειοκαύλων ὄντων. ὅτι δὲ ἀπὸ σπέρματος πάντα βλαστάνει φανερόν· καὶ γὰρ τὸ πήγανον, ὅπερ οὐ φασί τινες, ἀλλὰ βραδέως, δι' ὃ καὶ ἀποφυτεύουσιν.

- 2 "Οσα δὲ ἀπὸ ρίζης φύεται, τούτων ἢ μὲν ρίζα χρόνιος αὐτὰ δὲ ἐπετειόκαυλα, δι' ὃ καὶ παραβλαστάνουσιν αἱ ρίζαι τῶν τοιούτων καὶ γίνονται πλείους οὐ μόνον ἐν τοῖς ἡμέροις καὶ κηπευομένοις ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀγρίοις, ὥσπερ εἵπομεν, οἶον βολβοῖς γηθύοις σκίλλαις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. παραβλαστάνει δ' ἔνια καὶ τῶν μὴ κεφαλορρίζων χρονιωτέρων δέ, οἶον σέλινον καὶ τεύτλιον· ἀφίᾱσι γὰρ ρίζας ἀφ' ὧν φύονται φύλλα καὶ καυλοί.

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 19. 121.

<sup>2</sup> cf. C.P. 1. 4. 2.

<sup>3</sup> δεῖ γάρ τι UP<sub>2</sub>; ἀεὶ γάρ τι Ald.H.G.; Sch. suggests δεῖ for γάρ, missing the sense.

<sup>4</sup> βλαστῶν corresponds to κλωνῶς above.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. 1. 8-II. 2

and especially the weaker ones, which require more attention or in some cases more feeding.

*Of the propagation of pot-herbs, and of differences in their roots.*

II. <sup>1</sup>All these herbs are propagated from seed, and some also by a piece torn off, a shoot, or a piece of root. Cabbage is propagated by a piece torn off,<sup>2</sup> since it is essential<sup>3</sup> in this case to take a piece which has root attached to it. From cuttings<sup>4</sup> are grown rue marjoram basil; for slips of this too men plant when it has grown to the height of a span or more, cutting off half the plant.<sup>5</sup> By root<sup>6</sup> are planted garlic onion purse-tassels cuckoo-pint and in general such bulbous plants. Such propagation is also possible in cases where the roots persist for more than a year, though the shoots last but for a year. And it is plain that all these herbs can be grown from seed; for even rue can (which some deny), though the process is slow, and so cuttings are also taken.

Of those which are propagated by a piece of root the root is long-lived, though the plant itself may be annual; wherefore the roots of such plants make offsets and so increase; and this is true not only of plants cultivated in the garden, but also of wild plants, as we have said, for instance of purse-tassels long onion<sup>7</sup> squill and so forth. Some plants even which are not bulbous<sup>8</sup> but longer-lived make offsets, as celery and beet; for these send out roots from which grow leaves and stems. Long onion and

<sup>2</sup> cf. C.P. 1. 4. 3.

<sup>6</sup> i.e. offsets.

<sup>7</sup> γηθύοις om. some editors, as not being wild.

<sup>8</sup> i.e. and so annual.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- παραβλαστάνει δὲ καὶ γήθιον καὶ πράσον καὶ παραφύει κάτωθεν οἶον βολβώδη τινὰ κεφαλὴν, ἐξ ἧς ἡ βλάστησις γίνεται τῶν φύλλων, αὐανθέντος δὲ τοῦ καυλοῦ καὶ τοῦ σπέρματος ἀφαιρεθέντος· ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ μὴ χρησίμας εἶναι τὰς τούτων κεφαλὰς οὐ συλλέγουσιν εἰς ξηρασίαν, δι'  
 3 ὃ καὶ οὐ φυτεύουσιν. τάχα δὲ ταῦτα καὶ ὁμογενῆ καὶ σύνεγγύς πως τῇ τοῦ κρομύου φύσει, δι' ὃ καὶ οὐ θαυμαστόν. ἀλλ' ὁμοίως [καὶ] ἐπὶ πάντων καὶ ἡμέρων καὶ ἀγρίων, ὅσα χρονιώτερα μὲν ἐστὶν ἐπετειόκαυλα δέ, τούτων καὶ αἱ ῥίζαι ἐπιβλαστάνουσιν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν φρυγανικῶν καὶ τῶν θαμνωδῶν· ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῶν κρομύων καὶ σκορόδων καὶ βολβῶν καὶ ὥσπερ ἀριθμός τις γίνεται τούτων. ἡ δὲ γένεσις, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, τριχῶς ἐστὶν, ἀπὸ σπέρματος μὲν πάντων, ἀπὸ δὲ καυλοῦ καὶ ῥίζης τῶν εἰρημένων.
- 4 Τῶν δὲ καυλῶν κολουσθέντων πάντα μὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν βλαστάνει πλην τῶν ἀποκαύλων, ἐμφανέστατα δ' ὥσπερ καὶ εἰς χρεῖαν ὥκιμον θρίδαξ ῥάφανος. καὶ τῆς μὲν θρίδακος ἡδίους φασὶ τοὺς παλιμβλαστεῖς εἶναι καυλοὺς· τὸν γὰρ πρῶτον ὀπώδη καὶ πικρὸν εἶναι ὡς ἄπεπτον· οἱ δὲ τὸ ἐναντίον ὀπωδεστέρους τούτους ἀλλ' ἔως ἂν ὦσιν ἀπαλοὶ φαίνεσθαι γλυκυτέρους. ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῆς

<sup>1</sup> πράσον conj. St.; πράσιον Ald.H.

<sup>2</sup> διὰ τὸ μὴ conj. W.; μὴ διὰ τὸ UM(?)Ald.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. offset bulbs.

<sup>4</sup> W. omits μὲν (Ald.UM(?)) after συλλέγουσι.

<sup>5</sup> i.e. the plant is increased by seed only and not by offsets.  
 cf. 7. 4. 10; Plin. 19. 103.

<sup>6</sup> ὁμοίως conj. Sch.; ὁμῶς PAld.H. (UM?).

<sup>7</sup> ἐπετειόκαυλα conj. Sch.; ἐπιγειότερα PAld.H.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. II. 2-4

leek<sup>1</sup> also make offsets, sending out a 'head' below, like the bulb of purse-tassels, from which the leaves spring; but this only takes place when the stem has withered and the seed has been removed. But, as<sup>2</sup> the 'heads'<sup>3</sup> of such plants are not useful, they do not collect them<sup>4</sup> for storing dry; wherefore also they do not plant these.<sup>5</sup> It may be that somehow these are akin and closely allied to onion, wherefore what has been said is not surprising. However in all those plants, both wild and cultivated alike,<sup>6</sup> which have an annual stem,<sup>7</sup> but yet live longer than a year, there is an outgrowth of the roots, just as there is in under-shrubs and shrubby plants: while in onions garlic and purse-tassels even a number,<sup>8</sup> as it were, of such roots is formed. In fact,<sup>9</sup> they are reproduced in three ways, as has been said; from seed in all cases and from the stem<sup>10</sup> and root in those specified.

<sup>11</sup> Almost all shoot again if the stem is broken (except those which are stemless), but most obviously basil lettuce cabbage, which are, as it were, broken for a practical reason. Indeed they say that the stems of lettuce which thus grow again are sweeter,<sup>12</sup> for that the original stem has a taste like fig-juice and is bitter, as being not properly ripened. Some however say that the later stems have the taste of fig-juice more than the original one, but that, so long as they are tender, they appear sweeter. Be that as

<sup>8</sup> ἀριθμὸς is clearly corrupt, and has displaced an unusual word for which ὡσπερ apologises.

<sup>9</sup> δὴ conj. Sch.; δὲ Ald.

<sup>10</sup> καυλοῦ is here that part of the plant which is above ground.

<sup>11</sup> Plin. 19. 122

<sup>12</sup> ἡδύους Vo.mBas.H., so too G, Plin. l.c., Athen. 2. 69; ἰδύους UAld. cf. C.P. 2. 15. 6.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ραφάνου τοῦτο ὁμολογούμενον, ὥς εἰ πάλιν βλαστήσειεν ἡδίων ἀφαιρεθέντων γε τῶν φύλλων πρὸ τοῦ διακαυλίσαι.

Διαμένουσι δὲ αἱ ῥίζαι πλειόνων, ἀλλ' αἱ μὲν βλαστάνουσι πάλιν αἱ δὲ οὐ. ῥαφανὶς γοῦν καὶ γογγυλὶς διαμένουσι γῆς ἐπιβληθείσης ἄχρι θέρους καὶ αὐξησιν λαμβάνουσιν, ὅπερ ποιουσί τινες ἐξεπίτηδες τῶν κηπουρῶν· οὐ βλαστάνουσι δὲ οὐδ' ἀφιάσι φύλλον οὐδ' εἴ τις ἀφέλοι τὴν ἐπισεσαγμένην γῆν. ἰδεῖν δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐστί. τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα τῶν λαχάνων μονόρριζα τῇ παχείᾳ κατὰ βάθους ῥίζῃ· καὶ γὰρ ὅσα παραφύει τὰς ἰσοπαχεῖς ταύτας, ὥσπερ σέλινον καὶ τεύτλιον, ἀπὸ τῆς μέσης πως ἢ παράφυσίς ἐστι καὶ οὐκ εὐθύς ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἢ σχίσις· ἐκ δὲ ταύτης τῆς μιᾶς ἀπήρτηνται αἱ ἀποφυάδες αἱ μικραὶ καὶ τῆς ῥαφανίδος καὶ τῆς γογγυλίδος. καὶ αὗται μὲν δὴ πᾶσι φανεραὶ διὰ τὴν χρείαν.

Ἡ δὲ τοῦ τευτλίου μία μὲν μακρὰ καὶ παχεῖα καὶ ὀρθή, καθάπερ ἡ τῶν ῥαφανίδων, ἀποφύσεις δὲ ἔχει παχείας ὅτε μὲν δύο ὅτε δὲ καὶ τρεῖς ὅτε δὲ καὶ μίαν, τὰς δὲ μικρὰς ἐκ τούτων. σαρκώδης δὲ ἡ ῥίζα καὶ τῇ γεύσει γλυκεῖα καὶ ἡδεῖα, δι' ὃ καὶ ὠμὴν ἐσθίουσιν τινες· ὁ δὲ φλοιὸς οὐ παχύς οὐδὲ ἀφαιρετός, ὥσπερ ὁ τῶν ῥαφανίδων, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον οἶος ὁ τῶν ἵπποσελίνων. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἡ τῆς ἀδραφάξου μία μὲν εἰς βάθος ἐκ ταύτης δὲ ἄλλαι.

<sup>1</sup> βλαστήσειεν conj. Sch.; βλαστήσει Ald.

<sup>2</sup> οὐδ' εἴ τις Ald. H.; εἰ μή τις conj. Scal. supported by G.

<sup>3</sup> ἐκ . . . μικραὶ conj. W.; εἰς δὲ ταύτην τὴν μίαν ἢ ἀπ' αὐτῆς

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. II. 4-6

it may, it is admitted that in the case of cabbage the stem is sweeter if it should have grown<sup>1</sup> again after being broken, provided that the leaves are stripped off before the plant runs to stalk.

In most cases the roots persist, but they do not in all cases produce fresh growth. Thus radish and turnip persist till summer, if earth is thrown on them, and they increase in size; and some gardeners do this deliberately; but they do not make fresh growth nor send out leaves, even if one<sup>2</sup> removes the earth heaped over them. And this may also be observed in other plants. However, most pot-herbs have the single stout root which runs deep; for even in those which produce these side-roots of equal stoutness, as celery and beet, the side-growth comes, as it were, from the middle root and it is not separate to start with; but to this single root are attached the small out-growths,<sup>3</sup> both in radish and in turnip. These instances are familiar to all because of the use<sup>4</sup> which is made of these plants.

The beet has a single long stout straight root like that of the radish, and has stout out-growths, sometimes two, sometimes three, sometimes only one, and the small ones are attached to these. The root is fleshy and sweet and pleasant to the taste, wherefore some even eat it raw. The 'bark' is not thick and cannot be detached, like that of the radish, but rather resembles that of alexanders. In like manner the root of orach is single and runs deep, and other roots are attached to it.

τε καὶ τῆς ἀποφυῆδος καὶ μικρὰ Ald.H.; so also M, omitting τε. W.'s restoration of a very corrupt text is at least consistent with what follows in § 6.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. for food.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- 7 Μονορριζότατον δὲ τούτων πάντων τὸ λαπαθον· οὐ γὰρ ἔχει παχείας ἀποφύσεις ἀλλὰ τὰς λεπτάς· βαθυρριζότατον δὲ πάντων, ἔχει γὰρ μείζω τριῶν ἡμιποδίων· τὸ δ' ἄγριον βραχυτέραν, πολύκαυλον δὲ καὶ πολύκλαδον καὶ ἡ ὅλη μορφή τελειωθείσα παραπλησία τῇ τοῦ τευτλίου· πολυχρονιώτερον δὲ καὶ τοῦ ἀγρίου καὶ ὅλως δὲ πάντων τῶν λαχάνων ὥς εἰπεῖν· διαμένει γὰρ ὅποσονοῦν χρόνον ὥς φασιν. ἔχει δὲ σαρκώδη τὴν ῥίζαν καὶ ἔνικμον, δι' ὃ καὶ ἐξαιρεθεῖσα ζῇ πολὺν χρόνον.

Τὸ δ' ὥκιμον μίαν μὲν τὴν παχείαν τὴν καταβάθους τὰς δ' ἄλλας τὰς ἐκ πλαγίου λεπτάς ἐπιεικῶς εὐμήκεις.

Ἔνια δ' οὐκ ἔχει τὴν μίαν τὴν ὀρθήν, οἷον τὸ βλίτον, ἀλλ' εὐθὺ πολλὰς ἐξ ἄκρου καὶ εὐπαχεῖς καὶ μακροτέρας τῆς ἀδραφάξυος.

- 8 Τῶν δὲ ῥιζῶν ξυλωδέσταται πασῶν αἱ τοῦ ὥκιμον, καθάπερ καὶ ὁ καυλός. ἡ γὰρ τοῦ βλίτον καὶ τῆς ἀδραφάξυος καὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἥττον ξυλώδης. εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν πασῶν αἱ μὲν σαρκώδεις αἱ δὲ ξυλώδεις. <σαρκώδεις>, οἷον ἡ τοῦ τευτλίου καὶ τοῦ σελίνου καὶ ἵπποσελίνου καὶ λαπάθου καὶ ῥαφανίδος καὶ γογγυλίδος καὶ πάντων μάλιστα τῶν κεφαλοβαρῶν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀναξηραίνόμεναι σκληρύνονται τελείως. ξυλώδεις δέ,

<sup>1</sup> cf. 1. 6. 6.

<sup>2</sup> τὰς Ald., cf. τὰς δὲ μικρὰς § 6 ; τινὰς conj. W. cf. Plin. 19. 98 (who mistranslates).

<sup>3</sup> cf. 7. 6. 1 ; C. P. 3. 1. 4.

<sup>4</sup> See Index.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. II. 7-8

Monk's rhubarb<sup>1</sup> however has a single root in a truer sense than any of the others, for it has no stout out-growths of root, but only the<sup>2</sup> slender ones; its root also runs deeper than that of the others, being more than a foot and a half long. The wild sort<sup>3</sup> however has a shorter root, and has several stems and branches, and its shape, as a whole, when fully grown resembles that of beet. Cultivated monk's rhubarb moreover is longer lived than the wild form,<sup>4</sup> and, in general, we may say, than any other pot-herb, for, they say, it may live any time. It has a fleshy root,<sup>5</sup> full of moisture, wherefore, if pulled up, it will live some time.

Basil has the single stout root, the one which runs deep, and the others at the sides are slender and fairly long.

Some herbs, as blite, have not the single straight root, but a number of roots which start directly from the top and are of a good stoutness<sup>6</sup> and longer than those of orach.

The roots of basil are woodier than those of any of the other herbs, as also is its stem; for those of blite orach and the like are less woody. In general we may say that the roots of any<sup>7</sup> of these herbs are either woody or fleshy. Examples of fleshy<sup>8</sup> roots are beet celery alexanders monk's rhubarb radish turnip, and especially all 'heavy-headed'<sup>9</sup> kinds, for the roots of these do not wither up altogether even when they are dried. Examples of those with woody roots

<sup>1</sup> ῥίζαν conj. Sch.; σάρκα Ald.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. *l.c.* seems to have read a different word from εὐπαχεῖς, or to have misunderstood it.

<sup>3</sup> πασῶν conj. W.; παρ' ὧν UMP; also Ald. H., omitting αἱ.

<sup>4</sup> σαρκώδεις add. Scal. from G.

<sup>5</sup> i.e. bulbous; cf. 1. 6. 8.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὥσπερ αἱ τοῦ ὠκίμου καὶ βλίτου καὶ ἀδραφάξου καὶ εὐζώμου καὶ ἀνήθου [καὶ λαπάθου] καὶ κοριάννου καὶ ἀπλῶς τῶν νευροκαύλων· ἔχει γὰρ δὴ καὶ τὸ ἀνήθον καὶ τὸ κοριάννον ὄντα μονόρριζα ξυλῶδη τε τὴν ῥίζαν καὶ οὐ μακρὰν οὐδὲ τὰς λεπτὰς ἀποφυάδας ἔχουσιν πολλὰς· πολύκαυλα δὲ ἄμφω καὶ πολύοξα, δι' ὃ καὶ οὐ κατὰ λόγον οὐδενὶ τούτων τὸ ἄνω πρὸς τὸ κάτω.

- 9 Βραχύρριζα δὲ ταῦτά ἐστιν, οἷον θριῖδαξ ἀνδράχνη, τῇ ὀρθῇ καὶ ταῖς εἰς τὰ πλάγια. ἡ δὲ θριῖδαξ, ὥσπερ οὐκ ἔχει τὰς τοιαύτας ἀποφύσεις ἀλλὰ μόνον τὰς λεπτὰς, καὶ μάλιστα δὴ μονόρριζον ὡς εἰπεῖν. ἀπλῶς δὲ πάντα τὰ θερινὰ βραχύρριζα· καὶ γὰρ ὁ σίκυος καὶ ἡ κολοκύντη καὶ ἡ σικύα καὶ διὰ τὴν ὥραν καὶ ἴσως ἔτι μᾶλλον διὰ τὴν φύσιν, ἥπερ συνηκολούθηκε τῇ ὥρᾳ. ἡ δὲ μεταφυτευομένη θριῖδαξ βραχυτέραν ἔχει τὴν ῥίζαν τῆς σπαρέισης· παραβλαστάνει γὰρ ἐκ τῶν πλαγίων μᾶλλον· βραχυτέραν δὲ καὶ ἡ ἀγρία τῆς ἡμέρου, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄνωθεν πολυκαυλοτέρα.

III. Ἀνθεὶ δὲ τῶν μὲν ἄλλων ἕκαστον ἀθρόον, τὸ δὲ ὠκιμον κατὰ μέρος, τὰ κάτω πρῶτον εἶτ' ὅταν παῦτα ἀπανθήσῃ τὰ ἄνω, δι' ὃ καὶ πολυ-

<sup>1</sup> After ἀνήθου Ald. H. have καὶ λαπάθου: bracketed by W after Sch.

<sup>2</sup> ἀποφυάδας conj. Scal.; ἀποφυλλάδας Ald.

<sup>3</sup> ταῦτα conj. Sch.; τὰ τοιαῦτα UM; τοιαῦτα Ald.

<sup>4</sup> Athen. 2. 79. Sch. suggests that the name of a plant has dropped out after ὥσπερ: ? ἡ ἀνδράχνη.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. II. 8-III. I

are basil blite orach rocket dill<sup>1</sup> coriander, and in general, those with fibrous stems; for in dill and coriander, which have a single root, the root is woody and not long, and the slender side-roots<sup>2</sup> from it are not numerous; but both plants have several stems and branches; wherefore in neither of these plants does the part above ground correspond to the part which is below.

The following<sup>3</sup> have short roots: lettuce and purslane, in which both the straight main root and the side ones are short. <sup>4</sup> Lettuce may be said to have no such side-roots, but only the slender ones, and may be called in the strictest sense a plant of a single root. In general all summer herbs have short roots: we may include cucumber gourd and bottle-gourd, both because of the season to which they belong and perhaps still more because of their character, which corresponds to the season. However the transplanted lettuce has a shorter root than one that is raised from seed, since it is more apt to send out side-growths; also the wild kind has a shorter<sup>5</sup> root than the cultivated, and the part above ground has more stems.<sup>6</sup>

### *Of the flowers and fruits of pot-herbs.*

III. <sup>7</sup> All, except one, of these herbs produce all their bloom at once, but basil has a succession of flowers, the lower part of the plant flowering first, and then, when that bloom is over, the upper part. Wherefore its season of bloom is a long one, like that of the

<sup>5</sup> βραχυτέρα conj. Sch.; βραχυτέρα Ald.

<sup>6</sup> ἤνωθεν πολυκαυλωτέρα conj. Sch. from G; ἤνω· τὰ δὲ πολυκ.  
Ald. cf. Diosc. 2. 136. <sup>7</sup> Plin. 19. 100.

## THEOPHRASTUS

χρόνιον ἐν τῷ ἀνθεῖν, καθάπερ κύαμος καὶ τῆς πῶας τὸ ἡλιοτρόπιον καλούμενον καὶ ἄλλα δὲ τῶν ἀγρίων. ἀνθεῖ δὲ καὶ ὁ σίκυος πολλὸν χρόνον· καὶ γὰρ ἐπιβλαστάνειν τούτῳ γε συμβαίνει. τὰ δὲ ἄνθη τῶν μὲν ἔκλευκα τῶν δὲ μηλινοειδῆ τῶν δὲ μικρὸν ἐπιπορφυρίζοντα, εὐχρουν δ' οὐθέν.

- 2 Τὰ δὲ σπέρματα διαφέρει καὶ τοῖς σχήμασι· τὰ μὲν γὰρ πλείστα στρογγύλα τὰ δὲ προμήκη τὰ δ' αὖ πλατέα καὶ φυλλώδη, καθάπερ τὰ τῆς ἀδραφάξυος· ὅμοιον γὰρ τῷ τοῦ σιλφίου· τὰ δὲ στενὰ καὶ γραμμώδη, καθάπερ τοῦ κυμίνου. καὶ τοῖς χρώμασιν ὁμοίως, τὰ μὲν μέλανα τὰ δὲ ξυλώδη τὰ δὲ λευκότερα. πάντα δὲ ἔλλοβο-σπέρματα ἢ γυμνοσπέρματα ἢ ἐμφλοιοσπέρματα ἢ παπποσπέρματα· ῥαφανὶς μὲν γὰρ καὶ νᾶπυ καὶ γογγυλὶς ἔλλοβοσπέρματα, κορίαννον δὲ καὶ μάραθον καὶ ἄνηθον καὶ κύμινον γυμνοσπέρματα, βλίτον δὲ καὶ τεύτλιον καὶ ἀδράφαξυς καὶ ὠκιμον ἐμφλοιοσπέρματα, θριδακίνη δὲ παπποσπέρματον.

- 3 Πάντα δὲ πολύκαρπα καὶ πολυβλαστῇ, πολυκαρπώτατον δὲ τὸ κύμινον. ἴδιον δὲ καὶ ὁ λέγουσι κατὰ τούτον· φασὶ γὰρ δεῖν καταρᾶσθαι τε καὶ βλασφημεῖν σπεύροντας, εἰ μέλλει καλὸν ἔσθαι καὶ πολύ.

Δυσξήραντα δὲ πάντα μὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν πλὴν τοῦ κυμίνου, οὐχ ὡς ὁ σῖτος· οὗτος γὰρ καὶ ἄπαξ

<sup>1</sup> For the collective sense of πῶα (= τὰ πώωδη) cf. 1. 3. 1.

<sup>2</sup> πολλὸν χρόνον conj. W., which at least gives the required sense; καλούμενος Ald.

<sup>3</sup> μηλινοειδές: cf. 6. 2. 8.

<sup>4</sup> ? 'orange.' <sup>5</sup> Plin. 19. 119.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. III. 1-3

bean, and among herbaceous plants<sup>1</sup> that of the plant called *heliotropion*, and also other wild plants. Cucumber also has a long period<sup>2</sup> of bloom, for this plant has a second growth. The flowers are in some cases whitish, in others quince-yellow,<sup>3</sup> in others somewhat reddish<sup>4</sup>; but the flower is never of a bright colour.

<sup>5</sup>The seeds too differ in shape; most are round, but some are oblong; some again are broad and leaf-like, as those of orach, for the seed of this is like that of silphium; others again are narrow or marked in lines,<sup>6</sup> as those of cummin. They also vary in colour, some being black, some the colour of wood,<sup>7</sup> some paler. The seeds of all are either in pods or naked, or have an integument or have a pappus. Radish mustard and turnip have their seeds in pods; coriander fennel dill and cummin have naked seeds; those of blite beet orach and basil are enclosed in an integument; those of lettuce have a pappus on them.

All have numerous fruits and numerous shoots, but cummin has the most<sup>8</sup> fruits of all. <sup>9</sup>And there is another peculiarity told of this plant: they say that one must curse and abuse it, while sowing, if the crop is to be fair and abundant.

Nearly all of these, except cummin, are hard to dry for keeping,—unlike corn<sup>10</sup>; for this, when once

<sup>6</sup> γραμμώδη; cf. 4. 12. 2.; *canaliculata* Plin. l.c.

<sup>7</sup> ? 'brown' cf. 7. 9. 3.

<sup>8</sup> cf. 8. 3. 5; C P. 4. 15. 2.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 9. 8. 8; Plin. l.c. applies this to *ἄκμων*, Pall. 4. 9. 5 to *πήγανον*.

<sup>10</sup> σῖτος· οὗτος γὰρ I conj.; σῖτος γάρ UMH.; P omits γὰρ; σῖτος δς W. after Sch.; *nec modo frumenti consistunt, quod* G.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀδρυνθῇ ταχὺ ξηραίνεται καὶ ἀποπίπτει· δυσ-  
 ξηραντότερα δὲ τὰ ἐμφλοιοσπέρματα καὶ τούτων  
 4 <μάλιστα τὸ ὤκιμον. ἅπαντα δὲ ξηρανθέντα  
 πολυκαρπότερα γίνεται, δι' δ> καὶ προαφαι-  
 ροῦντες αὐτὰ ξηραίνουνσιν. ἅπαντα δὲ πολύχοα  
 καὶ πολυσπέρματα, πολυκαρπότερα δὲ τὸ  
 ὤκιμον.

Ἔστι δὲ τὰ μὲν ἀκρόκαρπα, καθάπερ ὤκιμον  
 πράσον κρόμμον· τὰ δὲ πλαγίοκαρπα μᾶλλον,  
 οἷον ῥαφανὶς γογγυλὶς καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα· τὰ δ'  
 ἀμφοτέρως, οἷον βλίτον ἀδράφαξυς· ἀμφοτέρα  
 γὰρ ταῦτα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ πλαγίου, καὶ τό γε βλίτον  
 εὐθύς παρ' ἑκαστον ὅζον προσκαθήμενον ἔχει τὸ  
 σπέρμα βοτρυνώδες. τὰ δ' ἐκ παλαιότερων σπερ-  
 μάτων θᾶπτον ἐκκαυλεῖ, τάχιστα δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν  
 ἀκμαζόντων· ἔστι γάρ τις ἀκμή καὶ τούτων. ἀνὰ  
 λόγον δὲ καὶ τὸ κάλλος ἀκολουθεῖ τῶν . . . ἐὰν  
 τὰ ἄλλα τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχωσι θεραπείαν.

Δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ ἀθρόα θεμένων καλλίω  
 γίνεσθαι καὶ βλαστάνειν· οὕτω γὰρ τὸ τοῦ  
 πράσου καὶ τὸ τοῦ σελίνου τιθέασιν ἀποδήσαντες  
 εἰς ὀθόνιον καὶ γίνονται μεγάλα.

5 Συμβάλλεται δέ τι καὶ ὁ τόπος πρὸς αὔξησιν·  
 κελεύουσι γοῦν, ὅταν τις μεταφυτεύῃ τὰ σέλινά,  
 πάτταλον κατακρούειν ἡλίκον ἂν βούληται ποιεῖν  
 τὸ σέλινον· τιθέναι δὲ καὶ ἐν ὀθονίῳ πάτταλον  
 κατακρούσαντα καὶ πλήσαντα κόπρον καὶ γῆς.

<sup>1</sup> μάλιστα . . . δι' δ missing in UMAld. Bas.; text as restored  
 by Sch. from Cam., G and Plin. l.c.

<sup>2</sup> τό γε βλίτον conj. W.; τό γε πλείστον U; τό τε πλείστον  
 Ald.H.

<sup>3</sup> ἐκκαυλεῖ: cf. 7. 1. 7; 7. 4. 3, and esp. C.P. 4. 3. 5.

<sup>4</sup> After ἀκολουθεῖ τῶν follows a lacuna of one and a half lines

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. III. 3-5

it is ripened, quickly dries and is shed, and the herbs whose seed have an integument are harder still to dry, especially basil. All however, when dried, produce more fruit : wherefore<sup>1</sup> it is the custom to gather the seed early and dry it. All of them are prolific and produce many seeds, but basil produces most of all.

Examples of those which produce their fruit at the top of the stem are basil leek onion : of those which produce it rather at the sides, radish turnip and the like ; of those which produce it in both ways, blite and orach ; both of these produce it at the side as well as at the top ; in fact blite<sup>2</sup> has its seed in clusters, closely attached to each branch. Some push up their shoots<sup>3</sup> fairly soon from old seed, but seed from plants in their prime is the most rapid ; for these plants too have a time when they are at their best. The beauty of the plant also corresponds<sup>4</sup> in proportion, provided that equal care in<sup>5</sup> other respects is shewn in cultivation.

<sup>6</sup> It likewise appears that, if a quantity of seed is sown in the same place, the resulting crop comes up and germinates better ; thus they tie up seed of leek and celery in a piece of cloth<sup>7</sup> before sowing, and then there is a large<sup>8</sup> crop.

The position also contributes to growth ; at least, when celery is transplanted, they suggest that one should hammer<sup>9</sup> in a peg of whatever size one wishes to make the celery ; and also that one should sow the seed in a piece of cloth<sup>10</sup> after hammering in a peg and filling the hole with dung and soil.

in UMAld.; text as given by Cam., which however omits τῶν ; τῶν σπειρομένων H.; τῶν τοιούτων Vo.Vin.

<sup>1</sup> cf. 7. 4. 7. <sup>6</sup> Plin. 19. 120. <sup>7</sup> cf. C.P. 5. 6. 9.

<sup>8</sup> μεγάλα conj. St.; μεγάλοι Ald.H.

<sup>9</sup> Made clearer C.P. 5. 6. 7. <sup>10</sup> cf. C.P. 5. 6. 9.



## THEOPHRASTUS

Ἔνια δὲ καὶ τοῖς σχήμασιν ἑξομοιοῦνται καὶ τοῖς τόποις· ἡ γὰρ σικύα ὁμοιοσχημῶν γίνεται ἐν ᾧ ἂν τεθῇ ἀγγεῖφ.

Καὶ διαφορὰν λαμβάνει κατὰ τοὺς χυμοὺς ἔνια προθεραπευθέντα τῶν σπερμάτων, οἷον τὸ τοῦ σικύου ἔαν ἐν γάλακτι βρέξαντες σπείρωσιν. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν τοιαῦτα ἴσως οἰκειότερα τῆς θεραπείας.

IV. Γένη δὲ τῶν μὲν ἐστὶ πλείω τῶν δ' οὐκ ἔστιν, οἷον ὠκίμου λαπάθου βλίτου καρδάμου εὐζώμου ἀδραφάξυος κοριάννου ἀνήθου πηγάνου· τούτων γὰρ οὗ φασιν εἶναι <γένους διαφοράν.> τῶν δὲ ἔστι, ῥαφανίδος ῥαφάνου τευτλίου σικύου κολοκύντης κυμίνου σκορόδου θριδακίνης. διαιρουῦσι δὲ τοῖς τε φύλλοις καὶ ταῖς ῥίζαις καὶ τοῖς χρώμασι καὶ τοῖς χυλοῖς καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τοῖς τοιούτοις.

- 2 Οἷον τῆς ῥαφανίδος <γένη Κορινθίαν Κλεωναίαν Λειοθασίαν> ἀμωρέαν Βοιωτίαν· εὐανξεστάτην δὲ τὴν Κορινθίαν, ἥ καὶ τὴν ῥίζαν ἔχει γυμνήν· ὠθεῖται γὰρ εἰς τὸ ἄνω καὶ οὐχ ὥς αἱ ἄλλαι κάτω. τὴν δὲ Λειοθασίαν, ἣν ἔνιοι καλοῦσι Θρακίαν,

<sup>1</sup> καὶ τοῖς τόποις Ald ; κατὰ τοὺς τόπους conj W. cf. C.P. 5. 6. 7.

<sup>2</sup> ἀγγεῖφ . . . λαμβάνει om. UMPAld.; διαφορὰν δὲ καὶ Cam.; τόφω· διαφέρειν δὲ καὶ H.; ἀγγεῖφ conj. W. from C.P. 5. 6. 7; καὶ διαφορὰν conj. Sch. cf. Geop. 12. 19. 6.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 7. 1. 6; Geop. 12. 20. 3.

<sup>4</sup> After εἶναι there is a lacuna in UMAld.; Cam. supplies γένους διαφοράν· τῶν δὲ ἀνάπαλιν πλείω γένη; H. has πλείω γένη

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. III. 5-IV. 2

Some things again come to resemble in their shape even the position<sup>1</sup> in which they grow: thus the bottle-gourd becomes like in shape to the vessel<sup>2</sup> in which it has been placed.

Moreover differences in taste are acquired in some cases when the seed has been treated specially beforehand; for instance, the seed of the cucumber produces a fruit with different taste if it is soaked<sup>3</sup> in milk before sowing. But such matters belong perhaps more properly to the subject of cultivation.

### *Of the various forms of some pot-herbs.*

IV. Of some herbs there are several kinds, but of others only one, as basil monk's rhubarb blite cress rocket orach coriander dill rue; of each of these they say that there is<sup>4</sup> but one kind. But of others there is more than one, as radish cabbage beet cucumber gourd cummin garlic lettuce. Differences are marked in the leaves, the root, the colour, the taste, and so forth.

Thus of radish they recognise these various kinds<sup>5</sup> —the Corinthian, that of Cleonae, the Leiiothasian, amoreia, the Boeotian. The Corinthian is said to be the strongest in growth, and it has an exposed root; for it pushes upwards, and not downwards like the others. The Leiiothasian<sup>6</sup> is called by some the

οὐδὲ γένους διαφορὰν τῶν δὲ ἀνάπαλιν πλείω γένη; Plin. 19. 123 rather supports H. ? read as in H.: τῶν δὲ ἐστὶ is perhaps an attempt to fill the lacuna.

<sup>5</sup> cf. Plin. 19. 75 and 76, who gives a kind called *viride* in place of T.'s ἀμωρέα: see below. After βαφανίδος there is a lacuna in UMAld. (but U has τὴν δὲ μόραν Βοιωτίαν). Text restored from Athen. 2. 48 (cf. Plin. l.c.). Cam.H.Bas. (also Vo. Vin.(?)) give substantially the same.

<sup>6</sup> The name suggests Thasos, off the Thracian coast.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ισχυροτάτην πρὸς τοὺς χειμῶνας. τὴν δὲ Βοιωτίαν γλυκυτάτην καὶ τῷ σχήματι στρογγύλην, οὐχ ὥσπερ τὴν Κλεωναίαν μακράν. ὅσων δ' ἂν ἦ λεία τὰ φύλλα, γλυκύτεραι καὶ ἡδίους, ὅσων δ' ἂν τραχέα, δριμύτεραι. γένος δέ τι παρὰ ταῦτα ἔστιν ὃ ἔχει τὸ φύλλον εὐζώμφ ὅμοιον. ῥαφανίδος μὲν οὖν ταῦτα.

Γογγυλίδος δὲ οἱ μὲν φασιν εἶναι οἱ δ' οἷ φασιν, ἀλλὰ τῷ ἄρρενι καὶ τῇ θηλείᾳ διαφέρειν, γίνεσθαι δὲ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σπέρματος ἄμφω. πρὸς δὲ τὸ ἀποθελύνεσθαι πηγνύναι δεῖν μανὰς· ἐὰν γὰρ πυκνὰς, πάσας ἀπαρρενοῦσθαι, τὸν αὐτὸν δὲ τρόπον κὰν ἐν γῇ μοχθηρὰ σπαρῶσι· δι' ὃ καὶ πρὸς σπερματισμὸν μεταφέροντες φυτεύουσιν τὰς ἐκφύσεις καὶ πλατείας. ἔστι δὲ καὶ τὸ σπέρμα τῇ ὄψει τὸ χεῖρον καὶ βέλτιον φανερόν· τῆς μὲν γὰρ χρηστῆς λεπτόν τῆς δὲ μοχθηρᾶς ἄδρόν. χειμαζομένη δὲ χαίρει καὶ αὕτη καὶ ἡ ῥαφανίς· οἶονται γὰρ ἅμα γλυκαίνεσθαι τε καὶ τὴν αὔξησιν εἰς τὴν ῥίζαν τρέπεσθαι καὶ οὐκ εἰς τὰ φύλλα. τοῖς δὲ νοτίοις καὶ ταῖς εὐδαίαις ἐκκαυλεῖ ταχύ. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν λόγου δεῖται τῆς ὁμοιώσεως ἐν ἀμφοῖν εἶναι τὰς διαφοράς.

<sup>1</sup> Diosc. 2. 112 mentions a kind called by the Romans ἀρμωράκιον. Plin. 19. 82 has *armoracia* and says that this was called *armon* in Pontus; Sch. suggests that the latter name may have given rise to both *armoracia* and ἀμωρέα.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 129, cf. 19. 75; Athen. 9. 7.

<sup>3</sup> πηγνύναι. The verb is used of planting seeds singly; cf. 6. 6 9; 7. 1. 2; 7. 5. 3.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. iv. 2-3

Thracian radish, and it stands the winter best. The Boeotian is said to be the sweetest and to be round in shape, not of a long shape like that of Cleonae. Those kinds whose leaves are smooth are sweeter and pleasanter to the taste, those whose leaves are rough have a somewhat sharp taste. Besides the above-mentioned kinds<sup>1</sup> there is yet another, whose leaves resemble those of rocket. These then are the different kinds of radish.

Of the turnip<sup>2</sup> all do not agree that there are several kinds, but some say that the only difference is between the 'male' and the 'female,' and that both forms come from the same seed. In order to produce 'female' plants it is said that the seed should be sown<sup>3</sup> thinly, for that, if it is sown thick, the result is all 'male' plants; and that the same result follows if the seed is sown in poor soil. Wherefore, when they are shifting plants for seeding,<sup>4</sup> they plant the seedlings<sup>5</sup> wide apart.<sup>6</sup> Good and inferior seed can be easily distinguished by their appearance; the seed of a good plant is fine, that of a poor one coarse. Both this plant and radish like exposure to winter; for it is supposed that this makes them sweeter and that they are thus made to grow roots rather than leaves. With a south wind and warm weather they run up quickly. It needs explanation that both plants should thus adapt<sup>7</sup> themselves in special ways.

<sup>1</sup> πρὸς σπερματισμὸν conj. W.; τοὺς σπερματισμοὺς Ald H. cf. 7. 5. 3. <sup>2</sup> ἐκφύσεις: cf. 3. 3. 7.

<sup>3</sup> καὶ πλατείας corrupt. διεστηκυίας (W.) gives the required sense; but there may be a loss of some words, πλατείας indicating that the object is to produce broader plants. cf. C. P. 5. 6. 9 and Sch.'s note.

<sup>4</sup> τῇς ὁμοιώσεως probably corrupt: no correction suggests itself.

## THEOPHRASTUS

4 Τῆς δὲ ῥαφάνου τριχῇ διαιρουμένης, οὐλο-  
φύλλον τε καὶ λειοφύλλον καὶ τρίτης τῆς ἀγρίας,  
<ἡ ἀγρία> τὸ μὲν φύλλον ἔχει λείον μικρὸν δὲ καὶ  
περιφερές, πολὺκλαδος καὶ πολύφυλλος, ἔτι δὲ  
χυλὸν ἔχουσα δριμὺν καὶ φαρμακώδη, δι' ὃ καὶ  
πρὸς τὰς κοιλίας αὐτῷ χρώνται οἱ ἰατροί. ὁμοίως  
δὲ καὶ ἐν ἐκείναις δοκοῦσι διαφοραὶ καθ' ἑκατέραν·  
ἐπεὶ ἄσπερμόν τι γένος αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ἢ κακό-  
σπερμον. τὸ δ' ὅλον ἢ οὐλὴ τῆς λείας εὐχυλο-  
τέρα καὶ μεγαλοφυλλοτέρα.

Εὐχυλότερον δὲ καὶ τῶν τευτλίων τὸ λευκὸν  
τοῦ μέλανος καὶ ὀλιγοσπερμότερον, ὃ καλοῦσι  
τινες Σικελικόν.

5 Ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ τῆς θριδακίνης· ἡ γὰρ λευκὴ  
γλυκυτέρα καὶ ἀπαλωτέρα. γένη δὲ αὐτῆς ἐστὶν  
ἄλλα τρία, τό τε πλατύκαυλον καὶ στρογγυλό-  
καυλον καὶ τρίτον τὸ Λακωνικόν· αὕτη δὲ τὸ μὲν  
φύλλον ἔχει σκολυμῶδες, ὀρθὴ δὲ καὶ εὐαυξὴς καὶ  
ἀπαράβλαστος ἐκ τοῦ καυλοῦ. τῶν δὲ πλατειῶν  
οὕτω τινὲς πλατύκαυλοι γίνονται ὥστ' ἐνίους  
φασὶ καὶ θύραις χρῆσθαι κηπουρικαῖς. τὸ δὲ  
ὁπῶδες σφόδρα καὶ μικρόφυλλον καὶ λευκο-  
καυλότερον ἔοικεν ἀγρίᾳ.

1 Τῶν δὲ σελίνων καὶ ἐν τοῖς φύλλοις καὶ ἐν τοῖς  
καυλοῖς αἱ διαφοραί· τὸ μὲν γὰρ πυκνὸν καὶ  
οὐλον καὶ δασὺ τὸ φύλλον ἔχει, τὸ δὲ μανότερον  
καὶ πλατύτερον καυλὸν δὲ μείζω. τούτων δὲ  
πάλιν τὰ μὲν λευκόκαυλα τὰ δὲ πορφυρόκαυλα ἢ  
ποικιλόκαυλα· τὸ δ' ὅλον ἅπαν τὸ τοιοῦτον  
ἐμφερέστερον τῷ ἀγρίῳ.

<sup>1</sup> Athen. 9. 9 ; Plin. 19. 80.

<sup>2</sup> Wild radish. See Index.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. iv. 4-6

<sup>1</sup> Of cabbage three kinds are distinguished, the curly-leaved, the smooth-leaved, and thirdly, the wild form.<sup>2</sup> The wild form<sup>3</sup> has a small round leaf, it has many branches and many leaves, and further a sharp medicinal taste ; wherefore physicians use it for the stomach. Between the other two kinds<sup>4</sup> there seem also to be differences, inasmuch as one of them bears no seed or only inferior seed. In general the curly-leaved kind has a better flavour than the smooth and it has larger leaves.

<sup>5</sup> So too with beet ; the white kind has a better flavour than the black and produces fewer seeds ; some call it ' Sicilian ' beet.

So too with lettuce ; the white kind is sweeter and tenderer. Of this plant there are three other kinds,<sup>6</sup> the flat-stalked, the round-stalked, and the Laconian ; the last-named has a leaf like the golden thistle,<sup>7</sup> but is erect and strong-growing and has no side-shoots<sup>8</sup> from the main stem. Of the ' flat ' kinds some have such flat stalks that some, they say, use them to make a garden trellis.<sup>9</sup> The third kind, which has much milky juice and small leaves and a whiter stem, is like a wild plant.

<sup>10</sup> In celery the differences between the various kinds lie in the leaves and stem ; one kind is close and curly and has rough leaves, the other is more open in growth and flatter, but has a larger stalk. Again there are kinds with stems white, red or parti-coloured ; and in general all such forms resemble more the wild kind.

<sup>2</sup> ἡ ἀγρία add. W.

<sup>4</sup> *κελευαίς* conj. Sch. from Plin. l.c. ; *κελευαί* Ald H.

<sup>5</sup> Athen. 9. 11 ; Plin. 19. 132.

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 19. 125.

<sup>7</sup> Athen. 2. 79.

<sup>8</sup> cf. 7. 2. 4.

<sup>9</sup> *ostiola olitoria* Plin. 19. 125.

<sup>10</sup> Plin. 19. 124.

## THEOPHRASTUS

Σικύου δὲ καὶ κολοκύντης τοῦ μὲν εἶναί φασι  
γένη τῆς δ' οὐκ εἶναι, καθάπερ τῆς ῥαφανίδος καὶ  
τῆς γογγυλίδος, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ γένει τὰς μὲν  
βελτίους τὰς δὲ χείρους. τοῦ δὲ σικύου τρία,  
Λακωνικὸν σκυταλίαν Βοιώτιον· τούτων δὲ ὁ μὲν  
Λακωνικὸς ὑδρευόμενος βελτίων, οἱ δ' ἕτεροι  
ἀνύδρευτοι.

- 7 Διαφέρει δὲ γένει καὶ τὰ κρόμυα καὶ τὰ  
σκόροδα. πλείω δὲ τοῦ κρομύου τὰ γένη, οἷον  
τὰ κατὰ τὰς χώρας ἐπικαλούμενα Σάρδια Κνίδια  
Σαμοθράκια, καὶ πάλιν τὰ σητάνια καὶ σχιστὰ  
καὶ Ἀσκαλώνια. τούτων δὲ τὰ μὲν σητάνια  
μικρὰ γλυκέα δὲ εὖ μάλα, τὰ δὲ σχιστὰ καὶ  
ἀσκαλώνια καὶ ταῖς θεραπείαις διαφέροντα καὶ  
δῆλον ὅτι τῇ φύσει· τὸ γὰρ σχιστὸν τῷ μὲν  
χειμῶνι μετὰ τῆς κόμης ἐῶσιν ἀργόν, ἅμα δὲ τῷ  
ἡρι τὰ φύλλα περιαιροῦσι τὰ ἔξω καὶ τὰ ἄλλα  
θεραπεύουσι· περιαιρεθέντων δὲ τῶν φύλλων  
ἕτερα βλαστάνει καὶ ἅμα κάτω σχίζεται, δι' ὃ  
καλοῦσι σχιστά. οἱ δὲ καὶ ὅλως φασὶ πάντων  
δεῖν, ὅπως ἢ δύναμις εἰς τὸ κάτω καὶ μὴ σπερ-  
8 μοφυῇ. τῶν δὲ Ἀσκαλωνίων ἰδία τις ἢ φύσις·  
μόνα γὰρ <οὐ> σχιστὰ καὶ ὥσπερ ἄγονα ἀπὸ τῆς  
ρίξης, ἔτι δὲ ἐν αὐτοῖς ἀναυξῇ καὶ ἀνεπίδοτα·

<sup>1</sup> Athen. 3 4; Plin. 19. 68.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 19. 101-104.

<sup>3</sup> Σάρδια conj. Meurs. from Plin. l.c.; γάρδια Ald. H.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. making offsets.

<sup>5</sup> Ἀσκαλώνια, whence Eng. shallot; though this name is applied to κ. σχιστάν. τὸ add. W.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. iv. 6-8

As to cucumber and gourd, it is said that there are various forms of the former, but of the latter, just as in radish and turnip, the differences are only between better and inferior individuals.

<sup>1</sup> Of the cucumber there are three forms, the Laconian the cudgel-shaped and the Boeotian. Of these the Laconian is better with moisture, the others without it.

<sup>2</sup> There are also various kinds of onion and of garlic; those of the onion are the more numerous, for instance, those called after their localities Sardinian,<sup>3</sup> Cnidian, Samothracian; and again the 'annual' the 'divided' <sup>4</sup> (shallot) and that of Ascalon.<sup>5</sup> Of these the annual kind is small but very sweet, while the divided and the Ascalonian differ plainly as to their character as well as in respect of their cultivation. For the 'divided' <sup>6</sup> kind they leave untended in winter with its foliage,<sup>7</sup> but in spring they strip off<sup>8</sup> the outside leaves and tend the plant in other ways; when the leaves are stripped off, others grow, and at the same time division takes place under ground, which is the reason of the name 'divided.'<sup>9</sup> Some indeed say that all kinds should be thus treated, in order that the force of the plant may be directed downwards and it may not go to seed. The Ascalonian kind has a somewhat peculiar character; it is the only kind which does not <sup>10</sup> divide and which does not, as it were, reproduce itself from the root; moreover in the plant<sup>11</sup> itself there is no power of increasing and multiplying; wherefore

<sup>7</sup> κόμης ἐώσιν conj. Scal.; κοιμησέως UMP<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>8</sup> περιαιρούσι conj. Scal. from Plin. l.c. and G; περιάγουσι P<sub>2</sub>Ald.H. <sup>9</sup> cf. Pall. 3. 24. 3.

<sup>10</sup> οὐ add. Scal.

<sup>11</sup> i.e. the part above ground.



## THEOPHRASTUS

δι' ὃ καὶ οὐ πηγνύουσιν ἀλλὰ σπείρουσιν αὐτὰ καὶ σπείρουσιν ὁψὲ πρὸς τὸ ἔαρ, εἴθ' ὅταν βλαστήσῃ μεταφυτεύουσι· τελειοῦνται δὲ οὕτω ταχέως ὥσθ' ἅμα τοῖς ἄλλοις ἢ καὶ πρότερον ἐξαιρεῖσθαι· πλέονα δὲ χρόνον ἐαθέντα ἐν τῇ γῇ σήπεται· φυτευθέντα δὲ καυλὸν ἀφήσι καὶ σπέρμα φύει μόνον, εἴτα κενοῦνται καὶ ἀναίνεται. τούτων μὲν οὖν τοιαύτη τις ἡ φύσις.

- 9 Διαφέρει δ' ἔνια καὶ τοῖς χρώμασιν· ἐν Ἰσθῷ γὰρ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὅμοια τοῖς ἄλλοις, λευκὰ δὲ σφόδρα τῇ χροιά· φέρειν δὲ φασιν ὅμοια τοῖς Σαρδιανοῖς. ἰδιωτάτη δὲ ἡ φύσις ἢ τῶν Κρητικῶν, παραπλησία δὲ τρόπον τινὰ τοῖς Ἀσκαλωνίοις, εἰ μὴ ἄρα καὶ ἡ αὐτή. ἐν Κρήτῃ γάρ ἐστὶ τι γένος ὃ σπειρόμενον μὲν ῥίζαν ποιεῖ φυτευόμενον δὲ καυλὸν καὶ σπέρμα, κεφαλὴν δὲ οὐκ ἴσχει, γλυκὺ δὲ τῷ χυμῷ· τοῦτο γὰρ οἶον ἀνάπαλιν ἔχει τοῖς  
10 ἄλλοις. ἅπαντα γὰρ πηγνύμενα καὶ βελτίω καὶ θᾶττον παραγίνεταί. πάντα δὲ φυτεύεται μετ' Ἀρκτοῦρον ἔτι θερμῆς οὔσης τῆς γῆς, ὅπως τὰ ὕδατα πεφυτευμένα καταλαμβάνη. καὶ ὅλα δὲ φυτεύεται καὶ διατεμνόμενα παρὰ τὴν κεφαλὴν. οὐχ ὅμοιαι δὲ αἱ ἐκβλαστήσεις, ἀλλ' ἐκ μὲν τοῦ κάτω γίνεται κρόμμον, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἄνω

<sup>1</sup> πηγνύουσι: cf. 7. 4. 3 n. The word evidently has a different sense here; cf. § 10, where πηγνύω and φυτεύω seem to be synonymous.

<sup>2</sup> οὕτω conj. Sch. from G; τοῖς ἄλλοις Ald.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. instead of being raised from seed. cf. what is said 7. 2. 2 of the offsets of γήθων.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. iv. 8-10

many do not plant<sup>1</sup> these, but raise them from seed; and the sowing is made late, towards the spring; and then, when the seed has germinated, they transplant. And the plant arrives at maturity so<sup>2</sup> fast that it is taken up with the others or even earlier; whereas, if it is left a longer time in the ground, it rots. If planted on the other hand,<sup>3</sup> it sends up a stem and merely produces seed, and then shrivels up<sup>4</sup> and withers. Such then is the character of these.

Some also shew differences in colour; thus at Issus<sup>5</sup> are found plants which in other respects resemble the others,<sup>6</sup> but which are extremely white in colour; and they bear, it is said, onions like those of Sardis. Most distinct however is the character of the Cretan kind, which resembles to some extent that of Ascalon, if indeed it be not the same. For in Crete there is a kind which when sown produces a root, but when planted produces a stem and seed but has no 'head';<sup>7</sup> and it is sweet in flavour. This kind in fact has just the contrary character to the others; for they all grow better and faster when they are planted. All are planted<sup>8</sup> after the rising of Arcturus while the earth is still warm, so that the rains may come upon them after planting. They are planted<sup>9</sup> either entire or else in sections made by cutting at the 'head.' The growth which results is not uniform; 'from the lower part comes an onion,

<sup>1</sup> *κενοῦται* conj. St. from G *exinaniuntur*; *καινοῦται* Ald.

<sup>2</sup> *ἴσσω* conj. Sch. from G and Plin. *l.c.*; *ἴσφ* UM; *νήσφ* Ald. H.

<sup>3</sup> *ἄλλοις* conj. Sch; *λευκοῖς* Ald. <sup>7</sup> Sc. bulb.

<sup>8</sup> *φυτεύεται* conj. Sch; *φύεται* Ald. See next note.

<sup>9</sup> *φυτεύεται* M; *φύεται* Ald. cf. *C.P.* 1. 4. 5.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- χλόη μονον· ὀρθὸν δὲ διατμηθὲν ὅλως ἀβλαστὲς ἔστι. τὸ δὲ γήτειον καλούμενον ἀκέφαλόν τι καὶ ὥσπερ αὐχένα μακρὸν ἔχον, ὅθεν καὶ ἡ βλάστησις ἄκρα· καὶ ἐπικείρεται πολλάκις, ὥσπερ τὸ πράσον, δι' ὃ καὶ σπείρουσιν αὐτὸ καὶ οὐ φυτεύουσι. τὰ μὲν οὖν κρόμυα σχεδὸν ταύτας ἔχει τὰς ιδέας.
- 11 Τὸ δὲ σκόροδον φυτεύεται μὲν μικρὸν πρὸ τροπῶν ἢ μετὰ τροπὰς διαιρούμενον κατὰ γέλγεις. διαφορὰ δὲ ἔστιν αὐτῶν ἢ τε τῶν ὀψίων πρὸς τὰ πρῶια· γένος γάρ τι τυγχάνει τοιοῦτον ὃ ἐν ἐξήκοντα ἡμέραις τελειοῦται, καὶ μεγέθει καὶ μικρότητι. καὶ τῷ μεγέθει γένος τι διάφορόν ἐστι, μάλιστα δὲ τὸ Κύπριον καλούμενον τοιοῦτον, ὅπερ οὐχ ἐψοῦσιν ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοὺς μυττωτοὺς χρῶνται, καὶ ἐν τῇ τρίψει θαυμαστὸν ποιεῖ τὸν ὄγκον ἐκπνευματούμενον. καὶ ἔτι τῷ μὴ ἔχειν ἔνια τὰς γέλγεις. ἡ δὲ γλυκύτης καὶ ἡ εὐωδία καὶ ἡ ἀδρότης σχεδὸν παρὰ τὰς χώρας γίνεται καὶ τὰς θεραπείας, ὥσπερ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων. τελειοῦται δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ σπέρματος ἀλλὰ βραδέως· τῷ πρώτῳ γὰρ ἔτει κεφαλὴν ἡλικὴν πράσου λαμβάνει, τῷ δ' ὕστερον γελγιδοῦται, καὶ τῷ τρίτῳ τέλειον γίνεται, καὶ οὐδὲν χεῖρον ἀλλ' ἔνιοί γε
- 12 καὶ κάλλιόν φασι τοῦ πηκτοῦ. τῆς δὲ ρίζης ἢ γένεσις οὐχ ὁμοία τοῦ τε σκοροδίου καὶ τοῦ κρομύου· ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν σκοροδίου ὅταν ἀνοιδήσῃ ἢ γελγὺς κυρτοῦται πᾶσα καὶ ἐνταῦθα αὐξηθεῖσα διαιρεῖται πάλιν εἰς τὰς γέλγεις καὶ ἐξ ἑνὸς πολλὰ γίνεται τῷ τελειοῦσθαι τὴν κεφαλὴν, τὸ δὲ

<sup>1</sup> i.e. bulb; cf. 9. 11 6.      <sup>2</sup> cf. 7. 2. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 19. 111 and 112.

from the upper only foliage; while, if the plant is divided vertically, no growth at all takes place. The kind called horn-onion has no 'head,'<sup>1</sup> but has as it were a long neck, at the top of which comes the new growth; it is often cut, like the leek; wherefore it is raised from seed and not planted.<sup>2</sup> Such then, one may say, are the forms of the onion.

<sup>3</sup> Garlic is planted a little before or after the solstice, when it divides into cloves.<sup>4</sup> There are different kinds distinguished as late or early, for there is one kind which matures in <sup>5</sup> sixty days. There are also differences as to size. There is one kind which excels in size, especially that variety which is called Cyprian, which is not cooked but used for salads, and, when it is pounded up, it increases wondrously in bulk, making a foaming dressing. There is a further difference, in that some kinds cannot be divided into cloves. The sweetness of taste and smell and the vigour depend on the position<sup>6</sup> and on cultivation, as with other herbs. Garlic reaches maturity from seed, but slowly, for in the first year it acquires a 'head' which is only as large as that of the leek, but in the next year it divides into cloves, and in the third is fully grown, and is not inferior, indeed some say it is superior, to the garlic which has been planted.<sup>7</sup> The growth of the root in garlic and onion is not the same; in garlic, when the clove has swollen, the whole of it becomes convex<sup>8</sup>; then it increases and divides again into the cloves, and becomes several plants instead of one by the maturing of the 'head,'

<sup>1</sup> γέλλεις conj. Scal. from G (*nucleatim divisum*); γέρη Ald.

<sup>2</sup> δ ἐν conj. Sch.; θεν UMald.

<sup>3</sup> χῶρας conj. Daleo.; ζρας UMP<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>7</sup> Sc. not raised from seed. <sup>8</sup> So W. renders.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κρόμνον εὐθύς ἐκ τῆς ῥίζης ἄλλο καὶ ἄλλο παρα-  
 φήσει, καθάπερ καὶ βολβοὶ καὶ σκίλλα καὶ πάντα  
 τὰ τοιαῦτα. καὶ γὰρ τὰ κρόμνα καὶ τὰ σκόροδα  
 μὴ ἀναιρουντων ἄλλ' ἐώντων πολλὰ γίνεται.  
 φέρειν δέ φασι καὶ τὸ σκόροdon ἐπὶ τῆς φύσιγγος  
 σκόροδα καὶ τὸ κρόμνον κρόμνα· περὶ μὲν οὖν  
 τῶν γενέσεων ἱκανῶς εἰρήσθω.

V. Φίλυδρα δὲ πάντα τὰ ἄλλα λάχανα καὶ  
 φιλόκοπρα πλὴν πηγάνου, τοῦτο δὲ ἤκιστα φιλό-  
 κοπρον. τὰ χειμερινὰ δὲ οὐχ ἥττον τῶν θερινῶν  
 καὶ τὰ ἐπίκηρα τῶν ἰσχυρῶν. κόπρον δὲ μάλιστα  
 ἐπαινοῦσι τὴν συρματίτιν, τὴν δὲ τῶν ὑποζυγίων  
 μοχθηρὰν διὰ τὸ μάλιστα ἐξικμάζεσθαι· ζητοῦσι  
 δὲ τὴν κόπρον ἅμα τῷ σπόρῳ μάλιστα συνανα-  
 μιχθεῖσαν· οἱ δὲ καὶ σπείροντες ἐπιβάλλουσι·  
 χρῶνται δὲ καὶ τῇ ἀνθρωπίνῃ ὥμῃ πρὸς τὴν  
 χύλωσιν. φιλυδρότερα δὲ τὰ χειμερινὰ τῶν  
 θερινῶν καὶ τὰ ἀσθενῇ τῶν ἰσχυρῶν, ἔτι δὲ τὰ  
 πλείστης δεόμενα τροφῆς. φίλυδρα καὶ τὸ  
 κρόμνον καὶ τὸ γήθουν· καίτοι φασὶ τινες οὐ  
 ζητεῖν, ἐὰν τὸ πρῶτον ἐπιγένηται δις ἢ τρίς.  
 2 τῶν δὲ ὑδάτων ἄριστα τὰ πότιμα καὶ τὰ ψυχρά,  
 χερίστα δὲ τὰ ἀλυκὰ καὶ δυσμανῇ, δι' ὃ καὶ  
 ἐκ τῶν ὀχετῶν οὐ χρηστά· συμπεριφέρει γὰρ  
 σπέρματα πόας. ἀγαθὰ δὲ τὰ ἐκ διός· ταῦτα

<sup>1</sup> cf. 7. 2. 2 and 3.

<sup>2</sup> φύσιγγος conj. Casaub. on Athen. 2. 78; σφύριγγος UMAld. See LS φύσιγξ.

<sup>3</sup> καὶ τὸ κρόμνον κρόμνα conj. Sch.; καὶ τὰ κρόμνα UMAld.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 19. 156.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. IV. 12-V. 2

while the onion puts out another and another growth straight from the root, as do purse-tassels<sup>1</sup> and squill and all such plants. For both onions and garlic multiply if they are not removed but left alone. They say also that garlic produces garlic heads on the stalk,<sup>2</sup> and that the onion in like manner produces onions.<sup>3</sup> Let this suffice for an account of their ways of growth.

*Of the cultivation of pot-herbs ; manure and water.*

V. <sup>4</sup> All the pot-herbs are lovers of water and of dung, except rue, which does not at all like dung; this is true of the winter no less than of the summer herbs, and of the tender no less than of the strong ones. The dung which is most commended is that which is mixed with litter, while that of beasts of burden is held to be bad, because it is most apt to lose its moisture. Dung which is mixed with the seed is most in request, but some cast the manure on while they are sowing, and they also use fresh human dung as a liquid manure.<sup>5</sup> The winter crops like moisture more than the summer ones, and the weak more than the strong, as well as those which specially need feeding. Onion and long onion also love moisture, though some say that they do not require it, if at the outset it has been applied twice or thrice. <sup>6</sup> Fresh cold water is the best, and the worst is that which is brackish and thick:<sup>7</sup> wherefore the water from irrigation ditches is not good, for it brings with it seeds of weeds. Rain

<sup>1</sup> Lit. 'for their liquid-manuring.' cf. *C.P.* 3. 9. 2, where *χύλωσις* must have the same sense.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 12. 182 and 183.

<sup>3</sup> *δυσμανή* UMald.; *δυσμενή* H.

## THEOPHRASTUS

γὰρ δοκεῖ καὶ φθείρειν τὰ θηρία [γινόμενα] τὰ γόνιμα κατεσθίοντα. φασὶ δέ τινες οὔτε τοῖς σικύοις συμφέρειν οὔτε τοῖς κρομύοις. ἀρδεύουσι δὲ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα πρῶτ' ἢ πρὸς ἐσπέραν, ὅπως μὴ καθέψηται, τὸ δὲ ὤκιμον καὶ μεσημβρίας· καὶ γὰρ διαβλαστάνειν θάττον φασὶ θερμῷ τὸ πρῶτον ἀρδεύομενον. τὸ δὲ πολὺ λίαν ὕδωρ δοκεῖ συμφέρειν ἄλλως τε καὶ ἐὰν [μὴ] ἔχῃ κόπρον· πολλάκις γὰρ πεινῇ τὰ λάχανά φασι, καὶ ταῦτα γνωρίζειν τοὺς ἐμπείρους τῶν κηπουρῶν.

- 3 Μεταφυτευόμενα δὲ πάντα καλλίω καὶ μείζω γίνεται· καὶ γὰρ τὰ τῶν πράσων μεγέθη καὶ τὰ τῶν ραφανίδων ἐκ μεταφυτείας. μάλιστα δὲ μεταφυτεύουσι πρὸς τοὺς σπερματισμούς· καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ὑπομένει, οἶον γήθιον πράσον ράφανος σίκυος σέλινον γογγυλὶς θρίδαξ, <τὰ δὲ> γλίσχρως. ἅπαντα δ' εὐαυξέστερα καὶ μείζω πηγνυμένων τῶν σπερμάτων ἢ σπειρομένων.

- 4 Θηρία δὲ γίνεται ταῖς μὲν ραφανῖσι ψύλλαι, τῇ δὲ ραφάνῳ κάμπαι καὶ σκώληκες, καὶ ἐν τῇ θριδακίνῃ καὶ ἐν τοῖς πράσοις καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις δὲ πλείοσιν αἱ πρασοκουρίδες. ταύτας μὲν οὖν ἢ κράστις ἀθροισθεῖσα ἀπόλλυσι καὶ ὅταν κόπρος

<sup>1</sup> γινόμενα τὰ γόνιμα H.; γινόμενα γόνιμα UMAld.; ? τὰ τὰ γόνιμα. Either γινόμενα or γόνιμα seems to be due to ditto-graphy. For γόνιμα cf. *O.P.* 1. 15. 1: τὰς γονίμους ἀρχάς.

<sup>2</sup> καθέψηται conj. Sch. after Plin. *l.c.*; καθάψηται P<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>3</sup> ἔχῃ κόπρον conj. Dalec.; μὴ ἔχῃ κ. Ald.; μετέχῃ κόπροι conj. W. cf. 7. 5. 1, χύλωσιν; *O.P.* 3 9. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 19. 183.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. v. 2-4

water is good, for it also appears to destroy the pests which devour the young plants.<sup>1</sup> Some however say that rain-water is not good for melons nor for onions. Most herbs are watered in early morning or at evening, so that they may not be dried up<sup>2</sup>; but basil is watered even at noon, for it is said that it grows more quickly if it is watered at first with warm water. In general water seems to be extremely beneficial, especially if it is mixed with dung<sup>3</sup>; for, they say, pot-herbs often are hungry, and experienced gardeners can recognise when this is so.

<sup>4</sup> All herbs grow finer and larger if transplanted; for even the size of leeks and radishes depends on transplantation. Transplanting is done especially in view of collecting seed<sup>5</sup>: and, while most herbs bear it well, as long onion leek cabbage cucumber celery turnip lettuce, others bear it less well.<sup>6</sup> All however make better growth and are larger if the seed is planted<sup>7</sup> rather than scattered.

*Of the pests which infest pot-herbs.*

<sup>8</sup> As for pests,—radish is attacked by spiders,<sup>9</sup> cabbage by caterpillars and grubs, while in lettuce, leek, and many other herbs occur 'leek-cutters.'<sup>10</sup> These are destroyed by collecting green fodder,<sup>11</sup> or when they have been caught somewhere in a mass

<sup>5</sup> σπερματισμοὺς conj. Scal.; σπερματικούς UMald. cf. 7. 4. 3.

<sup>6</sup> τὰ δὲ γλίσχρως conj. Sch., adding τὰ δὲ; γλίσχρως U; γλίσχροι M; γλίσχρος Ald.; γλήχων conj. Scal. Sch. also conjectures τὰ λίσχρα: see LS. s.v.

<sup>7</sup> πηγγυμένων: cf. 6. 6. 9; 7. 4. 3. <sup>8</sup> Plin. 19. 177.

<sup>9</sup> ψύλλαι: cf. Arist. H.A. 9. 39. 1.

<sup>10</sup> πρασσοκουρίδες: ? leaf-maggots. cf. Arist. H.A. 5. 19. 20; Geop. 12. 9.

<sup>11</sup> κράστις conj. R. Const.; κρᾶσις Ald.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἄθροα που καταλάβῃ· φιλόκοπρον δ' ὃν τὸ θήριον ἀναδύεται καὶ ἐνδύσα κοιμᾶται ἐν τῇ κόπρῳ, δι' ὃ δὴ ῥάδιον θηρεύειν· ἄλλως δ' οὐκ ἔστι. ταῖς δὲ ῥαφανῖσι πρὸς τὰς ψύλλας πρόσφορον τὸ ἐπισπείρειν ὁρόβους. πρὸς δὲ τὸ μὴ γίνεσθαι ψύλλας οὗ φασιν εἶναι φάρμακον οὐδέν. ὑπὸ δὲ τὸ ἄστρον ὥκιμον μὲν λευκαίνεται κορίαννον δὲ αἰλμᾶ. τὰ μὲν οὖν συμβαίνοντα διὰ τούτων θεωρητέον.

5 Τῶν δὲ σπερμάτων τὰ μὲν ἐστὶν ἰσχυρότερα τὰ δὲ ἀσθενέστερα πρὸς διαμονήν· ἰσχυρότερα μὲν οἶον κορίαννον τεύτλιον πράσον κάρδαμον νᾶπυ εὐζωμον θύμβρα, ἀπλῶς τὰ δριμέα πάντα· ἀσθενέστερα δὲ γήθουν, τοῦτο γὰρ οὐκ ἐθέλει μένειν, ἀδράφαξυς ὥκιμον κολοκύντη σίκυος, ἀπλῶς τὰ θερινὰ τῶν χειμερινῶν μᾶλλον. διαμένει δὲ οὐδὲν πλέον τεττάρων ἐτῶν ὥστε ἔτι χρήσιμον εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς σπόρους· ἀλλὰ διένα μὲν βελτίω, τὰ δὲ τριένα οὐδὲν χεῖρω, τὸ δ' ὑπερτεῖνον ἤδη χεῖρον.

3 Πρὸς δὲ τὴν μαγειρικὴν χρείαν ἐπὶ πλείω δια-

<sup>1</sup> κόπρος ἄθροα που καταλάβῃ Ald.; κόπρον ἄθροαν πού τις καταβάλῃ conj. W. after Sch.; κόπρον ἄθροαν conj. Scal.

<sup>2</sup> φιλόκοπρον δ' ὃν τὸ θήριον ἀναδύεται καὶ ἐνδύσα conj. W.; φίλοποννον τὸ θήριον ἀναδεύεται καὶ ἐν αἰς κοιμᾶται UMald.; φίλυννον conj. R. Const., but W.'s conj. is confirmed by Geop. l.c. The change of gender in ἐνδύσα is strange.

<sup>3</sup> πρὸς τὰς ψύλλας πρόσφορον τὸ mBas.; ψύλλας πρὸς τὸ Ald. H.; πρὸς τὰς ψύλλας ἀρκεῖ τὸ conj. W.

<sup>4</sup> ψύλλας Ald.; καμπὰς conj. Sch. followed by W.

<sup>5</sup> cf. Geop. 12. 7; Pall. 1. 35. 8; Plin. l.c.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. v. 4-6

of dung,<sup>1</sup> the pest being fond of dung emerges, and, having entered the heap, remains dormant there<sup>2</sup>; wherefore it is then easy to catch, which otherwise it is not. To protect<sup>3</sup> radishes against spiders<sup>4</sup> it is of use to sow vetch<sup>5</sup> among the crop; to prevent the spiders from being engendered they say that there is no specific.<sup>6</sup> Basil turns pale about the rising of the dog-star, and coriander becomes mildewed.<sup>7</sup> In these instances we may observe the accidents which occur to pot-herbs.

*Of the time for which seed of pot-herbs can be kept.*

<sup>8</sup> Of seeds some have more vitality than others as to keeping; among the more vigorous ones are coriander beet leek cress mustard rocket savory, and in general<sup>9</sup> those of pungent taste; among the less vigorous are long onion—which will not keep—orach basil gourd cucumber; and in general the summer herbs keep less well than the winter ones. No seed will keep more than four years so as still to be of use for sowing; though it is better in the second year,<sup>10</sup> in some cases it does not deteriorate in three years,<sup>11</sup> but after that time<sup>12</sup> deterioration begins.

However for cooking purposes seed will keep a

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 19. 176.

<sup>7</sup> ἀλμῆ conj. W.; ἄλμαι MAld.; ἀλμαίνεται Vo. Vin.; ἀλμᾶται mBas. cf. 8. 10. 1; C.P. 6. 10. 5. In all three places W. introduces this word, comparing ψωριᾶν ἐρυσιβᾶν, etc.

<sup>8</sup> Plin. 19. 181.

<sup>9</sup> ἀπλῶς conj. St. from G; ἄλλως Ald.; ἄλως U.

<sup>10</sup> διένα conj. Scal.; δι' ἔνα UMAld. H.

<sup>11</sup> τὰ δὲ τριένα conj. W; διὰ δὲ τρεῖς UMAld. H.

<sup>12</sup> ὑπερτεῖνον conj. Scal.: cf. 8. 11. 5; ὑπὲρ γαῖον UMAld.; ὑπερβαῖνον H.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μένει, πλὴν ἀσθενέστερα ταῦτα ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τὴν ἀναπνοὴν καὶ τὴν σκωλήκωσιν. φθορὰ δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ὑπὸ τῶν θηρίων· γίνεταί γὰρ ἐν ἅπασιν καὶ τοῖς δριμέσιν, ἥκιστα δὲ ἐν τῷ σικυῶνι· οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐξικμαζόμενα πικρὰ γίνεται τῇ γεύσει, δι' ὃ καὶ πρὸς τὴν χρεῖαν χεῖρω. καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν σπερμάτων καὶ ἀπλῶς τῶν κηπευομένων ἱκανῶς εἰρήσθω.

VI. Περὶ δὲ τῶν ἀγρίων καὶ τῶν καλουμένων ἀρουραίων πειρατέον ὁμοίως εἰπεῖν. τυγχάνει δὲ τὰ μὲν ὁμώνυμα τοῖς ἡμέροις· ἅπαντα γὰρ ἐστὶ τὰ γένη ταῦτα καὶ ἄγρια, καὶ σχεδὸν τά γε πολλὰ παραπλησίαν ἔχοντα τὴν ὄψιν τοῖς ἡμέροις, πλὴν τοῖς γε φύλλοις ἐλάττω ταῦτα καὶ τραχύτερα καὶ τοῖς καυλοῖς καὶ μάλιστα τοῖς χυλοῖς δριμύτερα καὶ ἰσχυρότερα, καθάπερ ἢ τε θύμβρα καὶ ἡ ὀρίγανος ἢ τε ράφανος καὶ τὸ πήγανον· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ λάπαθον ἄγριον, καίπερ εὐστομώτερον τοῦ ἡμέρου ὄν, τὸν χυλὸν ὅμως ὀξύτερον ἔχει καὶ τούτῳ μάλιστα διαφέρει. πάντα δὲ καὶ ξηρότερα τῶν ἡμέρων, καὶ ἴσως αὐτῷ τούτῳ τά γε πολλὰ καὶ δριμύτερα καὶ ἰσχυρότερα.

- 2 Ἰδίως δὲ ἡ ράφανος ἔχει παρὰ τὰ ἄλλα τοὺς καυλοὺς περιφερεστέρους καὶ λειοτέρους τῆς ἡμέ-

<sup>1</sup> i.e. drying-up; cf. Plat. *Tim.* 85 A.

<sup>2</sup> σκωλήκωσιν conj. Sch.; κώλυσιν Ald.; σκωλήκησιν conj. R. Const.

<sup>3</sup> σικυῶνι Ald.: perhaps here a general term for cucumbers, gourds, etc.; σικυῶν M; σικύω conj. W.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 19. 185.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. v. 6—VI. 2

longer time, except that such seed must necessarily become less vigorous by reason of 'evaporation'<sup>1</sup> and destruction by worms.<sup>2</sup> The chief cause of loss is vermin; for vermin occur in all the seeds, even those which are pungent, though least in the gourd<sup>3</sup> tribe; such seeds however, as they lose their moisture, become bitter in taste and inferior for use. Let this suffice for an account of the seeds and in general of herbs cultivated in gardens.

*Of uncultivated herbs: the wild forms of pot-herbs.*

VI. <sup>4</sup> We must now endeavour to speak in the same way of the wild kinds and of those which are called uncultivated herbs. Some of these have the same names as the cultivated<sup>5</sup> kinds; for all these kinds exist also in a wild form, and most of them resemble the cultivated kinds in appearance, except that in the wild forms the leaves and also the stalks are smaller and rougher, and in particular these forms are more pungent and stronger in taste, for instance, savory<sup>6</sup> marjoram cabbage and rue; the wild monk's rhubarb (dock) indeed, though it has a pleasanter taste than the cultivated, yet has<sup>7</sup> a sharper flavour; and this is the chief difference. Moreover all the wild kinds are less juicy than the cultivated, and perhaps this is the very reason why most<sup>8</sup> of them are more pungent and stronger.

A peculiarity of 'wild cabbage' as compared with the others is that its stems are rounder and smoother

<sup>1</sup> ἡμέροις conj. Sch.; εἰρημένοις Ald. The correction would seem unnecessary but that Ald. gives εἰρημένοις in § 4 where ἡμέρους is required. <sup>6</sup> cf. Diosc. 3. 37.

<sup>7</sup> ὅν, τὸν I conj.; τὸν δὲ MSS. W.

<sup>8</sup> οὐκ conj. Sch.; οὐκ IIM Ald

## THEOPHRASTUS

ρου, καὶ τὴν τοῦ φύλλον πρόσθεσιν ἐκείνη μὲν ἔχει πλατεΐαν αὕτη δὲ περιφερεστέραν, καὶ αὐτὸ δὲ τὸ φύλλον ἀγωνότερον· ἐπεὶ τά γε ἄλλα τραχύτερα καὶ τοῖς καυλοῖς καὶ τοῖς φύλλοις.

Ἡ δὲ γογγυλὶς καὶ τὴν ῥίζαν ἔχει μακρὰν καὶ ῥαφανιδώδη καὶ τὸν καυλὸν βραχύν.

Θριδακίνη δὲ τό τε φύλλον βραχύτερον τῆς ἡμέρον, καὶ τελευμένης ἀκανθοῦται, καὶ τὸν καυλὸν ὁμοίως, τὸν ὁπὸν δὲ δριμύν καὶ φαρμακώδη. φύεται δ' ἐν ταῖς ἀρούραις· ὀπίζουσι δ' αὐτὴν ὑπὸ πυραμητόν, καὶ φασὶ καθαίρειν ὕδρωπα καὶ ἀχλὺν ἀπ' ὀφθαλμῶν ἀπάγειν καὶ ἄργεμα ἀφαιρεῖν ἐν γάλακτι γυναικείῳ.

- 3 Τὸ δ' ἵπποσέλινον καὶ ἐλειοσέλινον καὶ ὄρεοσέλινον καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὰ διαφορὰν ἔχει καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἡμερον· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἐλειοσέλινον τὸ παρὰ τοὺς ὄχετους καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἔλεσι φυόμενον μανόφυλλον τε καὶ οὐ δασὺ γίνεται, προσεμφερὲς δὲ πῶς τῷ σελίνῳ καὶ τῇ ὀσμῇ καὶ τῷ χυλῷ καὶ τῷ σχήματι. τὸ δ' ἵπποσέλινον φύλλον μὲν ἐμφερὲς τῷ ἐλειοσελίνῳ, δασὺ δὲ καὶ μεγαλόκαυλον καὶ τὴν ῥίζαν ὥσπερ ῥαφανὶς ἔχει τὸ πάχος μέλαιναν· μέλας δὲ καὶ ὁ καρπός, μέγεθος δὲ μείζον ὀρόβου. χρήσιμα δ' ἄμφω φασὶ πρὸς στραγγουρίαν εἶναι ἐν οἴνῳ γλυκεῖ λευκῷ καὶ τοῖς λιθιῶσι· φύεται δὲ

<sup>1</sup> τραχύτερα conj. Sch.; τραχύτερον Ald., which contradicts what has just been said.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 20. 20; Diosc. 2. 110

<sup>3</sup> τελευμένης conj. W.; τελεούμενος U; τελειούμενον P<sub>2</sub>Ald. cf. C P. 4. 3. 5.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. vi. 2-3

than in the cultivated kind, and, while in the latter the attachment of the leaf is flat, in the wild kind it is rounder, and the leaf itself has less angles; in other cases the wild form is the rougher<sup>1</sup> both in stem and leaf.

<sup>2</sup> The wild turnip has a long root, like that of the radish, and a short stem.

The wild lettuce has a shorter leaf than the cultivated kind, and, as the plant matures,<sup>3</sup> it becomes spinous; the stem is also shorter, while the juice is pungent and medicinal. It grows in fields; they extract its juice at the time of wheat-harvest, and it is said that it purges away dropsy and takes away dimness of sight and removes ulcers<sup>4</sup> on the eye; for which purpose it is administered in human milk.

<sup>5</sup> 'Horse-celery' (alexanders) 'marsh-celery' and 'mountain-celery' (parsley) differ both from one another and from the cultivated kind; 'marsh celery,' which grows by irrigation-ditches and in marshes, has scanty leaves,<sup>6</sup> and is not of close habit,<sup>7</sup> yet it somewhat resembles the cultivated kind in smell taste and appearance. 'Horse-celery' has a leaf like that of the marsh kind, but is of close habit and has a big stalk, and its root is as thick as a radish and black; <sup>8</sup> the fruit is also black, and in size is larger than the seed of a vetch. They say that both kinds are serviceable in cases of strangury and for those suffering from stone, being administered in sweet white wine. Both kinds grow equally<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 9. 9. 5; Plin. 20. 58; Diosc. 2. 136.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 19. 124.

<sup>3</sup> *μανόφυλλον*; Plin. *l.c.* seems to have read *μονόφυλλον*.

<sup>7</sup> Diosc. 3. 64.

<sup>8</sup> Diosc. 3. 67.

<sup>9</sup> *ὁμοίως* conj. Sch.; *ὅμως* Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὁμοίως πανταχοῦ· γίνεται δὲ καὶ τι δάκρυον ἐξ αὐτοῦ ὁμοιον τῇ μύρρα· οἱ δὲ φασιν ὅλως μύρραν.

Τὸ δὲ ὀρεοσέλινον μείζους ἔτι διαφορὰς ἔχει· τὸ μὲν γὰρ φύλλον ἔοικε κωνεῖφ, ῥίζα δὲ λεπτή, τὸν δὲ καρπὸν ἔχει καθάπερ ἄνηθον πλὴν ἐλάττω· διδόασι δὲ τοῦτον ἐν οἴνῳ αὐστηρῶ τῶν γυναικείων χάριν.

Ἔνια δὲ ὅλως ἀσύμβλητα τοῖς ἡμέροις ἐστὶ κατὰ γε τοὺς χυλοὺς καὶ τὰς δυνάμεις, ὥσπερ σίκυος ὃ τε ἄγριος καὶ ὁ ἡμερος, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῆς προσόψεως ἔχει τὴν ὁμοιότητα, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς στεφανώμασιν ἡ ἰωνία· τὸ γὰρ φύλλον ἔχει παρόμοιον. τούτων μὲν οὖν ἐν τοῖς εἰρημένοις αἱ διαφοραί.

VII. Τῶν δὲ ἀρουραίων λεγομένων μετὰ ταῦτα ῥητέον, καὶ ὅλως εἴ τι ποιῶδές ἐστιν ὃ μὴ τυγχάνει βρωτόν. καλοῦμεν γὰρ λάχανα τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἡμετέραν χρείαν· ἐν δὲ τῷ καθ' ὅλου κακεῖνα περιέχεται, δι' ὃ καὶ περὶ ἐκείνων λεκτέον. λάχανα μὲν δὴ καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα καλεῖται, κιχώρη ἀπάπη χόνδρυλλα ὑποχοιρὶς ἡριγέρων, καὶ ὅλως

<sup>1</sup> τι conj. Sch.; τὸ Ald. cf. 9. 1. 4.

<sup>2</sup> ὅλως P<sub>2</sub>Bas; ὅλως Ald.; ? ἀπλῶς W.

<sup>3</sup> κωνεῖφ conj. Sch.; κονίφ Ald. cf. 1. 5. 3 n.

<sup>4</sup> καρπὸν conj. Cornarius on Diosc. 3. 67. and Dalec.; καυλὸν UMald. cf. Diosc. l.c.

<sup>5</sup> ἡμέροις H.; εἰρημένοις UMald. cf. 7. 6. 1 n.

<sup>6</sup> See Index, σίκυος.

<sup>7</sup> i.e. which gives them a common name.

<sup>8</sup> εἴ τι ποιῶδές ἐστιν H.; ἐγγειποιῶδες U; ἐγγειποιῶδές ἐστι MAld.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. VI. 3-VII. 1

everywhere. There is also a sort<sup>1</sup> of gum which exudes from the plant, like myrrh, and some say that it is<sup>2</sup> myrrh.

'Mountain-celery' (parsley) exhibits even greater differences; its leaf is like that of hemlock,<sup>3</sup> the root is slender, and the fruit<sup>4</sup> like that of dill, but smaller; it is given in dry wine for diseases of women.

In some cases however the wild kinds are not in the least like the cultivated<sup>5</sup> in taste and properties; thus the wild and the cultivated cucumber<sup>6</sup> are quite different, and their resemblance<sup>7</sup> is due only to their general look, as, among coronary plants, there is resemblance between the wild and the cultivated kinds of gilliflower; for the leaves are alike. We have then described the differences which these plants present.

*Of other uncultivated herbs, which may be classed with pot-herbs.*

VII. Next we must speak of the differences found in the herbs called 'uncultivated,' and in general in any herbaceous plants<sup>8</sup> which are not edible. For we give the name of 'pot-herbs' to those which are cultivated for our own use, but in a wider sense the term includes these also; wherefore we must speak of them too. <sup>9</sup>Under the name 'pot-herbs' are included also <sup>10</sup>such plants as chicory dandelion<sup>11</sup> *khondrylla*<sup>12</sup> cat's ear groundsel, and in general all

<sup>9</sup> Plin. 21. 89.

<sup>10</sup> καὶ add. Scal.

<sup>11</sup> ἀράνη (or ἀράνη) conj. Sch.; ἀράκη Ald. The latter is a leguminous plant mentioned 8. 5. 3, etc.: for ἀράνη cf. 6. 4. 8; 7. 8. 3; 7. 11. 3; for spelling see notes on the last two passages.

<sup>12</sup> χόνδρυλλα conj. Salm. from Plin. l.c., cf. 7. 11. 4 n.; ἀνδράλα Ald. G. cf. Plin. 21. 105; Diosc. 2. 133.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ὅσα κιχοριώδη καλεῖται διὰ τὴν ὁμοιότητα τῶν φύλλων· πάντα γάρ πως ἐμφερῇ ἔχει τῷ κιχορίῳ· πάλιν καυκαλὶς ἐνθρυσκον ἡδύοσμον. οἱ δὲ μυρία ἄλλα καλοῦσιν, σκάνδιξ καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαῦτα σκανδικώδη, τραγοπώγων, οἱ δὲ κόμην καλοῦσιν, ὃ τὴν μὲν ρίζαν ἔχει μακρὰν καὶ γλυκεῖαν τὰ δὲ φύλλα τῷ κρόκῳ ὅμοια πλὴν μακρότερα, τὸν καυλὸν δὲ βραχύν, ἐφ' οὗ τὴν κάλυκα μεγάλην καὶ ἐξ ἄκρου μέγαν τὸν πάππον πολιόν, ἀφ' οὗ καλεῖται τραγοπώγων.

- 2 Ὅμοίως δὲ καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα τοιαύτας μὲν ιδέας ἔχει τοὺς δὲ χυλοὺς ἐδωδίμους ἢ ὠμοὺς ἢ ἐφθούς· ἓνια γὰρ δεῖται πυρώσεως, ὥσπερ μαλάχη καὶ τευτλὶς καὶ τὸ λάπαθον καὶ ἡ ἀκαλύφη καὶ τὸ παρθένιον· τὸν δὲ στρύχνον καὶ ὠμὸν ἐσθίουσιν, ὃν καὶ εὐκήπευτόν τινες πρότερον . . . καὶ ἕτερα δὲ πλείω τούτων, ἐν οἷς καὶ ὁ παροιμιαζόμενός ἐστι διὰ πικρότητα κόρχορος ἔχων τὸ φύλλον ὠκιμῶδες. πάντα δὲ τὰ μὲν ἐπέτεια τὰ δὲ ἐπετειόκαυλα τυγχάνει· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐξαυαίνονται τῶν δὲ διαμένουσιν εἰς πλείω χρόνον αἱ ρίζαι· σχεδὸν δὲ οὐκ ἐλάττω τὰ τοιαῦτά ἐστι.
- 3 Φύεται δὲ τὰ μὲν καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ριζῶν καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν σπερμάτων, τὰ δὲ ἕτερα μόνον ἀπὸ σπέρ-

<sup>1</sup> καλεῖται conj. Sch.; ταῦτα Ald.

<sup>2</sup> ἐνθρυσκον: Sch. conjectured ἐνθρυσκος, form corrected by L. Dindorf; ἐνθουσικόν Ald. G. cf. Plin. 22. 81.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 27. 142; Diosc. 2. 138.

<sup>4</sup> κάλυξ: cf. 8. 2. 4; 8. 4. 3.

<sup>5</sup> πάππον conj. W.; παγητὸν U<sup>Ald.</sup>; πώγων H. cf. Diosc. l.c., where Saracenus corrects καρπὸς to πάππος.

<sup>6</sup> τοιαύτας (sc. herbaceous) P<sup>mBas.</sup>; τοιαῦτα τὰς Ald.; τὰς αὐτὰς conj. W.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. vii. 1-3

those that are called <sup>1</sup> 'chicory-like' because of the resemblance in the leaves; for to a certain extent the leaves of all these are like those of chicory; and we may add *kaukalis* chervil<sup>2</sup> green mint. Some include under the name countless others, as wild chervil and all plants that resemble it, and goat's beard,<sup>3</sup> which some call *kome* ('hair'), which has a long sweet root and leaves like those of the crocus, but longer, and a short stem, on which is set the sheath<sup>4</sup>; this is large, and on the top is the large mass of grey pappus,<sup>5</sup> from which it gets its name of 'goat's beard.'

In like manner all those may be included which have a similar<sup>6</sup> appearance, but juices suitable for food whether raw or cooked; for some need the action of fire, as *malakhe* (cheese-flower) beet monk's rhubarb nettle and bachelor's buttons; while garden nightshade<sup>7</sup> is also eaten raw, and some in former times<sup>8</sup> considered it worth growing in gardens. There are also many more, including the plant which has become proverbial<sup>9</sup> for its bitterness, blue pimpernel, which has a leaf like basil. All these are either annual or have annual stems; for some of them wither away altogether in one season, while of others the roots persist for a longer time, and to this class belong the majority.

Some of these plants grow from roots and also from seed—unless in some cases they come up

<sup>1</sup> i.e. *σπρόχυνος ὁ ἐδώδιμος*: cf. 7. 15. 4. The American 'wonder-berry.'

<sup>2</sup> *πρότερον* Ald.; \**πρότερον* Bas.; *ἀνόμεσαν* conj. W. Text probably defective.

<sup>3</sup> *κόρχορος ἐν λαχάνοις* is the proverb. cf. Ar. *Vesp.* 239, Schol.; Plin. 21. 183. (= 'Is Saul also among the prophets?')

## THEOPHRASTUS

ματος, εἰ μή τι καὶ αὐτόματον. ἡ δὲ βλάστησις καὶ τούτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τῶν μὲν ἅμα τοῖς πρώτοις ὑετοῖς ἐστι μετ' ἰσημερίαν, οἷον ἀπάπης καὶ τοῦ κύνωπος καὶ ἦν καλοῦσί τινες βούπρηστιν, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Πλειάδα, καθάπερ καὶ κιχορίου καὶ σχεδὸν τῶν ἄλλων τῶν κιχοριωδῶν. καὶ τὰ μὲν εὐθύς ἅμα τῇ βλαστήσει τὸ ἄνθος ἀφίησι, καθάπερ ἡ ἀφία, τὰ δὲ ὕστερον οὐ πολλῶ, καθάπερ ἡ ἀνεμώνη, τὰ δὲ ἅμα τῷ ἡρι καὶ ἐκκαυλεῖ καὶ ἀνθεῖ, καθάπερ τὸ κιχώριον καὶ τὰ κιχοριώδη καὶ τῶν ἀκανθικῶν ὅσα λαχανώδη.

- 4 Διαφορὰ δὲ τῶν ἀνθῶν πολλή, περὶ ἧς ἐν τοῖς πρότερον εἴρηται· σχεδὸν γάρ ἐστι κοινὸν ἀπάντων· ἔνια δὲ καὶ ὅλως ἀνανθῇ, καθάπερ καὶ τὸ ἐπίπετρον. συμβαίνει δὲ τοῖς ἅμα τῷ καυλῷ τὸ ἄνθος ἀφιεῖσι ταχεῖαν εἶναι τὴν ἀπάνθησιν· πλήν ἡ μὲν ἀπάπη γηράσαντος τοῦ πρώτου πάλιν ἄλλο καὶ ἄλλο παραφύει, καὶ τοῦτο ποιεῖ παρ' ὅλον τὸν χειμῶνα καὶ τὸ ἔαρ ἄχρι τοῦ θέρους. πολὺν δὲ χρόνον καὶ ὁ ἡριγέρων. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα οὐ ποιεῖ τοῦτο, καθάπερ οὐδὲ ὁ κρόκος οὔτε ὁ εὖοσμος οὔθ' ὁ λευκὸς οὔθ' ὁ ἀκανθώδης· οὗτοι δὲ ἄοσμοι.

VIII. Κοινὴ δὲ διαφορὰ πάντων τῶν ποιωδῶν ἡ τοιάδε· τὰ μὲν γάρ ἐστιν ὀρθόκαυλα καὶ νευρό-

<sup>1</sup> δὲ after *τούτων* om. W.

<sup>2</sup> ἀπάπης (or ἀπάτης) conj. Sch.; ἀφάκης U; ἀφάκεις MAld. cf. 7. 7. 1 n. Plin. l.c., however, has *aphace*.

<sup>3</sup> ἐπίπετρον conj. Scal. from Plin. l.c.; ἐπίμετρον UMald.G. cf. Heusch. <sup>4</sup> καυλῷ conj. Sch.; καρπῷ UMald.G.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. VII. 3—VIII. 1

spontaneously. The growth alike of these<sup>1</sup> and of others takes place in some cases with the first rains after the equinox, for instance, dandelion<sup>2</sup> rib-grass and the plant which some call *buprestis*; in other cases after the rising of the Pleiad, for instance, chicory and most of the plants of that class. Some produce their flower immediately at the time of making growth, as lesser celandine, some not long after, as anemone, while some as soon as spring comes send up both their stems and flower, as chicory and the plants which resemble it, and those spinous plants which come under the head of pot-herbs.

There is much difference in the flowers, of which we have spoken already; for such difference is a thing common to all; and some are altogether flowerless, as stonecrop.<sup>3</sup> Those which produce their flower with the stem<sup>4</sup> quickly shed the flower; except that dandelion,<sup>5</sup> when the first flower is past its prime, produces another and yet another, and continues to do so right through the winter and spring up to the summer. Groundsel<sup>6</sup> also blooms for a long time; the others however do not do this; for instance the crocus does not, neither the scented (saffron crocus) nor the white nor the spinous kind,<sup>7</sup>—which last are scentless.

*Of the differences in stem and leaf found in all herbaceous plants.*

VIII. A distinction which is found in all herbaceous plants alike is the following:—some have straight

<sup>1</sup> ἀράκη γηρήσαντος conj. W.; ἀκηγήρδσαντος U; ἀπογήρδσαντος Mald.; ἀράκη ἀπογήρδσαντος H. cf. Plin. l.c.; 7. 7. 1 n.

<sup>2</sup> cf. C.P. 1. 22. 4; Plin. 25. 106.

<sup>7</sup> See Index. This plant can only have been called κρόκος because it produced a yellow dye.

## THEOPHRASTUS

καυλα, τὰ δὲ ἐπιγειόκαυλα, καθάπερ μαλάχη σκάνδιξ σίκυος ἄγριος· τὸ δὲ ἡλιοτρόπιον ἔτι μᾶλλον ὥς εἰπεῖν τοιοῦτον, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀκανθώδεσιν οὖσιν τρίβολος καὶ ἡ κάππαρις καὶ ἄλλα πλείω· καὶ γὰρ ἐκείνων ἡ διαφορὰ πλείων. ἔνια δὲ περιαλλόκαυλα, μὴ ἔχοντα δὲ ποῦ προσπέσωσιν ἐπιγειόκαυλα, καθάπερ ἐπετινή καὶ ἀπαρίνη καὶ ἀπλῶς ὧν ὁ καυλὸς λεπτὸς καὶ μαλακὸς καὶ μακρὸς, δι' ὃ καὶ φύονται ταῦτα ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πᾶν ἐν ἄλλοις· κοινὴ δὴ καὶ αὕτη ἡ διαφορὰ πάντων οὐ μόνον τῶν ποιωδῶν καὶ φρυγανικῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν θαμνωδῶν· καὶ γὰρ ἡ ἔλιξ καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἡ σμῖλαξ περιαλλόκαυλον.

- 2 Ἐτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ποιωδῶν τὰ μὲν πολύκαυλα τὰ δὲ μονόκαυλα· καὶ τῶν μονοκαύλων τὰ μὲν ἀπαράβλαστα κατὰ τὸν καυλὸν τὰ δὲ παραβλαστικά, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἡμέροις ἢ τε ῥαφανῖς καὶ ἄλλ' ἄττα. πολύκαυλα δὲ ὥς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν τὰ ἐπιγειόκαυλα, μονόκαυλα δὲ καὶ ὀλιγόκαυλα τὰ ὀρθόκαυλα. τούτων δὲ ἀπαράβλαστα τὰ λειόκαυλα κρόμυον πρᾶσον σκόροδον, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἡμέροις καὶ τὰ μὲν εὐθύκαυλα τὰ δὲ σκολιόκαυλα καὶ τούτων [τοῖς ἡμέροις] ὑπάρχει.
- 3 Διαφορὰ δέ τις καὶ τοιάδε τῶν ποιωδῶν ἐστὶ· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐπιγειόφυλλα τὰ δ' ἐπικαυλόφυλλα τυγχάνει τὰ δ' ἀμφοτέρως. ἐπιγειόφυλλα μὲν

<sup>1</sup> ἐπιγειόκαυλα conj. Cornarius ; ἐπετειόκαυλα Ald H.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 7. 15. 1 ; Diosc. 4. 190 and 191 ; Plin. 22. 57.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. VIII. 1-3

and fibrous stems, some prostrate stems,<sup>1</sup> as *malakhe* (cheese-flower) wild chervil 'wild cucumber' (squirting cucumber); while *heliotropion*<sup>2</sup> has this character<sup>3</sup> to an even greater extent, and so, among spinous plants, have caltrop caper and several others; for in these too the above-mentioned distinction is even more marked. Some again have clasping stems, but if they have nothing on which to throw themselves, their stems become prostrate, as *epetine* bedstraw and in general those which have a slender soft long stem; wherefore these in general grow in the midst of<sup>4</sup> other plants. This point of difference too is common not only to all herbaceous plants and under-shrubs, but also to shrubby ones; for *helix* (ivy) has a clasping stem, and, still more, smilax.

Again of herbaceous plants too some have several stems, some only one; and of the latter some have no side-shoots along the stem, while others have side-shoots, for instance, among cultivated plants radish and some others. Those with prostrate stems have generally more than one, while those with erect stems have but one or a few. Of these those with smooth stems have no side-shoots, as onion leek garlic—the wild, as well as the cultivated forms; and of these<sup>5</sup> again some have straight, some crooked stems.

There is also the following point of difference in herbaceous plants:—some have their leaves on the ground, some on the stem, some have both characters. The following have ground leaves—crowsfoot<sup>6</sup> the

<sup>3</sup> τοιοῦτον conj. Sch. from G; τοῦτων Ald.

<sup>4</sup> ἐν; G seems to have read ἐν'.

<sup>5</sup> τοῖς ἡμέροις probably repeated by mistake from above.

<sup>6</sup> cf. C.P. 2. 5. 4; Plin. 22. 48; Diosc. 2. 130.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κορωνόπους ἄνθεμον ἀφύλλανθες ἄγχουσα πόα  
ἀνεμώνη ἀπαργία ἀρνόγλωσσον ἀπάπη· ἐπικαυ-  
λόφυλλα δὲ κρηπὶς ἄνθεμον τὸ φυλλῶδες λωτὸς  
λευκόϊον· ἀμφοτέρως δὲ τὸ κιχώριον· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ  
τῶν καυλῶν ἅμα ταῖς ἐκφύσεσι ταῖς ἀκρεμονικαῖς  
ἐκφύει τι καὶ ἄνθος· καὶ τῶν φυλλακάνθων ἔνια,  
πλὴν ἀκανθώδεσι κομιδῇ, καθάπερ ὁ σόγκος.

IX. Ἔστι δὲ καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄκαρπα τὰ δὲ κάρ-  
πιμα. καὶ ὅλως τῶν ποιωδῶν τὰ μὲν ἄχρι τῶν  
φύλλων ἀφικνεῖται, τὰ δὲ καυλὸν ἔχει καὶ ἄνθος  
καρπὸν δὲ οὐ. τὰ δὲ καὶ καρπὸν ὥσπερ τελειο-  
τάτην φύσιν, εἰ μὴ τι καὶ ἄνευ τοῦ ἄνθους καρπο-  
φόρον, ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῶν δένδρων.

Διαφέρει δὲ καὶ τὰ φύλλα σχεδὸν οὐκ ἐλάττο-  
σιν ἀλλὰ πλείοσι διαφοραῖς ἢ τὰ τῶν δένδρων·  
καὶ πρὸς αὐτὰ δὲ ἐκεῖνα διαφορὰς ἔχει· μεγίστην  
μὲν ὡς εἰπεῖν ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἀπὸ μίσχου προσπέφυκε,  
τὰ δὲ αὐτὰ μὲν ὡς ἀπλῶς, τὰ δὲ καυλικῇ τινι  
προσφύσει. καὶ τῶν μὲν ἐν τῇ βλαστήσει προ-  
τερεῖ <ὁ καυλός>, τῶν δὲ πλείστων τὰ φύλλα, καὶ  
σχεδὸν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ μέγιστα γίνονται καὶ μάλιστα  
ἐδώδιμα· τὰ δὲ ἐκ τῶν δένδρων προωθεῖ τινα  
καυλόν.

<sup>1</sup> ἀφύλλανθες placed after ἄνθεμον by Sch.; in Ald. placed  
after ἀνεμώνη. cf. 7. 14. 2; Plin. 21. 56.

<sup>2</sup> ἀπάπη U; ἀπάτη Ald. cf. 7. 7. 1 n.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 1. 13. 1. and Index.

<sup>4</sup> ἐκφύει τι καὶ MSS.; ? ἐκφύει φύλλον τε καὶ W.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. VIII. 3-IX. 1

*anthemon* whose flowers have no petals<sup>1</sup> (wild camomile) alkanet grass anemone hawk's beard plantain dandelion<sup>2</sup>; the following have leaves on the stem—ox-tongue the *anthemon* which has petalled flowers<sup>3</sup> trefoil gilliflower; while chicory has both kinds of leaves; for this plant produces,<sup>4</sup> as well as leaves, a certain number of flowers on the stems at the points where the side-shoots are attached. Similar too are some of the plants with spinous leaves, but not those that are altogether spinous, as sow-thistle.

*Of other differences seen in herbaceous plants in general, as compared with one another and with trees.*

IX. Again some are barren, while others bear fruit, and, speaking generally, of herbaceous plants some get as far as producing leaves only, others have a stem and flower, but no fruit; some again have fruit as the completion of their development, while some bear fruit even though they have no flower, as is the case with some trees.

<sup>5</sup> The leaves of herbaceous plants again differ in hardly fewer, nay, even in more, ways than those of trees, and further, they present differences as compared with these, the chief being perhaps that some are attached by a leaf-stalk, some are attached directly, some attached with cauline appendages.<sup>6</sup> And in some herbaceous plants the stalk<sup>7</sup> is the first part to grow, but in most the leaves, which almost at the outset grow to their largest and are best for eating; whereas the leaves of trees always push out first a sort of stalk.

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 21. 100.

<sup>6</sup> i.e. petiolate, sessile, and decurrent respectively.

<sup>7</sup> ὁ καυλός add Sch. from G.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- 2 Διαφέρουσι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄνθεσι πολὺ· ἐν μὲν γὰρ τοῖς δένδρεσι τὰ γε πλείστα λευκά, τὰ δὲ μικρὸν ἐπιπορφυρίζοντα, τὰ δὲ ποώδη καὶ χλωώδη, κεχρωσμένον δὲ ἀνθινῷ <οὐδέν· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ποιώδεσι τῶν ἀνθῶν> πολλὰ καὶ παντοδαπαὶ χροιαὶ καὶ ἄκρατοι καὶ μεμιγμένοι καὶ εὖοσμοι δὴ καὶ ἄοσμοί εἰσιν. καὶ τὰ μὲν δένδρα τὴν ἄνθησιν ἀθρόαν ποιεῖται, τούτων δ' ἓν κατὰ μέρος, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη καὶ περὶ τοῦ ὠκίμου, δι' ὃ καὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἀνθεῖ, καθάπερ ἄλλα τε πολλὰ καὶ τὸ ἡλιοτρόπιον καὶ τὸ κιχώριον.
- 3 Πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τῶν ῥιζῶν διαφοραὶ καὶ τρόπον τινὰ αἱ τούτων φανερώτεραι· εἰσὶ γὰρ αἱ μὲν ξυλῶδεις αἱ δὲ σαρκώδεις καὶ ἰνώδεις, ὥσπερ καὶ τῶν ἡμέρων, καθάπερ αἷ τε τοῦ σίτου καὶ τῆς πόας τῆς πλείστης. αὐτῶν δὲ τούτων ἕκασται πλείστας ἔχουσι διαφορὰς χρώμασιν ὁσμαῖς χυμοῖς μεγέθεσιν· αἱ μὲν γὰρ λευκαὶ αἱ δὲ μέλαιναί αἱ δ' ἐρυθραί, καθάπερ ἡ τε τῆς ἀγχούσης καὶ τοῦ ἐρευθεδάνου· αἱ δ' ὥσπερ ξανθαὶ καὶ ξυλοειδεῖς· καὶ γλυκεῖαι δὲ καὶ πικραὶ καὶ δριμεῖαι καὶ εὐώδεις καὶ κακώδεις, καὶ ἔναια φαρμακώδεις, ὡς ἐν ἄλλοις εἴρηται.
- 4 Διαφοραὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν σαρκωδῶν· αἱ μὲν γὰρ στρογγύλαι αἱ δὲ προμήκεις καὶ βαλανώδεις, ὥσπερ ἀσφοδέλον καὶ κρόκον· καὶ αἱ μὲν λεπυριώδεις, ὥσπερ ἡ τοῦ βολβοῦ καὶ τῆς σκίλλης καὶ ὅσαι βολβώδεις καὶ κρομύου δὲ καὶ γηθύου καὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. 1. 13. 1.

<sup>2</sup> οὐδέν . . . ἀνθῶν add. Scal. from G (κεχρωσμένων δὲ ἀνθικῷ πολλὰ UMAld.); ἀνθινῷ for ἀνθικῷ conj. W., who also added τῶν ἀνθῶν. See LS. ἀνθινός.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. ix. 2-4

There is also much difference as to the flowers between herbaceous plants and trees; for in trees<sup>1</sup> most of the flowers are white, while some are slightly reddish, others are greenish or greenish-yellow, but none of them<sup>2</sup> have distinct gay colours; while in herbaceous plants the flowers shew many and various colours, both simple and in combination, and further, some of them are scented, others not. Again<sup>3</sup> trees produce all their bloom at once, while some herbaceous plants have a succession of flowers, as we said<sup>4</sup> of basil; wherefore it is in flower for a long period, as are many other herbs, such as *heliotropion* and *chicory*.

There are also many differences in the roots, and, in a way, the differences in these are more obvious; some are woody, some fleshy and fibrous, just as in the cultivated kinds, as are those of corn and most kinds of grass. Again the roots themselves exhibit in each case very many differences in colour smell taste and size; some are white, some black, some red, as those of alkanet and madder; some are yellowish,<sup>5</sup> or the colour of wood.<sup>6</sup> Again there are roots which are sweet, bitter, pungent, fragrant, evil-smelling; and some are medicinal, as has been said elsewhere.

There are also differences between those with fleshy roots; the roots of some are round, of some oblong and acorn-shaped, as those of asphodel and crocus;<sup>7</sup> some consist of several layers, as those of purse-tassels squill and others which belong to that class, onion long onion and others like

<sup>1</sup> ἄσχομοι εἰσιν. καὶ τὰ μὲν conj. W.; ἄσχομοι. καὶ ἐνίων τὰ μὲν  
Ald H. <sup>4</sup> 7. 3. 1.

<sup>5</sup> ὥσπερ MSS.; πλείσται conj. W.

<sup>6</sup> ξυλοειδεῖς: cf. 7. 3. 2.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 1. 6. 7; 6. 6. 10.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὅσα τούτοις ὅμοια. αἱ δὲ ὁμαλεῖς καὶ ψαθυραὶ καὶ μαλακαὶ δι' ὅλου καὶ ὥσπερ ἄφλοιοι, καθάπερ τοῦ ἄρου· αἱ δὲ φλοιὸν ἔχουσι πρὸς τῇ σαρκί, καθάπερ ἡ τοῦ κυκλαμίνου καὶ τῆς γογγυλίδος. οὐχ ἅπασαι δ' αἱ εὐώδεις ἢ γλυκεῖαι ἢ εὐστομοὶ καὶ ἐδώδιμοι, οὐδ' αἱ πικραὶ ἄβρωτοι· ἀλλ' ὅσαι ἀβλαβεῖς εἰσι τῷ σώματι μετὰ τὴν προσφορὰν· ἔναι γὰρ γλυκεῖαι μὲν θανάσιμοι δὲ καὶ νοσώδεις, 5 αἱ δὲ πικραὶ μὲν ἢ κακώδεις ὠφέλιμοι δέ. τὸν αὐτὸν δὲ τρόπον καὶ φύλλα καὶ καυλοί, καθάπερ τοῦ ἀψινθίου καὶ τοῦ κενταυρίου. διαφορὰ δὲ καὶ κατὰ τὴν βλάστησιν καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἀνθήσιν, οἶον ἀρχομένου χειμῶνος καὶ μεσοῦντος καὶ πάλιν ἡρος ἢ θέρους ἢ μετοπώρου. καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ καρπῶν δὲ ὁμοίως τῷ βρωτοῦς εἶναι καὶ ἐγχύλους ἐνίοις καὶ φύλλα καὶ σπέρματα καὶ ῥίζας· καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς τούτοις κατὰ τοὺς χυλοὺς, οἶον ὀξύτητι καὶ δριμύτητι καὶ γλυκύτητι καὶ αὐστηρότητι καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ταῖς τοιαύταις ἀπλῶς τε καὶ κατὰ τὸ μᾶλλον. τὰς μὲν οὖν διαφορὰς ἐν τούτοις ληπτέον.

X. Διηρημένων δὲ κατὰ τὰς ὥρας ἐκάστων πρὸς τε τὰς βλαστήσεις καὶ κατὰ τὰς ἀνθήσεις καὶ τελειώσεις τῶν καρπῶν, οὐδὲν ἀναβλαστάνει πρὸ τῆς οἰκείας ὥρας οὔτε τῶν ῥιζοφυῶν οὔτε τῶν σπερμοφυῶν, ἀλλ' ἕκαστον ἀναμένει τὴν

<sup>1</sup> καὶ conj. W.; ἢ Ald.

<sup>2</sup> τῷ βρωτοῦς εἶναι καὶ ἐγχύλους ἐνίοις conj. W.; τὸ βρωτὸν εἶναι καὶ καυλοὺς εἶναι Ald. H. Text probably defective.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. ix. 4-x. 1

these. Some are smooth loose and soft throughout, and, as it were, without 'bark,' as those of cuckoo-pint, while some have a 'bark' attached to the fleshy part, as those of cyclamen and turnip. And not all those that are fragrant or sweet or pleasant to the taste are also<sup>1</sup> edible, any more than all those that are bitter are uneatable; any (whether sweet or bitter) that are harmless to the body after being eaten are edible; for some that are sweet are deadly and dangerous to health, while some are beneficial even if they are bitter or have an evil smell. The same may be said of the leaves and stalks, as in the case of wormwood and centaury. There are also differences in the time of growth and of flowering, the season being variously the beginning or middle of winter, or again spring, summer, or autumn. So too is there in like manner a difference in the fruits, which<sup>2</sup> in some of these plants are edible and juicy, as well as<sup>3</sup> the leaves seeds and roots. And in these cases there are further differences in the taste (of those which are edible and juicy), which may be sharp, pungent, sweet, dry, or exhibit other similar differences, either altogether or in degree. These are examples of the differences which we find.

*Of the seasons at which herbs grow and flower.*

X. Each plant having its proper season for growth, flowering and maturing of the fruit, nothing grows<sup>4</sup> before its proper season either of those grown from a root or of those grown from seed, but each awaits

<sup>1</sup> καὶ ῥίζας seems irrelevant.

<sup>4</sup> ἀναβλαστάνει conj. W.; ἀναβλαστεῖ καὶ Ald. H.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- οἰκείαν οὐδ' ὑπὸ τῶν ὑδάτων οὐδέν πάσχον· ἔνια γὰρ θερινὰ κομιδῇ καὶ τῇ βλαστῆσει καὶ τῇ ἀνθήσει, καθάπερ ὃ τε σκόλυμος καὶ ὁ σίκυος ἄγριος, ὥσπερ καὶ περὶ τῶν φρυγανικῶν ἐλέχθη περὶ κονύζης τε καὶ καππάριδος καὶ τῶν ἄλλων· οὐδέν γὰρ οὐδὲ ἐκείνων ἀνθεῖ καὶ βλαστάνει πρὸ
- 2 τῆς οἰκείας ὥρας. δι' ὃ κἂν ταύτῃ δόξαιεν ἂν διαφέρειν τῶν δένδρων. τῶν μὲν γὰρ ἅμα πως πάντων ἢ ἐγγὺς ἢ βλάστησις, εἰ δὲ μὴ κατὰ μίαν γε ὥραν ὡς εἰπεῖν· τούτων δὲ ἐν πολλαῖς μᾶλλον δὲ ἐν ἀπάσαις ἢ βλάστησις καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ ἀνθησις, ὥστε εἴ τις ἐθέλει κατανοεῖν σχεδὸν συνεχῆς γίνεται καθ' ὅλον ἐνιαυτὸν καὶ ἡ βλάστησις καὶ ἡ ἀνθησις· αἰεὶ γὰρ ἕτερον ἐξ ἐτέρου διαδεχόμενον πάσας καταλαμβάνει τὰς ὥρας· οἶον μετὰ τὴν ἀπάπην κρόκος ἔσται καὶ ἀνεμώνη καὶ ὁ ἡριγέρων καὶ τὰ ἄλλα χειμερινά, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τὰ ἡρινὰ <καὶ θερινὰ> καὶ μετοπωρινά.
- 3 πολλὰ δέ, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, διὰ τὸ κατὰ μέρος ἀνθεῖν ἐπιτείνεται ταῖς ὥραις· ἔνια γὰρ οὕτως ἀνθεῖ, καθάπερ ἡ τε ἀπάπη καὶ τὸ ὄνοχειλές καὶ τὸ κιχώριον καὶ τὸ ἀρνόγλωσσον καὶ ἄλλα· διὰ δὲ τὴν συνέχειαν καὶ τὴν περικατάληψιν τὴν ὑπ' ἀλλήλων οὐ φαίνεται ῥάδιον ἐν ἐνίοις οὐδ' ὀρίσαι ποῖα πρῶτα βλαστάνει καὶ ποῖα ὀψιβλαστῇ· πλὴν εἴ τις ὑποβοῶτο τοῦ ἔτους τὴν ἀρχὴν τινα

οὐδ' conj. W.; οὐθ' Ald.      <sup>2</sup> Reference not discoverable.

ἀπάπην conj. W.; ἀφάκην UMald. cf. 7. 7. 1 n.

κρόκος conj. Sch. (adding δ); ἡρος U (corrected); κρος M;

om. Ald.; τὸ κρόκον mBas.

καὶ θερινὰ seems to have dropped out.

διὰ τὸ κατὰ μέρος ἀνθεῖν conj. W.; καὶ τῶν κατὰ μέρος ἀνθέων

Ald.

# ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. x. 1-3

its proper season and is not<sup>1</sup> affected even by rain. For some are plants which belong properly to summer as to their growth and their flowering, as golden thistle and squirting cucumber, as was said<sup>2</sup> of shrubby plants and of *konyza* caper and the rest; for of these too none blooms or grows before its proper season. Wherefore in this respect too these plants would seem to differ from trees. For trees make their growth all at once or nearly so, or at all events we may say that they do so all at one season; but the plants of which we are now speaking have their times of growing and still more of flowering at many or rather at all seasons; so that, if one will consider it, both the growing and the flowering are almost continuous throughout the year; for one continually succeeds to another, so that all seasons are covered; thus after the dandelion<sup>3</sup> will come the crocus<sup>4</sup> anemone groundsel and the other plants of winter, and after these those of spring summer<sup>5</sup> and autumn. Some again, as was said, because they do not produce all their bloom at once,<sup>6</sup> cover a longer season; for there are some that thus bloom, for instance dandelion<sup>7</sup> bugloss<sup>8</sup> chicory plantain, and others; but because of this continuity and overlapping it does not seem easy in some cases to define which first make growth and which are late in growing,—unless<sup>9</sup> one were to lay down that the ‘year’

<sup>1</sup> ἀπάπη conj. W.; ἀφάκη Ald. cf. 7. 7. 1 n.

<sup>2</sup> ὀνοχειλές conj. Sch. from Plin. 21. 100; Diosc. 4. 24; ὀνοκίχλης UMald.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. unless one has a fixed starting-point. *τινα ἔρας τινος ἀρχῇ* conj. W.; *τινα πρὸς τῇ ἵνα ζῇ(?)* U; text defective in MAld., but both give *ἵνα ζῇ*; W. conjectures also *τροπὰς τὰς χειμερινὰς*. ? *εἶναι ἔρας τινος ἀρχήν* or *εἶναι ἔραν τινα* (omitting *εἰ ζῇ* as a trace of a lost sentence).

## THEOPHRASTUS

1 ὥρας τινὸς ἀρχῇ. καὶ αὐτῶν δὲ τούτων τὰς γενέσεις καὶ τὰς ὥρας ὅταν τελειωθέντων τῶν καρπῶν πάλιν ἄλλας ἀρχὰς ἐνίστλωνται τῆς γενέσεως· ὅπερ μάλιστα δοκεῖ συμβαίνειν μετ' ἰσημερίαν μετοπωρινήν· τότε γὰρ ἤδη τὰ σπέρματα πλείστα τετελείωται καὶ τῶν δενδρικῶν καρπῶν οἱ πολλοί, καὶ ἅμα μεταβολή τις αὐτοῦ τούτου προσγίνεται καὶ τῆς ὥρας· ὅσα δὲ ἀτελῇ καὶ ἄπεπτα περικαταλαμβάνεται, τούτοις κατὰ λόγον ἐκ περιόδου καὶ ἡ βλάστησις γίνεται καὶ ἡ ἄνθησις καὶ ἡ τελείωσις· δι' ὃ συμβαίνει τὰ μὲν ὑπὸ τροπᾶς ἀνθεῖν τὰ δ' ὑπὸ Κύνα τὰ δὲ καὶ μετὰ Ἀρκτοῦρον καὶ ἰσημερίαν μετοπωρινήν.

5 'Αλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἔοικε κοινοτέραν ἔχειν σκέψιν εἰς ἀφορισμὸν ἀρχῆς. ὅτι δὲ αἱ διαφοραὶ πλείους ἢ οὐκ ἐλάττους ἐν τούτοις φανερόν. ἐπεὶ καὶ αἰείφυλλα τῶν τοιούτων ἐστὶν ἔνια, καθάπερ τὸ πόλιον καὶ ἡλιοτρόπιον καὶ τὸ ἀδίαντον.

XI. Ἀφωρισμένων οὖν τούτων περὶ τὰς διαφορὰς ἐν οἷς γίνονται καὶ πῶς λεκτέον ἤδη τὰς καθ' ἕκαστον ἱστορίας . . . ὅσα μὴ κατὰ τὴν

<sup>1</sup> i.e. to fix the date of the beginning and end of the cycle of the plant's life.

<sup>2</sup> αὐτοῦ τούτου: ? the plant itself. αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἔτους conj. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. according as the seed ripened last year or this year. In this rather obscure section I follow W.'s explanations.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 21. 100.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. x. 3-XI. 1

begins when a certain season begins. Further in these plants it is not easy to define<sup>1</sup> in each case the time of first growth and the season when, the fruits being matured, it makes a fresh start in reproduction. This seems chiefly to occur after the autumnal equinox; for by that time most of the seeds are matured, like most of the fruits of trees: moreover a change then takes place in the seed<sup>2</sup> itself as well as in the season. But in the case of any seeds which are still immature and unripe and so are overtaken by winter, the period of first growth, the flowering of the new plant, and the period of maturity are proportionally later. Wherefore it comes to pass that some bloom at the solstice, some at the rising of the dog-star, and some after the rising of Arcturus and the autumnal equinox.<sup>3</sup>

But these matters seem to require a wider investigation in order to determine when the process begins. However it is clear from what has been said that these plants present at least as many differences as trees. <sup>4</sup>For some again of this class are evergreen, as hylwort *heliotropion* and maiden-hair.

*Of the classes into which herbaceous plants may be divided, as those having a spike and chicory-like plants.*

XI. Having then made these explanations we must now give a separate account of each plant, discussing the differences (in those plants in which they occur) and saying how they arise . . .<sup>5</sup> except those peculiarities which belong to the

<sup>5</sup> Lacuna in UMald.Cam.Bas., leaving the connexion of the next clause obscure.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ιδίαν ἐκάστου φύσιν. λέγω δὲ οἶον τὰ σταχυώδη καὶ τὰ σκανδικώδη καὶ μονοφυῆ, καὶ εἴ τι ἕτερόν ἐστι τοιοῦτον κοινὸν ἐπὶ πάντων λαβεῖν, ὃ τῇ αἰσθήσει γνῶριμον ἢ φύλλοις ἢ ἄνθεσιν ἢ ῥίζαις ἢ καρποῖς· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν φανερῶν ὁ μερισμὸς ὥσπερ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ῥιζῶν.

- 2 Σταχυώδη μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ὃ τε κύνωψ ὑπὸ τινων καλούμενος πλείους ἔχων ιδέας ἐν ἑαυτῷ· καὶ ὁ ἄλωπέκουρος καὶ ὁ στελέφουρος ὑπ' ἐνίων δὲ ἄρνόγλωσσον τῶν δὲ ὄρτυξ καλούμενος· παρόμοιον δὲ τούτῳ τρόπον τινὰ καὶ ἡ θρυαλλίς. ἀπλᾶ δὲ καὶ μονοειδῆ τρόπον τινὰ ταῦτα καὶ στάχυν οὐκ ὀξὺν οὐδ' ἀθερώδη ἔχοντα· ὁ δὲ ἄλωπέκουρος μαλακὸν καὶ χνοωδέστερον, ὅτι καὶ ὅμοιον ταῖς τῶν ἄλωπέκων οὐραῖς, ὅθεν καὶ τοῦνομα μετέιληφεν. ὅμοιος δὲ τούτῳ καὶ ὁ στελέφουρος, πλὴν οὐχ ὥσπερ ἐκεῖνος ἀνθεῖ κατὰ μέρος ἀλλὰ δι' ὅλου τοῦ στάχυνος ὥσπερ ὁ πυρός. ἡ δὲ ἄνθησις ἀμφοῖν χνοώδης, καθάπερ καὶ τοῦ σίτου· παρόμοιον δὲ τῇ ὅλῃ μορφῇ τῷ πυρῷ πλὴν πλατυφυλλότερον. ὡσαύτως δὲ τούτοις καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ σταχυώδη λεκτέον.

- 3 Τὰ δὲ κιχοριώδη πάντα μὲν ἐπετειόφυλλα καὶ ῥιζόφυλλα, βλαστάνει δὲ μετὰ Πλειάδα πλὴν τῆς ἀπάπης, τοῖς δὲ καυλοῖς καὶ ταῖς ῥίζαις

<sup>1</sup> i.e. spicate.

<sup>2</sup> σκανδικώδη: i.e. umbellate. One would expect κιχοριώδη. to correspond with § 3; but the three classes mentioned seem to be merely 'samples' of classification: of the three only one (τὰ σταχυώδη) is described below, and other classes are added.

<sup>3</sup> μονοφυῆ I conj: i.e. those which have a scape: cf. 2. 6. 9; C.P. 1. 1. 3. μυόφαα U; μυοφῶα MAld.; om. G.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. xi. 1-3

character of individual kinds. I mean for instance the plants which have a spike,<sup>1</sup> those which may be classed with wild chervil,<sup>2</sup> and those which have a single stem,<sup>3</sup> . . . or any other such class in which one can find some such general characteristics obvious to the senses either in leaves flowers roots or fruits; (for the classification is to be made by the visible parts, as well as by the roots).<sup>4</sup>

<sup>5</sup> An example of the plants which have a spike is the plant which some call 'dog's eye'<sup>6</sup> (rib-grass), which comprises several forms; we have also 'fox-brush,' *stelephuros* (plantain), which some call 'lamb's tongue' and some 'quail-plant'; and somewhat similar to this is *thryallis*. These are simple plants and uniform in character, having a spike which is not pointed nor bearded; while in 'fox-brush' it is soft and somewhat downy, in that it actually resembles the brush of a fox, whence also it has obtained its name. Similar to this is *stelephuros* (plantain), except that it does not, like that plant, flower here and there, but all up the spike like wheat. The bloom of both is downy like that of corn, and the plants in their general appearance resemble wheat, but have broader leaves. Of the other plants which have a spike a similar account may be given.

<sup>7</sup> The chicory-like plants all have annual leaves and have root-leaves, and they begin to grow after the Pleiad, except dandelion<sup>8</sup>; but in their stems

<sup>4</sup> Roots being the basis of classification in xii. below.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 21. 101.

<sup>6</sup> *κύνωψ* conj. Sch.; *ἀχύνωψ* UAld.; Plin. *l.c.* has *cynops* (cf. 7. 7. 3); *oculus caninus* G.

<sup>7</sup> i.e. composites. Plin. *l.c.*

<sup>8</sup> *ἀνδρῆς* U; *ἀνδρῆς* MAld. cf. 7. 7. 1 n.; 7. 8. 3 n.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μεγάλας ἔχουσι διαφοράς· οἱ μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπλούστεροι καὶ ἐλάττους, ὁ δὲ τοῦ κιχορίου μέγας καὶ ἀποφύσεις ἔχων πολλὰς, ἔτι δὲ γλίσχρος καὶ δυσδιαίρετος, δι' ὃ καὶ δεσμῷ χρῶνται· παραβλαστητικὸν δὲ καὶ τῇ ρίζῃ καὶ ἄλλως μακρόρριζον, δι' ὃ καὶ δυσώλεθρον· ὅταν γὰρ ἐκλαχανίσωνται, πάλιν τὸ ὑπόλοιπον ἀρχὴν λαμβάνει γενέσεως. συμβαίνει δὲ καὶ παρανθεῖν αὐτοῦ μέρος ἄλλο καὶ ἄλλο, καὶ τοῦτο ἄχρι τοῦ μετοπώρου, σκληροῦ δοκοῦντος εἶναι τοῦ καυλοῦ. φέρει δὲ καὶ λοβὸν ἐν ᾧ τὸ σπέρμα περὶ τὰ ἄκρα τῶν καυλῶν.

- 4 Ἡ δὲ ὑποχοιρίς λειοτέρα καὶ ἡμερωτέρα τῇ προσόψει καὶ γλυκυτέρα καὶ οὐχ ὥσπερ ἡ χόνδρυλλα· τὸ γὰρ ὅλον οὐκ ἐδώδιμος αὕτη καὶ ἄβρωτος καὶ ἐν τῇ ρίζῃ δριμὺν ὅπὸν ἔχει καὶ πολὺν.

Ἄβρωτος δὲ καὶ πικρὰ ἡ ἀπάπη· πρωϊανθὴς δὲ καὶ ταχὺ γηράσκει καὶ ἀποπαπποῦται, εἴτ' ἄλλο φύεται πάλιν καὶ ἄλλο καὶ τοῦτο παρ' ὅλον ποιεῖ τὸν χειμῶνα καὶ τὸ ἔαρ ἄχρι τοῦ θέρους· τὸ δ' ἄνθος μελινοειδές.

Ὁσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἡ πικρίς· καὶ γὰρ αὕτη τῷ ἡρι ἀνθεῖ, καὶ παραπλησία δι' ὅλον τοῦ χειμῶνος καὶ τοῦ θέρους παρανθεῖ· τῇ γεύσει δὲ πικρά, δι' ὃ καὶ τοῦνομα εἴληφε. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐν ταύ-

<sup>1</sup> ἐλάττους conj. Scal.; θάττους UMAld.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 21. 88.      <sup>3</sup> τὸ conj. Sch.; τὴν Ald.

<sup>4</sup> Meaning not obvious; σκληροῦ is perhaps corrupt.

<sup>5</sup> ὑποχοιρίς conj. Scal.; ὑποχώρησις UMAld. cf. 7. 7. 1 n.

<sup>6</sup> οὐχ ὥσπερ : an adjective has perhaps dropped out between these words; ? πικρὰ (amara Plin. l.c.).

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XI. 3-4

and roots they exhibit great differences; for in some these are simpler and fewer,<sup>1</sup> but the stem of chicory is large and has many side-shoots; also it is tough and hard to break, wherefore it is used for withes<sup>2</sup>; it makes side-growths from the root, and also has long roots, wherefore it is hard to kill; for, when the top is taken off to use as a vegetable, what remains<sup>3</sup> starts growing again. Moreover different parts of it flower at different times, and the flowering goes on till autumn, since the stem appears to be hard.<sup>4</sup> Also it bears a pod, which contains the seed, at the top of the stem.

Cat's ear<sup>5</sup> is smoother and has a more cultivated appearance, and is also sweeter and not like *khondrylla*<sup>7</sup>; for the latter is altogether uneatable and<sup>8</sup> unfit for food, and its root contains a quantity of pungent juice.

Dandelion<sup>9</sup> is also unfit for food and bitter: it flowers early and quickly waxes old and the flower turns to pappus; but then another flower forms, and yet another, and this goes on right through the winter and spring up to the summer; and the flower is yellow.

<sup>10</sup> The like may be said of *pikris*: for this plant too blooms in spring, and like dandelion it flowers throughout the winter, and it flowers also to some extent in summer; in taste it is bitter, whence its name. These are the special points of difference

<sup>7</sup> *χόνδρυλλα* conj. St.; *χανδρυ αλλα* U; *χανδρὺν αλλα* M; *χανδρὰς ἀλλὰ* Ald. H.; *cadryalia* G (Tarv.); *candralia* G (Bas. Par.).

<sup>8</sup> *τὸ γὰρ ὄλον οὐκ ἐδώδιμος αὕτη καὶ* conj. W.; *τὸ ὄλον οὐκ ἐδ. αὕτη γὰρ* Ald.; *αὕτη γὰρ ἄβρωτος* conj. Sch. from Plin. 21. 105.

<sup>9</sup> *ἀπάπη* conj. W.; *ἀφάκη* Ald. cf. 7. 7. 1 n.

<sup>10</sup> Plin. 22. 66.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ταις ταῖς διαφοραῖς. πειρατέον δέ, ὥς ἐλέχθη, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων λαμβάνειν ὁμοίως.

XII. Πολὺν δέ τι γένος ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν σαρκορρίζων ἢ κεφαλορρίζων, ἃ καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα καὶ καθ' αὐτὰ τὰς διαφορὰς ἔχει ρίζαις τε καὶ φύλλοις καὶ καυλοῖς καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις μορφαῖς. τῶν γὰρ ριζῶν, ὥσπερ εἴρηται πρότερον, αἱ μὲν λεπυριώδεις αἱ δὲ σαρκώδεις, καὶ αἱ μὲν ἔχουσαι φλοιὸν αἱ δ' ἄφλοιοι, ἔτι δὲ αἱ μὲν στρογγύλαι αἱ δὲ προμήκεις καὶ αἱ μὲν ἐδώδιμοι αἱ δ' ἄβρωτοι. ἐδώδιμοι μὲν γὰρ οὐ μόνον βολβοὶ καὶ τὰ ὅμοια τούτοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡ τοῦ ἀσφοδέλου ρίζα καὶ ἡ τῆς σκίλλης, πλὴν οὐ πάσης ἀλλὰ τῆς Ἐπιμενιδείου καλουμένης, ἣ ἀπὸ τῆς χρήσεως ἔχει τὴν προσηγορίαν· αὕτη δὲ στενοφυλλοτέρα τε καὶ λειοτέρα τῶν λοιπῶν ἐστίν.

Ἐδώδιμος δὲ καὶ ἡ τοῦ ἄρου καὶ αὕτη καὶ τὰ φύλλα προαφεψηθέντα ἐν ὄξει καὶ ἐστὶν ἡδεῖά τε καὶ πρὸς τὰ ρήγματα ἀγαθή. πρὸς δὲ τὴν αὐξήσιν αὐτῆς, ὅταν ἀποφυλλίσωσιν, ἔχει δὲ μέγα σφόδρα τὸ φύλλον, ἀνορύξαντες στρέφουσιν, ὅπως ἂν μὴ διαβλαστάνῃ ἀλλὰ πᾶσαν ἔλκη τὴν τροφήν εἰς ἑαυτήν, ὃ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν βολβῶν τινες

<sup>1</sup> cf. 7. 11. 2 *ad fin.*

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 19. 93 and 94.

<sup>3</sup> μορφαῖς: cf. 8. 4. 2.

<sup>4</sup> 7. 9. 4.

<sup>5</sup> The legends about Epimenides suggest that the 'use' was possibly in magic: cf. what is said of σκίλλα 7. 13. 4. cf. Plin. *l.c.*

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XI. 4-XII. 2

about these plants; now we must endeavour, as was said,<sup>1</sup> to set forth the special points of the other classes in like manner.

*Of herbs which have fleshy or bulbous roots.*

XII. <sup>2</sup> There is a large class of these which have fleshy or bulbous roots: these exhibit differences both as compared with other plants and with one another both in roots leaves stems and their other prominent features.<sup>3</sup> Of the roots, as has been said<sup>4</sup> already, some are in layers, some fleshy, some have a 'bark,' some not; and again some are round, some oblong, some edible and some not fit for food. Among edible roots are not only purse-tassels and others which resemble them, but also the roots of asphodel and squill, though not of all kinds of the latter, but only of the kind called 'Epimenides' squill (French sparrow-grass) which gets its name from its use<sup>5</sup>; this kind has narrower leaves and is smoother than the others.

<sup>6</sup> The root of cuckoo-pint is also edible, and so are the leaves, if they are first boiled down in vinegar; they are sweet, and are good for fractures. To increase the root, having first stripped<sup>7</sup> off the leaves (and the leaf is very large), they dig<sup>8</sup> it up and invert<sup>9</sup> it in order that it may not shoot,<sup>10</sup> but may draw all the nourishment into itself. This some

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 19. 96; 24. 162.

<sup>7</sup> ἀποφυλλίσωσιν conj. Sch.; ἀποφυλάσσωσιν U; ἀποφυλλάσσωσιν MALD.

<sup>8</sup> ἀνορύξαντες conj. St.; δ ἀνορύξαντες Ald.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 1. 6. 10; Plin. 19. 94 and 97, who seems to have read κατορύξαντες: so also G. ? 'they plunge it in a pit.'

<sup>10</sup> διαβλασάνη: cf. C.P. 4. 8. 1.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ποιουῦσι συντιθέντες· ἡ δὲ τοῦ δρακοντίου, καλοῦσι γάρ τι δρακόντιον ἄρον διὰ τὸ τὸν καυλὸν ἔχειν τινὰ ποικιλίαν, ἄβρωτος καὶ φαρμακώδης.

Ἄλλὰ ἡ τοῦ φασγάνου καλουμένου γλυκεῖά τε ἐψηθεῖσα, καὶ τριφθεῖσα μιγνυμένη τῷ ἀλεύρῳ ποιεῖ τὸν ἄρτον γλυκὺν καὶ ἀσινῆ· στρογγύλη δέ ἐστι καὶ ἄφλοιος καὶ ἀποφύσεις ἔχουσα μικράς, ὥσπερ τὸ γήθυν· πολλὰς δὲ εὐρίσκουσιν ἐν ταῖς σκαλοπιαῖς· χαίρει γὰρ καὶ συλλέγει τὸ ζῶον.

Ἡ δὲ τοῦ θησειῦ τῇ μὲν γεύσει πικρά, τριβομένη δὲ κοιλίαν ὑποκαθαίρει. φαρμακώδεις δὲ τινές εἰσι καὶ ἕτεραι, πολλῶν δὲ οὔτε φαρμακώδεις οὔτε ἐδώδιμοι. καὶ αὗται μὲν ἐν ταῖς ῥίζαις αἱ διαφοραί.

XIII. Κατὰ δὲ τὰ φύλλα τοῖς τε μεγέθεσιν καὶ τοῖς σχήμασιν. ὁ μὲν ἀσφόδελος μακρὸν καὶ στενότερον καὶ ὑπόγλισχρον ἔχει τὸ φύλλον, ἡ δὲ σκίλλα πλατὺ καὶ εὐδιαίρετον, τὸ δὲ φάσγανον ὑπὸ τινων δὲ καλούμενον ξίφος ξιφοειδές, ὅθεν ἔσχε καὶ τοῦνομα, ἡ δὲ ἶρις καλαμωδέστερον· τὸ δὲ τοῦ ἄρου πρὸς τῇ πλατύτητι καὶ ἔγκοilon καὶ σικνωδές ἐστιν· ὁ δὲ νάρκισσος στενὸν καὶ πολὺ καὶ λιπαρόν· βολβὸς δὲ καὶ τὰ βολβώδη παντελῶς στενὰ καὶ τοῦ κρόκου δ' ἐτι στενότερον.

Καυλὸν δὲ τὰ μὲν οὐκ ἔχει τὸ ὅλον οὐδ' ἄνθος, ὥσπερ τὸ ἄρον τὸ ἐδώδιμον· τὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ ἄνθους μόνον, ὥσπερ ὁ νάρκισσος καὶ ὁ κρόκος· ἔνια δὲ ἔχει, καθάπερ ἡ σκίλλα καὶ ὁ βολβὸς καὶ ἡ ἶρις καὶ τὸ ξίφιον· μέγιστον δὲ πάντων ἀσφό-

<sup>1</sup> συντιθέντες: sense doubtful. Sch. and W. mark the word as corrupt.

<sup>2</sup> cf 9. 20. 3; Plin. 24. 142; Diosc. 2. 166.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XII. 2—XIII. 2

do also with purse-tassels, when they lay them by.<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>2</sup> However the root of edder-wort (for a kind of cuckoo-pint is so called because of its variegated stem) is not good for food, but is used for drugs.

But the root of the plant called corn-flag is sweet, and, if cooked and pounded up and mixed with the flour, makes the bread sweet and wholesome. It is round and without 'bark,' and has small offsets like the long onion. Many of them are found in moles' runs<sup>3</sup>; for this animal likes them and collects them.

<sup>4</sup> The root of *theseion* is bitter to the taste, but when pounded purges the bowels. There are also certain others of these roots which have medicinal properties, but of many the roots are neither medicinal nor edible. Such are the differences in the roots.

XIII. <sup>5</sup> In the leaves the differences are in size and shape. Asphodel has a long leaf, which is somewhat narrow and tough, while that of squill is broad and tears easily; corn-flag, which is called by some *xiphos* ('sword'), has a sword-like leaf, whence its name, and iris one more like a reed. That of cuckoo-pint, in addition to being broad, is concave and like that of cucumber; that of the narcissus is narrow substantial and glossy, those of purse-tassels and plants of that character are quite narrow, and that of crocus narrower still.

<sup>6</sup> Some have not a stem at all, nor a flower, as the edible cuckoo-pint; some have only the flower-stem, as narcissus and crocus; some however have a stem, as squill purse-tassels iris and corn-flag; but asphodel

<sup>3</sup> παρὰ ταῖς σκαλοπιαῖς conj. Sch; ἐν ταῖς σκ. conj. W.; ταῖς σκαλοπιαῖς UMaId. <sup>4</sup> Plin. 22. 66. <sup>5</sup> Plin. 21. 108.

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 21. 108 and 109.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- δελος· ὁ γὰρ ἀνθέρικος μεγιστος· ὁ δὲ τῆς ἱριδος ἐλάττων μὲν σκληρότερος δὲ τὸ δὲ ὅλον ἀνθερικώδης. ἔστι δὲ καὶ πολύκαρπος ὁ ἀσφόδελος, καὶ ὁ καρπὸς αὐτοῦ ξυλώδης τῇ μὲν μορφῇ τρίγωνος τῷ δὲ χρώματι μέλας· γίνεται δὲ ἐν τῷ στρογγύλῳ τῷ ὑποκάτω τοῦ ἄνθους, ἐκπίπτει δὲ τοῦ
- 3 θέρους, ὅταν τοῦτο διαχάνῃ. τὴν ἀνθησιν ποιεῖται κατὰ μέρος, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς σκίλλης, ἄρχεται δὲ πρῶτον ἀπὸ τῶν κάτωθεν. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἀνθερικῷ συνίσταται σκώληξ, ὃς εἰς ἄλλο μεταβάλλει ζῶον ἀνθρηνοειδές, εἰθ' ὅταν ὁ ἀνθέρικος αὐανθῇ διεσθίου ἐκπέταται. δοκεῖ δὲ ἴδιον ἔχειν πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα τὰ λειόκαυλα, διότι στενὸς ὢν ἀποφύσει ἀνωθεν ἔχει. πολλὰ δὲ εἰς τροφήν παρέχεται χρήσιμα· καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀνθέρικος ἐδώδιμος σταθευόμενος καὶ τὸ σπέρμα φρυγόμενον καὶ πάντων δὲ μάλιστα ἡ ῥίζα κοπτομένη μετὰ σύκου καὶ πλείστην ὄνησιν ἔχει καθ' Ἡσίοδον.
- 4 "Ἀπαντα μὲν οὖν φιλόζῳα τὰ κεφαλόρριζα μάλιστα δ' ἡ σκίλλα· καὶ γὰρ κρεμαννυμένη ζῇ καὶ πλείστον γε χρόνον διαμένει· δύναται δὲ καὶ τὰ θησαυρίζόμενα σώζειν, ὥσπερ τὴν ῥόαν ἐμπηγνυμένου τοῦ μίσχου, καὶ τῶν φυτευομένων δ' ἓν α βλαστάνει θᾶπτον ἐν αὐτῇ· λέγεται δὲ καὶ πρὸ τῶν θυρῶν τῆς εἰσόδου φυτευθεῖσαν ἀλεξητήριον εἶναι τῆς ἐπιφερομένης δηλήσεως. πάντα δὲ ταῦτα ἀθρόα φύεται, καθάπερ καὶ τὰ κρόμυα καὶ τὰ σκόροδα· παραβλαστάνουσι γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς

<sup>1</sup> ἐκπίπτει conj. W.; ἐκπίπτων Ald.

<sup>2</sup> ἀνθησιν conj. Scal.; ἀναυσιν corr. to ἀθανσιν U; ἀναυσιν M; ἀθανσιν Ald.; *floret ver partes* G.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XIII. 2-4

has the tallest of all—for the *antherikos* (asphodel-stalk) is very tall : that of iris is smaller, but tougher, though in general it is like the asphodel-stalk. Asphodel also produces much fruit, and its fruit is woody : in shape it is triangular and in colour black ; it is found in the round vessel which is below the flower, and it falls out<sup>1</sup> in summer when this splits open. It does not produce all its flowers<sup>2</sup> at once ; in which respect it resembles squill, but the flowering begins at the bottom. In the stalk of asphodel forms a grub which changes into another creature like a hornet, and then, when the stem withers, eats its way out and flies away. A peculiarity of the plant as compared with others which have a smooth stem appears to be that, though it is slender, it has outgrowths at the top. It provides many things useful for food : the stalk is edible when fried, the seed when roasted, and above all the root<sup>3</sup> when cut up with figs ; in fact, as Hesiod says,<sup>4</sup> the plant is extremely profitable.

Now all bulbous plants are tenacious of life, but especially squill ; for this even lives when hung up and continues to do so for a very long time ; it is even able to keep other things that are stored, for instance the pomegranate, if the stalk of the fruit is set in it ; and some cuttings<sup>5</sup> strike more quickly if set in it ; and it is said that, if planted before the entrance door of a house, it wards off mischief<sup>6</sup> which threatens it. All these bulbs grow in masses, as do onions and garlic ; for they make offsets from the root, and some

<sup>3</sup> cf. 7. 9. 4 ; 9. 9. 6.

<sup>4</sup> Hes. *Op.* 41.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 2. 5. 5 ; *C.P.* 5. 6. 10.

<sup>6</sup> Sc. witchcraft. *veneficiorum noxam* Plin. 21. 108.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ρίζης· ἔνια δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ σπέρματος φανερώς, οἶον ὃ τε ἀνθέρικος καὶ τὸ λείριον καὶ τὸ φάσγα-  
νον καὶ ὁ βολβός.

- 5 Ἄλλ' ἴδιον τοῦτο τοῦ βολβοῦ λέγεται, τὸ μὴ ἀπὸ πάντων βλαστάνειν ἅμα τῶν σπερμάτων, ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν αὐτοετὶς τοῦ δ' εἰς νέωτα, καθάπερ τὸν αἰγίλωπά φασι καὶ τὸν λωτόν. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν εἶπερ ἀληθὲς κοινὸν ἐτέρων. κοινὸν δὲ ἴσως καὶ τὸ μέλλον λέγεσθαι, πλὴν οὐ πολλῶν, θαυμαστὸν δὲ ἐπὶ πάντων, ὅπερ ἐπὶ τε τῆς σκίλλης καὶ τοῦ ναρκίσσου συμβαίνει· τῶν μὲν γὰρ ἄλλων καὶ τῶν ἐξ ἀρχῆς φυτευομένων καὶ τῶν βλαστανόντων καθ' ὥραν ἔτους τὸ φύλλον ἀνατέλλει πρῶτον, εἴθ' ὕστερον ὁ καυλός· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτων ὁ καυλὸς πρότερον.

- 6 Τοῦ ναρκίσσου δὲ ὁ τοῦ ἄνθους μόνον εὐθὺ προωθῶν τὸ ἄνθος· τῆς δὲ σκίλλης καθ' αὐτόν, εἰς ὕστερον ἐπὶ τούτῳ τὸ ἄνθος ἀνίσχον προσκαθήμενον· ποιεῖται δὲ τὰς ἀνθήσεις τρεῖς, ὧν ἡ μὲν πρώτη δοκεῖ σημαίνειν τὸν πρῶτον ἄροτον, ἡ δὲ δευτέρα τὸν μέσον, ἡ δὲ τρίτη τὸν ἔσχατον· ὥς γὰρ ἂν αὗται γένωνται καὶ οἱ ἄροτοι σχεδὸν οὕτως ἐκβαίνουσιν· ὅταν δὲ οὗτος ἀπογηράσῃ, τότε ἡ τῶν φύλλων βλάστησις πολλαῖς ἡμέραις ὕστερον· ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ ναρκίσσου, πλὴν οὔτε καυλὸν ἕτερον ἔχει παρὰ τὸν τοῦ ἄνθους, ὥσπερ εἵπομεν, οὔτε καρπὸν φανερόν, ἀλλ'

<sup>1</sup> αἰγίλωπα conj. Sch. from Plin. 21. 103; γίλωπα UMAld.

<sup>2</sup> εὐθὺ προωθῶν conj. W.; εὐθυπρόωρον Ald.H. cf. Plin. 21. 66, where however the statement is transferred to the crocus.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XIII. 4-6

plainly are also increased by seed, as the asphodel polyanthus narcissus corn-flag and purse-tassels.

However it is said to be a peculiarity of purse-tassels that all the seeds do not germinate at once, but some in the same year, some the next year; a like account is given of *aigilops*<sup>1</sup> and trefoil. If then this is true, it is not peculiar to this plant. Nor perhaps is the following characteristic, which is not found in many plants and is marvellous wherever it does occur—and it is found in squill and narcissus: namely that, whereas in most plants, whether those originally planted or those which are produced from them in season, the leaf comes up first and then presently the stem, in these plants the stem comes up first.

In the case of narcissus it is only the flower-stem which comes up, and it immediately pushes up<sup>2</sup> the flower. But in squill it is the stem<sup>3</sup> proper which thus appears, and presently the flower appears emerging<sup>4</sup> from and sitting on it. And it makes three flowerings,<sup>5</sup> of which the first appears to mark the first seed-time, the second the middle one, and the third the last one; for, according as these flowerings have occurred,<sup>6</sup> so the crops usually turn out. But, when the flower-stem<sup>7</sup> has waxed old, then the growth of the leaves follows many days later. So also is it with narcissus, except that it has no second stem besides the flower-stem, as we said, nor any visible fruit; but the flower itself

<sup>1</sup> i.e. the whole 'bud.'

<sup>2</sup> ἀνίσχων Ald.; ἀνίσχων conj. Sch. followed by W.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. l.c.; cf. 18. 237.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. the flowering is the sign when to sow. The same is said of the fruiting of σκῆνος de signis 55.

<sup>7</sup> οὖτος conj. Sch.; οὕτως Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

αὐτὸ τὸ ἄνθος ἅμα τῷ καυλῷ καταφθίνει καὶ ὅταν ἀναυθῇ τότε τὰ φύλλα ἀνατέλλει.

- 7 Πρὸς μὲν οὖν τὰ ἄλλα τὰ συνάμφω ταῦτα ἴδια· πρὸς δὲ τὰ προαυθούντα τῶν φύλλων καὶ τῶν καυλῶν, ὅπερ δοκεῖ ποιεῖν τὸ τίφνον καὶ ἕτερα τῶν ἀνθικῶν, ἔτι τε τῶν δένδρων ἢ ἀμυγδαλῇ μάλιστα ἢ μόνον, ὅτι ταῦτα μὲν ἅμα τῷ ἄνθει προφαίνει τὸ φύλλον ἢ εὐθὺς κατόπιν, ὥστε καὶ διαζητεῖσθαι περί τινων, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτων οἶον ἀφ' ἐτέρας ἀρχῆς φαίνεται καὶ διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἡμερῶν καὶ διὰ τὸ μὴ πρότερον βλαστάνειν πρὶν τοῦ μὲν τὸ ἄνθος τοῦ δὲ καὶ ὁ καυλὸς ὅλος ἀπογηράσῃ. ἢ δὲ βλάστησις προτέρα μὲν τῆς σκίλλης, ὑστέρα δὲ τοῦ ναρκίσσου· πολὺ δὲ πλέον τὸ φύλλον οὗτος ἀφίησι, καὶ ἐστὶν ἡ ῥίζα αὐτῇ μικρὰ καὶ οὐ μεγάλη, προσεμφερῆς δὲ κατὰ τὸ σχῆμα τῷ βολβῷ, πλὴν <οὐ> λεπυριώδης. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἔχει σκέψιν.

- 8 Τῶν δὲ βολβῶν ὅτι πλείω γένη φανερόν, καὶ γὰρ τῷ μεγέθει καὶ τῇ χροῇ καὶ τοῖς σχήμασι διαφέρουσι καὶ τοῖς χυλοῖς· ἐνιαχοῦ γὰρ οὕτω γλυκεῖς ὥστε καὶ ὠμούς ἐσθίεσθαι, καθάπερ ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ Ταυρικῇ. μεγίστη δὲ καὶ ἰδιωτάτη διαφορὰ τῶν ἐριοφόρων· ἐστὶ γάρ τι γένος τοιοῦτον, ὃ φύεται μὲν ἐν αἰγιαλοῖς ἔχει δὲ τὸ ἔριον ὑπὸ τοὺς πρώτους χιτῶνας, ὥστε ἀνὰ μέσον εἶναι

<sup>1</sup> τίφνον Ald., cf. C.P. 1. 10. 5; τ' ἴφνον conj. W.; *irhyum* GBas.Par. cf. 6. 6. 11.

<sup>2</sup> ἢ add. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> ἐπὶ conj. H.; περὶ UAld.

<sup>4</sup> W. adds ἂν.

<sup>5</sup> αὐτῇ: sc. apart from offsets.

<sup>6</sup> μικρὰ conj. Sch.; οὐ μικρὰ Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XIII. 6-8

perishes with the stem, and when it has withered, then the plant puts up its leaves.

These two plants then, as compared with the other bulbous plants are peculiar; and, as compared with those which bloom before the leaves and stems appear (as the autumn squill<sup>1</sup> seems to do, and other plants with conspicuous flowers, as well as, among trees, the almond especially, if not alone), there is the distinction that, while these two put forth their leaves along with the flowers or<sup>2</sup> immediately afterwards (so that about some the matter is uncertain) in<sup>3</sup> the case of these two the flower appears, as it were, from a different starting-point, there being a considerable number of days in between, and the growth of the leaves not beginning till,<sup>4</sup> in the case of one of them, the flower, and in the case of the other, the whole stem has withered. Squill produces its leaves before the flower, narcissus afterwards; but the latter produces much more abundant foliage, and the individual<sup>5</sup> root is small<sup>6</sup> rather than large, resembling purse-tassels in shape, except that it is not formed of scales.<sup>7</sup> About these matters then there is doubt.

Of purse-tassels it is plain that there are several kinds; for they differ in size colour shape and taste. <sup>8</sup> In some places they are so sweet as to be eaten raw, as in the Tauric Chersonese. But the greatest and most distinct difference is shown by the 'wool-bearing'<sup>9</sup> purse-tassels; for there is such a kind, and it grows on<sup>10</sup> the sea-shore, and has the wool beneath the outer tunic, so that it is between

<sup>1</sup> οὐ λεπυριώδης conj. Sch. from G, *non squamata*; οὐδὲ πυριώδη UMAld.; οὐ λεπυριώδης H.

<sup>8</sup> Plin. 19. 95; Athen. 2. 64.

<sup>9</sup> Plin. 19. 32. See Index.

<sup>10</sup> ἐν after μὲν add. W.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τοῦ τε ἐδώδιμον τοῦ ἐντὸς καὶ τοῦ ἔξω· ὑφαίνεται δὲ ἐξ αὐτοῦ καὶ πόδεια καὶ ἄλλα ἱμάτια· δι' ὃ καὶ ἐριῶδες τοῦτο καὶ οὐχ ὥσπερ τὸ ἐν Ἰνδοῖς τριχῶδες.

- 9 Πλείω δὲ καὶ τὰ βολβώδη καὶ ἐλάττω. ταῦτα δὲ . . . καθάπερ τὸ λευκόιον καὶ βολβίνη καὶ ὀπιτίων καὶ κύϊξ καὶ τρόπον τινὰ τὸ σισυριγχίον. βολβώδη δὲ ταῦτα ὅτι στρογγύλα ταῖς ρίζαις· ἐπεὶ τοῖς γε χρώμασι λευκὰ καὶ οὐ λεπυριώδη. ἴδιον δὲ τοῦ σισυριγχίου τὸ τῆς ρίζης αὐξάνεσθαι τὸ κάτω πρῶτον, ὃ καλοῦσι . . . χειμῶνα, τοῦ δ' ἥρος ὑποφαίνοντος τοῦτο μὲν ταπεινοῦσθαι τὸ δ' ἄνω τὸ ἐδώδιμον αὐξάνεσθαι. καὶ τὰ μὲν τοιαύτας ἔχει τὰς διαφοράς.

XIV. Ἰδία δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ἐν τοῖς ποιώδεσιν, οἷον τό [τε] ἐπὶ τοῦ ἀδιάντου συμβαῖνον· οὐδὲ γὰρ ὑγραίνεται τὸ φύλλον βρεχόμενον οὐδ' ἐπίδροσόν ἐστι διὰ τὸ μὴ τὴν νοτίαν ἐπιμένειν, ὅθεν καὶ ἡ προσηγορία. γένη δὲ αὐτοῦ δύο, τὸ μὲν λευκὸν τὸ δὲ μέλαν, χρήσιμα δ' ἀμφότερα πρὸς ἔκρυσιν κεφαλῆς τριχῶν ἐν ἐλαίῳ τριβόμενα. φύεται δὲ

<sup>1</sup> δι' ὃ καὶ ἐρ. τοῦτο: text probably defective. ? δι' ὃ καὶ <χρησιμὸν τὸ> ἐριῶδες τοῦτο: 'wherefore this woolly kind is serviceable, which the Indian hairy kind is not.'

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 19. 95.

<sup>3</sup> καὶ ἐλάττω. ταῦτα δὲ: text corrupt and defective.

<sup>4</sup> ὀπιτίων H.; ὀπιτίων Ald.; *pithyon* Plin. l.c.; ὀπιτίων and κύϊξ were possibly earth-nuts.

<sup>5</sup> γε conj. Sch; τε Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. XIII. 8—XIV. 1

the edible inside and the outside : of it are woven felt shoes and other articles of apparel. Wherefore<sup>1</sup> this kind is woolly and distinct from the Indian kind, which is hairy.

<sup>2</sup> There are also several kinds of plants of the same class as purse-tassels . . . <sup>3</sup> such as snowdrop star-flower *opition*<sup>4</sup> *kyix*, and to a certain extent Barbary nut. These belong to this class only in having round roots ; for in colour<sup>5</sup> they are white, and the bulbs are not formed of scales. A peculiarity of Barbary nut is that the lower end of the root grows first, and this is called . . . ; it grows<sup>6</sup> during winter, but, when spring appears, it decreases, while the upper part, which is edible, grows. Such are the differences in these plants.

*Of certain properties and habits peculiar to certain herbaceous plants.*

XIV. There are also the following peculiarities in herbaceous plants, for instance that<sup>7</sup> which we find in ' wet-proof ' (maidenhair) ; <sup>8</sup> the leaf does not even get wet when it is watered, nor does it catch the dew,<sup>9</sup> because the dew does not<sup>10</sup> rest on it ; whence its name. <sup>11</sup> There are two kinds, the white ' wet-proof ' (English maidenhair), and the black (maidenhair) ; and both are useful to prevent the falling off of the hair of the head, for which purpose they are pounded up and mixed with olive-oil. They grow

<sup>6</sup> ' Grows ' supplied from G and Plin. l.c., who have no trace of δ καλοῦσι.

<sup>7</sup> I have bracketed τε.

<sup>8</sup> Plin. 22. 62-65.

<sup>9</sup> ἐπίδροσον conj. W.; ἐπίδηλον UP<sub>2</sub> Mald.; nec quicquam adhaesisse humoris constat G.

<sup>10</sup> μὴ before τὴν add. W.

<sup>11</sup> Plin. l.c.; 27. 138; 25. 132.



## THEOPHRASTUS

μαλιστα πρὸς τὰ ὑδρηλά. ὥς δὲ οἴονταί τινες, καὶ πρὸς στραγγουρίαν τὸ τριχομανὲς ποιεῖ· ἔχει δὲ τὸν καυλὸν ὅμοιον τῷ ἀδιάντῳ τῷ μέλανι, φύλλα δὲ μικρὰ σφόδρα καὶ πυκνὰ καὶ πεφυκότα καταντικρὺ ἀλλήλων, ρίζα δὲ οὐχ ὕπαστι· χωρία δὲ φιλεῖ σκιερά.

2 Τῶν δὲ κατὰ μέρος ἀνθούτων ἴδιον τὸ περὶ τὸ ἄνθεμον, ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἄλλων πάντων τὰ κάτω πρῶτον ἀπανθεῖ τούτου δὲ τὰ ἄνω· τυγχάνει δ' αὐτοῦ τὸ μὲν κύκλῳ τὸ λευκὸν ἄνθος τὸ δὲ ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τὸ χλωρόν· καὶ καρπὸς ὃς ἐκπίπτει, καθάπερ τοῖς ἀκανθώδεσι, καταλιπὼν τὴν πρόσφυσιν κενήν· εἶδη δ' αὐτοῦ πλείω.

3 Ἴδιον δὲ καὶ τὸ περὶ τὴν ἀπαρίνην, ἣ καὶ τῶν ἱματίων ἀντέχεται διὰ τὴν τραχύτητα καὶ ἐστι δυσαφαίρετον· ἐν τούτῳ γὰρ ἐγγίνεται τῷ τραχεῖ τὸ ἄνθος οὐ προῖόν οὐδὲ ἐκφαίνειν ἄλλ' ἐν ἑαυτῷ πεττόμενον καὶ σπερμογονοῦν· ὥστε παρόμοιον εἶναι τὸ συμβαῖνον ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῶν γαλεῶν καὶ ῥινῶν· ἐκεῖνά τε γὰρ ἐν ἑαυτοῖς ὠστοκήσαντα ζωογονεῖ, καὶ αὕτη τὸ ἄνθος ἐν ἑαυτῇ κατέχουσα καὶ πέττουσα καρποτοκεῖ.

XV. Ὅσα δὲ τὰς ἀνθήσεις λαμβάνουσι ἀκολουθοῦντα τοῖς ἄστροις, οἷον τὸ ἡλιοτρόπιον καλούμενον καὶ ὁ σκόλυμος, ἅμα γὰρ ταῖς τροπαῖς καὶ οὗτος, ἔτι δὲ τὸ χελιδόνιον, καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο ἅμα τῷ χελιδονίᾳ ἀνθεῖ, ταῦτα δὲ δόξειεν ἂν τῇ μὲν φυσικὴν ἔχειν τὴν αἰτίαν τῇ δὲ συμπτωματικὴν.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. the white kind. Sch. followed by G adds τὸ καὶ τριχομανὲς καλούμενον after τὸ μὲν λευκὸν above.

especially in damp places. Some think that *trikhomanes*<sup>1</sup> (English maidenhair) is also useful in cases of strangury. Its stem is like that of the black kind, but it has small leaves, which are close set and grow in opposite pairs; there is no root below, and the plant loves shady places.

Of those plants which do not flower all at once *anthemon* has the peculiarity that, while in all others<sup>2</sup> the lower part flowers first, in this plant it is the upper part which does so; the outer circle of the flower is white,<sup>3</sup> and the centre green<sup>4</sup>; and the fruit falls off, as in spinous plants, leaving the attachment bare. There are several forms of it.

<sup>5</sup> Bedstraw has the peculiarity that it sticks to clothes owing to its roughness, and it is hard to pull away; indeed it is in this rough part that the flower is contained: it does not project nor show, but matures within itself and produces seed; so that its habit is like that of weasels and sharks; for, as these animals<sup>6</sup> likewise produce eggs in themselves and then bear their young alive, so this plant keeps its flower within itself, matures it and produces fruit.

XV. <sup>7</sup> As to these plants whose flowering time is dependent on the heavenly bodies,<sup>8</sup> as the plant called *heliotropion*, golden thistle (for this also blooms at the solstice), and also 'swallow-plant' (greater celandine)—for this blooms when the<sup>9</sup> Swallow-wind blows—the reason in these cases would seem to be partly in their nature and partly accidental.

<sup>2</sup> ἴδιον after πάντων om. W. after Sch.

<sup>3</sup> τὸ λευκόν: ? λευκὸν τὸ.

<sup>4</sup> ? om. τὸ before χλωρόν.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 21. 104.

<sup>6</sup> cf. Arist. H.A. 6. 11.

<sup>7</sup> Athen. 15. 32.

<sup>8</sup> ἄστροις conj. St.; ἀγρίοις Ald.

<sup>9</sup> τῷ conj. Sch.; τῇ MAld. cf. Plin. 2. 122.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 2 Πολλὰ δὲ τοιαῦτά ἐστι καὶ ἐν ἑτέροις ἴδια· οἶον καὶ ἡ τοῦ ἀειζώου φύσις τὸ διαμένειν ὑγρὸν αἰὶ καὶ χλωρόν, φύλλον σαρκῶδες ἔχον καὶ λεῖον καὶ πρόμηκες. φύεται δὲ ἐν τε τοῖς ἀλιπέδοις τοῖς τε ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν ἀνδύροις καὶ οὐχ ἡκιστα ἐπὶ τῶν κεράμων, ὅταν ἐπιγένηται γῆς τις ἀμμώδης συρροή.
- 3 Πολλὰ δ' ἂν τις ἴσως λάβοι καὶ ἕτερα περιττά. χρὴ δέ, ὥσπερ πολλάκις εἴρηται, τὰς ιδιότητας θεωρεῖν καὶ τὰς διαφορὰς πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα. τὰ μὲν ἐν πλείοσιν ιδέαις ἐστὶ καὶ σχεδὸν οἶον ὁμωνύμοις, ὥσπερ ὁ λωτός· τούτου γὰρ εἶδη πολλὰ διαφέροντα καὶ φύλλοις καὶ καυλοῖς καὶ ἄνθεσι καὶ καρποῖς, ἐν οἷς καὶ ὁ μελίλωτος καλούμενος· καὶ δυνάμει δὲ τῇ κατὰ τὴν προσφοράν, ἔτι τε τῷ μὴ τοὺς αὐτοὺς τόπους ζητεῖν. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἕτερα πλείω.
- 4 Τὰ δὲ ἐν ἐλάττοσιν, ὥσπερ ὁ στρύχνος ὁμωνυμία τινι παντελῶς εἰλημμένος· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἐδώδιμος καὶ ὥσπερ ἡμερον, καρπὸν ἔχων ῥαγώδη, ἕτεροι δὲ δύο εἰσίν, ὧν ὁ μὲν ὑπνον ὁ δὲ μανίαν ἐμποιεῖν δύναται, πλείων δ' ἔτι δοθεὶς καὶ κτείνει. ὁμοίως δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐφ' ἑτέρων ἐστὶ λαβεῖν, ἃ πολλὴν ἔχει διάστασιν. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἄλλων τῶν ποιωδῶν ἱκανῶς εἴρηται. περὶ δὲ τοῦ σίτου καὶ τῶν σιτωδῶν μετὰ ταῦτα λεκτέον· τοῦτο γὰρ ἔτι κατάλοιπον ἦν.

<sup>1</sup> οἶον conj. W.; διδ Ald.

<sup>2</sup> ἀλιπέδοις conj. Sch.; ἀληπέδοις U; ἀληπέδοις M; ἀλοπέδοις Ald. cf. Xen. *Hell.* 2. 4. 30.

<sup>3</sup> τε after τοῖς add. W. after Lobeck.

<sup>4</sup> e.g. λωτός and μελίλωτος. See Index, λωτός.

<sup>5</sup> μελίλωτος conj. Bod.; μελίς σίτος Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VII. xv. 2-4

Such peculiarities are common in other plants also ; thus<sup>1</sup> it is the nature of the house-leek to remain always moist and green, its leaf being fleshy smooth and oblong. It grows on flat shores,<sup>2</sup> on the<sup>3</sup> earthy tops of walls, and especially on tiled roofs, when there is on them a sandy accumulation of earth.

Possibly one might mention many other eccentricities. But, as has been repeatedly said, we must only observe the peculiarities and differences which one plant has as compared with others. Some plants are found in several forms which have almost<sup>4</sup> the same name, for instance the *lotos* ; for of this there are many forms differing in leaves stems flowers and fruit, including the plant called *melilotos*<sup>5</sup> ; there are also forms differing in the virtues for which<sup>6</sup> they are used as food, and again in their fondness for different localities. So too is it with many other plants.

Others are found in fewer forms, as *strykhnos*,<sup>7</sup> which is a general name covering plants that are quite distinct ; one is edible and like a cultivated plant, having a berry-like fruit, and there are two others,<sup>8</sup> of which the one is said to induce sleep, the other to cause madness, or, if it is administered in a larger dose, death. The same thing may be observed in other plants which are widely different. Now about the other herbaceous plants enough has been said ; but concerning corn and corn-like plants we must speak next ; for this subject still lies before us.

<sup>6</sup> δὲ τῇ conj. Sch ; διττα UM ; διτταῖς Ald.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 7. 7. 2 ; Plin 21. 177-179 ; Diosc. 4. 70-73 ; Index.

<sup>8</sup> In 9. 11. 5 these two plants are said to be *συνάνθυμοι*, i.e. different forms of the same plant, whereas the 'edible' *στρούχνος* is the same only in name (*δμωνυμία*). cf. 9. 12. 5.



## BOOK VIII



I. Περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἄλλων ποιωδῶν ἱκανῶς εἰρήσθω· περὶ δὲ σίτου καὶ τῶν σιτωδῶν λέγωμεν ὁμοίως τοῖς πρότερον· τοῦτο γὰρ κατάλοιπον ἦν τῶν ποιωδῶν.

Δύο δὲ αὐτοῦ γένη τὰ μέγιστα τυγχάνει· τὰ μὲν γὰρ σιτώδη, οἶον πυροὶ κριθαὶ τίφαι ζειαὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ ὁμοιόπυρα ἢ ὁμοιόκριθα· τὰ δὲ χεδροπά, οἶον κύαμος ἐρέβινθος πισὸς καὶ ὄλως τὰ ὄσπρια προσαγορευόμενα· τρίτον δὲ παρ' αὐτὰ κέγχρος ἔλυμος σήσαμον καὶ ἀπλῶς τὰ ἐν τοῖς θερινοῖς ἀρότοις ἀνώνυμα κοινῇ προσηγορία.

- 2 Ἔστι δὲ ἡ μὲν γένεσις αὐτῶν μία καὶ ἀπλῇ· φύεται γὰρ ἀπὸ σπέρματος, ἐὰν μὴ τι σπάνιον καὶ ὀλίγον ἀπὸ τῆς ῥίζης. ὦραι δὲ τοῦ σπόρου τῶν πλείστων δύο· πρώτη μὲν καὶ μάλιστα ἡ περὶ Πλειάδος δύσιν, ἥ καὶ Ἡσίοδος ἠκολούθηκε

<sup>1</sup> τῶν before ποιωδῶν om. Sch.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 48-80.

<sup>3</sup> ἔλυμος: μελίγη appears to be the Attic name for this plant. Sch. would restore it for ἔλυμος here and 4. 4. 10; 8. 11. 1.

## BOOK VIII

### OF HERBACEOUS PLANTS: CEREALS, PULSES, AND 'SUMMER CROPS.'

*Of the three classes and the times of sowing and of germination.*

I. Let the above suffice for an account of the other herbaceous<sup>1</sup> plants; let us now discuss corn and corn-like plants in the same manner as those already treated; for this class of herbaceous plants we reserved.

<sup>2</sup> There are two principal classes; there are the corn-like plants such as wheat barley one-seeded wheat rice-wheat and the others which resemble either of the first two; and again there are the leguminous plants, as bean chick-pea pea, and in general those to which the name of pulses is given. Besides these there is a third class, which includes millet<sup>3</sup> Italian millet, sesame and in general the plants which belong to the summer seed-time,<sup>4</sup> which lack any common designation.

There is only one single way of propagating these; they grow from seed, except that some may grow rarely and scantily from a root. There are two seasons for sowing most of them; the first and most important is about the setting of the Pleiad<sup>5</sup>; this rule we find even Hesiod<sup>6</sup> following with

<sup>1</sup> cf. 8. 7. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Πλειάδος conj. Sch.; πλειάδας U; πλειάδων Ald.

<sup>3</sup> Hes. *Op.* 383.



## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ σχεδὸν οἱ πλείστοι, δι' ὃ καὶ καλοῦσί τινες αὐτὴν ἄροτον· ἄλλη δ' ἀρχομένου τοῦ ἡρος μετὰ τὰς τροπὰς τοῦ χειμῶνος. οὐ τῶν αὐτῶν δὲ ἑκατέρα. τὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν φιλεῖ πρωῒσπορεῖσθαι, τὰ δὲ ὁψὲ διὰ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι φέρειν τοὺς χειμῶνας, τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἀμφοτέρας τὰς ὥρας οὐ κακῶς ἔχει, καὶ πρὸς χειμῶνα καὶ πρὸς ἔαρ.

- 3 Πρωῒσπορα μὲν οὖν ἐστὶ πυρὸς κριθή, καὶ τούτων ἡ κριθή πρωῒσπορώτερον· ἔτι δὲ ζειὰ τίφη ὀλύρα καὶ εἴ τι ἕτερον ὁμοιόπυρον· ἀπάντων γὰρ σχεδὸν ὁ αὐτὸς χρόνος τῆς σποράς· τῶν δὲ χεδροπῶν μάλιστα ὡς εἰπεῖν κύαμος καὶ ὠχρος· ταῦτα γὰρ διὰ τὴν ἀσθένειαν προλαβεῖν τῇ ῥιζώσει βούλεται τοὺς χειμῶνας· πρωῒσπορον δὲ καὶ ὁ θέρμος· ἀπὸ τῆς ἄλω γὰρ φασι δεῖν καταβάλλειν εὐθύς.

- 4 Ὀψῒσπορα δὲ τούτων γε αὐτῶν ὅσα διαφέρει τοῖς γένεσιν, οἷον πυρῶν τέ τι γένος καὶ κριθῶν ὃ καλοῦσι τρίμηνον διὰ τὸ ἐν τοσούτῳ τελειοῦσθαι· καὶ τῶν χεδροπῶν τὰ τοιάδε, φακὸς ἀφάκη πισός· ἐν ἀμφοτέραις δὲ ταῖς ὥραις τῶν χεδροπῶν, καθάπερ ὄροβος ἐρέβινθος· οἱ δὲ καὶ τὸν κύαμον ὁψὲ σπείρουσιν, ἂν ὑστερήσωσι τῶν πρώτων ἀρότων. ἀπλῶς δὲ πρωῒσποροῦσι τὰ μὲν δι' ἰσχὺν ὡς δυνάμενα φέρειν τοὺς χειμῶνας, τὰ δὲ δι' ἀσθένειαν, ὅπως προλάβωσι ταῖς εὐδαίαις τὴν αὐξησιν. δύο μὲν οὖν αὐται. τρίτη δὲ τῶν θερινῶν ἦν

<sup>1</sup> A cultural variety of ζειά. cf. 8. 9. 2.

<sup>2</sup> τῶν δέ γε Ald.; γε om. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> ὠχρος conj. W.; κέγχρος Ald.; om. G cf. 8. 3. 1 and 2.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 8. 11. 8.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. I. 2-4

most authorities; wherefore some call it simply 'the seed-time.' Another time is at the beginning of spring after the winter equinox: However different crops are sown at the two seasons. For some of them love to be sown early, some late because they cannot bear the winters, while some will do not amiss at either season, both towards winter and towards spring.

Crops sown early are wheat and barley, and of these the latter is sown the earlier; also rice-wheat one-seeded wheat *olyra*,<sup>1</sup> and others which resemble wheat. For all of these the time of sowing is about the same. Of leguminous plants<sup>2</sup> bean and *okhros*,<sup>3</sup> it may be said, are specially sown at this time; for these on account of their weakness like to be well rooted before the winter. Lupin is also sown early; in fact they say it should be sown straight from the threshing-floor.<sup>4</sup>

Those which are sown late are certain special varieties<sup>5</sup> of these very kinds, as a certain kind of wheat, and of barley the kind which is called 'three months barley' because it takes that time to mature; and among leguminous plants lentil tare pea. However some of these plants are sown at both seasons, as vetch and chick-pea; some also sow beans late, if they have missed the first seed-time. To speak generally, some crops are sown early because of their robustness, since they can stand the winters, some because of their weakness, so that their growth may be secured<sup>6</sup> in the fine weather. These then are the two seasons; the third is that of the summer crops of which we

<sup>5</sup> τοῖς γένεσιν: τῇ γενέσει W. i.e. 'certain kinds which differ as to their germination.' <sup>6</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 7. 2.

## THEOPHRASTUS

εἶπομεν, ἐν ᾗ κέγχρος σπείρεται καὶ μέλινος καὶ σήσαμον, ἔτι δ' ἐρύσιμον καὶ ὄρμινον. χρόνοι μὲν οὖν ἐκάστων οὗτοι.

- 5 Βλαστάνει δὲ τὸ μὲν θάττον τὸ δὲ βραδύτερον· καὶ κριθὴ μὲν καὶ πυρὸς ἐβδομαῖα μάλιστα· προτερεὶ δὲ ἡ κριθὴ μᾶλλον· τὰ δ' ὄσπρια τεταρταῖα ἢ πεμπταῖα πλήν κυάμων· κύαμος δὲ καὶ τῶν σιτωδῶν ἔνια πλείοσιν· ἐνιαχοῦ γὰρ καὶ πεντεκαιδεκαταῖος, ὅτε δὲ καὶ εἰκοσταῖος· δυσφυέστατον γὰρ τοῦτο πάντων, εἰ δὲ δὴ καὶ σπαρέντος ἐπὶ πλέον ὕδωρ ἐπιγένηται, καὶ παντελῶς. εἰ δὲ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἡρινοῖς ἀρότοις θάττον ἢ ἑκφυσις διὰ τὴν ὥραν σκεπτέον.
- 6 Χρὴ δὲ τὰς ἀναβλαστήσεις καὶ τὰς διαφύσεις ταύτας ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πᾶν διαλαβεῖν· ἐνίστε γὰρ ἐνιαχοῦ καὶ ἐν ἐλάττοσιν ἡμέραις, καθάπερ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ <κριθῇ>· τριταῖαν γὰρ φασι καὶ τεταρταῖαν ἀνατέλλειν· παρ' ἄλλοις δὲ ἐν πλείοσι τῶν εἰρημένων, ὅπερ καὶ οὐκ ἄλογον, ὅταν καὶ χώρα καὶ ἀὴρ διαφέρῃ καὶ πρωϊαίτερον ἢ ὀψιαίτερον ἀρόση καὶ τὰ ἐπιγινόμενα ἀνόμοια τυγχάνῃ. ἡ μὲν γὰρ μανὴ καὶ κούφη καὶ εὐκράτῳ ἄερι ταχύ καὶ ῥαδίως ἀναδίδωσιν, ἡ δὲ γλίσχρα καὶ βαρεῖα βραδέως, ἡ δὲ τοῖς τόποις αὐχμωδεστέρα βραδύτερον.
- 7 Ἔτι δὲ ἂν χειμῶνες ἐπιγένωνται καὶ αὐχμοὶ καὶ εὐδῖαι καὶ πάλιν ὕδατα· καὶ γὰρ ἐν τούτοις πολὺ παραλλάττουσιν. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ εἰ ἂν ἡ

<sup>1</sup> ἔνια conj. W.; ἐν Ald.

<sup>2</sup> The reason is given C. P. 4. 8. 2.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 7. 1. 4.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. 1. 4-7

spoke, in which are sown millet Italian millet sesame, and also *erysimon* and *horminon*. Such then are the times for each.

Some are quicker in coming up, some slower. Barley and wheat generally come up on the seventh day, but barley is the earlier. Pulses take four or five days, except beans; for they, like some kinds<sup>1</sup> of corn, require a longer time; in some places they take as much as fifteen days, or even twenty. This crop indeed is the slowest to start of all, and if after the sowing there is a long spell of wet weather, it is extremely slow.<sup>2</sup> Whether the sprouting<sup>3</sup> of crops sown at the spring seed-time is quicker because of the season is matter for enquiry.

These times of sprouting or germination must be taken generally; for at some times and places germination takes fewer days, as with barley<sup>4</sup> in Egypt, where it is said to come up on the third or fourth day; while elsewhere it takes longer than the period mentioned, which is not surprising when both soil and climate are different, when one makes the sowing earlier or later, and when the crop is subjected to different influences afterwards. For open light soil with a favourable<sup>5</sup> climate produces quick and easy growth, while soil that is sticky and heavy tends to slow growth, and that of a specially dry district to slower growth still.

Moreover the time of growth is affected, according as storms supervene, or droughts, or fine weather or again rain; for these conditions make wide differences. So too it makes a difference if the

<sup>4</sup> κριθή add. W.

<sup>5</sup> εὐκάρπυ conj. Scal. from G (*benigno caelo*); εὐκάρπυ Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

γῇ προειργασμένη καὶ κοπρον ἔχουσα τυγχάνη, καὶ ἐὰν μηδὲν τούτων· ἐπεὶ καὶ περὶ τὸ πρῶτισπορεῖν ἕκαστα καὶ ὀψισπορεῖν αἱ χῶραι διαφέρουσιν. ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάντα πρῶτισπορεῖν εἰώθασι διὰ ψυχρότητα τῆς χώρας, ὥσπερ οἱ Φωκεῖς, ὅπως ἂν οἱ χειμῶνες μὴ νήπια καταλαμβάνωσιν.

II. Βλαστάνει δὲ τὰ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ τὴν ῥίζαν ἀφιέντα καὶ τὸ φύλλον, τὰ δὲ ἐκάτερον ἐξ ἐκατέρου τοῦ ἄκρου. πυρὸς μὲν οὖν καὶ κριθή καὶ τίφη καὶ ὅλως ὅσα σιτώδη πάντα ἐξ ἐκατέρου ὥσπερ ἐν τῷ στάχυϊ πέφυκεν, ἀπὸ μὲν τοῦ κάτω τοῦ παχέος τὴν ῥίζαν ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ ἄνω τὸν βλαστόν· ἐν δέ τι καὶ συνεχὲς γίνεται τὸ ἀμφοῖν τῆς τε ῥίζης καὶ τοῦ καυλοῦ. κύαμος δὲ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα χεδροπὰ οὐχ ὁμοίως, ἀλλ' ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ τὴν ῥίζαν καὶ τὸν καυλόν, καθ' ὃ καὶ ἡ πρόσφυσις αὐτῶν ἐστὶ πρὸς τὸν λοβόν, ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἔχουσιν οἶον ἀρχὴν τινα φανεράν· ἐπ' ἐνίων δὲ καὶ αἰδοιῶδες φαίνεται, καθάπερ ἐπὶ τῶν κυάμων καὶ τῶν ἐρεβίνθων καὶ μάλιστα τῶν θέρμων· ἐκ τούτου γὰρ ἡ μὲν ῥίζα κάτω τὸ δὲ φύλλον καὶ ὁ καυλὸς ἄνω χωρεῖ.

Ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν πῃ διαφέρει. τῇ δὲ ὁμοίως ἔχει τῷ πάντα κατὰ τὴν πρόσφυσιν τοῦ λοβοῦ καὶ τοῦ στάχυος ἀφιέναι τὴν ῥίζαν καὶ μὴ

<sup>1</sup> ὡς προειργ. Ald. II.; ὡς om. Sch. from G.      <sup>2</sup> cf. 8. 8. 2.

<sup>3</sup> ὥσπερ conj. Scal.; πάντα Ald. (? repeated by mistake). cf. C.P. 4. 7. 4.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. 1. 7-II. 2

ground has been well tilled<sup>1</sup> and given dung, or if neither of these things has been done: for the soil makes a difference even as to the early or late germination of each crop. In Hellas some are used to sow everything earlier because of the coldness of the soil, for instance the Phocians;<sup>2</sup> the object being that the winter may not overtake the crop while it is still tender.

*Of differences in the mode of germination and of subsequent development.*

II. In germinating some of these plants produce their root and their leaves from the same point, some separately, from either end of the seed. Wheat barley one-seeded wheat, and in general all the cereals produce them from either end, in a manner corresponding to<sup>3</sup> the position of the seed in the ear, the root growing from the stout lower part, the shoot from the upper part; but the part corresponding to the root and that corresponding to the stem form a single continuous whole. Beans and other leguminous plants do not grow in the same manner, but they produce the root and the stem from the same point, namely the point at which the seed is attached to the pod, which, it is plain, is a sort of starting point of fresh growth. In some cases there is also a formation resembling the *penis*, as in beans chick-peas and especially in lupins; from this<sup>4</sup> the root grows downwards, the leaf and the stem upwards.

There are then these different ways of germinating; but a point<sup>5</sup> in which all these plants agree is that they all send out their roots at the place where

<sup>4</sup> τούτου conj. Sch.; τούτων Ald. cf. C.P. 4. 7. 4.

<sup>5</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 7. 7.

## THEOPHRASTUS

καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς δενδρικοῖς τισιν ἀνάπαλιν, οἷον ἀμυγδαλῇ καρύφῃ βαλάνφ τοῖς τοιούτοις. ἐν ἅπασιν δὲ ἡ ῥίζα μικρῷ πρότερον ἐκφύεται τοῦ καυλοῦ· συμβαίνει δὲ ἔν γέ τισι τῶν δένδρων ὥστε τὸν μὲν βλαστὸν ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ σπέρματι βλαστάνειν πρῶτον, αὐξανομένου δὲ διίστασθαι τὰ σπέρματα—πάντα γάρ πως καὶ ταῦτα διμερῇ, τὰ δὲ δὴ χεδροπὰ φανερῶς πάντα δίθυρα καὶ σύνθετα—τὴν δὲ ῥίζαν εὐθὺς ἔξω προωθεῖσθαι· ἐν δὲ τοῖς σιτηροῖς διὰ τὸ καθ' ἐν αὐτὰ εἶναι τοῦτο μὲν οὐ συμβαίνει, προτερεῖ δὲ ἡ ῥίζα μικρόν.

- 3 Ἀναφύεται δὲ ἡ μὲν κριθὴ καὶ ὁ πυρὸς μονόφυλλα, ὁ δὲ πισὸς καὶ ὁ κύαμος καὶ ὁ ἐρέβινθος πολύφυλλα. ῥίζαν δὲ ἔχει τὰ μὲν χεδροπὰ πάντα ξυλώδη καὶ μίαν ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης καὶ ἀποφύσεις λεπτάς. Βαθυρριζότατον δὲ ὡς εἰπεῖν τούτων ὁ ἐρέβινθος, ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ παρακαθήσιν· ἀλλ' ὁ πυρὸς καὶ ἡ κριθὴ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ σιτώδη πολύρριζα καὶ λεπτόρριζα, δι' ὃ καὶ ταρρώδη. καὶ πολύκλαδα καὶ πολύκαυλα πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα. σχεδὸν δὲ καὶ ἐναντίωσίς τις ἐκατέρων ἐστί· τὰ μὲν γὰρ χεδροπὰ μονόρριζα ὄντα πολλὰς ἀνωθεν ἀπὸ τῶν καυλῶν ἀποφύσεις ἔχει πλὴν κυάμου· τὰ δὲ σιτηρὰ πολύρριζα πολλοὺς μὲν ἀνίησι

<sup>1</sup> βαλάνφ: διοσβαλάνφ Sch. from mBod.

<sup>2</sup> τισι τῶν δένδρων conj. W.; σιτώδεσιν UMald.; τοῖς δενδρικοῖς conj. Sch. This and W.'s other conjectures in this section are rather desperate, but are accepted provisionally as at least restoring a satisfactory sense. The passage looks as if it had been deliberately tampered with by someone who misunderstood it.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. II. 2-3

the seed is attached to the pod or ear, whereas the contrary is the case with the seeds of certain trees, as almond hazel acorn<sup>1</sup> and the like. And in all these plants the root begins to grow a little before the stem; whereas in certain trees<sup>2</sup> the bud first begins to grow within the seed itself, and, as it increases in size, the seed splits—for all such seeds are in a manner in two halves, and those of leguminous plants again all plainly have two valves and are double—and then the root is immediately thrust out; but in cereals,<sup>3</sup> since the seeds are in one piece,<sup>4</sup> this does not<sup>5</sup> occur, but the root grows a little before the bud.

Barley and wheat come up with a single leaf, but peas beans and chick-peas with several.<sup>6</sup> All the leguminous plants have a single woody root, and also slender<sup>7</sup> side-roots springing from this. The chick-pea is about the deepest rooting of these, and sometimes it has side-roots; but wheat barley and the other cereals have a number of fine roots, wherefore they are matted together.<sup>8</sup> Again all such plants have many branches and many stems. And there is a sort of contrast between these two classes; the leguminous plants, which have a single root, have many side-growths above from the stem—all except beans; while the cereals, which have many roots, send up many shoots,<sup>9</sup> but these have

σιτηροῖς conj. W.; χεδροποις UMAld.  
καθ' ἐν αὐτὰ conj. W.; κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ UMAld.  
οὐ conj. Scal. from G; οὐν UMAld.  
Plin. 18. 51.  
λεπτάς conj. St.; λεπταί Ald. H.  
ταρρώδη: cf. 6. 7. 4.  
μὲν conj. Sch.; γὰρ Ald. H.



## THEOPHRASTUS

βλαστούς, ἀπαράβλαστοι δὲ οὗτοι, πλὴν εἴ τι γένος πυρῶν τοιοῦτον, οὗς καλοῦσι σιτανίας καὶ κριθανίας.

- <sup>4</sup> Τὸν μὲν οὖν χειμῶνα ἐν τῇ χλόῃ μένει τὰ σιτώδη, διαγελώσης δὲ τῆς ὥρας καυλὸν ἀφίησιν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου καὶ γονατοῦται. συμβαίνει δ' εὐθὺς ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ γόνατι, τοῖς δὲ ἐν τῷ τετάρτῳ, καὶ τὸν στάχυν ἔχειν ἄλλ' οὐ φανερόν ἐν τῷ ὄγκῳ.—γίνεται δὲ ἐν τῷ ὄλῳ καλάμῳ πλείω τούτων—ὥστε σχεδὸν ἅμα τῷ καλαμοῦσθαι συνίστασθαι <ἢ> μικρὸν ὕστερον· ἀλλ' οὐ πρότερον φανερὸς γίνεται πρὶν ἂν προαυξηθεῖς ἐν τῇ κάλυκι γένηται, τότε δὲ ἡ κύησις φανερά διὰ τὸν ὄγκον.
- <sup>5</sup> Ἀπολυθεὶς δ' εὐθὺς ἀνθεῖ μεθ' ἡμέρας τέτταρας ἢ πέντε καὶ πυρὸς καὶ κριθῇ καὶ ἀνθεῖ σχεδὸν τὰς ἴσας, οἱ δὲ τὰς πλείστας λέγοντες ἐν ταῖς ἐπτά φασιν ἀπανθεῖν. ἀλλὰ τῶν χεδροπῶν χρόνιος ἢ ἄνθησις· χρονιωτάτῃ δὲ τῶν μὲν ἄλλων ὀρόβου καὶ ἐρεβίνθου, τούτων δ' ἀπάντων τοῦ κυάμου καὶ ἐν μεγίστῃ διαφορᾷ· τετταράκοντα γὰρ ἡμερῶν ἀνθεῖν λέγουσι· πλὴν οἱ μὲν αἰὲ παρανθοῦντος ἐτέρου καὶ ἐτέρου λέγουσι, κατὰ μέρος γὰρ ἀνθεῖν, οἱ δὲ ἀπλῶς. ἡ γὰρ ἄνθησις τῶν μὲν σταχυηρῶν ἀθρόως τῶν δὲ ἐλλοβωδῶν καὶ χεδροπῶν πάντων κατὰ μέρος· πρῶτα γὰρ ἀνθεῖ τὰ κάτω, καὶ ὅταν ταῦτα ἀπανθήσῃ τὰ ἐχόμενα, καὶ οὕτως αἰὲ βαδίζει πρὸς τὰ ἄνω.

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 18. 52.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 56.

<sup>3</sup> c<sup>2</sup>. 7. 7. 1 ; 8. 4. 3.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. II. 3-5

no side-shoots—except such sorts of wheat as are called *sitanias* and *kriethanias* ('barley-wheat').

<sup>1</sup> During winter cereals remain in the blade, but, as the season begins to smile, they send up a stem from the midst and it becomes jointed. <sup>2</sup> And it comes to pass that the ear also at once appears in the third, or in some cases in the fourth joint, though it is not distinctly seen in the mass of growth (the whole stem contains more joints than three or four), so that it must be formed at the same time that the straw grows or but a little later; though it does not become conspicuous till it has first swollen and formed in the sheath,<sup>3</sup> and by that time its size makes its development visible.

Four or five days after being set free <sup>4</sup> wheat and barley flower and remain in bloom for a like number of days; those who put the period at the longest say that the bloom is shed in seven days. <sup>5</sup> On the other hand the flowering period of leguminous plants lasts a long time; that of vetch and chick-pea is longer than that of most, but that of the bean is far longer than that of any of them; they say that it is in bloom for forty days; some however give this period absolutely, others say that at different times different parts are in flower,<sup>6</sup> since the whole plant does not flower at once. For plants with an ear bloom all at once, but plants with pods and all leguminous plants bloom part at a time; the lower part blooms first, and, when this bloom has fallen, the part next above it, and so on up to the top.

<sup>4</sup> Sc. from the sheath. ἀπολυθείς Ald.H.; ἀποχυθείς conj. Sch. followed by W. cf. ἀπόχυσις 8. 3. 4.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 18. 59.

<sup>6</sup> παρανθοῦντες conj. H.; παρανθοῦντες Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

δι' ὃ πολλὰ τῶν ὀρόβων τίλλεται τὰ μὲν κάτω κατερρυγκότα τὰ δ' ἄνω χλωρὰ πύμπαν.

- 6 Μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἀπάνθησιν ἀδρύνονται καὶ τελειοῦνται πυρὸς μὲν καὶ κριθὴ τέτταρακοσταῖα μάλιστα· παραπλησίως δὲ καὶ τίφη καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα. τέτταρακοσταῖον δὲ φασὶ καὶ τὸν κύαμον, ὥστε ἐν ἴσαις ἀνθεῖν καὶ τελειοῦσθαι· τὰ δ' ἄλλα ἐν ἐλάττοσιν· ἐλαχίσταις δὲ ὁ ἐρέβινθος, εἴπερ ἀπὸ τῆς σπορᾶς ἐν τετταράκοντα τελειοῦται ταῖς ἀπάσαις ὥσπερ τινές φασιν· ἐπεὶ τό γ' ὅλον ὅτι τάχιστα φανερόν. οἱ δὲ κέγχροι καὶ τὰ σήσαμα καὶ οἱ μέλινοι καὶ ὅλως τὰ θερινὰ σχεδὸν ὁμολογεῖται τὰς τετταράκονθ' ἡμέρας λαμβάνειν· οἱ δὲ φασὶ καὶ ἐλάττους.

- 7 Διαφέρει δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὴν τελείωσιν χώρα τε χώρας καὶ ἀῆρ ἀέρος· ἐν ἐλάττοσι γὰρ ἔνιαι δοκοῦσιν ἐκφέρειν, ὥσπερ ἄλλαι τε καὶ μάλιστα ἐπιδήλως Αἴγυπτος· ἐκεῖ γὰρ κριθαὶ μὲν ἐν ἑξαμήνῳ πυροὶ δὲ ἐν τῷ ἐβδόμῳ θερίζονται· περὶ δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα κριθαὶ μὲν ἐν τῷ ἐβδόμῳ παρὰ δὲ τοῖς πλείστοις ὀγδόῳ, πυροὶ δὲ ἔτι προσεπιλαμβάνουσιν. οὐ μὲν οὐδὲ ἐκεῖ τό γε πᾶν πλῆθος οὕτως, ἀλλ' ὅσον εἰς ἀπαρχήν· κομίζεται γὰρ πρὸς ἱερῶν τινῶν χρεῖαν ἄλφита νέα τῷ ἔκτῳ μηνὶ καὶ ταῦτα ἐκ τῶν ἄνω τόπων ὑπὲρ Μέρμφιν.

- 8 Λέγεται δὲ καὶ ἐν Σικελίᾳ τῆς Μεσσηνίας ἐν

<sup>1</sup> μέλινοι Akl.H.; ἔλυμοι Vo.Vin. cf. 8. 1. 1 n.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. II. 5-8

Wherefore, at the time when some of the vetches are gathered, the lower seeds have already fallen, while the upper ones are still quite green.

After the flowering is over wheat and barley develop and mature in about forty days; one-seeded wheat and other such plants take about the same time. So too, they say, does the bean, which blooms and matures in a like number of days: but the others take fewer, and fewest of all the chick-pea; since, as some say, it takes only forty days from the time when it is sown to that when it is mature; and in any case it is clear that the plant as a whole develops very rapidly. Millet sesame Italian millet<sup>1</sup> and the summer crops in general, it is fairly well agreed, take the same number of days, that is, forty; though some say that they take less.

### *Of differences in development due to soil or climate.*

<sup>2</sup> Again as to the development of the plant there are differences according to soil and climate. Some soils seem to produce the crop in fewer days; for instance, Egypt may be given as a specially conspicuous example; in that country barley is reaped in six months and wheat in seven: while in Hellas the barley<sup>3</sup> harvest is in the seventh month, or in most parts in the eighth, and wheat requires an even longer time. However even in Egypt the whole harvest is not gathered at such an early date, but only what is required for the first-fruits; for they gather new grain for the meal required in certain sacrifices in the sixth month, and that too in the regions high up the Nile, above Memphis.

It is said also that in the Messenian district in

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 49.

<sup>3</sup> κριθα conj. Sch.; πυρροί UMAld.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ταῖς καλουμέναις Μύλαις ταχεῖάν τινα γίνεσθαι τὴν τελείωσιν τῶν ὀψίων· τὸν τῶν ὀσπρίων μὲν γὰρ σπορητὸν ἕξ μῆνας, τὸν δὲ τῷ ὑστάτῳ σπείραντα θερίζειν ἅμα τοῖς πρώτοις· ἀγαθὴν δὲ διαφερόντως εἶναι τὴν χώραν, ὥστε τριακοντάχοα ποιεῖν, ἔχειν δὲ καὶ νομὰς θαυμαστὰς καὶ ὕλην. ἐν Μήλῳ δὲ τι θαυμασιώτερον λέγουσιν· ἐν γὰρ τριάκοντα ἢ τετταράκοντα ἡμέραις σπαρέντα θερίζουσι, δι' ὃ καὶ λέγειν αὐτοὺς ὅτι μέχρι τούτου δεῖ σπεῖρειν ἕως ἂν ἴδῃ τις δράγμα· γίνεσθαι δὲ οὔτε ὀσπρια τοιαῦτα οὔτε πολλὰ παρ' αὐτοῖς. δεινὴν δὲ τινα διαδοῦναι τὴν χώραν τροφήν· καὶ γὰρ εἶναι σιτοφόρον μὲν καὶ ἐλαιοφόρον ἀγαθὴν ἀμπελοφόρον δὲ μετρίαν.

- 9 Ὅτι περὶ Βαβυλῶνα δ' ἔτι τούτου καὶ πάντων θαυμασιώτερον τὸ περὶ Χαλκίαν τὴν νῆσον τὴν Ῥοδίων γινόμενον· ἐκεῖ γὰρ φασιν εἶναί τινα τόπον πρώϊον οὕτω καὶ εὐφορον ὥς σπαρεισῶν κριθῶν ἅμα ταῖς ἄλλαις θερίσαντες ταύτας σπείρουσιν εἴτα πάλιν, εἴτα θερίζουσιν ἅμα τοῖς λοιποῖς· μεγίστη μὲν οὖν, εἴπερ ἀληθής, αὕτη διαφορά· τὸ γὰρ εἰς ἑτέραν χώραν μετενεχθέντα διαφέρειν, ὥσπερ ἐκ Κιλικίας φασὶν εἰς Καππαδοκίαν καὶ ὅλως τὴν ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ταύρου, ἥττον ἄτοπον· φανερὰ γὰρ ἢ τῶν τόπων διάστασις.

<sup>1</sup> τριακοντάχοα conj. Sch.; τριάκοντα χοὰς Ald.

<sup>2</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 11. 8.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. II. 8-9

Sicily at the place called Mylae the late sown crops mature rapidly ; thus the sowing of pulses goes on for six months, but he that made the last sowing gathers his crop at the same time as the first : also that the soil is exceedingly good, so that it yields thirty-fold<sup>1</sup> ; and there are also wonderful pastures and forest-land. They tell of an even more wonderful thing in Melos<sup>2</sup> ; there they reap thirty or forty days after sowing ; wherefore it is a saying of the islanders that "one should continue sowing till one sees a swathe." However it is said that pulses<sup>3</sup> in their country do not grow like this, nor are they abundant. Yet they say that the soil is wonderfully productive ; for it is good both for corn and olives, and fairly good for vines.

However what occurs in Chalkia,<sup>4</sup> an island belonging to the Rhodians, goes even beyond this and is more extraordinary than all the instances given ; there they say that there is a place which is so early and so fertile that, when the barley is sown after reaping the crop with the other crops, they then sow again, and then reap the crop thus sown at the same time as the remaining crops ; this then, if it be true, marks a difference greater than we find anywhere else. For it is less surprising that there should be a difference in crops transferred<sup>5</sup> to another region, as they say occurs when they are transferred from Cilicia to Cappadocia or in general beyond the Taurus ; for these regions are obviously very dissimilar.

<sup>1</sup> ὀσπρία τοιαῦτα I conj. ; ὀψιμα ταῦτα UAld. ; ἔψιμα ταῦτα M.G ; P omits ταῦτα.

<sup>4</sup> cf. Thuc 8. 41 foll.

<sup>5</sup> μετενεχθέντα διαφέρειν conj. Sch. and W. from G ; μετεγκόντας σπείρειν Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 10 Τὸ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν διαφορεῖν, ἐν ᾧπερ γε ἅπαξ αἱ ἄλλαι, σύνορον οὖσαν καὶ μίαν θαυμασιώτατον· αὕτη μὲν οὖν ἐν μεγίστῃ διαφορᾷ.

Τὰ δὲ κατὰ τὰς ἄλλας χώρας οὐ πολλὴν ἢ οὐδεμίαν ὥς εἰπεῖν τοῦ γε χρόνου λαμβάνει διάστασιν· προτερεῖ γὰρ ταῖς ὥραις τὰ Ἀθηνησι τῶν περὶ Ἑλλήσποντον ἡμέραις τριάκοντα μάλιστα ἢ οὐ πολλῷ πλείοσιν· εἰ μὲν οὖν καὶ ὁ σπορητὸς πρότερον, μετάρθεις ἂν εἴη τῆς ὥρας· εἰ δ' ἅμα, δῆλον ὅτι πλείων ἂν ὁ χρόνος.

- 11 Οὐ μικρὰν δὲ ποιοῦσι διαφορὰν οὐδὲ οἱ τόποι, καίπερ ἔνιοι συνεγγὺς ὄντες· τὰ γὰρ ἐν Σαλαμῖνι προτερεῖ πολὺ τῶν ἄλλων τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀττικῇ καὶ ὅλως τὰ ἐπιθαλάττια καὶ εἰς ταῦτα καὶ εἰς τοὺς ἄλλους καρπούς, ὥς τὰ περὶ τὴν Ἀκτὴν καλουμένην τῆς Πελοποννήσου καὶ τὰ ἐν Φαλύκῃ τῆς Μεγαρίδος· πλὴν ἐνταῦθά γε συμβάλλεται καὶ τὸ λεπτόγεων εἶναι καὶ ψαφαρὰν τὴν χώραν. καὶ τὰ μὲν περὶ τὴν γένεσιν καὶ τὴν τελείωσιν οὕτως ἔχει.

III. Διαφέρει δὲ καθ' ὅλα τὰ γένη τὰ διηρημένα τῶν γενῶν, οἷον σίτος χεδροπὰ τὰ θερινά, καὶ καθ' ἕκαστον γένος τὰ ὁμογενῆ. τὰ μὲν γὰρ σιτώδη τὸ φύλλον ἔχει καλάμου, τῶν δὲ χεδρο-

<sup>1</sup> i.e. and so in part account for the difference. εἴη τῆς ὥρας conj. Sch.; ἢ τῆς χώρας MP; εἴη τῆς χώρας Ald.H.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. we cannot say how far the difference is due to climate without knowing whether the seed-time at either place is the same.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. II. 10-III. I

But that one particular land should produce two crops in the time that other lands to which it is close take to produce one, is very remarkable; wherefore Chalkia exhibits the greatest difference.

The crops grown in other regions show not much, if any, dissimilarity as to time; those grown at Athens are only about thirty days or not much more before those of the Hellespont region. Now, if the sowing should turn out to be also earlier, that would shift the season back<sup>1</sup>; if it is at the same time, it is plain that the difference of time would be greater.<sup>2</sup>

Again the particular district makes a considerable difference, even as between places which are not far apart; thus the crops of Salamis are far earlier than those of the rest of Attica, and so in general are those of places by the sea; and this applies to other fruits as well as these: for instance, those of the place called Akte in the Peloponnese and of Phalykos<sup>3</sup> in the Megarid are early; but here something is contributed by the fact that the soil is light and crumbling. Such are the facts in regard to growth and development.

*Of differences between the parts of cereals, pulses, and summer crops respectively.*

III. There are also differences between<sup>4</sup> the whole classes which we have mentioned, namely cereals leguminous plants<sup>5</sup> and summer crops, as well as between the several members<sup>6</sup> of the same class. Cereals have the leaf of a reed, while of

<sup>3</sup> ἐν Φαλύκῳ I conj.: cf. 2. 8. 1; ἐν Φαλήκῳ conj. W.; ἐφαλύκῳ U; ἐκ φαλήκῳ M; ἐκ φαλήκου Ald.

<sup>4</sup> καθ' conj. Sch.; καὶ Ald.H. <sup>5</sup> cf. 8. 1. 1.

<sup>6</sup> ὁμογενῇ conj. Sch.; ὁμοιογενῇ Ald.



## THEOPHRASTUS

πῶν τὰ μὲν περιφερές, οἶον ὁ κύαμος καὶ σχεδὸν τὰ πλείστα, τὰ δὲ προμηκέστερον, οἶον ὁ πισὸς καὶ ὁ λάθυρος καὶ ὁ ὥχρος καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἰνώδη τὰ δ' ἄφλεβα καὶ αἶνα. τὸ δὲ σήσαμον καὶ τὸ ἐρύσιμον ἰδιώτερα παρὰ ταῦτα.

- 2 Πάλιν ὁ καυλὸς τῶν μὲν γονατώδης καὶ κοῖλος, δι' ὃ καὶ καλεῖται κάλαμος· ὁ δὲ τοῦ κυάμου κοῖλος, τῶν δ' ἄλλων χεδροπῶν ξυλωδέστερος, ξυλωδέστατος δὲ ὁ ἐρέβινθος· τῶν δὲ θερινῶν κέγχρου μὲν καὶ μελίνου καλαμώδης, σησάμου δὲ καὶ ἐρυσίμου ναρθηκώδης μᾶλλον. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐστὶν ὀρθόκαυλα, καθάπερ πυρὸς καὶ κριθῇ καὶ ὄλως τὰ σιτώδη καὶ θερινά, τὰ δὲ πλαγιόκαυλα μᾶλλον, οἶον ἐρέβινθος ὄροβος φακός, τὰ δ' ἐπιγειόκαυλα, καθάπερ ὥχρος πισὸς λάθυρος· ὁ δὲ δόλιχος, ἐὰν παρακαταπήξῃ τις ξύλα μακρά, ἀναβαίνει καὶ γίνεται κάρπιμος, εἰ δὲ μή, φαῦλος καὶ ἐρυσιβώδης· μόνος δ' ἡ μάλιστα τῶν χεδροπῶν ὀρθόκαυλος ὁ κύαμος.

- 3 Ἐχει δὲ καὶ τὰ ἄνθη διαφορὰν καὶ τῇ φύσει καὶ τῇ θέσει, περὶ ὧν σχεδὸν ἐν τοῖς καθ' ὅλου διείλομεν, ὅτι τὰ μὲν χνωώδη, καθάπερ σίτου καὶ παντὸς τοῦ σταχυώδους· τὰ δὲ φυλλώδη, καθάπερ τῶν χεδροπῶν, καὶ τῶν πλείστων κολοβά·

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 18. 58.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. 'summer crops'; cf. 8. 1. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Sc. but not jointed. W. suggests that the original text may have been τῶν δὲ διόλου κοῖλος οἶον ὁ τοῦ κυάμου.

<sup>4</sup> μελίνον Ald.H.; ἐλύμον V; ἐλύμον Vin. cf. 8. 1. 1; 8. 1. 6.

<sup>5</sup> ἡ add St.; om. Ald.H.G.

<sup>6</sup> 1. 13. 1 (?)

<sup>7</sup> χνωώδη. No rendering seems quite satisfactory: the

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. III. 1-3

leguminous plants some have a round leaf, as beans and most others, some a more oblong leaf, as pea *lathyros okhros* and the like. <sup>1</sup> Some again have fibrous leaves, others leaves without veins and fibres. Again sesame<sup>2</sup> and *erysimon*<sup>2</sup> have leaves quite distinct from these.

Again the stem of cereals is jointed and hollow; wherefore it is called the 'reed,' while that of the bean is hollow,<sup>3</sup> and that of the other leguminous plants is more woody, that of chick-pea woodiest of all; of the summer crops that of millet and Italian millet<sup>4</sup> is reed-like, that of sesame and *erysimon* is more like the stem of ferula. Some again have erect stems, as wheat barley and in general the cereals and summer crops; some have rather a crooked stem, as chick-pea vetch lentil; some a creeping stem as *okhros* pea *lathyros*; while calavance, if long stakes are set by it, climbs them and becomes fruitful, whereas otherwise the plant is unhealthy and liable to rust; the bean, most of all leguminous plants, if not<sup>5</sup> alone among them, has an erect stem.

The flowers also shew differences in character and in position (of which matters we have to some extent treated in our general account)<sup>6</sup>; thus some are 'downy,'<sup>7</sup> as those of corn<sup>8</sup> and of any plant that has an 'ear'; others are 'leafy,'<sup>9</sup> as those of leguminous plants, and in most cases they are irregular<sup>10</sup> flowers; for most of these have meaning is that such flowers may be classed with those distinguished by this term in 1. 13. 1, as not being petaloid.

<sup>8</sup> σίτου καὶ παντὸς τοῦ σταχυώδους conj. Sch. from G, *ut omnium fere gerentium spicata*; που καὶ παντὸς τοῦ χυλώδους UMAld.

<sup>9</sup> Sc. petaloid.

<sup>10</sup> cf. 6. 5. 3. i.e. they depart from radial symmetry.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τὰ γὰρ πολλὰ κολοβανθῇ· χνοῶδες δὲ καὶ τὸ τοῦ κέγχρου καὶ μελίνου τοῦ δὲ σησάμου καὶ τοῦ ἐρυσίμου φυλλῶδες. καὶ ὅτι δὴ τὰ μὲν ἔχει περὶ αὐτὸν τὸν καρπὸν, οἶον τὰ σιτώδη καὶ κεγχρώδη περὶ τὸν στάχυν· τὰ δὲ χεδροπὰ ἐξ αὐτοῦ πως τοῦ ἄνθους ἢ ἀπὸ γε τῆς αὐτῆς ἀρχῆς γίνεται. καὶ τὴν ἄνθησιν, ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἀθρόαν τὰ δὲ κατὰ μέρος ποιεῖται· καὶ τᾶλλα δὲ τὰ παραπλήσια τούτοις.

- 4 Ὅμοίως δὲ καὶ τὰ κατὰ τοὺς καρπούς, ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἔχει στάχυν, τὰ δὲ χεδροπὰ λοβόν, τὰ δὲ κεγχρώδη φόβην· ἢ δὲ καλαμώδης ἀπόχυσις φόβη. τὸ δ' ὅλον ἐναγγειόσπερμα, τὰ δὲ ἐννυμένόσπερμα, τὰ δὲ γυμνόσπερμα· καὶ ἔτι τὰ μὲν ἀκρόκαρπα, τὰ δὲ πλαγιόκαρπα, καὶ ὅσα δὴ ἄλλα ταύτης ἔχεται τῆς θεωρίας.

- Ὅλως δὲ πολυκαρπότερα καὶ πολυχούστερα τὰ χεδροπὰ, τούτων δ' ἔτι μᾶλλον τὰ θερινὰ κέγχρος καὶ σήσαμον, αὐτῶν δὲ τῶν χεδροπῶν  
6 μάλιστα φακός. ἀπλῶς δὲ τὰ μικροσπερμότερα μᾶλλον ὥς εἰπεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ τῶν λαχανωδῶν κύμινον ἀπάντων ὄντων πολυσπέρμων. ἰσχυρότερα δὲ πρὸς μὲν τὸν χειμῶνα καὶ ὅλως τὰ τοῦ ἀέρος τὰ σιτηρά, πρὸς δὲ τὴν τροφήν τὰ

<sup>1</sup> μελίνου Ald. H.; ἄλυμον Vo. Vin. cf. 8. 3 2 and reff.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 8. 3. 3 n.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 53.

<sup>4</sup> ἀπόχυσις conj. Sch. from G; ἀπόφυσις P<sub>2</sub>Ald cf. 4. 4. 10, ἀποχεῖται; 8. 10. 4; C. P. 3. 21. 5.

<sup>5</sup> τὸ δ' ὅλον; ? τὰ δ' οἶον.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. III. 3-5

such flowers. Those of millet and Italian millet<sup>1</sup> are also 'downy,'<sup>2</sup> those of sesame and *erysimon* 'leafy.' Another difference is that in some cases the flowers are round the fruit; thus those of corn and millet are round the ear; while in leguminous plants the fruit comes as it were from the flower itself, or at least from the same starting-point. Another difference is that some produce all their flowers at once, others in succession. And there are other differences akin to these.

In like manner there are differences in the fruits; some have an 'ear,' leguminous plants a pod, and millet-like plants a 'plume'<sup>3</sup>—which is the name given to an inflorescence<sup>4</sup> such as reeds have. Again, generally speaking,<sup>5</sup> some have their seeds in a vessel,<sup>6</sup> some in pods,<sup>7</sup> some naked; and further some bear their fruit at the top, some at the sides; and there are other differences which bear on this enquiry.

In general the leguminous plants produce more fruit and are more prolific, and the summer crops millet and sesame are even more so than these, while among the leguminous plants themselves lentil is the most prolific.<sup>8</sup> Generally speaking, those that have small seeds are more prolific, as cummin among pot-herbs, which are all prolific of seed. The seeds of cereals are more robust as to standing winter and conditions of climate generally, while those of leguminous plants are stronger as to providing food.<sup>9</sup> However it may be that in this respect

<sup>6</sup> μὲν ἐναγγεῖδσπερμα conj. Sch.; μὲν ἐγγεῖδσπερμα P<sub>2</sub>Ald. cf. C.P. 4. 7. 5.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 1. 11. 2.

<sup>8</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 15. 2.

<sup>9</sup> i.e. what has just been said perhaps applies only to human food. Sense fixed by 8. 9. 3 *ad fin.*: cf. Plin. 18. 50.

## THEOPHRASTUS

χεδροπά. τάχα δὲ τοῦτό γε ἡμῖν τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνάπαλιν.

IV. Τὰ μὲν οὖν ὅλα γένη τοιαύτας ἔχει διαφοράς· τὰ δὲ ὁμογενῇ δῆλον ὅτι κατὰ τὴν τῶν μερῶν ἀνωμαλίαν, οἷον τῶν σιτωδῶν πυρὸς κριθῆς στειοφυλλότερον καὶ λειοκαυλότερον καὶ πυκνότερον καὶ γλισχρότερον ἔχει τὸν καυλὸν καὶ δυσθλαστότερον· ἅμα δὲ καὶ ὁ μὲν ἐν χιτῶσι πολλοῖς ἢ δὲ γυμνόν· μάλιστα γὰρ δὴ γυμιοσπέρματον ἢ κριθή. πολύλοπον δὲ καὶ ἡ τίφη καὶ ἡ ὀλύρα καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα καὶ μάλιστα πάντων ὡς εἰπεῖν ὁ βρόμος. ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὑψηλότερος ὁ κάλαμος τοῦ πυροῦ ἢ τῆς κριθῆς, καὶ τὸν στάχυν ἀπηρτημένον ἔχει τοῦ φύλλου μᾶλλον ὁ πυρὸς.

Ἴδιον δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄχυρον τοῦ κριθίνου τὸ πύρινον· ἐγγυλότερον γὰρ καὶ μαλακώτερον. διαφέρει δὲ <sup>2</sup> ἡ κριθὴ καὶ τούτῳ τῶν πυρῶν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ στοιχειώδης, ὁ δὲ πυρὸς ἄστοιχος καὶ πανταχόθεν ὁμαλῆς τις.

Τῷ μὲν οὖν ὅλῳ γένει πρὸς γένος τοιαῦταί τινές εἰσι διαφοραί. καθ' ἑκάτερον δὲ τούτων πάλιν, οἷον πυρῶν καὶ κριθῶν, πολλὰ γένη καὶ τοῖς καρποῖς αὐτοῖς διαφέροντα καὶ τοῖς στάχυσι καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις μορφαῖς καὶ ἔτι ταῖς δυνάμεσι

<sup>1</sup> cf. 7. 4. 9.

<sup>2</sup> After διαφορὰς UM add τὰ ὁμοιογενῇ, Ald. τὰ μὴ ὁμοιογενῇ; om. Sch. and W. after G.

<sup>3</sup> ὁμογενῇ conj. Sch.; ὁμοιογενῇ UMAld. cf. 8. 3. 1.

<sup>4</sup> δυσθλαστότερον conj. Scal. from G, *ruptu difficiliorem*; δυσσασατώτερον UMAld.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 18. 61. πολύλοπον conj. Salm.; πολύλοβον Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. III. 5-IV. 2

the other animals are affected in the opposite<sup>1</sup> way to men.

### *Of the differences between cereals.*

IV. There are then these differences<sup>2</sup> between the various classes; and as between plants of the same class<sup>3</sup> there are plainly differences due to the unlikeness in the various parts. Thus among cereals wheat as compared with barley has a narrower leaf, and a smoother stem of closer texture tougher and less brittle.<sup>4</sup> Again the seed of wheat has several coats,<sup>5</sup> that of barley is naked, that plant having its seeds specially naked. Also one-seeded wheat rice-wheat and all such plants have their seed in several coats, and above all, it may be said, is this true of oats.<sup>6</sup> Also the 'reed' of wheat is taller than<sup>7</sup> that of barley, and wheat has its ear less distant from the 'leaf.'

Further the husk of wheat is distinct<sup>8</sup> from that of barley, being less dry and softer. Barley also differs from wheat in this respect; it has grains in a regular row,<sup>9</sup> whereas those of wheat are not in a row, but the ear is as it were quite simple in form.<sup>10</sup>

Such then are the differences as between one whole kind and another. But in each of these kinds again, for instance in barley and wheat, there are many sub-divisions differing both in the actual fruits, in the ear, and in the other characteristic

<sup>6</sup> βρόμος conj. Scal. from Plin l.c. and G; κρόμος PM; κρόκος Ald.; βρωμός Vin.

<sup>7</sup> ἢ conj. Sch. from Plin. l.c. and G; καὶ Ald.H.

<sup>8</sup> ἴδιον Ald.; ἥδιον Vin.H. from G: so Sch. and W. cf Col. 6. 3. 3.

<sup>9</sup> στοιχειώδης. ? στοιχώδης: v I.S.

<sup>10</sup> δμαλῆς conj. Sch.; δμαλή UMald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ τοῖς πάθεσι. τῶν μὲν κριθῶν αἱ μὲν εἰσι  
 δίστοιχοι αἱ δὲ τρίστοιχοι αἱ δὲ τετράστοιχοι  
 καὶ πεντάστοιχοι· πλείστον δ' ἐξάστοιχον, καὶ  
 γὰρ τοιοῦτό τι γένος ἐστί. πυκνότεραι δὲ αἰ  
 κατὰ τὴν θέσιν ὡς ἐπὶ πᾶν αἱ πολυστοιχώτεραι.  
 διαφορὰ δὲ μεγάλη καὶ τὸ παραβλαστητικὴν  
 εἶναι, καθάπερ εἵπομεν τὴν Ἰνδικήν. καὶ οἱ  
 στάχυες δὲ τῶν μὲν μεγάλοι καὶ μανότεροι ταῖς  
 κριθαῖς τῶν δὲ ἐλάττους καὶ πυκνότεροι, καὶ  
 ἀπέχοντες δὲ τοῦ φύλλου τῶν μὲν πολὺ τῶν δὲ  
 μικρόν, ὥσπερ τῶν Ἀχιλλείων καλουμένων. καὶ  
 αὐτῶν δὲ τῶν κριθῶν αἱ μὲν στρογγυλότεραι καὶ  
 ἐλάττους αἱ δὲ προμηκέστεραι καὶ μείζους καὶ  
 μανότεραι κατὰ τὸν στάχυν. ἔτι δὲ αἱ μὲν λευ-  
 καί, αἱ δὲ μέλαιναι καὶ ἐπιπορφυρίζουσαι, αἵπερ  
 καὶ πολυάλφιτοι δοκοῦσιν εἶναι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς  
 χειμῶνας δὲ καὶ τὰ πνεύματα καὶ ὅλως τὸν ἀέρα  
 τῶν λευκῶν ἰσχυρότεραι.

- 3 Πολλὰ δὲ γένη καὶ τῶν πυρῶν ἐστὶν εὐθὺς  
 ἀπὸ τῶν χωρῶν ἔχοντα τὰς ἐπωνυμίας, οἷον  
 Λιβυκοὶ Ποντικοὶ Θράκες Ἀσσύριοι Αἰγύπτιοι  
 Σικελοί. διαφορὰς δὲ καὶ ταῖς χροιαῖς καὶ τοῖς  
 μεγέθεσι καὶ τοῖς εἵδεσι καὶ ταῖς ιδιότησιν  
 ἔχουσι καὶ ἐν ταῖς δυνάμεσι ταῖς τε ἄλλαις καὶ  
 μάλιστα ταῖς πρὸς τὴν σίτησιν. τινὲς καὶ ἀπ'

<sup>1</sup> Explained below, 8. 4. 4; cf. 8. 4. 3.

<sup>2</sup> πάθεσι: cf. 1. 1. 1 n. <sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 78.

<sup>4</sup> πλείστον δ' ἐξάστοιχον, καὶ γὰρ τοιοῦτο conj. W.; πλείστον  
 ἐξάστοιχον τοιοῦτον UM; πλείσται καὶ ἐξάστιχοι· καὶ γὰρ τοι-  
 οῦτον Ald.H.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. IV. 2-3

features; and again in capacities<sup>1</sup> and properties.<sup>2</sup>  
<sup>3</sup> Of barley different sorts have respectively two, three, four, and five rows of seeds; the largest number<sup>4</sup> known is six, for there is a kind which bears that number. And those which have more rows have generally the grains set closer together. Another great difference is that of having side-shoots, as we said of the Indian kind.<sup>5</sup> Again in barley<sup>6</sup> the ears are in some kinds large and of looser make, in some smaller and set closer; in some kinds the ear is some way from the 'leaf,' in some it is nearer to it, as in the kind called 'Achilleian.'<sup>7</sup> Again of the grains themselves some are rounder and smaller, some more oblong and larger and set at wider intervals on the ear. Moreover some are white, some black or reddish, and the latter are thought to produce much meal and to be more robust than the white as to bearing winter wind or conditions of climate generally.

There are<sup>8</sup> also many kinds of wheat which take their names simply from the places where they grow,<sup>9</sup> as Libyan Pontic<sup>10</sup> Thracian Assyrian Egyptian Sicilian. They show differences<sup>11</sup> in colour size form and individual character, and also<sup>12</sup> as regards their capacities<sup>13</sup> in general and especially their value as food. Some again get

<sup>5</sup> Referred to 4. 4. 9, but without mention of this feature.

<sup>6</sup> ταῖς κριθαῖς conj. W.; τῆς κριθῆς Ald.

<sup>7</sup> cf. C. P. 3. 21. 3; 3. 22. 2.

<sup>8</sup> ἐστὶν εὐθὺς conj. W.; εὐθὺς ἐστὶν Ald.

<sup>9</sup> cf. C. P. 3. 21. 2; Plin. 18. 2.

<sup>10</sup> Ποντικὸν conj. Sch.; πόντιοι Ald.

<sup>11</sup> διαφορὰς conj. W.; διαφέροντες Ald. H.

<sup>12</sup> καὶ conj. W.; δὲ Ald.

<sup>13</sup> Explained below, 8. 4. 4: pace of growth.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἄλλων τὰς προσηγορίας, οἷον καγχρυδίας στλεγγύς Ἀλεξάνδρειος· ὧν ἀπάντων ἐν τοῖς εἰρημένοις τὰς διαφορὰς ληπτέον. οὐχ ἥκιστα δ' οἰκεῖαι εἴ τις λαμβάνοι τὰς τοιαύτας· οἷόν εἰσιν οἱ μὲν πρῶτοι οἱ δὲ ὄψιοι, καὶ εὐαυξεῖς καὶ πολύχοι οἱ δὲ <μικροὶ> καὶ ὀλιγόχοι, καὶ μεγαλοστάχυες οἱ δὲ μικροστάχυες. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐν κάλυκι πολὺν χρόνον οἱ δ' ὀλίγον ἔχοντες, ὥσπερ ὁ Λιβυκός. καὶ κάλαμον οἱ μὲν λεπτόν οἱ δὲ παχύν· καὶ τοῦτο ὁ Λιβυκὸς ἔχει, παχύν δὲ καὶ ὁ καγχρυδίας. ἔτι δὲ χιτῶνας οἱ μὲν ὀλίγους οἱ δὲ πολλούς, ὥσπερ ὁ Θράκιος. καὶ ὁ μὲν μονοκάλαμος ὁ δὲ πολυκάλαμος, καὶ μᾶλλον δὲ καὶ ἥττον.

Ἡ ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ εἴ τι παραπλήσιον τούτοις ἢ τοῖς πρότερον εἰρημένοις κατὰ τὰς δυνάμεις. αἱ γὰρ τοιαῦται φυσικώταται δόξαιεν ἂν εἶναι τῶν διαφορῶν. ἐν αἷς καὶ τὸ τῶν τριμήνων καὶ τὸ τῶν διμήνων καὶ εἴ τι γένος ἐν ἐλάττοσιν ἡμέραις τελειοῦται, καθάπερ φασὶν εἶναι περὶ τὴν Αἰνείαν, οἱ τετταράκοντα ἡμέραις ἀπὸ τῆς σπορᾶς ἀδρύνονται καὶ τέλος ἴσχουσιν· εἶναι δ' ἰσχυρὸν τοῦτον καὶ βαρὺν οὐχ ὥσπερ τὸν τρίμηνον κοῦφον, δι' ὃ καὶ τοῖς οἰκέταις παρέχειν, καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πίτυρον ἔχειν πολὺ. σπανιώτατος μὲν οὖν καὶ τάχιστος εἰς τελείωσιν

<sup>1</sup> στλεγγύς. Sir W. Thiselton-Dyer conjectures σίλιγγις : cf. Plin. 18. 184, LS. σιλίγγιον.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Geop. 3. 3. 11.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. colour, size, etc.

<sup>4</sup> μικροὶ add. W. to correspond to εὐαυξεῖς (conj. Sch.; εὐαξεῖς Ald.).

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. IV. 3-4

their distinctive names for other reasons, as *kankhrydias stlengys*<sup>1</sup> 'Alexandrian'<sup>2</sup>; all of which must be distinguished by the above-mentioned<sup>3</sup> characters. Again, if one takes such differences as the following, they are quite characteristic—thus some are early, some late, some are vigorous and prolific, some are small<sup>4</sup> and produce little, some have a large, some a small ear. The ears of some remain<sup>5</sup> a long time in the sheath,<sup>6</sup> of some it remains but a short time, as that of the Libyan kind. <sup>7</sup> Again some have a slender, some a stout haulm; the Libyan kind has this characteristic also, and that of *kankhrydias* is also stout. Again the grain of some has few coats,<sup>8</sup> of some many, for instance the Thracian.<sup>9</sup> Some kinds have a single 'reed,' some more than one, and in the latter class the number varies.

<sup>10</sup> So too must we distinguish any differences like these or those mentioned above which are found in the several capacities; for these would seem to be the most essential differences. In this connexion we may distinguish kinds which mature in three or in two months, and those, if there be such, which take a less number of days; for instance, they say that in the region of Aineia there is a kind which ripens and attains perfection within forty days from the time of sowing; they say too that this grain is strong and heavy, not light like that which takes three months; wherefore they give it even to the servants, for it also does not contain much bran. Now this kind is the rarest and the quickest to

<sup>5</sup> *ἐνογτες* conj. W.; *ἐχογτες* Ald.

<sup>6</sup> cf. S. 2. 4. <sup>7</sup> Plin. 18. 69.

<sup>9</sup> cf. C. P. 4. 12. 5; Plin. l.c.

<sup>8</sup> i.e. glumes.

<sup>10</sup> Plin. 18. 70.

## THEOPHRASTUS

οὗτος. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ δίμηνοί τινες οἵπερ καὶ ἐκ Σικελίας ἐκομίσθησαν εἰς Ἀχαίαν· ὀλιγοχόοι δὲ καὶ ὀλιγογόνοι καὶ κοῦφοι κατὰ τὴν προσφορὰν καὶ ἡδεῖς. καὶ ἄλλοι δὲ τινες οἱ περὶ Εὐβοίαν εἰσὶ καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τῇ Καρυστίᾳ. τρίμηνοι δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πανταχοῦ κοῦφοι οὗτοι καὶ ὀλιγοχόοι καὶ μονοκάλαμοι κατὰ τὴν ἔκφυσιν καὶ τὸ ὅλον  
 5 ἀσθενεῖς. κορυφώτατος μὲν οὖν ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν πυρὸς ὁ Ποντικός· βαρύτερος δὲ τῶν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα παραγινομένων ὁ Σικελός· τούτου δ' ἔτι βαρύτερος ὁ Βοιωτός· σημεῖον δὲ λέγουσιν ὅτι οἱ μὲν ἀθληταὶ ἐν τῇ Βοιωτίᾳ τρὶς ἡμιχοίνικα μόλις ἀναλίσκουσιν, Ἀθήναζε δὲ ὅταν ἔλθωσι πένθ' ἡμιχοίνικα ῥαδίως. κοῦφος δὲ καὶ ὁ ἐν τῇ Λακωνικῇ. τούτων μὲν οὖν ἓν τε ταῖς χώραις καὶ τῷ αἵματι τὸ αἴτιον· ἐπεὶ καὶ περὶ τὴν Ἀσίαν οὐ πόρρω Βάκτρων ἐν μὲν τινὶ τόπῳ οὕτως ἀδρὸν εἶναί φασι τὸν σῖτον ὥστε πυρῆνος ἐλαίας μέγεθος λαμβάνειν, ἐν δὲ τοῖς Πισσαίοις καλουμένοις οὕτως ἰσχυρὸν ὥστ' εἴ τις πλείον προσενέγκοιτο διαρρήγνυσθαι, καὶ τῶν Μακεδόνων καὶ πολλοὺς τοῦτο παθεῖν. ἄτοπον δὲ καὶ ἀνομολογούμενον πρὸς τὴν τῶν τριμήνων κορυφότητα τὸ περὶ τοὺς Ποντικούς συμβαῖνον· εἰσὶ γὰρ οἱ μὲν σκληροὶ ἡρινοὶ οἱ δὲ μαλακοὶ χειμερινοί· πολὺ γὰρ διαφέρει τῇ κορυφότητι ὁ  
 6 μαλακός. [ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ δύο ἀρότους ὡς εἰκε

<sup>1</sup> τρι<sup>1</sup> ἡμιχοίνικα conj. Sch.; τριημισχοίνικα M; τριημιχοίνικα P<sub>2</sub>Ald.H.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. IV. 4-6

mature. But there is also a kind which takes two months; this was brought to Achaia from Sicily; it is not however prolific nor fertile, though as food it is light and sweet. There is another such kind which grows in Euboea and especially in the region of Karystos. There are several kinds that take three months, and these, wherever they are found, are light and not prolific; their growth consists of a single 'reed,' and in general they are not robust. Lightest of all we may say is the Pontic wheat; the Sicilian is heavier than most of those imported into Hellas, but heavier still than this is the Boeotian; in proof of which it is said that the athletes in Boeotia consume scarcely three pints,<sup>1</sup> while, when they come to Athens, they easily manage five.<sup>2</sup> The Laconian kind is also light. The reason for these differences is to be found in the respective soils and in the climate; <sup>3</sup> for in Asia not far from Bactra they say that in a certain place the corn is so vigorous that the grains grow as large as an olive-stone, while in the country called that of the Pissatoi it is so strong that, if a man eats too much of it, he bursts, which was actually the fate of many of the Macedonians.<sup>4</sup> There is one curious thing about the corn of Pontus, which is an exception<sup>5</sup> to the rule as to the lightness of crops raised in three months; for there the hard crops are those of the spring, the soft ones those of the winter; for soft kinds are exceedingly light. Two sowings, as it appears, are made of all corn

<sup>2</sup> πενθ' ἡμιχοίника conj. Sch.; πενθημισχοίника M; πενθη-  
μιχοίника P<sub>2</sub>Ald.H. <sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 70.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. in Alexander's army.

<sup>5</sup> ἀνομολογούμενον: cf. C.P. 4. 8. 2; Plat. Gorg. 495 A.

παντὸς τοῦ σίτου ποιοῦνται, τὸν μὲν χειμερινὸν τὸν δὲ ἡρινόν, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὰ ὄσπρια καταβάλλουσιν].

Εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ μὲν καθαροὶ αἰρῶν, ὥσπερ ὁ Ποντικὸς καὶ ὁ Αἰγύπτιος· καθαρὸς δὲ ἐπιεικῶς καὶ ὁ Σικελὸς καὶ μάλιστα ὁ Ἀκραγαντῖνος οὐκ αἰρώδης.

Ὁ δὲ Σικελὸς ἴδιον ἔχει τὸ μελάμπυρον καλούμενον, ὃ ἐστὶν ἀβλαβές καὶ οὐχ ὥσπερ ἡ αἶρα βαρὺ καὶ κεφαλαλγές. ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν τοιαῦτα, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη, ταῖς χώραις ἀναθετέον καὶ ὅσον ἐπιβάλλει τοῖς γένεσιν.

V. Ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὀσπρίοις οὐχ ὁμοίως ἐστὶ λαβεῖν τὰς τοιαύτας διαφοράς, εἴτ' οὖν διὰ τὸ μὴ ἐξετάζειν ὁμοίως εἴτε καὶ διὰ τὸ μονοειδέστερα τυγχάνειν· ἔξω γὰρ ἐρεβίνθου καὶ φακοῦ καὶ ἐπ' ὀλίγου κυάμου καὶ ὀρόβου, καθ' ὅσον ἢ τῶν χρωμάτων καὶ τῶν χυλῶν διαφορά, τῶν γ' ἄλλων οὐ ποιοῦσιν ιδέας. οἱ δὲ ἐρέβινθοι καὶ τοῖς μεγέθεσι καὶ τοῖς χυλοῖς καὶ τοῖς χρώμασι καὶ ταῖς μορφαῖς διαφέρουσιν, οἷον κριοὶ ὀροβιαῖοι οἱ ἀνὰ μέσον. ἐπὶ πᾶσι δὲ τὰ λευκὰ γλυκύτερα· καὶ γὰρ ὁ ὀροβος καὶ φακὸς καὶ ἐρέβινθος καὶ κύαμος καὶ σήσαμον· ἔστι γὰρ καὶ σήσαμον λευκόν.

- 2 Ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐν τοῖς τοιοῖσδε ποιεῖν ἐστὶ τὰς διαφορὰς οἷον, ἐπεὶ πάντα ταῦτ' ἔλλοβα, τὰ μὲν

---

ὁμοίως . . . καταβάλλουσιν bracketed by Sch. as a gloss.

But cf. 8. 8. 3. <sup>1</sup> cf. Diosc. 4. 116.

i.e. when it gets into the bread.

cf. Plin. 18. 156; Diosc. 2. 100.

ὅσον ἐπιβάλλει: cf. Arist. Pol. 1. 13. 8.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. IV. 6-v. 2

alike, one in winter and one in spring, at which time they also plant the seed of the pulses.<sup>1</sup>

Some kinds are free from darnel, as the Pontic and the Egyptian; the Sicilian is also fairly free from it, and that of Akragas is especially immune from darnel.

<sup>2</sup> Peculiar however to the Sicilian is the plant called *melampyron*,<sup>3</sup> which is harmless<sup>4</sup> and not, like the darnel, injurious and productive of headache.<sup>5</sup> However such peculiarities, as was said, must be ascribed to the soil, and to a certain extent<sup>6</sup> to the different characters of different kinds.

### *Of the differences between pulses.*

V. In pulses we cannot find such differences to the same extent, whether for the want of equally careful enquiry or because there is actually less diversity in these plants. <sup>7</sup> For, apart from chick-pea lentil and to a certain extent bean and vetch (in so far as in these we find differences of colour and taste), among the rest<sup>8</sup> no distinct forms are recognised. Chick-peas however differ in size colour taste and shape; thus there are the varieties called 'rams,' 'vetch-like' chick-peas and the intermediate forms.<sup>9</sup> In all pulses the white are the sweeter, and this applies to vetch lentil chick-pea bean and sesame, of which also there is a white form.

<sup>10</sup> However it is more possible to recognise the differences in such points as these:—all these plants have pods,<sup>11</sup> but whereas the pods in some kinds have

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 18. 124.      <sup>8</sup> γ' conj. Sch.; τ' Ald.H.

<sup>9</sup> οἱ after ὀριβιαῖοι add. Dalec. For ἀνὰ μέσον cf. 3. 18. 2.

<sup>10</sup> Plin 18. 125.

<sup>11</sup> ἑλλοβα conj. Scal. from G; ἐλλέβορα Ald.H.; ἐλλόβορα U; ἐπεὶ πάντα ταῦτ' conj. W.; ἐπὶ πάντα τὰ Ald.H.

## THEOPHRASTUS

αὐτῶν ἀδιάφρακτα καὶ ὥσπερ συμψάνοντα τυγχάνει, καθάπερ ὄροβος πισὸς καὶ σχεδὸν τὰ πλεῖστα, τὰ δὲ διαπεφραγμένα, καθάπερ θέρμος, ἔτι δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ ἰδίως τὸ σήσαμον. καὶ τὰ μὲν μακρόλοβα τὰ δὲ καὶ στρογγυλόλοβα, καθάπερ ὁ ἐρέβινθος. ἀνὰ λόγον δ' ἀκολουθεῖ καὶ τὰ πλήθη τῶν σπερμάτων· ἐλάττω γὰρ ἐν τοῖς μικροῖς, ὥσπερ ἐν τε τῷ τῶν ἐρεβινθων καὶ ἐν τῷ τῶν φακῶν.

- 3 Καὶ παραπλήσιαι δὲ ἴσως αἱ τοιαῦται καὶ ἅς ἐπὶ τῶν σιτηρῶν ἐλέγομεν περὶ τῶν σταχύων καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν καρπῶν· ἐπεὶ καὶ οἱ καλούμενοι λοβοὶ σχεδὸν ἀκόλουθοι τοῖς σπέρμασιν εἰσιν, οἱ μὲν ἐπιπλατεῖς, ὥσπερ οἱ τοῦ φακοῦ καὶ τῆς ἀφάκης, οἱ δὲ κυλινδρώδεις μᾶλλον, ὡς οἱ τοῦ ὀρόβου καὶ τοῦ πισοῦ· τὰ γὰρ σπέρματα ἐκατέρων τοιαῦτα τοῖς σχήμασι· ἀλλὰ τὰς μὲν τοιαύτας διαφορὰς πολλὰς ἂν τις εὖροι καθ' ἕκαστον, ὧν αἱ μὲν κοιναὶ πᾶσιν αἱ δὲ ἰδίαὶ κατὰ γένος.
- 4 Ὅτι δὲ πάντα προσπέφυκε τοῖς λοβοῖς καὶ ἔχει καθάπερ ἀρχὴν τινα, τὰ μὲν προέχουσαν, ὥσπερ ὁ κύαμος καὶ ὁ ἐρέβινθος, τὰ δὲ καὶ ἔγκοιλον, ὥσπερ θέρμος καὶ ἄλλ' ἅττα, τὰ δὲ οὕτω μὲν οὐ φανερὰν ἐλάττω δὲ καὶ ὥσπερ ἀποσημαίνουσαν μόνον, δῆλον μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ὀψευς· ἐξ ἧς καὶ ὅταν σπυρῇ βλαστάνει καὶ ριζοῦται, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη, κατ' ἀρχὰς δὲ καὶ αὐτὰ τρέφεται προσηρτημένα τῷ λοβῷ, μέχρι οὗ ἂν

<sup>1</sup> ἀδιάφρακτα conj. Scal from G, non intersepta; διάφρακτα Ald.H.      <sup>2</sup> cf. l. 11. 5.

<sup>3</sup> διαπεφραγμένα conj. Sch.; λεία πεφραγμένα Ald.H.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 3. 18. 13.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. v. 2-4

no divisions,<sup>1</sup> but the seeds as it were touch one another,<sup>2</sup> as in vetch pea and most kinds, in some there are divisions,<sup>3</sup> as in lupin and still more in sesame, in which the divisions are of a peculiar kind.<sup>4</sup> Again some have long, some round pods, as chick-pea. And the number of seeds follows in proportion, since they are fewer in the small pods, as in those of chick-pea and lentil.

Possibly these differences correspond to those which we mentioned in the case of cereals as to the ears and the actual fruits; for what are called 'pods' also<sup>5</sup> fairly correspond to the shape of the seeds, some being flat, as those of lentil and tare, some more or less cylindrical, as those of vetch and pea<sup>6</sup>: for in the case of either pair of plants the seeds correspond in shape. However one might discover and distinguish many such differences, of which some are common to a whole kind,<sup>7</sup> others special to particular varieties.

In all cases the seeds are attached to the pods and have a sort of starting-point, which in some cases projects, as in bean and chick-pea, in some is hollow, as in lupin and some others, and in some is not thus conspicuous but smaller and, as it were, only indicated; this is plain from observation; it is from this point that the seeds germinate and take root when they are sown, as was said<sup>8</sup>: but to start with they are themselves nourished by being so attached to the pod until they are matured. This

<sup>1</sup> i.e. as does the form of the ear in cereals.

<sup>6</sup> καὶ τοῦ πικροῦ τὰ γὰρ conj. Scal. from Plin. *l.c.* and G; τοῦ πικροῦ γὰρ τὰ UMAld.

<sup>7</sup> i.e. which either differentiate (e.g.) pea from lentil, or one variety of pea from another. cf. 8. 4. 2 n.

<sup>8</sup> 8. 2. 1.



## THEOPHRASTUS

τελειωθῇ· φανερόν δέ ἐστι καὶ ἐκ τῶν νῦν καὶ ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων. περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν κατὰ τὰς διαφορὰς ἄλλης.

VI. Σπείρειν δὲ ξυμφέρει πάντα μάλιστα μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὠραίοις ἀρότοις· οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν ξηρᾷ τινες καταβάλλουσι καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα πυρούς καὶ κριθὰς ὡς μάλιστα αὐταρκεῖν δυνάμενα, ὅπου μὴ ὄρνισιν ἢ ἄλλοις θηρίοις ἐπισινῆς ἢ χώρα. δοκεῖ γὰρ ὡς ἐπὶ πᾶν ὁ πρῶτος ἄροτος ἀμείνων εἶναι, χεῖριστος δὲ σπόρος ἐν ταῖς ἡμιβρόχοις· ἀπόλλυται γὰρ καὶ ἐκγαλακτοῦται τὰ σπέρματα, καὶ ἅμα ξυμβαίνει πῶαν ἀναφύεσθαι πολλήν. μετὰ δὲ τὴν σπορὰν ὕδωρ ἐπιγίνεσθαι πᾶσι ξυμφέρει, πλὴν ὅσα δυσβλαστῇ γίνεται μᾶλλον, ὥσπερ ὁ τε κύαμος δοκεῖ καὶ τῶν θερινῶν σήσαμον καὶ κύμινον καὶ ἐρύσιμον.

- 2 Πυκνοσπορεῖν δὲ καὶ μανοσπορεῖν καὶ πρὸς τὰς χώρας βλέποντα χρή· πλεῖον γὰρ ἢ πίειρα καὶ ἀγαθὴ δύναται φέρειν τῆς ὑφάμμου τε καὶ λεπτῆς. καίτοι λέγεται τις λόγος ὡς ὅτε μὲν πλεον ὅτε δὲ ἔλαττον ἢ αὐτὴ δέχεται χώρα· καὶ οἰωνίζονται τὸ πλεον ὡς οὐκ ἀγαθόν, πεινῆν γὰρ εὐθύς φασὶ τὴν γῆν· οὗτος μὲν οὖν ἴσως εὐθηέστερος λόγος. εἰ δὲ τις πρὸς τὰ σπέρματα θεωροίῃ καὶ μάλιστα γὰρ πρὸς αὐτοὺς τοὺς τόπους ἅμα τῷ ἐδάφει καὶ τὴν θέσιν ἀναθεωρῶν τὴν γὰρ πρὸς τὰ πνεύ-

<sup>1</sup> αὐταρκεῖν Ald.; ἀνταρκεῖν U.

<sup>2</sup> ἐπισινῆς conj. Dalec.; ἐπινῆς UMald.; οὐνοxia G.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. after the rains.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. v. 4-vi. 2

is clear both from what is said now and from what was said before. Enough then about the points of difference.

*Of sowing, manuring, and watering.*

VI. It is expedient to sow all these, if possible, at the early seed-time; however some plant the seed even in dry ground, and especially wheat and barley, on the theory that they are most likely to hold their own<sup>1</sup> at a time when the ground is not infested<sup>2</sup> with birds or other creatures. For it appears that in general the first sowing is better, and worst that which is made in half-soaked ground;<sup>3</sup> for then the seeds perish and become 'milky';<sup>4</sup> moreover many weeds come up at that time. After the sowing however it is beneficial for all that rain should fall on them, except in the case of some which appear to germinate then with more difficulty, as seems<sup>5</sup> to be the case with beans, and among summer crops with sesame cummin and *erysimon*.

<sup>6</sup> As to sowing thickly or scantily one should have regard to the soil as well as to other considerations; for a fat good soil can bear more than one which is sandy and light. However there is a saying that the same soil can take at one time more, at another less seed; and in general the former condition is taken as an unfavourable omen, for then they say at once that the soil is hungry; however this is perhaps a rather foolish saying. If a man should have regard to the kind of the seed and especially to the actual situation, considering the aspect in respect of winds

<sup>1</sup> cf. γαλάκτωσις, C. P. 4. 4. 7 and 8.

<sup>2</sup> δοκεῖ conj. W.; ἰδόκει Ald. <sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 196.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ματα καὶ τὸν ἥλιον, οἰκειότερον ἂν λαμβάνοι τὰς διαφοράς.

- 3 Ἄνα λόγον δὲ ἔχει καὶ ἡ κόπρισις τοῖς σπόροις πρὸς τὰς χώρας· νειὸς δ' ἀμείνων ἢ χειμέριος τῆς ἐαρινῆς. ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ οὐ ξυμφέρειν βαθεῖαν ἀροτριᾶν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν Συρίᾳ, δι' ὃ μικροῖς ἀρότροις χρῶνται. παρ' ἄλλοις δὲ τὸ λίαν ἐξεργάζεσθαι βλάπτει, καθάπερ ἐν Σικελίᾳ, δι' ὃ καὶ τῶν ξένων ὡς ἔοικε πολλοὶ διαμαρτάνουσι. πάντα μὲν οὖν πρὸς τὰς χώρας.
- 4 Διαιροῦσι δὲ καὶ τὰ σπέρματα ποία ποῖον πρόσφορον· ἐν γὰρ ταῖς χειμεριναῖς πυρὸν μᾶλλον ἢ κριθήν, καὶ ὅλως σῖτον ἢ χεδροπὰ κελεύουσιν ἐν ταῖς χέρσοις καὶ διὰ χρόνου κινουμέναις· καὶ γὰρ αὗται πυρὸν φέρουσι μᾶλλον ἢ κριθήν. δέχεται δὲ καὶ ἐπομβρίαν μᾶλλον πυρὸς τῆς κριθῆς, καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀκόπροις φέρει μᾶλλον. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν πυρῶν ποῖος τῇ ποίᾳ πρόσφορος, οἷον ἀγαθῇ καὶ πιεῖρα καὶ ψαφαρᾷ καὶ λεπτῇ <καὶ> ταῖς ἄλλαις ὁμοίως.
- 5 Ὑδωρ δὲ ὅταν μὲν χλοηφορήσῃ καὶ κυήσῃ πλείον ἅπασι ξυμφέρειν· ἀνθοῦσι δὲ πυροῖς μὲν καὶ κριθαῖς καὶ τοῖς σιτώδεσι βλαβερόν· ἀπόλ-

---

<sup>1</sup> ἂν λαμβάνοι conj. Sch.; ἀναλαμβάνοι Ald. H.

<sup>2</sup> κόπρισις conj. Sch.; κόπρησις Ald.

<sup>3</sup> cf. C. P. 3. 20. 7. <sup>4</sup> cf. C. P. 3. 20. 5.

<sup>5</sup> πάντα μὲν οὖν M; ταῦτα μὲν Ald. H.; ταῦτα μὲν οὖν conj. Sch. followed by W.

<sup>6</sup> κελεύουσιν conj. W.; καὶ ὅλως Ald. H.

<sup>7</sup> κινουμέναις conj. Sch. (cf. C. P. 3. 21. 4, ἡ διὰ χρόνου γεωργουμένη γῆ); κενουμέναις UAld; καινουμέναις Vin.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. vi. 2-5

and sun, as well as the soil itself, he would more properly gauge<sup>1</sup> the differences.

Similarly manuring<sup>2</sup> for the sown crops should be done with regard to the soil; and it is better to turn up fallow<sup>3</sup> land in winter than in spring. And there are some<sup>4</sup> places in which deep ploughing is not expedient, as in Syria; wherefore they use small plough-shares. In other parts to work the ground too much is injurious, as in Sicily: wherefore many settlers in the country, it appears, make a mistake. From every point of view<sup>5</sup> therefore the soil must be considered.

The seeds are also classified according as each suits a particular soil; in wintry lands wheat is sown rather than barley, and in general they say<sup>6</sup> that corn rather than leguminous plants should be sown in barren soils which are only disturbed<sup>7</sup> at long intervals; and such soils bear wheat better than barley.<sup>8</sup> Moreover wheat welcomes abundant rain<sup>9</sup> more than barley, and bears better on land which is not manured.<sup>10</sup> In like manner they distinguish among wheats themselves which suits which kind of soil, namely which grows best in good<sup>11</sup> fat soil and which in crumbling light soil, and<sup>12</sup> so on with other kinds of soil.

<sup>13</sup> More abundant rain is beneficial to all crops when they have come into leaf and formed the flower; however it is harmful to wheats and barleys and other cereals when they are actually in flower; for

<sup>8</sup> τῆς κριθῆς conj. W.; καὶ κριθῆς UM; ἡ κριθῇ Ald.; ἡ κριθῇ H.

<sup>9</sup> cf. C P. l.c.

<sup>10</sup> Explained C. P. l.c.

<sup>11</sup> ἀγαθῇ conj. Casaub.: so Vin.; ἀγαθῇ Ald. (and so with the other datives). <sup>12</sup> καὶ add. St.

<sup>13</sup> Plin. 18. 151 and 152.

λυσι γάρ· ὁσπρίοις δ' ἀβλαβές πλὴν ἐρεβίνθων· οὔτοι γὰρ ἀποκλυσθείσης τῆς ἄλμης ἀπόλλυνται σφακελίζοντες καὶ ὑπὸ καμπῶν κατεσθιόμενοι· ἰσχυρότερος δὲ ὁ μέλας ἐρέβινθος καὶ ὁ πυρρός τοῦ λευκοῦ· συμφέρει δέ, φασίν, ἐν τοῖς ἐφύδροις τόποις ὅψ' ἐ σπείρειν αὐτόν. κύαμος δὲ ἀνθῶν μάλιστα φιλεῖ βρέχεσθαι, δι' ὃ καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν ὀψισπορεῖν, ὥσπερ εἵπομεν, ὅτι πολλὴν ἀνθεῖ· μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἀπάνθησιν ὀλίγου πάμπαν ὕδατος δεῖται· σύνεγγυς γὰρ ἡ τελειώσις. ἀλλ' ὅταν ἀδρυνθῇ καὶ βλάπτειν δοκεῖ τὰ σιτώδη καὶ κριθὴν δὲ πυροῦ μάλλον.

- 6 Ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ δὲ καὶ Βαβυλῶνι καὶ Βάκτροις, ὅπου μὴ ἔεται ἡ χώρα <ἡ> σπανίως, αἱ δρόσοι τὸ ὅλον ἐκτρέφουσιν. ἔτι καὶ οἱ περὶ Κυρήνην καὶ Εὐεσπερίδας τόποι. καιριώτατα δὲ πᾶσιν ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν τὰ ἡρινά· δι' ὃ καὶ ἡ Σικελία πολύσιτος· πολλὰ γὰρ τοῦ ἡρος καὶ μαλακὰ γίνεται, τοῦ δὲ χειμῶνος ὀλίγα. ζητεῖ δὲ ἡ μὲν λεπτόγεως πολλὰ κατὰ μικρόν· ἡ δὲ πίειρα καὶ πλῆθος μὲν ἐνεγκεῖν δύναται καὶ αὐδρίαν—πρὸς δὲ τὴν χώρας αὐδρίαν πόντια πνεύματα καὶ αὖραι δοκοῦσι ξυμφέρειν, ἄλλα δὲ παρ' ἄλλοις τοιαῦτα, καθάπερ καὶ πρότερον εἴρηται,—ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πᾶν δὲ μάλλον αὐχμὸς ἢ ἐπόμβρία ξυμφέρει τῷ σίτῳ·
- 7 οἱ γὰρ ὄμβροι καὶ ἄλλως ἐναντίοι καὶ πολλάκις αὐτὰ τὰ σπέρματα διαφθείρουσιν, εἰ δὲ μὴ πλη-

<sup>1</sup> σφακελίζοντες: cf. 4. 14. 4.

<sup>2</sup> ὁ πυρρὸς τοῦ λευκοῦ conj. Scal. from G and Plin. 18. 124; ὁ λευκὸς τοῦ πυροῦ UAld; ὁ λ. τ. πυρροῦ H.; ὁ λ. τ. πυρρὸς M.

<sup>3</sup> cf. C.P. 3. 22. 3.

<sup>4</sup> δεῖται conj. Sch.; δεῖσθαι Ald.H.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VI. 5-7

it destroys the flower. But to pulses it is harmless, except to chick-peas; for these, if the salt is washed off them, perish from rot<sup>1</sup> or from being eaten by caterpillars. However the black and the red<sup>2</sup> chick-pea are stronger than the white, and it is beneficial, they say, to sow this crop late in moist soil. The bean<sup>3</sup> likes especially to receive rain when it is in flower; wherefore men are unwilling, as we said, to sow it late, because it flowers for a long time; but after it has shed its flowers, it needs<sup>4</sup> very little water, since its time of maturity is now near. But, when cereals have matured, it appears that water actually injures them, and barley more than wheat.

In Egypt Babylon and Bactra, where the country receives no rain, or<sup>5</sup> but little, the dews are sufficient nourishment; and so is it also<sup>6</sup> in the regions about Cyrene and the Euesperides. However to all, generally speaking, it is the spring rains which are the most seasonable; and that is why Sicily is rich in corn; for there is abundance of soft rain in spring and little of it in winter. A light soil requires plenty of rain, but little at a time; while that which is fat can indeed bear both an abundance of rain and a drought; (for a droughty country sea-winds<sup>7</sup> and breezes seem to be helpful, and various breezes of this kind prevail in various countries, as has been said already). Yet in general drought suits corn better than excessive rain; for heavy showers, apart from the harm which they do in other ways, often actually destroy the seed, or at

<sup>5</sup> ἢ add. Scal. from G: so Vin.

<sup>6</sup> ἔτι conj. St. from G (?); ἐπεὶ Ald.

<sup>7</sup> πόντια conj. Sch.; πάντα Ald. cf. 8. 7. 6.

## THEOPHRASTUS

θός γε ποιουσι βοτάνης, ὥστε καταπνίγεσθαι καὶ ἀτροφεῖν.

VII. Τῶν μὲν οὖν ἄλλων σπερμάτων οὐδὲν εἰς ἄλλο πέφυκε μεταβάλλειν φθειρόμενον, πυρὸν δὲ καὶ κριθήν εἰς αἶραν φασὶ καὶ μᾶλλον τὸν πυρόν, γίνεσθαι δὲ τοῦτ' ἐν ταῖς ἐπομβρίαις καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τοῖς εὐύδροις καὶ ὀμβρώδεσι χωρίοις. ὅτι δ' οὐκ ἔστιν ἡρινὸν ἢ αἶρα καθάπερ ἢ ἄλλη πόα, πειρῶνται γάρ τινες τοῦτο λέγειν, ἐκεῖθεν δῆλον· εὐθύς γὰρ τοῦ χειμῶνος φανερά γίνεται πεφυκυῖα· καὶ διαφέρει πολλοῖς· ἔχει γὰρ τὸ φύλλον στενὸν καὶ δασὺ καὶ λιπαρόν, καὶ τούτων ἰδιώτατον τὸ λιπαρόν· ἢ γὰρ δασύτης καὶ τοῖς τοῦ αἰγίλωπος ὑπάρχει, ἀλλ' ἐκφανῆς γίνεται ἐπὶ τοῖς τοῦ αἰγίλωπος τοῦ ἥρος. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ἴδιον τούτων, καὶ ἔτι τοῦ λινου· καὶ γὰρ ἐκ τούτου φασὶ γίνεσθαι τὴν αἶραν.

- 2 Τοῦ δὲ ἐρεβίνθου πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα χεδροπὰ τό τε περὶ τὴν ἄνθησιν λεχθὲν καὶ τὸ τάχιστα τελειοκαρπεῖν ἰσχυρότατον ὄν καὶ ξυλωδέστατον, καὶ

<sup>1</sup> Plin 18. 149 and 150 ; cf. C.P. 4. 5. 2.

<sup>2</sup> πόα: ? grasses; cf. 8. 6. 1.

<sup>3</sup> πειρῶνται γάρ τινες H.; ἀπειρῶνται αἰτιῶνται γάρ τινες U; ἀ πειρῶνται αἰτιῶνται γάρ τινες PM: so also Ald. Bas. Cam. with mark of corruption.

<sup>4</sup> εὐθύς γὰρ τοῦ conj. Sch.; εὐθύς τὸ τοῦ Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VI. 7-VII. 2

least cause a luxuriant growth of leafage, so that the grain is choked and becomes abortive.

### *Of the degeneration of cereals into darnel.*

VII. <sup>1</sup>Now, while it is not the nature of any other of these seeds to degenerate and change into something else, they say that wheat and barley change into darnel, and especially wheat; and that this occurs with heavy rains and especially in well-watered and rainy districts. But that darnel is not a plant of the spring, like other weeds <sup>2</sup> (for some endeavour <sup>3</sup> to make this out) is clear from the following consideration: it springs up and becomes noticeable directly <sup>4</sup> winter comes; and it is distinguished in many ways; the foliage <sup>5</sup> is narrow abundant and glossy, and this gloss is the most marked of these differences; (the <sup>6</sup> leaves of *aigilops* <sup>7</sup> are indeed also abundant, <sup>8</sup> but this character does not shew itself in them till spring). This then is peculiar to the seeds of wheat and barley, and also to those of flax; for that too, they say, turns into darnel.

### *Of the peculiar character of chick-pea.*

A peculiarity of chick-pea as compared with other leguminous plants is that which has been mentioned as to its flowering; and also the fact that it is the quickest to mature its fruit, being very strong and woody; and again there is the fact that in

<sup>6</sup> cf. *C.P.* 4. 4. 11.

<sup>6</sup> τοῖς conj. Sch.; τῇς Ald.

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 18. 155.

<sup>8</sup> ἀλλ' . . . αἰγίλωπος: text a makeshift. Wanting in Ald. and all MSS. except U; ἀλλ' ἐκφανεῖς γίνονται καὶ τοῖς τοῦ αἰγ. U; ἐκφανῆς γίνεται conj. Sch.; ἐπὶ for καὶ conj. W.



## THEOPHRASTUS

τὸ ὅλον μὴ ποιεῖν νειὸν <ὥς> καρπιζόμενον· τὴν δὲ πόαν ἐξαπόλλυσι καὶ μάλιστα δὲ καὶ τάχιστα τὸν τρίβολον. ὅλως δὲ οὐδὲ ἡ τυχοῦσα δύναται φέρειν αὐτόν, ἀλλὰ μελάγγειόν τινα δεῖ καὶ πείραν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ἡ ἀρίστη νειὸς ἀπὸ τῶν κνάμων καίπερ πυκνοσπορουμένων καὶ πολλὸν καρπὸν φερόντων.

- 3    Τὰ δὲ ἐν τοῖς θερινοῖς ἀρότοις ὀλίγου δεῖ πάντα, φασὶ δὲ καὶ τὰ ναματιαῖα συμφέρειν μᾶλλον αὐτοῖς τῶν ἐκ διός, μέλινοι δὲ καὶ κέγχροι ἐλάττους ὕδατος· ἐὰν γὰρ ἔχωσι πλείον φυλλοβολοῦσιν. ἰσχυρότερον δὲ ὁ κέγχρος· οἱ δὲ μέλινοι γλυκύτεροι καὶ ἀσθενέστεροι. σήσαμον δὲ οὐδὲν <ζῶον> ἐσθίει χλωρὸν οὐδὲ θέρμον. εἰ δὲ μὴδ' ἐρύσιμον μὴδὲ ὄρμινον σκεπτέον· καὶ ταῦτα πικρά. ἔστι δὲ τὸ μὲν ἐρύσιμον ὅμοιον σησάμῳ καὶ λίπος ἔχει· τὸ δὲ ὄρμινον κυμινῶδες μέλαν· σπείρεται δὲ ἅμα καὶ τὸ σήσαμον. περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων σκεπτέον.

- 4    Ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἀγαθαῖς χώραις πρὸς τὸ μὴ φυλλομανεῖν ἐπινέμουσι καὶ ἐπικείρουσι τὸν σῖτον,

<sup>1</sup> Lit. 'does not make fallow land.' cf. *C.P.* 4. 8. 3.

<sup>2</sup> ὥς καρπιζόμενον I conj after W. (καρπιζόμενον τὴν γῆν); καρπὸς U; καρπὸς M; καρπὸν Ald. cf. *C.P.* l.c. and 4. 8. 1; 4. 8. 3: μὴ καρπίζεσθαι τὴν γῆν ἀλλὰ νειὸν ποιεῖν (? <νέοις>) καρποῖς, 'for fresh crops.'

<sup>3</sup> δὲ conj. W.; γε Ald.

<sup>4</sup> cf. *C.P.* 4. 8. 3.

<sup>5</sup> ἡ ἀρίστη νειὸς conj. W. (cf. 8. 9. 1; *C.P.* 4. 8. 1); χειρίστη νήπιος U; χειρίστην νήπιος MP; καλλίστη νειὸς Ald. cf. also *C.P.* 3. 20. 7.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VII. 2-4

general it does not reinvigorate the ground,<sup>1</sup> since it exhausts<sup>2</sup> it; but it destroys weeds,<sup>3</sup> and above all and soonest caltrop. And in general<sup>4</sup> it is not every kind of soil which suits it; the soil should be black and fat. Of the other leguminous plants the bean best<sup>5</sup> reinvigorates the ground, even if it is sown thick and produces much fruit.

### *Of special features of 'summer crops.'*

All those crops<sup>6</sup> sown at the summer seed-time need little water,<sup>7</sup> and they say also that spring water is better for them than rain water; and Italian millet<sup>8</sup> and millet need less water, for, if they have too much, they shed their leaves. Millet is the robuster plant, Italian millet is sweeter and less robust. Sesame and lupin are not eaten green by any animal<sup>9</sup>; whether the same is true of *erysimon* and *horminon* is matter for enquiry; for these too are bitter. *Erysimon* is like sesame and is oily; *horminon* is like cummin and black, and is sown at the same time as sesame. These matters then require investigation.

### *Of treatment of cereals peculiar to special localities.*

<sup>10</sup> In good soils to prevent the crop running wildly to leaf they graze and cut down the young corn,

<sup>6</sup> Plin. 18. 96 and 101.

<sup>7</sup> ὀλίγου, sc. ὕδατος, but the omission is strange; perhaps due to misunderstanding of ὀλίγου δεῖ by a scribe. Sch. joins the words τὰ δὲ . . . πάντα to the last sentence, and supplies καρπίζεται τὴν γῆν (ὀλίγου δεῖ = almost).

<sup>8</sup> μέλινοι Ald. H; ἔλυμοι Vin. cf. 8. 1. 1. n.

<sup>9</sup> ζῶον add. Sch. from G and Plin. 18. 96. cf. C.P. 6. 12. 12.

<sup>10</sup> Plin. 18 157-162.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ. συμβαίνει δ' ἂν μὲν ἐπινέμωσιν ὅποσακισοῦν μηδὲν ἀλλοιοῦσθαι τὸν καρπὸν, ἂν δὲ ἐπικείρῳσιν ἅπαξ μόνον ἐξίστασθαι τὸν πυρὸν καὶ γίνεσθαι μακρὸν καὶ οὐχ ἄδρὸν, ὃν καλοῦσι καμακίαν, καὶ οὐκ ἀποκαθίστασθαι πάλιν σπειρόμενον· τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ὡς παύροις συμβαῖνον Θετταλοὶ λέγουσιν. ἐν Βαβυλῶνι δὲ αἰὲ καὶ ὥσπερ τεταγμένως ἐπικείρουσι μὲν δῖς, τὸ δὲ τρίτον τὰ πρόβατα ἐπαφιᾷσιν· οὕτω γὰρ φύει τὸν καυλόν, εἰ δὲ μὴ φυλλομανεῖ· γίνεται δὲ μὴ καλῶς ἐργασαμένοις πεντηκονταχόα, τοῖς δὲ ἐπιμελῶς ἑκατονταχόα. ἢ δὲ ἐργασία τὸ ὡς πλείστον χρόνον ἐμμένειν τὸ ὕδωρ, ὅπως ἰλὺν ποιήσῃ πολλήν· πίειραν γὰρ οὔσαν καὶ πυκνήν τὴν γῆν δεῖ ποιῆσαι μανήν. ὕλην δὲ οὐ φέρει καὶ πόαν ὥσπερ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ. τὰ μὲν οὖν τοιαῦτα χώρας ἀρετῆς.

- 5 Φύεται δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ ῥιζῶν πυρὸς καὶ κριθῇ πολλαχοῦ τῷ ὑστέρω ἔτει· αὐτοετῆς δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν εἰς κράστιν κειρομένων ἑτέρου καλάμου παραβλαστάνοντος. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ χειμῶνος ἐκπαγῇ· παραβλαστάνει γὰρ ὑδάτων ἐπιγινόμενων· ὁ δὲ στάχυς ἀτελής καὶ μικρὸς ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων. βλαστάνουσι δὲ τῷ ὑστέρω ἔτει καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν καταπονουμένων καὶ συμπατουμένων, ὥστε μηδὲν εἶναι δῆλον ὡς εἰπεῖν, οἶον ὅταν

<sup>1</sup> ἰλὺν conj. Sch from Plin. 18. 162; ὕλην Ald. H.

<sup>2</sup> Text perhaps defective : cf. Plin. *l.c.*

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VII. 4-5

for instance in Thessaly. And the result is that, however often they graze it, the crop is not impaired; while if they cut it down not more than once, the wheat changes in character and becomes tall and weak—what they call ‘long-shafted’ corn, and, if seed of this is sown, it does not recover its character. This the Thessalians tell of as having occurred in a few cases. At Babylon however they cut it down twice always and as it were systematically, and after that they let the sheep on to it; for in that case it makes its straw, but otherwise it runs wild to leaf; and, if the ground is ill cultivated, it produces fifty fold, if it is carefully cultivated, a hundred fold. And the ‘cultivation’ consists in letting the water lie on it as long as possible, so that it may make much silt<sup>1</sup>; for the soil being fat and close must be made open. And at Babylon<sup>2</sup> the ground does not produce weeds and grasses, as it does in Egypt. Such are the things which depend on the quality of the soil.

*Of cereals which grow a second time from the same stock.*

<sup>3</sup> Wheat and barley also in many places grow from the root in the next year, or in the same year from crops cut down for fodder, since a second haulm shoots up. The like happens also if the plant has been nipped by winter; for it shoots again when rain comes; but such plants produce an ear which is imperfect and under-sized. There is also new growth the next year from plants which are roughly treated or trodden down<sup>4</sup> so that hardly anything remains visible, as happens when an army has marched over

<sup>3</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 8. 5.      <sup>4</sup> cf. C.P. l.c.

## THEOPHRASTUS

διέλθη στρατόπεδον, καὶ οἱ στάχυνες μικροὶ καὶ τούτων, οὓς καλοῦσιν ἄρνας· τῶν δὲ χεδροπῶν οὐδὲν δύναται τοιοῦτον ποιεῖν ἢ οὐχ ὁμοίως. καὶ αἱ βλαστήσεις τοσαυταχῶς.

- 6 Πρὸς αὐξήσιν δὲ καὶ τροφήν μέγιστα μὲν ἡ τοῦ ἁέρος κρᾶσις συμβάλλεται, καὶ ὅλως ἡ τοῦ ἔτους κατάστασις· εὐκαίρων γὰρ ὑδάτων καὶ εὐδιῶν καὶ χειμῶνων γινομένων ἅπαντα εὐφορα καὶ πολύκαρπα, καὶ ἐν ἀλμώδεσι καὶ λεπτογείοις ἦ· δι' δὲ καὶ παροιμιαζόμενοι λέγουσιν οὐ κακῶς ὅτι “ἔτος φέρει οὐχὶ ἄρουρα.”

- Μέγα δὲ καὶ αἱ χώραι διαφέρουσιν οὐ μόνον τῷ πίειραι καὶ λεπταὶ καὶ ἔπομβροι καὶ αὐχμώδεις <εῖναι> ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ ἁέρι τῷ περιέχοντι καὶ τοῖς πνεύμασιν· ἔνιαι γὰρ οὔσαι λεπταὶ καὶ φαῦλαι τελεσφοροῦσι διὰ τὸ πρὸς τὰ πνεύματα τὰ πόντια  
7 κείσθαι καλῶς. ἄλλα δὲ ἄλλαις τοιαῦτα, καθάπερ πολλάκις εἴρηται· ταῖς μὲν γὰρ τὰ ζεφυρικὰ ταῖς δὲ τὰ βόρεια ταῖς δὲ τὰ νότια.

Συμβάλλεται δὲ καὶ οὐ μικρὰ ἡ ἐργασία καὶ μάλισθ' ἡ <πρὸ> τοῦ σπόρου· κατεργασθεῖσα γὰρ ῥαδίως ἐκφέρει. καὶ ἡ κόπρος δὲ μεγάλα βοηθεῖ τῷ διαθερμαίνειν καὶ συμπέττειν· προτρέχει γὰρ τὰ κοπριζόμενα τῶν ἀκόπρων καὶ εἴκοσιν ἡμέραις·

<sup>1</sup> τούτων conj. Sch.; τούτους Ald.H.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Lewis and Short s.v. *agna*.

<sup>3</sup> C. P. l.c. gives the reason.

<sup>4</sup> τοσαυταχῶς conj. Scal.; τοσαυταχῆς Ald.H.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VII. 5-7

the field; the ears in such cases<sup>1</sup> too are undersized and are called 'lambs.'<sup>2</sup> But no kind of leguminous plant<sup>3</sup> can do anything of the kind, or at least not to the same extent. In these various ways<sup>4</sup> may new growth occur.

### *Of the effects of climate, soil, and manuring.*

For growth and nourishment the climate is the most important factor, and in general the character of the season as a whole; for when rain, fair weather and storms occur opportunely, all crops bear well and are fruitful, even if they be in soil which is impregnated with salt or poor. Wherefore there is an apt proverbial saying<sup>5</sup> that "it is the year which bears and not the field."

But the soil also makes much difference, according as it is<sup>6</sup> fat or light, well watered or parched, and it also makes quite as much difference what sort of air and of winds prevails in that region; for some soils,<sup>7</sup> though light and poor, produce a good crop because the land has a fair aspect in regard to sea breezes. But, as has been repeatedly said already, the same breeze has not this effect in all places; some places are suited by a west, some by a north, some by a south wind.

Again the working of the soil and above all that which is done before<sup>8</sup> the sowing has an important effect; for when the soil is well worked it bears easily. Also dung is helpful by warming and ripening the soil, for manured land gets the start by as much as twenty days of that which has not been

<sup>5</sup> Quoted also *C.P.* 3. 23. 4.

<sup>6</sup> *εἶλαι* add. Sch. <sup>7</sup> cf. *C.P.* 3. 23. 5.

<sup>8</sup> *πρὸ* add. W. cf. *C.P.* 3. 20. 6.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἅπασιν δὲ οὐ συμφέρει· καὶ χρήσιμος οὐ μόνον τοῖς περὶ τὸν σῖτον ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πλήν πτερίδος, ταύτην δὲ φθείρειν φασὶν ἐπιβαλλομένην. ἀπόλλυται δὲ ἡ πτερίς καὶ ἐπικοιμωμένων τῶν προβάτων, ὥς δέ τινες λέγουσι καὶ ἡ Μηδικὴ διὰ τὴν κόπρον καὶ τὸ οὖρον.

VIII. Τῶν δὲ σπερμάτων ἕκαστα καὶ πρὸς τὴν τῆς χώρας φύσιν ἀρμόττει, καὶ ὅλως γένη πρὸς γένος καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς τοῖς ὁμογενέσιν, ἃ δὴ πειρῶνται διαιρεῖν. μεταβάλλει δὲ τὰ ξενικὰ τῶν σπερμάτων μάλιστα μὲν ἐν τρισὶν ἔτεσιν εἰς τὰ ἐπιχώρια. συμφέρει δὲ ἐκ τῶν ἀλεεινῶν εἰς τὰ μικρὸν ἡττον ἀλεεινὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν ψυχρινῶν ἀνὰ λόγον ποιεῖσθαι τὴν μεταβολήν. τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν δυσχειμερινῶν ἐν τοῖς πρωίοις ὀψὲ ἀποχεῖται, ὥστ' ἀπ' αὐχμοῦ φθείρεται, ἐὰν μὴ ὄψιον ὕδωρ σώσῃ. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ εὐλαβητέον φασὶ τὸ μίσγειν τὰ ξενικὰ τοῖς ἐπιχωρίοις ἐὰν μὴ ἐξ ὁμοίας, ὅτι ἀσύμφωνα τῇ χώρᾳ κατὰ τὸν σπόρον καὶ κατὰ τὴν γένεσιν, ὥστε καὶ ἐργασίας ἐτέρας δεῖται· τὰς τε τῆς γῆς διαφορὰς καὶ τὰς τῶν σπερμάτων δυνάμεις καὶ ἔτι τὰς ἐκίστων ὥρας.

Ἔτι δὲ εὐετηρία γένηται, καὶ πολυνοστότερα τὰ σπέρματα γίνεται. Ἀθήνησι γοῦν αἱ κριθαὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. Col. 2. 2. 13. The reference is perhaps to fern grown for litter, or possibly for medicinal use. cf. 9. 20. 5.

<sup>2</sup> χώρας conj. Sch.; ὥρας Ald. <sup>3</sup> ἃ conj. Dalec.; ἐν Ald.

<sup>4</sup> ψυχρινῶν conj. W.; ψυχικῶν UM; ψυχρῶν Ald.

<sup>5</sup> ἀποχεῖται conj. Sch., cf. ἀπόχυσις 8. 3. 4; ἀποκεῖται Ald. cf. 4. 4. 10.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. vii. 7-viii. 2

manured. However manure is not good for all crops; and further it is beneficial not only to corn and the like but to most other things, except fern,<sup>1</sup> which they say it destroys if it is put on. (Fern is also destroyed if sheep lie on it, and, as some say, lucerne is destroyed by their dung and urine.)

### *Of different qualities of seed.*

VIII. There is a particular kind of soil<sup>2</sup> which best suits each kind of seed, whether we compare one class with another or those of the same class; and attempts are made to distinguish these.<sup>3</sup> Foreign seeds change into the native sorts in about three years. It is well that they should be imported from a warm climate to one that is rather less warm, or from a cold one<sup>4</sup> to one that is rather less cold. Those imported from a wintry climate, if they be those of early crops, are late in coming into ear,<sup>5</sup> so that they get destroyed by drought unless rain late in the season saves them. Wherefore they say that one should take good heed not to mix foreign with native seeds, unless they come from a similar place, since<sup>6</sup> they do not agree with the soil<sup>7</sup> as to the time of being sown and of germinating, and accordingly need different cultivation; and so that one should take good heed to the differences of soil, the properties of the seed, and further the seasons appropriate to each.

When however there is a good season, the grain also is fuller.<sup>8</sup> For instance at Athens the barley pro-

<sup>1</sup> δτι conj. Sch.; ἔτι UMald.

<sup>2</sup> χώρᾳ conj. Sch.; ἔρᾳ UMald.

<sup>3</sup> πολυνοστότερα: cf. νόστιμος, C.P. 4. 13. 2, Geop. 2. 16. 1, and other reff. in Sch.'s exhaustive note.



## THEOPHRASTUS

τὰ πλείστα ποιούσιν ἄλφιστα· κριθοφόρος γὰρ ἀρίστη· τοῦτο δ' οὐχ ὅταν πλείσται γένωνται ἀλλ' ὅταν λάβῃ τινὰ κρᾶσιν. ἐν δὲ τῇ Φωκίδι περὶ Ἐλάτειαν οἱ πυροὶ ποιούσιν ἡμιόλια τὰ ἄλευρα, καὶ ἐν Σόλοις τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ οἱ πυροὶ καὶ αἱ κριθαί· καὶ παρ' ἄλλοις ἄλλα πρὸς ἅπερ εὐφυῆς ἐκάστη. βελτίω μὲν οὖν καὶ χεῖρω τὰ σπέρματα καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐργασίαν καὶ διὰ τὴν γῆν γίνεται· καὶ γὰρ ἀπαγριοῦνται καὶ ἡμεροῦνται, καθάπερ τὰ δένδρα· καὶ ὅλως μεταβάλλει <κατὰ> τὴν χώραν, ὥσπερ τινὰ τῶν δένδρων εὐθύς ἔστηκε πρὸς τὸ χεῖρον.

Ἡ Γένος δ' ὅλον ἐξαλλάττειν εἰς ἕτερον οὐδὲν ἄλλο πέφυκε πλὴν τίφη καὶ ζειά, καθάπερ εἶπομεν ἐν τοῖς πρώτοις λόγοις, καὶ ἡ αἶρα δ' ἐκ τῶν πυρῶν καὶ κριθῶν διαφθειρομένων· ἢ εἰ μὴ τοῦτο ἀλλὰ φιλεῖ γε μάλιστα ἐν τοῖς πυροῖς γίνεσθαι, καθάπερ καὶ ὁ μελάμπυρος ὁ Ποντικὸς καὶ τὸ τῶν βολβῶν σπέρμα, καὶ ἄλλα δὲ ἐν ἄλλοις τῶν σπερμάτων· ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ αἰγίλωψ δοκεῖ μᾶλλον ἐν ταῖς κριθαῖς, ἐν δὲ τοῖς φακοῖς ἄρακος τὸ τραχὺ καὶ σκληρόν, ἐν δὲ ταῖς ἀφάκαις ὁ πελεκίνος ὁμοιον τῇ ὄψει τῷ πελέκει· σχεδὸν δὲ καθ' ἕκαστόν ἐστι τὸ συνεκτρεφόμενον καὶ συνανα-

<sup>1</sup> κατὰ add. W. cf. 2. 4. 1.

<sup>2</sup> τινὰ conj. W ; τε P ; τῷ Ald. ; τὸ H Vin.Vo. cf. 2. 2. 6.

<sup>3</sup> ζειά conj. Scal. ; ἕα Ald.H. <sup>4</sup> 2. 4. 1.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VIII. 2-3

duces more meal than anywhere else, since it is an excellent land for that crop; and this is so, not merely when a very large crop is sown, but when the weather has been favourable for it. And in Phocis about Elateia the wheats produce half as much meal again as elsewhere; while at Soli in Cilicia this is true of both wheat and barley; and in other parts there are other crops for which the soil is severally well adapted. Wherefore grain turns out better or worse because of the soil as well as because of cultivation; for in some places it changes into the cultivated from the wild form, or the reverse, like trees; and in general it changes according<sup>1</sup> to the soil in which it is grown, just as some<sup>2</sup> trees, when transplanted, forthwith deteriorate.

*Of degeneration of cereals, and of the weeds which infest particular crops.*

But no kind can change altogether into another, except one-seeded wheat and rice-wheat,<sup>3</sup> as we said<sup>4</sup> in our previous discussions, and darnel which comes from degenerate wheat and barley: at least, if this is not the true account, darnel loves chiefly to appear among wheat, as does the Pontic<sup>5</sup> *melampyros* and the seed of purse-tassels,<sup>6</sup> even as other seeds appear in other crops; thus *aigilops* seems to grow for choice among barley, and among lentils the rough hard kind of *arakos*, while among tares occurs the axe-weed,<sup>7</sup> which resembles an axe-head in appearance. Indeed in the case of nearly every crop there is a plant which grows up with it and

<sup>5</sup> cf. 8. 4. 6, where *μελάμπυρον* was said to be peculiar to Sicily. <sup>6</sup> cf. *C. P.* 4. 6. 1.

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 18. 155; 27. 121; Diosc. 3. 130; Hesych. *s. v.* βέλλεкус.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μυγνύμενον εἴτε διὰ τὰς χώρας, ὅπερ οὐκ ἄλογον,  
 4 εἴτε δι' ἄλλην τινὰ αἰτίαν. ἔνια δὲ καὶ φανερώς  
 ἐστὶ κοινὰ πλειόνων, ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ μάλιστα ἐν  
 τισιν εὐθενεῖν ἴδια τούτων φαίνεται, καθάπερ ἡ  
 ὀροβάγχη τῶν ὀρόβων καὶ ἡ ἀπαρίνη τῶν φακῶν·  
 ἀλλὰ ἡ μὲν μάλιστα ἐπικρατεῖ τῶν ὀρόβων διὰ  
 τὴν ἀσθένειαν· ἡ δὲ ἀπαρίνη μάλιστα ἐν τοῖς  
 φακοῖς εὐτροφεῖ· τρόπον δέ τινα καὶ παραπλή-  
 σιον ἐστὶ τῇ ὀροβάγχῃ <τῷ> ἐπιβάλλειν καὶ  
 κατέχειν ὅλον ὥσπερ πλεκτάναις· ἀποπνίγει γὰρ  
 οὕτως, ὅθεν καὶ τοῦνομα εἴληφε.

5 Τὸ δ' ὑποφυόμενον εὐθύς ἐκ τῆς ρίζης τῷ  
 κυμίνῳ καὶ τῷ βουκέρῳ τὸ αἰμόδωρον καλούμενον  
 μᾶλλον ἰδίᾳ. ἔστι δὲ τὸ αἰμόδωρον μονόκαυλον  
 οὐκ ἀπεμφερές [τῷ καυλῷ], πλὴν βραχύτερόν τε  
 πολὺ, καὶ ἄνωθέν τι κεφαλῶδες ἔχει ρίζαν δὲ  
 ὑποστρόγγυλον· οὐθὲν δὲ ἕτερον ἀφαιρᾶται  
 παρὰ τὸ βούκερας. γίνεται δὲ ταῦτα ἐν ταῖς  
 λεπταῖς οὐκ ἐν ταῖς πιείραις, ὥσπερ καὶ τῆς  
 Εὐβοίας ἐν τῷ Δηλάντῳ μὲν οὐ γίνεται περὶ δὲ  
 τὸν Κάνηθον καὶ εἴ τις ἄλλος τοιοῦτος τόπος.

<sup>1</sup> ἄλλην τινα conj. Sch.; ἄλλης τινα U; ἄλλην Ald.

<sup>2</sup> τῷ add. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> πλεκτάναις conj. W.; πλεκτάνες U; πλεκτάνης M; πλεκτάνην Ald.; *veluti brachiis* G.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 19. 176, who however calls this αἰμόδωρον. See Index App. (26).

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VIII. 3-5

mingles with it, whether this is due to the soil, which is a reasonable explanation, or to some other<sup>1</sup> cause. Some plants of this character evidently attach themselves to more than one kind of crop, but, because they are specially vigorous in some one particular crop, they are thought to be peculiar to that one, as 'vetch-strangler' (dodder) to vetches and bedstraw to lentils. But the former gains the mastery over the vetches especially because of the weakness of that plant; and bedstraw is specially luxuriant among lentils; to some extent it resembles dodder, in that<sup>2</sup> it overspreads the whole plant and holds it fast as it were in coils,<sup>3</sup> for it is thus that dodder strangles the plant, and this is the origin of its name ('vetch-strangler').

<sup>4</sup>The plant which springs up straight from the roots of cummin and the plant called broom-rape which similarly attaches itself to 'ox-horn'<sup>5</sup> (fenu-greek) are somewhat more peculiar in their habits.<sup>6</sup> Broom-rape has a single stem,<sup>7</sup> and is not unlike . . .<sup>8</sup> but is much shorter and has on the top a sort of head, while its root is more or less round; and there is no other plant which it starves except fenugreek. These plants grow in light and not in fat soils; thus in Euboea they do not occur at Lelanton,<sup>9</sup> but only about Kanethos<sup>10</sup> and in districts of like character.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 24. 184.

<sup>6</sup> ἰδίαι MSS.; ? ἰδία.

<sup>7</sup> cf. C.P. 5. 15. 5, where the same is said of *λειμόδωρον* (cf. Plin. 19. 176). But Ald. Bas. Cam. give *αἰμόδωρον* here; *hemodorum* G.

<sup>8</sup> τῷ καυλῷ probably conceals the name of a plant.

<sup>9</sup> cf. Strabo, 10. 1. 9. L. is the name of a Euboean river in Plin. 4. 64.

<sup>10</sup> cf. Strabo, 10. 1. 8, Ap. Rhod. 1. 77.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ταῦτα μὲν οὖν κοινὰ πλειόνων ὄντα κατισχύει  
μᾶλλον ἐν τοῖς εἰρημένοις διὰ τὴν ἀσθένειαν.

- 6 Τὸ δὲ τέραμον καὶ ἀτέραμον λέγεται μὲν ἐπὶ  
τῶν ὀσπρίων μόνον, οὐκ ἄλογον δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν  
σιτωδῶν παραπλήσιον ἢ καὶ ταυτό τι συμβαίνειν,  
ἀλλὰ διὰ τὸ μὴ τὴν αὐτὴν εἶναι χρεῖαν οὐχ  
ὁμοίως ἐμφανές· ἐπεὶ οὐδ' ἐπὶ τούτων ἀπάντων  
ὁμοίως ἀλλὰ μάλιστα ἐπὶ τῶν κυάμων λέγεται  
καὶ φακῶν, εἴτ' οὖν καὶ μάλιστα πασχόντων  
εἴτε καὶ διὰ τὴν χρεῖαν φαινομένων. γίνεται  
γοῦν πλεοναχῶς· πολλαχοῦ γὰρ τόποι τινές  
εἰσιν οἱ αἰεὶ φέρουσι τεράμονα καὶ ἄλλοι πάλιν  
ἀτεράμονα· τὸ δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ πᾶν οἱ λεπτόγεω μᾶλλον  
7 τεράμονα· καὶ ἀέρος κατάστασις τις ποιεῖ τὴν  
τοιαύτην παραλλαγὴν· σημεῖον δὲ ὅτι ταῦτα  
χωρία καὶ ὁμοίως ἐργασθέντα φέρει ποτὲ μὲν  
τεράμονα <ποτὲ δὲ ἀτεράμονα.> περὶ Φιλίππους  
δὲ ὁ κύαμος λικμώμενος, ἐὰν ὑπὸ πνεύματος ἐγ-  
χωρίου ληφθῇ, τεράμων ὦν ἀτεράμων γίνεται.  
ταῦτα μὲν οὖν μηνύει διότι πολλαχῶς τῶν αὐτῶν

<sup>1</sup> cf. 2. 4. 2; *C.P.* 4. 12; Plin. 18. 155, who makes *ateratum*, *teratum* plants.

<sup>2</sup> πλεοναχῶς· πολλαχοῦ I conj.; πλέον· πολλαχῶς MSS.

<sup>3</sup> ποτὲ δὲ ἀτεράμονα add. H. from G.

<sup>4</sup> cf. *C.P.* 4. 12. 8; Plut. *Quaest. Conv.* 7. 2. 3; Plin. *l.c.*

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VIII. 5-7

The reason then why these plants, which attach themselves to more than one kind, grow stronger when attached to the plants specified, is that the latter are not robust.

*Of the conditions in the seeds of pulses known as 'cookable' and 'uncookable,' and their causes.*

<sup>1</sup>The terms 'cookable' and 'uncookable' are only applied to pulses, but it is not unreasonable to suppose that conditions like those indicated, if not identical with them, occur also in cereals, though they are not so obvious, since these plants are not put to the same use. Indeed it is said that these terms are not applied even to all pulses alike, but chiefly to beans and lentils, either because these are specially subject to these conditions, or because the use to which they are put makes them more conspicuous. At all events the conditions occur for a variety of reasons; for in many parts <sup>2</sup>there are places which regularly produce seeds that are 'cookable,' while others again produce seeds that are 'uncookable'; in general however it is light soils which tend to produce the former. Now it is a certain condition of the climate which causes this variation; a proof of which is the fact that the same piece of land, tilled in the same manner, produces sometimes seeds that are 'cookable,' sometimes seeds that are 'uncookable.'<sup>3</sup> In the district of Philippi, if the beans, while being winnowed,<sup>4</sup> are caught by the prevailing wind of the country, they become 'uncookable,' having previously been 'cookable.' These facts prove that for various reasons, of districts <sup>5</sup> which are close together, have the same

<sup>5</sup> αὐτῶν conj. W.; δὲ τῶν Ald. cf. a similar expression 8. 2. 10.

## THEOPHRASTUS

χωρίων ἔνια σύνορα καὶ ὁμοίως καθήμενα καὶ οὐδεμίαν ἔχοντα κατὰ τὴν γῆν διαφορὰν τὸ μὲν τεράμονα τὸ δ' ἀτεράμονα φέρει, καὶ ἐνίοτε μόνον αὐλακος διορίζουσης.

IX. Καρπίζεται τὴν γῆν μάλιστα πυρὸς εἶτα κριθή, δι' ὃ καὶ ὁ μὲν ἀγαθὴν ζητεῖ χώραν ἢ δὲ κριθὴ δύναται καὶ ἐν ταῖς ψαφρωτέραις ἐκφέρειν· τῶν δὲ χεδροπῶν μάλιστα ἐρέβινθος καίπερ ἐλάχιστον χρόνον ἐν τῇ γῇ μένων, ὁ δὲ κύαμος, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ ἄλλως οὐ βαρὺ καὶ ἔτι κοπρίζειν δοκεῖ τὴν γῆν διὰ μανότητα καὶ εὐσηψίαν· δι' ὃ καὶ οἱ περὶ Μακεδονίαν καὶ Θετταλίαν ὅταν ἀνθῶσιν ἀνατρέπουσι τὰς ἀρούρας.

- 2 Τῶν δὲ ὁμοιοπύρων καὶ ὁμοιοκρίθων, οἷον ζειᾶς τίφης ὀλύρας βρόμου αἰγίλωπος, ἰσχυρότατον καὶ μάλιστα καρπιζόμενον ἢ ζειά· καὶ γὰρ πολύρριζον καὶ βαθύρριζον καὶ πολυκάλαμον· ὁ δὲ καρπὸς κουφότατος καὶ προσφιλεῖς πᾶσι τοῖς ζώοις. τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ὁ βρόμος· πολύρριζος γὰρ καὶ οὗτος καὶ πολυκάλαμος. ἢ δὲ ὀλύρα μαλακώτερον καὶ ἀσθενέστερον τούτων. ἢ δὲ τίφη πάντων κουφότατον· καὶ γὰρ καὶ μονοκάλαμον <καὶ λεπτοκάλαμον,> δι' ὃ καὶ χώραν ζητεῖ

<sup>1</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 12. 1.

<sup>2</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 8. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 120; Varro 1. 23. 3; Col. 2. 10. 7.

<sup>4</sup> 8. 7. 2.

<sup>5</sup> i.e. dig in the bean-plants if the soil is poor, before the pods are formed enough to make it worth while to gather the beans. So Varro *l.c.*

<sup>6</sup> Cited by Galen.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. VIII. 7 IX. 2

aspect and shew no difference of soil, some bear 'cookable' some 'uncookable' seeds, and that sometimes when there is only<sup>1</sup> the breadth of a furrow between them.

*Of the grains and pulses which most exhaust the soil, or which improve it.*

IX. Wheat exhausts the land more than any other crop, and next to it barley; wherefore the former requires good soil, while barley will bear even on somewhat crumbling soils; <sup>2</sup> and of leguminous plants chick-pea is the most exhausting, although this crop is in the ground only a very short time. <sup>3</sup> Beans, as was said,<sup>4</sup> are in other ways not a burdensome crop to the ground, they even seem to manure it, because the plant is of loose growth and rots easily; wherefore the people of Macedonia and Thessaly turn over the ground when it is in flower.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Of the plants which resemble wheat or barley—such as *zeia* (rice-wheat) one-seeded wheat *olyra*<sup>7</sup> (rice-wheat) oats *aigilops*—*zeia* is the strongest<sup>8</sup> and most exhausts the ground; for it has many roots which run deep and many stems; but its fruit is the lightest and is welcome to all animals. Of the rest oats<sup>9</sup> is the most exhausting; for this too has many roots and many stems. *Olyra* is a more delicate plant and not so robust as these. But one-seeded wheat is the crop which is of all the least burdensome to the soil; for it has but a single slender stem<sup>10</sup>; wherefore also it requires a light soil and not, like

<sup>7</sup> See Index.

<sup>8</sup> ἰσχυρότατον conj. W. from Galen; ἰσχυρότερον Ald.

<sup>9</sup> βρόμος· πολύρριζος γὰρ conj. Sch.; β. πολ.· καὶ γὰρ Ald.

<sup>10</sup> καὶ λεπτοκάλαμον add. Bod. from Galen.



## THEOPHRASTUS

λεπτήν, οὐχ ὥσπερ ἡ ζειὰ πείραν καὶ ἀγαθήν.  
ἔστι δὲ δύο ταῦτα καὶ ὁμοιότατα τοῖς πυροῖς ἢ τε  
<ζειὰ καὶ ἡ τίφη,> ὁ δ' αἰγίλωψ καὶ ὁ βρόμος  
ὥσπερ ἄγρι' ἄττα καὶ ἀνήμερα.

- 8 Ἐπικαρπίζεται δὲ σφόδρα καὶ ὁ αἰγίλωψ τὴν  
γῆν, καὶ ἐστι πολύρριζον καὶ πολυκάλαμον· ἡ δὲ  
αἶρα παντελῶς ἀπηγριωμένον. τῶν δὲ ἐν τοῖς  
θερινοῖς ἀρότοις τὸ σήσαμον δοκεῖ χαλεπώτατον  
εἶναι τῇ γῇ καὶ μάλιστα καρπίζεσθαι· καίτοι  
πολυκαλαμώτερον καὶ παχυκαλαμώτερον καὶ  
πολυρριζότερον κέγχρος. διαφέρει δὲ τὰ τε πρὸς  
τὴν γῆν κοῦφα καὶ τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἡμετέραν τροφήν.  
ἔνια γὰρ ἐναντίως, ὥσπερ τὰ χεδροπαὶ καὶ οἱ  
κέγχροι· καὶ τὰ πρὸς ἡμᾶς δέ, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ  
τὰλλα ζῶα. καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων ἄλλis.

X. Νοσήματα δὲ τῶν σπερμάτων τὰ μὲν κοινὰ  
πάντων ἐστίν, οἷον ἡ ἐρυσίβη, τὰ δ' ἰδιά τινων,  
οἷον ὁ σφακελισμὸς τοῦ ἐρεβίνθου, καὶ τὸ ὑπὸ  
καμπῶν κατεσθίεσθαι καὶ ὑπὸ ψυλλῶν, τινὰ δὲ  
καὶ ὑπ' ἄλλων θηριδίων. ἔνια δὲ καὶ ψωριᾶ καὶ  
ἀλμᾶ, καθάπερ καὶ τὸ κύμινον. τὰ δ' ἐπιγινό-  
μενα ζῶα μὴ ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν ἔξωθεν οὐχ  
ὁμοίως βλάπτει. ἐπιγίνεται γὰρ ἡ μὲν κανθαρίς

ἢ τε ζειὰ καὶ ἡ τίφη add. W. from Galen.

ὁ δ' conj. Scal.; ὁ τ' Ald.H.; ἢ τ' UMP.

καίτοι conj W.; καὶ Ald. cf. C.P. 4. 15. 1.

τὰ add. St. <sup>5</sup> 8. 3. 5 *ad fin.*

καὶ τὰ Ald.; καὶ οἱ τὰ UMP; ? καὶ αὖ τὰ W.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. IX. 2-X. 1

*zeia*, one that is fat and good. These last two,<sup>1</sup> *zeia* and one-seeded wheat, are also those which are likeliest to wheat, while<sup>2</sup> *aigilops* and oats are as it were wild and uncultivated things.

*Aigilops* also greatly exhausts the land, having many roots and many stems; while darnel is a plant which has become altogether wild. Of the crops sown at the summer seed-time sesame seems to be most severe on the land and to exhaust it most; yet<sup>3</sup> millet has more numerous and stouter stems and more roots. Moreover there is a difference between crops which<sup>4</sup> are called 'light' in relation to the soil and those called 'light' in regard to human use. For some, such as leguminous plants and millet, are light in one sense but not in the other; and, as was said,<sup>5</sup> what<sup>6</sup> is light for men is not necessarily so for the other animals. Now enough of these matters.

*Of the diseases of cereals and pulses, and of hurtful winds.*

X. <sup>7</sup> As to diseases of seeds—some are common to all, as rust, some are peculiar to certain kinds; thus chick-pea is alone subject to rot<sup>8</sup> and to being eaten by caterpillars and by spiders<sup>9</sup>; and some seeds are eaten<sup>10</sup> by other small creatures. Some again are liable to canker and mildew,<sup>11</sup> as cummin. But creatures which do not come from the plant itself but from without do not do so much harm; thus the *kantharis*<sup>12</sup> is a visitor among wheat, the

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 18. 152 and 154.      <sup>8</sup> cf. 4. 14. 2.

<sup>9</sup> ψυλλῶν: described by Arist. H.A. 9. 39. 1.

<sup>10</sup> δὲ add. Sch.; ? κατεσθίεσθαι κατεσθίεται δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ ψ. W.

<sup>11</sup> ψωριᾷ καὶ ἀλμᾷ conj. W.; ψώρας καὶ ἄλμας Ald. cf. 7.5.4 n.

<sup>12</sup> Plin. 18. 156.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- ἐν τοῖς πυροῖς, τὸ δὲ φαλάγγιον ἐν ὁρόβοις, ἄλλα δ' ἐν ἄλλοις.
- 2 Ἐρυσιβᾶ δ' ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν τὰ σιτώδη μᾶλλον τῶν ὀσπρίων· αὐτῶν δὲ τούτων κριθὴ μᾶλλον ἢ πυρός· καὶ τῶν κριθῶν ἕτεραι ἐτέρων, μάλιστα δ' ὡς εἰπεῖν ἡ Ἀχιλλεύς. διαφέρει δὲ καὶ ἡ τῶν χωρίων θέσις καὶ ἡ φύσις οὐ μικρόν· τὰ γὰρ προσήνεμα καὶ μετέωρα οὐκ ἐρυσιβᾶ ἢ ἦττον, ἀλλὰ τὰ ἐγκοίλα καὶ ἄπνοα· γίνεται δὲ ἡ ἐρυσίβη
- 3 πανσελήνιοις μάλιστα. ἀπόλλυται δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν πνευμάτων καὶ πυρὸς καὶ κριθῆ, ὅταν ἡ ἀνθούντα ληφθῇ ἢ ἄρτι ἀπηνθηκότα καὶ ἀσθηνῇ· μᾶλλον δὲ κριθῆ, πολλάκις δ' ἤδη ἐν τῷ ἀδρύνεσθαι οὔσα, ἐὰν μεγάλα καὶ πλείω χρόνον ἐπιγέννηται· ξηραίνει γὰρ καὶ ἀφαναίνει, ὃ καλοῦσί τινες ἐξανεμοῦσθαι. διαπόλλυνσι δὲ καὶ ἥλιος ὁ ἐκνέφελος ἄμφω καὶ μᾶλλον πυρὸν ἢ κριθήν, ὥστε μηδ' ἐπίδηλον εἶναι τὸν στάχυν τῇ ὄψει ὄντα κενόν.
- 4 Τὸν δὲ πυρὸν ἀπολλύουσι καὶ οἱ σκώληκες οἱ μὲν εὐθύς κατεσθίοντες φυόμενοι τὰς ρίζας, οἱ δὲ ὅταν αὐχμῶντες ἀποχυθῆναι μὴ δύνωνται· τότε γὰρ ἐγγινόμενος ὁ σκώληξ ἐσθίει τὸν ἀποπηνιζόμενον κάλαμον· ἐσθίει δὲ ἄχρι τοῦ στάχους, εἰτ'

Plin. 18. 154.

ἐρυσιβᾶ conj. W.; ἐρυσίβαι Ald.; eis add. Sch.

τὰ add. Sch. <sup>4</sup> cf. C.P. 3. 22. 2.

ἐρυσιβᾶ conj. Sch.; ἐρυσίβαι Ald

cf. C.P. 4. 13. 4; Plin. 18. 151.

μεγάλα conj. Sch.; μεγάλη UMald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. x. 1-4

*phalangion* in vetches, and other pests in other crops.

<sup>1</sup> Generally speaking, cereals are more liable to rust<sup>2</sup> than pulses, and among these barley is more liable to it than wheat; while of barleys some kinds are more liable than others, and most of all, it may be said, the kind called 'Achillean.' Moreover the position and character of the land make no small difference in this respect; for lands which<sup>3</sup> are exposed to the wind<sup>4</sup> and elevated are not liable to rust,<sup>5</sup> or less so, while those that lie low and are not exposed to wind are more so. And rust occurs chiefly at the full moon. <sup>6</sup> Again wheat and barley are destroyed by winds, if they are caught by them either when in flower, or when the flower has just fallen and they are weak; and this applies specially to barley, indeed it occurs when the grain is already ripening, if the winds are violent<sup>7</sup> and last a long time; for they dry up and parch the grain, which some call being 'wind-bitten.' Also a hot sun after cloudy weather destroys both, and wheat more than barley, so that the ear is not even conspicuous, since it is empty.

Wheat is also destroyed by grubs; sometimes they eat the roots, as soon as they appear,<sup>8</sup> sometimes they do their work when by reason of drought the ear cannot be formed<sup>9</sup>; for at such times the grub is engendered, and eats the haulm as it is becoming unrolled<sup>10</sup>; it eats right up to the ear and then,

<sup>8</sup> *φυόμενοι* conj. Sch.; *φύμενον* Ald. cf. C.P. 3. 22. 4.

<sup>9</sup> *ἀποχυθῆναι* conj. Sch. after Vin.Vo.G; *ἀπολυθῆναι* UM Ald. cf. C.P. 3. 22. 4; 4. 14. 1.

<sup>10</sup> *ἀποσηνιζόμενον*: lit. 'unwinding itself.' All edd. mark the word as corrupt.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἐξαναλώσας ἀπόλλυται· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ὅλον ἐκφάγη  
τελέως αὐτὸς ὁ πυρός, ἐὰν δὲ ἐπὶ θάτερον τοῦ  
καλάμου καὶ ἐκβιάσῃται τὴν ἀπόχυσιν, τοῦτο  
μὲν αὖτον τοῦ στάχυος θάτερον δὲ ὑγιές. γίνεται  
δὲ οὐ πανταχοῦ τὸ περὶ τοὺς πυρούς, οἷον ἐν  
Θετταλίᾳ, ἀλλὰ κατὰ χώρας τινάς, ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ  
Λιβύῃ καὶ τῇς Εὐβοίας ἐν τῷ Ληλάντῳ.

Σκώληκες δὲ γίνονται καὶ ἐν τοῖς ὥχροις καὶ  
τοῖς λαθύροις καὶ τοῖς πισοῖς, ὅταν ὑγρανθῶσι  
καὶ θερμυμερίαι γένωνται, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς  
ἐρεβίνθοις αἱ κάμπαι. πάντα δὲ ἐξαναλώσαντα  
τὰς τροφὰς ἀπόλλυται καὶ ἐν τοῖς χλωροῖς καὶ ἐν  
τοῖς ξηροῖς καρποῖς, οἷον οἷ τε ἱπες καὶ οἱ ἐν τοῖς  
κνάμοις ἐγγινόμενοι καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὥσπερ καὶ  
ἐν τοῖς δένδρεσι καὶ ἐν τοῖς ξύλοις ἐλέχθη, πλήν  
τῶν κεραστῶν καλουμένων. πρὸς ἅπαντα δὴ  
ταῦτα μεγάλα διαφέρουσιν αἱ χώραι οὐκ ἀλόγως·  
ὁ γὰρ ἀῆρ εὐθύς διάφορος τῷ θερμὸς ἢ ψυχρὸς  
εἶναι ἢ ὑγρὸς ἢ ξηρὸς· οὗτος δ' ἦν ὁ γονεύων· δι'  
ὃ καὶ ἐν οἷς εἰώθασιν γίνεσθαι οὐκ ἀεὶ γίνονται.

XI. Τῶν δὲ σπερμάτων οὐχ ἡ αὐτὴ δύναμις  
ἐστίν· εἷς τε τὴν βλάστησιν καὶ εἰς θησαυρισμόν.

<sup>1</sup> αὐτὸς: sc. the grain. ἀναίνεται conj. W.; ? ἀναίνεται αὐτὸς.

<sup>2</sup> θάτερον conj. Sch.; θατέρου Ald.

<sup>3</sup> cf. C P. 3. 22. 3. ὥχροις conj. St.; ὄχροις Ald. H.

<sup>4</sup> καθάπερ καὶ conj. Sch.; καὶ καθάπερ Ald.

<sup>5</sup> πάντα conj. W.; τὰ Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. x. 4-xi. i

having consumed it, perishes. And, if it has entirely eaten it, the wheat itself<sup>1</sup> perishes; if however it has only eaten one<sup>2</sup> side of the haulm and the plant has succeeded in forming the ear, half the ear withers away, but the other half remains sound. However it is not everywhere that the wheat is so affected; for instance this does not occur in Thessaly, but only in certain regions, as in Libya and at Lelanton in Euboea.

Grubs occur also in *okhros*<sup>3</sup> *lathyros* and peas, whenever these crops get too much rain and then hot weather supervenes; and caterpillars occur in chick-peas under the same conditions.<sup>4</sup> All<sup>5</sup> these pests perish, when they have exhausted their food, whether the fruit in which they occur be green or dry, just as wood-worms do and the grubs found in beans and other plants, as was said of the pests found in growing trees and in felled timber. But the creature called 'horned worm'<sup>6</sup> is an exception. Now in regard to all these pests the position makes a great difference, as might be expected. For the climate, it need hardly be said, makes a difference according as it is hot or cold, moist or dry; and it was the climate which gave rise to these pests<sup>7</sup>; wherefore they are not always found even in places in which they ordinarily occur.<sup>8</sup>

*Of seeds which keep or do not keep well.*

XI. The seeds have not all the same capacity for germination and for keeping well. Some germinate

<sup>6</sup> cf. 4. 14. 5; C.P. 5. 10. 5.

<sup>7</sup> δ' ἦν ὁ γονεύων I conj.; δ' ἦν ὁ νεύων UAld.; δ' ἡγονεύων M; δ' ἐστὶν ὁ γονεύων conj. Sol.; δ' ὁ γονεύων conj. W.

<sup>8</sup> i.e. because the atmospheric conditions are not always favourable to the pest.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἔνια μὲν γὰρ βλαστάνει καὶ τελειοῦται τάχιστα καὶ θησαυρίζεται κράτιστα, καθάπερ ἔλυμος καὶ κέγχρος· ἔνια δὲ βλαστάνει μὲν εὖ ταχέως δὲ σήπεται, καθάπερ ὁ κύαμος καὶ μᾶλλον ὁ τεράμων· ταχὺ δ' ἡ ἀφάκη καὶ ὁ δόλιχος· κριθὴ δὲ πυροῦ <θᾶπτον> θᾶπτον δὲ καὶ ὁ κονιορτώδης σίτος καὶ ὁ ἐν οἰκήμασι κονιατοῖς ἢ ἀκονιάτοις.

- 2 Γίνεται δὴ φθειρομένοις σπέρμασι ἴδια ζῶα, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη, πλὴν ἐρεβίνθου· μόνος γὰρ οὗτος οὐ ζωογονεῖ. καὶ σηπομένοις μὲν πᾶσι σκώληξ κοπτομένοις δὲ καθ' ἕκαστον ἴδιον. πάντων δὲ μάλιστα διαμένουσιν ἐρέβινθος καὶ ὄροβος, τούτων δ' ἔτι μᾶλλον ὁ θέρμος· ἀλλ' ἔοικε γ' οὗτος ὥσπερ ἀγρίῳ.

- 3 Διαφέρει δὲ ὡς ἔοικε χώρα χώρας καὶ ἀήρ ἀέρος εἰς τὸ κόπτεσθαι καὶ μὴ τὰ σπέρματα· ἐν Ἀπολλωνίᾳ γοῦν τῇ περὶ τὸν Ἴόνιον οὐκ ἐσθίει· λαί φασιν ὅλως κύαμον, δι' ὃ καὶ εἰς θησαυρισμὸν ἀποτίθεται· διαμένει δὲ καὶ περὶ Κυζικὸν ἐπὶ πλείω. μέγα δὲ πρὸς διαμονὴν καὶ τὸ ξηρὰ θερίζει· ἐλάττων γὰρ ἡ ὑγρότης· θερίζουσι δ' ἰσχυρότερα τὰ μὲν χεδροπά πρὸς τὸ μᾶλλον καὶ ῥᾶον συλλέξαι, ταχὺ γὰρ καταρρεῖ καὶ αὐανθέντα

<sup>1</sup> εὖ conj. W.; οὐ Ald.

<sup>2</sup> σήπεται add. W.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 8. 8. 6; C.P. 5. 18. 2.

<sup>4</sup> θᾶπτον add. W.

<sup>5</sup> καὶ ὁ κον. . . . ἀκονιάτοις conj. W., cf. C.P. 4 16. 1; ὁ κονιορτώδης καὶ ὁ κονίορτος· καὶ ὁ ἐν τοῖς κονιορτοῖς ἐν ἅπασιν, οἷον κονιάτοις ἢ ἀκονιάτοις Ald.; so also UM, but omitting τοῖς; U gives κονιατοῖς; ἢ ὁ ἀκονίορθος for καὶ ὁ κονίορτος mBas. cf. Plin 18. 301, Varro 1. 57. 1, where the use of a cement of pounded marble is recommended.

<sup>6</sup> δὴ φθειρομένοις conj. Sch.; διαφθειρομένοις UNald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. XI. 1-3

and mature very quickly, and keep excellently, as Italian millet and millet. Some germinate well,<sup>1</sup> but soon rot,<sup>2</sup> as beans, and especially those that are 'cookable<sup>3</sup>'; so do tare and calavance; also barley perishes sooner<sup>4</sup> than wheat; and dusty<sup>5</sup> grain and that which is kept in plastered store-rooms perishes sooner than that which is kept in unplastered rooms.

Again, as seeds decay,<sup>6</sup> they engender special creatures, except chick-pea, which alone engenders none. As they rot,<sup>7</sup> all produce a grub; but, as they get worm-eaten, each produces a special creature. Chick-pea and vetch keep best of all, and better still than these lupin; but this, as it were, is like a wild kind.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>9</sup> It appears that soil and climate make a difference as to whether the seed gets worm-eaten or not; at least they say that at Apollonia on the Ionian Sea beans do not get eaten in this way at all, and therefore they are put away and stored; and about Cyzicus they keep an even longer time. It also makes a great difference to keeping that the seed should be gathered dry, for then there is less moisture in it.<sup>10</sup> However the seeds of leguminous plants are gathered with a certain amount of moisture in them,<sup>11</sup> because then they can be collected in greater quantity and more easily; for otherwise they are soon shed and get shrivelled up and split<sup>12</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> i.e. rot is produced in all cases by the same creature (σκώληξ), but the condition called being 'worm-eaten' is due in each plant to a different pest.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. and so the seed is hard and not liable to these attacks. cf. 8. 11. 8; C.P. 4. 16. 2.

<sup>3</sup> cf. C.P. 4. 16. 2.

<sup>10</sup> i.e. liability to rot.

<sup>11</sup> ἐγχυλότερα conj. Sch.; εὐχυλότερα Ald. H. Cam.; εὐχνηλότερα Bas. cf. C.P. 4. 13. 3.

<sup>12</sup> Plin. 18. 125.



## THEOPHRASTUS

θρύπτεται, τοὺς δὲ πυροὺς καὶ γένος τι κριθῶν διὰ τὸ βελτίους εἰς τὰ ἄλφιστα γίνεσθαι μὴ ἀπεξηραμμένας.

- 4 Δι' ὃ καὶ εἰς θώμους συντιθέασι καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς, καὶ δοκοῦσιν ἀδρύνεσθαι ἐν θώμῳ μᾶλλον ἢ λιποσαρκεῖν. οὐκ ἐσθίεται δὲ σίτος, ὅταν ὑσθεὶς θερισθῇ· ἀθέριστος δὲ μάλιστα διαμένει ὁ πυρός, ἔτι δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ θερμός· οὐδὲ γὰρ θερίζουσι τοῦτον πρότερον ἢ ὕδωρ γενέσθαι, διὰ τὸ ἐκπηδᾶν θεριζόμενον καὶ ἀπόλλυσθαι τὸ σπέρμα.
- 5 Πρὸς ἔκφυσιν δὲ καὶ τὴν ὅλην σποράν ἄριστα δοκεῖ τὰ ἐνάενα· τὰ δὲ δίενα χεῖρω καὶ τὰ τρίενα, τὰ δ' ὑπερτείνοντα σχεδὸν ἄγωνα, πρὸς δὲ τὴν σίτησιν ἀρκοῦντα. βίος γάρ ἐστιν ἐκάστοις ὠρισμένος εἰς γονήν. καίτοι καὶ ταύταις παραλλάττει ταῖς δυνάμεσι διὰ τοὺς τόπους ἐν οἷς αὖ θησαυρίζονται. τῆς γοῦν Καππαδοκίας ἐν χωρίῳ τινὶ τῷ καλουμένῳ Πέτρα καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη διαμένειν φασὶ γόνιμα καὶ χρήσιμα πρὸς σπóρον, εἰς δὲ τὴν σίτησιν ἐξήκοντα ἢ ἐβδομήκοντα· τὸ γὰρ ὅλον οὐ κόπτεσθαι· τὰ δὲ ἱμάτια καὶ τὴν ἄλλην
- 6 γάζαν κόπτεσθαι. τὸ γὰρ χώριον ἄλλως τε ὑψηλὸν εἶναι καὶ εὐπνουν καὶ ἑναυρον αἰεὶ καὶ ἀπ' ἀνατολῆς ἔχουσι καὶ δýσεως καὶ μεσημβρίας.

---

<sup>1</sup> ἢ λιποσαρκεῖν conj. H.; ἡλίκα σωρῶν U; ἡλίκα σαρκῶν M. W. brackets as due to a gloss. cf. *O P.* 4. 13. 6.

<sup>2</sup> ὅταν ὑσθεὶς conj. Scal.: so Vo.; ὁ ταυνοσθεὶς Bas. Cam. θερισθῇ conj. W.; περιφυῇ MSS.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. xi. 3-6

and wheat and one kind of barley are gathered before they are dry, because then they are better for meal.

Wherefore the grain of wheat and barley is put into heaps, and it seems to ripen in a heap rather than to lose substance.<sup>1</sup> (However corn does not get worm-eaten when it is reaped after exposure to rain.)<sup>2</sup> Also corn lasts better than other things if it is left standing, and so does lupin to an even greater extent; indeed this crop is not even gathered till rain has fallen,<sup>3</sup> because, if it is gathered, the seed springs out and is lost.

*Of the age at which seeds should be sown.*

<sup>4</sup>For propagation and sowing generally seeds one year old seem to be the best; <sup>5</sup>those two or three years old are inferior, while those kept a still longer time are infertile, though they are still available as food. For each kind has a definite period of life in regard to reproduction. However these seeds too differ in their capacity according to the place in which they are stored. For instance, in Cappadocia at a place called Petra they say that seed remains even for forty years fertile and fit for sowing, while as food it is available for sixty or seventy years; for that it does not get worm-eaten at all like clothes and other stored-up articles. for that the region is, apart from this, elevated and always exposed to fair winds and breezes which prevail alike from <sup>6</sup>the east, the west, and the

<sup>3</sup> πρότερον ἢ conj. W.; τὸν πρόπον UAld. cf. C.P. 4. 13. 3; Plin. 18. 133.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 18. 195.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 7. 5. 5; Geop. 2. 16.

<sup>6</sup> ἀπ' conj. Sch.; ἐπὶ P<sub>2</sub>Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

φασὶ δὲ καὶ ἐν Μηδεΐᾳ καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις ταῖς ὑψηλαῖς χώραις διαμένειν θησαυριζόμενα πολλὸν χρόνον. ἐρέβινθον δὲ δὴ καὶ θερμόν καὶ ὄροβον καὶ κέγχρον καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα δῆλον ὅτι πολλῶ πλείω τούτων, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα τόποις. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, τῶν τόπων ἴδια.

- 7 Δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ γῇ τις εἶναι παρά τισιν ἢ διαπαττομένη συντηρεῖ τὸν πυρόν, ὥσπερ ἢ τε ἐν Ὀλύνθῳ καὶ ἐν Κηρίνθῳ τῆς Εὐβοίας· ποιεῖ δὲ χεῖρῳ μὲν εἰς τὴν σίτησιν ἀδρότερον δὲ τῇ προσόψει· παραπάττουσι δὲ χοίνικα εἰς τὸν μέδιμνον.

Πυρωθέντα πάντα τὰ σπέρματα ἀπόλλυται καὶ ἀβλαστῇ γίνεται· καίτοι περὶ γε Βαβυλῶνά φασι τὰς κριθὰς καὶ τοὺς πυρούς ἐπὶ τῆς ἄλλω πηδᾶν, ὥσπερ τὰ φρυγόμενα· ἀλλὰ δῆλον ὅτι διαφορὰ τίς ἐστι τῆς θερμότητος, ἢ ἀπλῶς πως θερμασίᾳ γίνεται [καὶ] ἢ πήδησις. καὶ τὰ μὲν τοιαῦτα σχεδὸν ὥσπερ εἰ κοινὰ δόξειεν ἂν εἶναι πάντων ἢ τῶν πλείστων.

<sup>1</sup> cf. *C.P.* 5. 18. 3; for millet-seed see *J.H.S.* vol. xxiv. part i. p. 22.

<sup>2</sup> διαπαττομένη conj. H.; διαπλαττομένη UMald.; διακοπιόμενη P<sub>2</sub>. cf. *Plin* 18. 305.

<sup>3</sup> παραπάττουσι conj. Sch., cf. *Geop.* 2 21. 3; (ἐμπάσσειν); παρατάττουσι UMald. cf. *Varro* 1. 57. 1.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII. xi. 6-7

south. They say that in Media<sup>1</sup> also and other elevated countries the seed when stored keeps for a long time. And it is plain that chick-pea lupin vetch millet and the like will keep a far longer time than these seeds, as they do even in districts of Hellas. However these peculiarities, as has been said, are due to the particular region.

### *Of artificial means of preserving seed.*

There appears to be a kind of earth in some places, which when sprinkled<sup>2</sup> over the seed helps to make wheat keep, for instance, the earth found at Olynthos and at Kerinthos in Euboea; this makes the grain inferior for food, but fuller in appearance; the earth is sprinkled<sup>3</sup> in the proportion of one pint to twenty-four of grain.

### *Of the effect of heat on seeds.*

All seeds if exposed to fire perish and become infertile. Yet they say that at Babylon<sup>4</sup> the grains of barley and wheat jump on the threshing-floor like corn which is being parched. However it is plain that it is some particular kind of warmth<sup>5</sup> which produces this effect: or else the jumping is simply another effect of heat.<sup>6</sup> Such behaviour would appear to be common to most,<sup>7</sup> if not to all kinds.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. the grain is there exposed to great sun-heat. cf. *de igne* 44.

<sup>5</sup> i.e. the sun's heat is different in kind, and therefore in effect, to that of a fire.

<sup>6</sup> θερμασία conj. Sch.; θερμασία Ald. H.

<sup>7</sup> ὡσπερ εἰκόνα conj. Sch. from G; ὡσπερ εἰκόνα UM; ὡσπερ εἰκόνας Ald. H.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 8 Ἔνια δὲ ἔχει τινὰ ἰδιότητα καὶ τῶν δοκούντων ὥσπερ ἀγρίων εἶναι καὶ κατὰ τὴν γένεσιν καὶ τὴν ἔκφυσιν, ὥσπερ ὁ θερμός καὶ ὁ αἰγίλωψ· ὁ μὲν γὰρ θερμός καίπερ ἰσχυρότατος ὢν ὁμως, ἐὰν μὴ εὐθύς ἀπὸ τῆς ἄλλω καταβληθῇ, κακοφυῆς γίνεται, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ τὸ ὅλον δὲ οὐκ ἐθέλει κρύπτεσθαι τῇ γῇ, δι' ὃ καὶ οὐχ ὑπαρῶντες σπείρουσι· πολλάκις δὲ καὶ εἰς ὕλην ἢ βοτάνην τινὰ πέσῃ, διωσάμενος ταύτην συνάπτει τὴν ῥίζαν τῇ γῇ καὶ βλαστάνει. χώραν δὲ ὕφαμμον ζητεῖ καὶ φαύλην μᾶλλον, τὸ δὲ ὅλον οὐκ ἐθέλει φύεσθαι ἐν διειργασμένῃ.
- 9 Ὁ δὲ αἰγίλωψ ἀνάπαλιν· ἐν γὰρ τῇ γεωργομένη κάλλιον· καὶ ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ πρότερον ἀβλαστῆς ὢν ἐὰν γεωργηθῇ βλαστάνει καὶ γίνεται πολὺς, καὶ ὅλως δὲ φιλεῖ χώραν ἀγαθὴν. ἴδιον δὲ αὐτοῦ λέγεται πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα τὰ σιτώδη σπέρματα καὶ ἢ παρ' ἐνιαυτὸν βλάστησις ἐκατέρου τῶν σπερμάτων. δι' ὃ καὶ οἱ βουλόμενοι τελέως φθεῖραι, δύσφθαρτον γὰρ δὴ φύσει τυγχάνει, τὰς ἀρούρας ἀνιᾶσιν ἀσπόρους ἐπὶ δύο ἔτη, καὶ ὅταν ἀναβλαστήσῃ τὰ πρόβατα ἐπαφιάσι πολλάκις, ἕως ἂν ἐκνεμηθῶσι, καὶ αὕτη γίνεται φθορὰ παντελὴς· ἅμα δὲ τοῦτο μαρτυρεῖ καὶ τὴν παρὰ μέρος βλάστησιν.

<sup>1</sup> καὶ conj. Sch.; ἢ Ald. H.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 8. 1. 3.

<sup>3</sup> cf. C. P. 4. 7. 3.

<sup>4</sup> ὑπαρῶντες conj. H.; ὑπαπορῶντες UMAld. cf. C. P. 3. 20. 8.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, VIII xl. 8-9

*Of certain peculiarities of the seed of lupin and aigilops.*

Some even<sup>1</sup> of those kinds which seem to be more or less wild have peculiarities as to their germination and growth, for instance, lupin and *aigilops*. For lupin, although it is very robust, unless it is planted immediately after leaving the threshing-floor,<sup>2</sup> turns out of poor growth, as was said, and refuses altogether to be buried in the ground;<sup>3</sup> wherefore they sow it without first ploughing<sup>4</sup> the land. And often if the seed has fallen amid thick undergrowth or herbage,<sup>5</sup> it thrusts this aside, fastens on to the earth with its root and grows vigorously. It seeks sandy and poor soil for choice, and will not grow at all in<sup>6</sup> cultivated<sup>7</sup> soil.

*Aigilops* has the opposite character; it grows better in tilled soil; and in some places where at first it would not grow, if the ground is tilled, it grows and yields a large crop, and in general it likes good soil. A peculiarity<sup>8</sup> mentioned in regard to it as compared with other cereal seeds is that one seed in two does not germinate for a year. Wherefore those who wish to destroy it entirely, (since it is naturally hard to destroy), leave the fields unsown for two years, and, when it springs up, send in<sup>9</sup> the sheep several times till they have grazed it down, and this is a way of completely destroying it. At the same time this testifies to the fact that the seed does not all germinate at once.

<sup>1</sup> cf. 1. 7. 3; Plin. 18. 134.      <sup>6</sup> ἐν conj. W.; τῇ Ald. H.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 8. 11. 2.      <sup>8</sup> cf. C. P. 4. 6. 1.

<sup>9</sup> ἐπαφισῶν conj. Sch., cf. 8. 7. 4; ἀφιῆσι M; ἀφίησι P; ἀφίσαι Ald.



## BOOK IX



# I

I. Ἡ ὑγρότης οἰκεία τῶν φυτῶν, ἣν δὴ καλοῦσιν  
τινες ὁπὸν ὀνοματι κοινῶ προσαγορεύοντες· δύνα-  
μιν δὲ ἔχει δῆλον ὅτι τὴν καθ' αὐτὴν ἐκάστη. χυμὸς  
δὲ ταῖς μὲν μᾶλλον ταῖς δ' ἥττον ἀκολουθεῖ, ταῖς  
δ' ὅλως οὐκ ἂν δόξειεν, οὕτως ἀσθενὴς καὶ ὑδαρὴς  
τίς ἐστι. πλείστη μὲν οὖν ὑπάρχει πᾶσι κατὰ  
τὴν βλάστησιν, ἰσχυροτάτη δὲ καὶ μάλιστα  
ἐκφαίνουσα τὴν ἐαυτῆς φύσιν ὅταν ἤδη παύσῃται  
καὶ βλαστάνοντα καὶ καρπογονοῦντα. συμβαίνει  
δὲ τισι τῶν φυτῶν καὶ χρώας ἰδίας ἔχειν· τοῖς  
μὲν λευκὰς οἶον τοῖς ὀπώδεσι, τοῖς δ' αἵματώδεσι  
οἶον τῷ κενταυρίῳ καὶ τῇ ἀτρακτυλίδι καλουμένῃ  
ἀκάνθῃ, τοῖς δὲ χλωρόν, τοῖς δ' ἐν ἄλλῃ χρώᾳ.  
ἐνδηλα δὲ μᾶλλον ταῦτα ἐν τοῖς ἐπετείοις καὶ  
τοῖς ἐπετειοκαύλοις ἢ τοῖς δένδροις.

Ἡ δ' ὑγρότης τῶν μὲν πάχος ἔχει μόνον, ὥσπερ  
τῶν ὀπωδῶν· τῶν δὲ καὶ δακρυώδης γίνεται, καθά-  
περ ἐλάτης πεύκης τερεβίνθου πίτνος ἀμυγδαλῆς  
κεράσου προύμνης ἀρκεύθου κέδρου τῆς ἀκάνθης  
τῆς Αἰγυπτίας πτελέας, καὶ γὰρ αὕτη φέρει κόμμι

<sup>1</sup> cf. C P. 6. 11. 16.

<sup>2</sup> I have omitted ἡ and restored δὲ before ἔχει (om. Scal.; found in UMAld.).

<sup>3</sup> τῷ κενταυρίῳ conj. Scal. cf. Plin. 25. 32; κενταυρίδι conj. St.; κεντηρίῳ P<sub>2</sub>Ald.G, cf. 9. 8. 7.

## BOOK IX

### OF THE JUICES OF PLANTS, AND OF THE MEDICINAL PROPERTIES OF HERBS.

*Of the various kinds of plant-juices and the methods of collecting them.*

I. <sup>1</sup> Moisture belongs to plants as such and some call it the 'sap,' to give it a general name; and it plainly has <sup>2</sup> special qualities in each plant. This moisture is attended by a taste, in some cases more, in some less, while in some it would seem to have none, so weak and watery is it. Now all plants have most moisture at the time of making growth, but it is strongest and most shows its character when the plant has ceased to grow and to bear fruit. Again in some plants the juice has a special colour; in some it is white, as in those which have a milky juice; in some blood-red, as in centaury <sup>3</sup> and the spinous plant which is called distaff-thistle; in some green: and in some of other colours. And these qualities are more obvious in annual <sup>4</sup> plants and those with annual stems than in trees.

Again in some plants the juice is merely thick, as in those in which it is of milky character; but in some it is of gummy character, as in silver-fir fir terebinth Aleppo pine almond *kerasos* (bird-cherry) bullace Phoenician cedar prickly cedar acacia elm.<sup>5</sup> For

<sup>4</sup> *ἐν* inserted here by W. instead of before *τοῖς ἐπετείοις*.

<sup>5</sup> *πελέας* after *κέδρου* P<sub>2</sub>Ald.; transposed by Sch. after Tobias Aldinus. *cf.* Plin. 13. 67.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πλὴν οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ φλοιοῦ ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ κωρύκῳ, ἔτι δὲ ἀφ' ὧν ὁ λίβανος καὶ ἡ σμύρνα, δάκρυα γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα, καὶ τὸ βάλσαμον καὶ <ή> χαλβάνη καὶ εἴ τι τοιοῦτον ἕτερον, οἷόν φασι τὴν ἄκανθαν τὴν Ἰνδικήν, ἀφ' ἧς γίνεται τι ὅμοιον τῇ σμύρνῃ· συνίσταται δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς σχίνου καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἀκάνθης τῆς ἰξίνης καλουμένης, ἐξ ὧν ἡ μαστίχη.

- 3 "Απαντα δὲ ταῦτα εὖοσμα καὶ σχεδὸν ὅσα πιότῃτά τινα ἔχει καὶ λίπος· ὅσα δ' ἀλιπῇ ταῦτα δ' ἄοσμα, καθάπερ τὸ κόμμι καὶ τὸ τῆς ἀμυγδαλῆς. ἔχει δὲ δάκρυον καὶ ἡ ἰξία ἡ ἐν Κρήτῃ καὶ ἡ τραγάκανθα καλουμένη· ταύτην δὲ πρότερον ᾤοντο μόνον ἐν Κρήτῃ φύεσθαι, νῦν δὲ φανερά καὶ ἐν Ἀχαΐδι τῆς Πελοποννήσου καὶ ἄλλοθι καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας περὶ τὴν Μῆδειαν. καὶ τούτων μὲν πάντων ἐν τε τοῖς καυλοῖς καὶ τοῖς στελέχεσι καὶ τοῖς ἀκρεμόσι τὸ δάκρυον· ἐνίων δ' ἐν ταῖς ῥίζαις, ὥσπερ τοῦ ἵπποσελίνου καὶ τῆς σκαμμωνίας καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν φαρμακωδῶν. τῶν δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ καυλῷ καὶ ἐν τῇ ῥίζῃ· καὶ γὰρ τὸν καυλὸν ὀπίζουσιν ἐνίων καὶ τὰς ῥίζας, ὥσπερ καὶ τοῦ σιλφίου.

- 4 Τὸ μὲν οὖν τοῦ ἵπποσελίνου παρόμοιον τῇ σμύρνῃ· καί τινες ἀκούσαντες ὡς ἐντεῦθεν ἡ σμύρνα ἡγούνται βλαστάνειν ἐξ αὐτῆς ἵπποσε-

<sup>1</sup> κωρύκῳ conj. Sch.; ἀγγεῖῳ H.; ἀγγεῖῳ P<sub>2</sub>Ald. probably a gloss on κωρύκῳ, for which cf. 2. 8. 3 and reff. in note. Plin. l.c. has preserved the right word through an absurd blunder—in *Coryco monte Ciliciae*.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. 1. 2-4

this last also produces a gum, though it does not exude from the bark, but is found in the 'bag'<sup>1</sup> of the leaves; there are also the juices from which come frankincense and myrrh; for these too are gums; so too are balsam of Mecca *khalbane*<sup>2</sup> and any others of the kind that there may be, such as, they say, the Indian *akantha*, from which comes something<sup>3</sup> resembling myrrh; and a similar substance forms on mastich and the spinous plant called *ixine* (pine-thistle), whence mastic-gum is made.

All these have a fragrant odour, as in general have those which contain a viscous substance and are fatty; while those that are not fatty have no scent, as gum and the juice which exudes from the almond. The pine-thistle<sup>4</sup> of Crete has also a gum, and so has the plant called tragacanth;<sup>5</sup> this was formerly supposed to grow only in Crete, but now it is well known to grow also in Achaia in the Peloponnese and elsewhere in Hellas and in Asia in the Median country. In all these plants the gum occurs in the stems the trunks and the branches, but in some plants it is found in the roots, as in alexanders scammony and many other medicinal plants. In some it is found in the stem and also in the root;<sup>6</sup> for of some<sup>7</sup> plants they tap the stem and the roots as well, as is done with silphium.

Now the juice of alexanders is like myrrh, and some, having heard that myrrh comes from it, have supposed that, if myrrh is sown, alexanders comes up

<sup>2</sup> *galbanum*. cf. Plin. 12. 121; 24. 21. Verg. *G.* 3. 415; 4. 264. See 9. 7. 2; 9. 9. 2 n.

<sup>3</sup> τῇ I conj.; τὸ MSS. <sup>4</sup> ἰξία = ἰξίνη. See Index.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 13. 115. <sup>6</sup> cf. *C.P.* 6. 11. 15.

<sup>7</sup> ἐνίων καὶ conj. Sch.; καὶ ἐνίων Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

λινον· φυτεύεται γάρ, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, καὶ ἀπὸ  
δακρύου τὸ ἵπποσέλινον, καθάπερ ἡ κρινωνία καὶ  
ἄλλα. τὸ δὲ τοῦ σιλφίου δριμύ, καθάπερ αὐτὸ τὸ  
σίλφιον· ὁ γὰρ ὁπὸς καλούμενος τοῦ σιλφίου  
δάκρυνόν ἐστιν. ἡ δὲ σκαμμωνία καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο  
τοιούτον, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, φαρμακώδεις ἔχουσι τὰς  
δυνάμεις.

- 5 Πάντων δὲ τῶν εἰρημένων τὰ μὲν αὐτομάτως  
συνίσταται, τὰ δ' ἀπ' ἐντομῆς, τὰ δ' ἀμφοτέρωθεν·  
τέμνουσι δὲ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ χρήσιμα καὶ τὰ μᾶλλον  
ἐπιζητούμενα. τοῦ δ' ἀπὸ τῆς ἀμυγδαλῆς οὐ-  
δεμία χρεία δακρύου, δι' ὃ οὐκ ἀφελκοῦσι. πλὴν  
ἐκεῖνό γε φανερόν ὅτι ὦν αὐτόματος ἡ πῆξις  
6 τούτων πλείων ἢ ἐπιρροὴ τῆς ὑγρότητος. οὐ τὴν  
αὐτὴν δ' ὥραν ἀπάντων αἱ ἐντομαὶ καὶ ἡ πῆξις,  
ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν τῆς ἀμπέλου μάλιστα συνίστασθαι  
φασιν ἐὰν μικρὸν πρὸ τῆς βλαστήσεως τμηθῇ,  
τοῦ δὲ μετοπώρου καὶ ἀρχομένου τοῦ χειμῶνος  
ἦττον· καίτοι πρὸς γε καρποτοκίαν αἱ ὠραιόταται  
ταῖς γε πλείεσταις αὐται. τῆς δὲ τερμίνθου καὶ  
τῆς πεύκης καὶ εἰ ἔκ τινων ἄλλων ῥητίνη γίνεται  
μετὰ τὴν βλάστησιν· τὸ δ' ὅλον οὐκ ἐπέτειος ἢ  
τούτων, ἀλλ' εἰς πλείω χρόνον ἢ ἐντομή. τὸν δὲ  
λιβανωτὸν καὶ τὴν σμύρναν ὑπὸ Κύνᾳ φασὶ καὶ  
ταῖς θερμοτάταις ἡμέραις ἐντέμνειν· ὡσαύτως  
7 Ἀκριβεστέρα δὲ καὶ ἐλάττων ἢ καὶ τούτων

<sup>1</sup> ἐξ αὐτῆς conj. Scal.: cf. Plin. 19. 162, where *smyrnium* is given as a synonym; ἐν αὐτοῖς Ald.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 2. 2 1; 6. 6. 8; C.P. 1. 4. 6.

<sup>3</sup> 9. 1. 3.

<sup>4</sup> cf. C.P. 6. 11. 15.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. 1. 4-7

from it ;<sup>1</sup> for, as was said,<sup>2</sup> this plant can be grown from an exudation, like the *krinonia* (lily) and other plants. The juice of silphium is pungent like the plant itself ; for what is called the ' juice ' of silphium is a gum. Scammony and similar plants, as was said,<sup>3</sup> have medicinal properties.

In all the plants mentioned the juice either forms naturally, or when incisions are made, or in both ways,<sup>4</sup> but it is obvious that men only make incisions in plants whose juice is of use and is specially sought after.<sup>5</sup> Now there is no use in the gum which exudes from the almond, wherefore men do not tap it.<sup>6</sup> However it is plain that in plants whose gum forms naturally the flow of juice is greater. The incisions and the clotting of the juice do not take place at the same season in all cases ;<sup>7</sup> but the juice of the vine clots best they say if the incision is made a little before budding begins, less well in the autumn or at the beginning of winter ; (although in regard to production of fruit these<sup>8</sup> seasons are the best in the case of most<sup>9</sup> vines). However with terebinth fir or any other tree which produces resin the best time is after the period of budding ; yet in general these trees are not cut every year, but at longer intervals. The frankincense and myrrh trees they say should be cut at the rising of the Dogstar and on the hottest days, and so also the ' Syrian balsam ' (balsam of Mecca).

The cutting of these is also a more delicate matter

<sup>5</sup> μάλλον ἐπιζητούμενα· τοῦ δ' ἀπὸ τῆς ἀ. conj. W. supported by G ; μάλλον· ἐπὶ γούν τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς ἀ. UMald.

<sup>6</sup> οὐκ ἀφελκοῦσιν conj. Scal., cf. 9. 2. 1 ; κὰν ἀφέλκουσιν U ; κὰν ἀφέλκωσι MAld. cf. Plin. 24. 105.

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 24. 106.

<sup>8</sup> α iconj. W. ; καὶ UPald.

<sup>9</sup> γε conj. Sch. ; δὲ Ald. cf. C.P. 3. 13. 2.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἐντομή· καὶ γὰρ ἡ συρροὴ τῆς ὑγρότητος ἐλάττων· ὧν δὲ καὶ ὁ καυλὸς ἐντέμνεται καὶ ἡ ῥίζα, τούτων ὁ καυλὸς πρότερον, ὥσπερ καὶ τοῦ σιλφίου, καὶ καλοῦσι δὲ τῶν ὁπῶν τούτων τὸν μὲν καυλίαν τὸν δὲ ῥίζιαν· καὶ ἐστὶ βελτίων ὁ ῥιζίας· καθαρὸς γὰρ καὶ διαφανὴς καὶ ξηρότερος. ὁ δὲ καυλίας ὑγρότερος· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἄλευρον αὐτῷ περιπάττουσι πρὸς τὴν πῆξιν. τὴν ὥραν τῆς ἐντομῆς ἴσασιν οἱ Λίβυες· οὗτοι γὰρ οἱ σίλφιον λέγοντες. ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ οἱ ῥιζοτόμοι καὶ οἱ τοὺς φαρμακώδεις ὁποὺς συλλέγοντες· καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι τοὺς καυλοὺς ὀπίζουσι πρότερον. ἀπλῶς δὲ πάντες καὶ οἱ τὰς ῥίζας καὶ οἱ τοὺς ὁποὺς συλλέγοντες τὴν οἰκείαν ὥραν ἐκάστων τηροῦσι. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν δὴ κοινόν.

II. Ἡ δὲ ῥητίνη γίνεται τόνδε τὸν τρόπον· ἐν μὲν τῇ πεύκῃ ὅταν ἀφελκωθείσης ἡ δᾶς ἐξαιρεθῇ, συρρεῖ γὰρ εἰς τὸ ἔλκωμα τοῦτο πλείων ἢ ὑγρότης, ἐν δὲ τῇ ἐλάτῃ καὶ τῇ πίτυϊ ὅταν γευσάμενοι τῶν ξύλων ἀφελκώσωσιν· οὐ γὰρ πᾶς ἀφορισμὸς ὁμοίως· ἀφελκοῦσι γὰρ καὶ τὰς τερμίνθους ἐν ἀμφοῖν καὶ ἐν τῷ στελέχει καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀκρεμόσιν· αἰεὶ δὲ πλείων καὶ βελτίων ἢ εἰς τὸ στέλεχος συρρέουσα τῆς εἰς τοὺς ἀκρεμόνας.

- 2 Διαφέρουσι δὲ καὶ κατὰ τὰ δένδρα. βελτίστη μὲν γὰρ ἡ τερμινθίνη· καὶ γὰρ συνεστηκυῖα καὶ εὐωδεστάτη καὶ κουφοτάτη τῇ ὀσμῇ ἄλλ' ὀλίγη. δευτέρα δὲ ἡ ἐλατίνη καὶ πιτυίνη, κουφότεραι γὰρ τῆς πευκίνης. πλείστη δὲ ἡ πευκίνη καὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. 6. 3. 2; C.P. 6. 11. 16.

<sup>2</sup> σίλφιον conj. St.; σιλφίου UM; σιλφιολέγοντες Pald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. 1. 7-II. 2

and is done on a smaller scale ; for the flow of juice is less. In those plants whose stem and root are both cut the stem is cut first, as also with silphium ; and the juices so obtained are called respectively stalk-juice and root-juice, of which the latter is the better, for it is clear transparent and less liquid. The stalk-juice is more liquid, and for this reason they sprinkle meal<sup>1</sup> over it to make it clot. The Libyans know the season for cutting, for it is they that gather the silphium.<sup>2</sup> So also do the root-diggers and those that collect medicinal juices, for these too tap the stems earlier. And in general all those who collect whether roots or juices observe the season which is appropriate in each case. And this remark applies generally.

*Of resinous trees and the methods of collecting resin and pitch.*

II. <sup>3</sup> Resin is made in the following manner :—in fir it is done by removing the resinous wood after the tree has been tapped ; for then the juice flows into the hole so made in greater abundance ; in silver-fir and Aleppo pine it is done by tapping the wood, after tasting it. For there is no fixed rule for all alike ; thus with terebinth they tap both the stem and the branches ; but the juice which runs into the stem is always more abundant and better than that which flows into the branches.

There are also differences in<sup>4</sup> the resin obtained from different trees. The best is that of terebinth ; for it sets firm, is the most fragrant, and has the most delicate smell ; but the yield is not abundant. Next comes that of silver-fir and Aleppo pine, for these are more delicate than that of the fir. But that of the fir

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 16. 57.

<sup>4</sup> κατὰ conj. W. ; ταῦτα Ald. H.



## THEOPHRASTUS

βαρυτάτη καὶ πιττωδεστάτη διὰ τὸ μύλιστα ἔνδαδον εἶναι τὴν πεύκην. ἄγεται δὲ ἐν ἀσκοῖς ὑγρά, κᾶπειτα οὕτω συνίσταται. καίτοι φασὶ καὶ τὴν τέρμινθον πιττοκαυτεῖσθαι περὶ Συρίαν· ἔστι γὰρ ὄρος, καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν εἵπομεν, μέγα τερμίνθων μεστὸν ἅπαν μεγάλων.

Β Ἐνιοὶ δὲ φασὶ καὶ τὴν πίτυν καὶ τὴν κέδρον δὲ τὴν Φοινικικὴν· ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ὥς ἐνδεχόμενα ληπτέον διὰ τὸ σπάνιον· ἐπεὶ οἱ γε περὶ Μακεδονίαν οὐδὲ τὴν πεύκην πιττοκαυτοῦσιν ἀλλ' ἢ τὴν ἄρρενα· καλοῦσι γὰρ ἄρρενα τὴν μὴ καρποφόρον. τῆς δὲ θηλείας ἐάν τινα τῶν ῥιζῶν λάβωσιν· ἅπανσα γὰρ ἔνδαδος πεύκη ταῖς ῥίζαις. καλλίστη δὲ πίττα γίνεται καὶ καθαρωτάτη ἢ ἐκ τῶν σφόδρα προσείλων καὶ προσβόρρων, ἐκ δὲ τῶν παλισκίων βλοσυρωτέρα καὶ βορβορώδης· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς σφόδρα παλισκίοις οὐδὲ φύεται πεύκη τὸ παράπαν.

Ι Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἀφορία τις καὶ εὐφορία καὶ πλήθους καὶ καλλονῆς· ὅταν μὲν γὰρ χειμῶν μέτριος γίνηται, πολλὴ γίνεται καὶ καλὴ καὶ τῷ χρώματι λευκότερα, ὅταν δὲ ἰσχυρός, ὀλίγη καὶ μοχθηροτέρα. καὶ ταῦτά γε ἔστι τὰ ὀρίζοντα πλήθος καὶ καλλονὴν πίττης, οὐχ ἢ πολυκαρπία τῶν πευκῶν.

<sup>1</sup> πιττοκαυτεῖσθαι conj. Sch., cf. 9. 3. 4; πιττοκαυθῖσαι U; πιττωθεῖσαι Ald.

<sup>2</sup> 3. 2. 6.

<sup>3</sup> δὲ conj. W.; καὶ Ald. H. cf. 3. 12. 3.

<sup>4</sup> μὴ conj. W.; γε Ald. H.; γε μὴ Cod. Casaub. Vin.; γε μὴν Vo. (τὴν ἄκαρπον mBas.). cf. 3. 9. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 16. 59.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. II. 2-4

is the most abundant, the grossest and the most pitch-like, because this tree has the greatest amount of resinous wood. It is carried about in baskets in a liquid state, and so acquires the more solid form which we know. However they say that in Syria pitch is extracted even from the terebinth by burning<sup>1</sup>; for there is in that land a mountain which, as we said before,<sup>2</sup> is all covered with great terebinths.

Some<sup>3</sup> say the same of Aleppo pine and also of Phoenician cedar; but this must be taken as only indicating what *can* be done, the practice not being common; for the people of Macedonia do not extract pitch by burning even from fir, except from the 'male' kind (they call the kind which bears no fruit<sup>4</sup> the 'male'); the 'female' kind they only treat in this way when they have found roots containing pitch; for all firs have resinous wood extending to the roots. <sup>5</sup>The finest and purest pitch is that obtained from trees growing in a sunny position and facing north<sup>6</sup>; that obtained from trees growing in shade is coarser<sup>7</sup> and muddy; (in exceedingly shady places the fir does not even grow at all).

Again the yield may be either good or bad as to amount and as to quality; thus, when there is a moderate winter, it is abundant and good and whiter in colour, but, when there is a severe winter, it is scanty and of inferior quality. And it is these conditions, and not the tree's capacity for bearing fruit, which determine the amount and quality of pitch.

<sup>6</sup> Apparently because this is the dry quarter in the Balkan peninsula.

<sup>7</sup> βλοσσωρότερα conj. Sch.; βροσσηροτέρα M; βλοσσηροτέρα Ald. cf C.P. 6. 12. 5.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 5 Οἱ δὲ περὶ τὴν Ἰδην φασί, διαιροῦντες τὰς πεύκας καὶ τὴν μὲν καλοῦντες Ἰδαίαν τὴν δὲ παραλίαν, τὴν ἐκ τῆς Ἰδαίας πλείω καὶ μελαντέραν γίνεσθαι καὶ γλυκυτέραν καὶ τὸ ὅλον εὐωδεστέραν ὡμήν, ἐψηθεῖσαν δὲ ἐλάττω ἐκβαίνειν· πλείω γὰρ ἔχειν τὸν ὀρρόν, δι' ὃ καὶ λεπτοτέραν εἶναι. τὴν δὲ τῆς παραλίας ξανθοτέραν καὶ παχυτέραν ὡμήν, ὥστε καὶ τὴν ἄφεψιν ἐλάττω γίνεσθαι, δαδωδεστέραν δὲ τὴν Ἰδαίαν. ὥς δὲ ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν ἐκ τῆς ἴσης δαδὸς πλείω καὶ ὑδαρεστέραν ἐν ταῖς ἐπομβρίαις γίνεσθαι ἢ ἐν τοῖς αὐχμοῖς, καὶ ἐκ τῶν χειμερινῶν καὶ παλισκίων τόπων ἢ ἐκ τῶν εὐείλων καὶ εὐδιεινῶν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἑκάτεροι λέγουσιν.
- 6 Ἀναπληροῦσθαι δὲ συμβαίνει τὰ κοιλώματα πρὸς τὸ πάλιν ἐξαιρεῖν τῶν μὲν ἀγαθῶν πευκῶν ἐνιαυτῷ, τῶν δὲ μετριοτέρων ἐν δυσὶν ἔτεσι, τῶν δὲ μοχθηρῶν ἐν τρισίν. ἢ δὲ ἀναπλήρωσις οὐ τοῦ ξύλου καὶ τῆς συμφύσεως ἀλλὰ τῆς πίττης ἐστίν· ἐπεὶ τὸ ξύλον ἀδύνατον συμφῦναι καὶ ἐν γενέσθαι πάλιν, ἀλλ' ἢ ἐργασία διὰ τοσούτου χρόνου γίνεται τῆς πίττης· ἀναγκαῖον δὲ δῆλον ὅτι καὶ τῷ ξύλῳ γίνεσθαί τινα πρόσφυσιν, εἶπερ

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 16. 60.

<sup>2</sup> εὐωδεστέραν H.; εὐκρινωδεστέραν UMAld.; ? εὐκρινεστέραν καὶ εὐωδεστέραν W. cf 3. 9. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. l.c.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. II. 5-6

The people of Mount Ida distinguish different kinds of fir, calling one 'that of Mount Ida' (Corsican pine), another the 'fir of the seashore,' (Aleppo pine);<sup>1</sup> and they say that the pitch obtained from the former is more abundant blacker sweeter and generally more fragrant<sup>2</sup> in the raw state, but that boiling down reduces the amount; for that it contains a larger proportion of watery matter, wherefore it is less substantial; but that derived from the 'fir of the seashore' is browner and thicker in the raw state, so that the amount is less reduced by boiling down; that the 'fir of Mount Ida' however contains more resinous wood. And, speaking generally, they say that from an equal amount of resinous wood more pitch is obtained and in a more liquid state in wet weather than during a drought, and from a wintry and shady position than from one that is sunny and enjoys fair weather. Such is the account given by the peoples of Mount Ida and of Macedonia respectively.

<sup>3</sup> The holes for the pitch fill up, so that the pitch can be again removed,<sup>4</sup> in good firs in a year, in those of more moderate quality in two years, in poor trees in three. The filling-up is composed of the pitch; it is not caused by closing up of the wood; for the wood cannot close up and become one again, but the effect which takes the time mentioned is due to the formation of the pitch.<sup>5</sup> However it is clearly inevitable that there should be some new growth of the wood too, seeing that the resinous wood is

<sup>4</sup> ἐξαιρεῖν conj. Sch.; ἐξαίρειν Ald.H.

<sup>5</sup> So W. explains ἀλλὰ . . . πιττῆς. Or perhaps (as Sch.), 'however this is the interval which must elapse before the pitch can be worked again.'

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἐξαιρουμένης τῆς δαδὸς καὶ καιομένης τῆς πίττης ἢ ἐκροή. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν οὕτω ληπτέον.

- 7 Οἱ δὲ περὶ τὴν Ἰδην φασίν, ὅταν λεπίσωσι τὸ στέλεχος,—λεπίζουσι δὲ τὸ πρὸς ἥλιον μέρος ἐπὶ δύο ἢ τρεῖς πήχεις ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς—ἐνταῦθα τῆς ἐπιρροῆς γινομένης ἐνδαδοῦσθαι ἐνιαυτῷ μάλιστα, τοῦτο δ' ὅταν ἐκπελεκήσωσιν ἐν ἐτέρῳ πάλιν ἐνδαδοῦσθαι καὶ τὸ τρίτον ὡσαύτως, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα διὰ τὴν ὑποτομὴν ἐκπίπτειν τὸ δένδρον ὑπὸ τῶν πνευμάτων σαπέν· τότε δ' ἐξαιρεῖν αὐτοῦ τὴν καρδίαν, τοῦτο γὰρ μάλιστα δαδῶδες, ἐξαιρεῖν δὲ ἐκ τῶν ῥιζῶν· καὶ γὰρ ταύτας, ὥσπερ εἶπομεν, ἐνδάδους πασῶν.

- 8 Εἰκὸς δὲ δῆλον ὅτι τὰς μὲν ἀγαθάς, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, συνεχῶς τοῦτο δρᾶν τὰς δὲ χείρονας διὰ πλείονος χρόνου· καὶ ταμιευομένων μὲν πλείω χρόνον ἀντέχειν, ἂν δὲ πᾶσαν ἐξαιρῶσιν ἐλάττω· δύναται δ' ὡς ἔοικε τρεῖς μάλιστα τοιαύτας ἐξαιρέσεις ὑπομένειν. οὐχ ἅμα δὲ καρποφοροῦσιν αἱ πεῦκαι καὶ δαδοφοροῦσι· καρποφοροῦσι μὲν γὰρ εὐθὺς νέαι, δαδοφοροῦσι δὲ ὕστερον πολλῷ πρεσβύτεραι γινόμεναι.

III. Τὴν δὲ πίτταν καίουσι τόνδε τὸν τρόπον· ὅταν κατασκευάσωσιν ὁμαλὴν τόπον ὥσπερ ἄλλω

<sup>1</sup> i.e. and so this kind of wood at least is replaced by fresh growth.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 16. 57.

<sup>3</sup> τῆς ἐπιρροῆς γινομένης ἐνδαδοῦσθαι conj. W.; τὴν ἐπιρροὴν γινομένην ἐνδαδον Ald.; τῆς ἐπιρροῆς γινομένης ἐνδαδον γίνεσθαι conj. Sch.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. II. 6—III. I

removed<sup>1</sup> and burnt when the discharge of pitch takes place. So much for this account.

<sup>2</sup> The people of Mount Ida however say that, when they bark the stem,—and they bark the side towards the sun to a height of two or three cubits from the ground,—the flow of pitch takes place in that part,<sup>3</sup> and in about a year the wood becomes full of pitch; and that, when they have hewn this part out, pitch forms again in the next year, and in the third year in like manner; after which<sup>4</sup> that the tree, because it has been cut away underneath, is rotted by the winds and falls; and that then<sup>5</sup> they take out its heart, for that is especially full of pitch, and that they also extract pitch from<sup>6</sup> the roots; for that these too, as we said,<sup>7</sup> are full of pitch in all firs.

Now it is plainly to be expected that they should, as was said, repeatedly thus treat a good tree, but an inferior one at longer intervals, and that, if the tree is husbanded, the supply should hold out longer, while, if they remove all the pitch, it will not hold out so long; it appears as a matter of fact that the tree will stand about three such removals of its substance. <sup>8</sup> However firs do not produce both fruit and pitch at once; they begin to bear fruit when they are quite young, but they only produce pitch much later, when they are older.

*Of the making of pitch in Macedonia and in Syria.*

III. This is the manner in which they make pitch by fire :—having prepared a level piece of ground,

<sup>4</sup> μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα conj. Sch.; τὰ δὲ ταῦτα UM; τὰ δὲ τοιαῦτα Ald.

<sup>5</sup> τότε conj. Sch. from G; τοὺς Ald.

<sup>6</sup> ἐκ Ald.; καὶ conj. W.

<sup>7</sup> 9. 2 3. <sup>8</sup> cf. C.P. 5. 16. 2.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- ποιήσαντες ἔχουσιν εἰς τὸ μέσον συρροὴν καὶ ταύτην ἐδαφίσωσι, κατασχίσαντες τοὺς κορμούς συντιθέασιν παραπλησίαν σύνθεσιν τῆς τῶν ἀνθρακευόντων, πλὴν οὐκ ἔμβοθρον· ἀλλὰ τὰς σχίζας ὀρθὰς πρὸς ἀλλήλας, ὥστε λαμβάνειν ὕψος αἰεὶ κατὰ πλῆθος· γίνεσθαι δέ φασιν, ὅταν ἡ σύνθεσις ἢ κύκλῳ μὲν ὀγδοήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν πηχέων εἰς ὕψος δὲ ἐξήκοντα πλείστον ἢ πεντήκοντα ἢ ἑκατὸν ἀμφοτέροις, εἰνπερ ἡ δᾶς τυγχάνη
- 2 πείρα. συνθέντες οὖν αὐτὴν οὕτως καὶ κατασκεπάσαντες ὕλη γῆν ἐπιβαλόντες κατακρύπτουσιν ὅπως μηδαμῶς διαλάμψῃ τὸ πῦρ, ἀπόλλυται γὰρ ἡ πίστα τούτου συμβάντος. ὑφάπτουσι δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὑπολειπομένην δίοδον· εἶτα δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ἐπιφράξαντες τῇ ὕλῃ καὶ ἐπιχώσαντες τηροῦσιν ἀναβαίνοντες κατὰ κλίμακος, ἢ ἂν ὀρώσι τὸν καπνὸν ὠθούμενον, καὶ ἐπιβάλλουσιν αἰεὶ τῆς γῆς ὅπως μηδ' ἀναλάμψῃ. κατεσκεύασται δὲ ὀχετὸς τῇ πίστῃ διὰ τῆς συνθέσεως τῆς ἀπορροῆς εἰς βόθυνον ὅσον ἀπέχοντα πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεις· ἡ δ' ἀπορρέουσα τῆς πίστῃς
- 3 ψυχρὰ γίνεται κατὰ τὴν ἀφήν. καίεται δὲ μάλιστα δύο ἡμέρας καὶ νύκτας· τῇ γὰρ ὑστεραία πρὸ ἡλίου δύναντος ἐκκεκαυμένη γίνεται καὶ ἐνδέδωκεν ἡ πυρά· τοῦτο γὰρ συμβαίνει μηκέτι ρεούσης. τοῦτον δὲ τὸν χρόνον ἅπαντα τηροῦσιν

<sup>1</sup> ἐδαφίσωσι: cf. 9. 4. 4.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 5 9, where however the 'pit' is not described.

<sup>3</sup> γίνεσθαι δὲ. Something seems to have dropped out at the beginning of this clause. ? "and they say that the pile at largest is 180" . . .: so Sch. supplying *μεγίστη* after ἢ. The omitted words might also throw light on the preceding sentence.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. III. 1-3

which they make like a threshing-floor with a slope for the pitch to run towards the middle, and having made it smooth,<sup>1</sup> they cleave the logs and place them in an arrangement like that used by charcoal-burners,<sup>2</sup> except that there is no pit; but the billets are set upright against one another, so that the pile goes on growing in height according to the number used. And they say that the erection is complete,<sup>3</sup> when the pile is 180 cubits in circumference, and fifty, or at most sixty, in height; or again when it is a hundred cubits in circumference and a hundred in height,<sup>4</sup> if the wood happens to be rich in pitch. Having then thus arranged the pile and having covered it in with timber they throw on earth and completely cover it, so that the fire may not by any means show through; for, if this happens, the pitch is ruined. Then they kindle the pile where the passage is left, and then, having<sup>5</sup> filled that part<sup>6</sup> up too with the timber and piled on earth, they mount a ladder and watch wherever they see the smoke pushing its way out, and keep on piling on the earth, so that the fire may not even shew itself. And a conduit is prepared for the pitch right though the pile, so that it may flow into a hole about fifteen cubits off, and the pitch as it flows out is now cold to the touch. The pile burns for nearly two days and nights; for on the second day before sunset it has burnt itself out and the pile has fallen in; for this occurs if the pitch is no longer flowing. All this time<sup>7</sup> they keep watch and do not

<sup>1</sup> ἀμφοτέροις: ἀμφοτέρωσσε conj. Sch.

<sup>2</sup> ἐπιφράξαντες conj. Scal. from G, *stipant*; ἐπάξαντες UM Ald.; ἐπισάξαντες H.

<sup>3</sup> ταῦτα Ald.; ταύτην W. after Sch.'s conj.

<sup>7</sup> τοῦτον δὲ τὸν χρόνον conj. Sch. from G, *totum tempus*; τόνδε δὲ τὸν τρόπον UM Ald. H.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀγρυπνοῦντες, ὅπως μὴ διαλάμπῃ, καὶ θύουσι δὲ καὶ ἐορτάζουσιν εὐχόμενοι πολλήν τε καὶ καλὴν γίνεσθαι τὴν πίτταν· οἱ μὲν δὴ περὶ Μακεδονίαν καίουσι τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον.

- 4 Ἐν δὲ τῇ Ἀσίᾳ φασὶ περὶ Συρίαν οὐκ ἐκπελεκῶντας τὴν δᾶδα ἀλλ' ἐπ' αὐτῷ τῷ δένδρῳ προσκαίειν φέροντας ὄργανόν τι περιπεποιημένον καὶ τούτῳ περιίπτοντας, εἴθ' ὅταν ἐκτῆξωσι ταύτην πάλιν ἐπ' ἄλλο καὶ ἄλλο μεταφέρειν· ὁρος δέ ἐστιν αὐτοῖς τις καὶ σημεῖα τοῦ παύεσθαι καὶ μάλιστα δῆλον ὅτι τὸ μηκέτι ρεῖν. πιττοκαυτοῦσι δέ, ὥσπερ καὶ πρότερον ἐλέχθη, τὰς τερμίνθους· πεύκην γὰρ οὐ φέρουσιν οἱ τόποι. τὰ μὲν οὖν περὶ τὴν ῥητίνην καὶ τὴν πίτταν οὕτως ἔχει.

IV. Περὶ δὲ λιβανωτοῦ καὶ σμύρνης καὶ βαλσάμου καὶ εἴ τι τοιοῦτον ἕτερον ὅτι μὲν καὶ ἀπ' ἐντομῆς γίνεται καὶ αὐτομάτως εἴρηται. ποία δε τις ἢ τῶν δένδρων φύσις καὶ εἴ τι περὶ τὴν γένεσιν ἢ τὴν συλλογὴν ἢ τῶν ἄλλων ἰδίον αὐτοῖς ὑπάρχει πειρατέον εἰπεῖν, ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν λοιπῶν εὐόσμων· σχεδὸν γὰρ τά γε πλεῖστα ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων ἐστὶ τῶν τε πρὸς μεσημβρίαν καὶ ἀνατολήν.

- 2 Γίνεται μὲν οὖν ὁ λίβανος καὶ ἡ σμύρνα καὶ ἡ κασία καὶ ἔτι τὸ κινάμωμον ἐν τῇ τῶν Ἀράβων Χερρονήσῳ περὶ τε Σαβὰ καὶ Ἀδραμύτα καὶ

<sup>1</sup> ἐκπελεκῶντας conj. W.; ἐκπλέκοντες U; ἐκπλέοντες M; ἐκπλήττοντες Ald.

<sup>2</sup> The sense given to περιπεποιημένον is unexampled, and the word may be corrupt.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. III. 3-IV. 2

go to rest, in case the fire should come through; and they offer sacrifice and keep holiday, praying that the pitch may be abundant and good. Such is the manner in which the people of Macedonia make pitch by fire.

They say that in Asia in the Syrian region they do not extract the pitch by cutting<sup>1</sup> out of the tree the wood containing it, but use fire to the tree itself, applying an instrument fashioned on purpose,<sup>2</sup> with which they set fire to it.<sup>3</sup> And then, when they have melted out the pitch at once place, they shift the instrument to another. But they have a limit and indications when to stop, chiefly of course the fact that the pitch ceases to flow. They also, as was said before,<sup>4</sup> use fire to get pitch out of the terebinth; for the places where this tree grows do not produce the fir. Such are the facts about resin and pitch.

*Of frankincense and myrrh: various accounts.*

IV. As to frankincense myrrh balsam of Mecca and similar plants it has been said that the gum is produced both by incision and naturally. Now we must endeavour to say what<sup>5</sup> is the natural character of these trees and to mention any peculiarities as to the origin of the gum or its collection or anything<sup>6</sup> else. So too concerning the other fragrant plants; most of these come from places in the south and east.

Now frankincense myrrh cassia and also cinnamon are found in the Arabian peninsula<sup>7</sup> about

<sup>3</sup> τούτω περιάπτοντας seems to have been G's reading (Scal.); τοῦτο περιαλείφοντας MSS. <sup>4</sup> 9. 2. 2.

<sup>5</sup> ποία conj. W.; πολλή Ald. <sup>6</sup> τι before τῶν add. Sch.

<sup>7</sup> Χερρονήσῳ conj. Salm.; χώρα νήσῳ Ald. cf. Plin. 6. 28.

## THEOPHRASTUS

Κιτίβαινα καὶ Μαμάλι. φύεται δὲ τὰ τοῦ λιβανωτοῦ καὶ τῆς σμύρνης δένδρα τὰ μὲν ἐν τῷ ὄρει τὰ δ' ἐν ταῖς ἰδίαις γεωργίαις ὑπὸ τὴν ὑπώρειαν, δι' ὃ καὶ τὰ μὲν θεραπεύεται τὰ δ' οὐ· τὸ δ' ὄρος εἶναί φασιν ὑψηλὸν καὶ δασὺ καὶ νιφόμενον, ρεῖν δ' ἐξ αὐτοῦ καὶ ποταμοὺς εἰς τὸ πῆδιον. εἶναι δὲ τὸ μὲν τοῦ λιβανωτοῦ δένδρον οὐ μέγα, πεντάπηχυ δέ τι καὶ πολύκλαδον, φύλλον δ' ἔχειν ἐμφορὲς τῇ ἀπίῳ, πλὴν ἑλαττον πολὺ καὶ τῷ χρώματι ποῶδες σφόδρα, καθάπερ τὸ πήγανον· λειόφλοιον δὲ πᾶν, ὥσπερ τὴν δάφνην.

- 3 Τὴν δὲ σμύρναν ἑλαττον ἔτι τῷ μεγέθει καὶ θαμνωδέστερον δέ, τὸ δὲ στέλεχος ἔχειν σκληρὸν καὶ συνεστραμμένον ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς, παχύτερον δὲ ἢ κνημοπαχὲς· φλοιὸν δὲ ἔχειν λεῖον ὁμοῖον τῇ ἀνδράχλῃ. ἕτεροι δὲ οἱ φάσκοντες τεθεωρηκέναι περὶ μὲν τοῦ μεγέθους σχεδὸν συμφωνοῦσιν· οὐδέτερον γὰρ εἶναι μέγα τῶν δένδρων, ἑλαττον δὲ τὸ τῆς σμύρνης καὶ ταπεινότερον· φύλλον δὲ ἔχειν τὸ τοῦ λιβανωτοῦ δαφνοειδὲς καὶ λειόφλοιον δ' εἶναι· τὸ δὲ τῆς σμύρνης ἀκανθῶδες καὶ οὐ λεῖον, φύλλον δὲ προσεμφορὲς ἔχειν τῇ πτελέᾳ, πλὴν οὐλον ἐξ ἄκρου δὲ ἐπακανθίζον, ὥσπερ τὸ τῆς πρίνου.

- 4 Ἐφασαν δὲ οὗτοι κατὰ τὸν παράπλουν ὃν ἐξ Ἡρώων ἐποιοῦντο κόλπου ζητεῖν ἐκβάντες ὕδωρ ἐν τῷ ὄρει καὶ οὕτω θεωρῆσαι τὰ δένδρα καὶ τὴν συλλογὴν. εἶναι δ' ἀμφοτέρων ἐντετμημένα καὶ

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 12. 55 and 56.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 12. 67.

<sup>3</sup> ἔχειν conj. Sch.; ἔχει P<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>4</sup> λιβανωτοῦ δαφνοειδὲς καὶ λειόφλοιον δ' εἶναι conj. Sch.; λιβά-  
νου τοῦ δαφνοειδὲς καὶ λειόφυλλον δ' εἶναι UM; λιβάου δαφνοειδὲς

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. IV. 2-4

Saba Hadramyta Kitibaina and Mamali. The trees of frankincense and myrrh grow partly in the mountains, partly on private estates at the foot of the mountains; wherefore some are under cultivation, others not; the mountains, they say, are lofty, forest-covered and subject to snow, and rivers from them flow down to the plain. The frankincense-tree,<sup>1</sup> it is said, is not tall, about five cubits high, and it is much branched; it has a leaf like that of the pear, but much smaller and very grassy in colour, like rue; the bark is altogether smooth like that of bay.

The myrrh-tree<sup>2</sup> is said to be still smaller in stature and more bushy; it is said to have<sup>3</sup> a tough stem, which is contorted near the ground, and is stouter than a man's leg; and to have a smooth bark like that of andrachne. Others who say that they have seen it agree pretty closely about the size; neither of these trees, they say, is large, but that which bears myrrh is the smaller and of lower growth; however they say that, while the frankincense-tree<sup>4</sup> has a leaf like that of bay and smooth bark, that which bears myrrh is spinous and not smooth, and has a leaf like that of the elm, except that it is curly and spinous<sup>5</sup> at the tip like that of kermes-oak.

<sup>6</sup> These said that on the coasting voyage which they made from the bay of the Heroes they landed to look for water on the mountains and so saw these trees and the manner of collecting their gums.

<sup>7</sup> They reported that with both trees incisions had

καὶ λειόφυλλον δ' εἶναι P<sub>2</sub>; λιβάνου· ἀλλὰ τοῦ μὲν δαφνοειδὲς καὶ λειόφυλλον εἶναι Ald.H. cf Plin. 12. 57.

<sup>1</sup> cf. 3. 10 1; 3. 11. 3.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Arr. *Anab.* 3. 5. 4; 7. 20. 1 and 2.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 12. 58-62.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τὰ στελέχη καὶ τοὺς κλάδους, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν ὥσπερ  
 ἀξίνη δοκεῖν τετμῆσθαι τοὺς δὲ λεπτοτέρας ἔχειν  
 τὰς ἐντομίας· τὸ δὲ δάκρυον τὸ μὲν καταπίπτειν  
 τὸ δὲ καὶ πρὸς τῷ δένδρῳ προσέχεσθαι. ἐνιαχοῦ  
 μὲν ὑποβεβλήσθαι ψιάθους ἐκ φοινίκων πεπλεγ-  
 μένας, ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ τὸ ἔδαφος μόνον ἡδαφίσθαι καὶ  
 καθαρὸν εἶναι· καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ψιάθων  
 λιβανωτὸν εἶναι καὶ καθαρὸν καὶ διαφανή, τὸν δ'  
 ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ἦττον· τὸν δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς δένδροις προσ-  
 εχόμενον ἀποξύνειν σιδήροις, δι' ὃ καὶ φλοιὸν ἐνίοις  
 5 προσεῖναι. τὸ δὲ ὄρος ἅπαν μεμερίσθαι τοῖς  
 Σαβαίοις, τούτους γὰρ εἶναι κυρίους, δικαίους δὲ  
 τὰ πρὸς ἀλλήλους, δι' ὃ καὶ οὐδένα τηρεῖν· ὅθεν  
 καὶ αὐτοὶ δαψιλῶς εἰς τὰ πλοῖα λαβόντες ἐνθέ-  
 σθαι τοῦ λιβανωτοῦ καὶ τῆς σμύρνης ἐρημίας  
 οὔσης καὶ ἀποπλεῖν. ἔλεγον δ' οὗτοι καὶ τότε  
 καὶ ἔφασαν ἀκούειν, ὅτι συνάγεται πανταχόθεν ἡ  
 σμύρνα καὶ ὁ λιβανωτὸς εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν τὸ τοῦ ἡλίου·  
 τοῦτο δ' εἶναι μὲν τῶν Σαβαίων ἀγιώτατον δὲ  
 πολὺ τῶν περὶ τὸν τόπον, τηρεῖν δέ τινας Ἄρα-  
 6 βας ἐνόπλους· ὅταν δὲ κομίσωσιν, ἕκαστον σωρεύ-  
 σαντα τὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν σμύρναν ὁμοίως κατα-  
 λιπεῖν τοῖς ἐπὶ τῆς φυλακῆς, τιθέναι δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 σωροῦ πινάκιον γραφὴν ἔχον τοῦ τε πλήθους τῶν  
 μέτρων καὶ τῆς τιμῆς ἧς δεῖ πραθῆναι τὸ μέτρον  
 ἕκαστον· ὅταν δὲ οἱ ἔμποροι παραγένωνται, σκο-  
 πεῖν τὰς γραφάς, ὅστις δ' ἂν αὐτοῖς ἀρέσκη

<sup>1</sup> πραθῆναι conj. Sch. from G ; πρασθῆναι U ; προσθεῖναι P<sub>2</sub> Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. IV. 4-6

been made both in the stems and in the branches, but that, while the stems looked as if they had been cut with an axe, in the branches the incisions were slighter; also that in some cases the gum was dropping, but that in others it remained sticking to the tree; and that in some places mats woven of palm-leaves were put underneath, while in some the ground underneath was merely made level and clean; and that the frankincense on the mats was clear and transparent, that collected on the ground less so; and that that which remained sticking to the trees they scraped off with iron tools, wherefore sometimes pieces of bark remained in it. The whole range, they said, belongs to the portion of the Sabaeans; for it is under their sway, and they are honest in their dealings with one another. Wherefore no one keeps watch; so that these sailors greedily took, they said, and put on board their ships some of the frankincense and myrrh, since there was no one about, and sailed away. They also reported another thing which they said they had been told, that the myrrh and frankincense are collected from all parts into the temple of the sun; and that this temple is the most sacred thing which the Sabaeans of that region possess, and it is guarded by certain Arabians in arms. And that when they have brought it, each man piles up his own contribution of frankincense and the myrrh in like manner, and leaves it with those on guard; and on the pile he puts a tablet on which is stated the number of measures which it contains, and the price for which each measure should be sold<sup>1</sup>; and that, when the merchants come, they look at the tablets, and whichever pile pleases them, they

## THEOPHRASTUS

μετρησαμένους τιθέναι τὴν τιμὴν εἰς τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον ἔνθεν ἂν ἔλωνται, καὶ τὸν ἱερέα παραγενόμενον τὸ τρίτον μέρος λαβόντα τῆς τιμῆς τῷ θεῷ τὸ λοιπὸν αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν καὶ τοῦτο σὼν εἶναι τοῖς κυρίοις, ἕως ἂν ἔλωνται παραγενόμενοι.

7 Ἄλλοι δέ τινες τὸ μὲν τοῦ λιβανωτοῦ δένδρον ὅμοιον εἶναί φασι σχίνῳ καὶ τὸν καρπὸν ταῖς σχινίσι φύλλον δὲ ὑπέρυθρον· εἶναι δὲ τὸν μὲν ἐκ τῶν νέων λιβανωτὸν λευκότερον καὶ ἀοδμότερον, τὸν δ' ἐκ τῶν παρηκμακότων ξανθότερον καὶ εὐοσμότερον· τὸ δὲ τῆς σμύρνης ὅμοιον τῇ τερμίνθῳ, τραχύτερον ἔ καὶ ἀκαυθωδέστερον, φύλλον δὲ μικρῷ στρογγυλότερον, τῇ δὲ γεύσει διαμασσωμένοις ὅμοιον τῷ τῆς τερμίνθου· εἶναι δὲ καὶ τούτων τὰ παρηκμακότα εὐοσμότερα.

8 Γίνεσθαι δὲ ἀμφότερα ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τόπῳ· τὴν δὲ γῆν ὑπάργιλον καὶ πλακώδη, καὶ ὕδατα πηγαῖα σπάνια. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ὑπεναντία τῷ νίφεσθαι καὶ ὕεσθαι καὶ ποταμοὺς ἐξιέναι· τὸ δὲ παρόμοιον εἶναι τὸ δένδρον τῇ τερμίνθῳ καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς λέγουσιν, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὅλως τέρμινθον εἶναι· κομισθῆναι γὰρ ξύλα πρὸς Ἀντίγονον ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀράβων τῶν τὸν λιβανωτὸν καταγόντων, ἃ οὐδὲν διέφερε τῶν τῆς τερμίνθου· πλὴν οὗτοί γε μείζον

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 12. 66 and 67.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 12. 53.

<sup>3</sup> πλακώδη: lit. 'with a crust'; so W., but the word does not seem to occur elsewhere in this sense.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 9. 4. 2.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. iv. 6-8

measure, and put down the price on the spot whence they have taken the wares, and then the priest comes and, having taken the third part of the price for the god, leaves the rest of it where it was, and this remains safe for the owners until they come and claim it.

Others report that the tree which produces the frankincense is like mastich, and its fruit is like the fruit of that tree, but the leaf is reddish: also that the frankincense derived from young trees is whiter and less fragrant, while that derived from those which have passed their prime is yellower and more fragrant; also that the tree which produces myrrh is like the terebinth, but rougher and more thorny; that the leaf is somewhat rounder, and that, if one chews it, it resembles that of the terebinth in taste; also that of myrrh-trees too those that are past their prime give more fragrant myrrh.

<sup>1</sup> Both trees, it is said, grow in the same region; the soil is clayey<sup>2</sup> and caked,<sup>3</sup> and spring waters are scarce. Now these reports are contradictory to <sup>4</sup>that which says that the country is subject to snow and rain and sends forth rivers. However others make the statement<sup>5</sup> that the tree is like the terebinth; in fact some say that it is the same tree; for that logs of it were brought to Antigonus by the Arabs who brought the frankincense down to the sea, and that these did not differ at all from logs of terebinth.<sup>6</sup> However these informants were guilty

<sup>5</sup> i.e. the statement quoted of the myrrh-tree, §7. The 'tree' is here the *λιβανωτός*, but these authorities did not distinguish it from the myrrh-tree. See below.

<sup>6</sup> *τῶν* conj. Sch.; *τῶ* U<sup>l</sup>ld.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- ἕτερον ἀγνόνημα προσηγνόνουν· ᾤοντο γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ δένδρου τόν τε λιβανωτὸν γίνεσθαι καὶ τὴν  
 9 σμύρναν· διόπερ ἐκεῖνος ὁ λόγος πιθανώτερος ὁ παρὰ τῶν ἀναπλευσάντων ἐξ Ἡρώων πόλεως· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ ὑπὲρ Σάρδεων πεφυκὸς τοῦ λιβανωτοῦ δένδρον ἐν ἱερῷ τινι δαφνοειδὲς ἔχει τὸ φύλλον, εἴ τι δεῖ σταθμᾶσθαι τοῦτο· ὁ λιβανωτὸς δ' ἔχει, καὶ ὁ ἐκ τοῦ στελέχους καὶ ὁ ἐκ τῶν ἀκρεμῶνων, ὁμοίως καὶ τῇ ὄψει καὶ τῇ ὁσμῇ θυμιώμενος τῷ ἄλλῳ λιβανωτῷ. πέφυκε δὲ τοῦτο μόνον τὸ δένδρον οὐδεμιᾶς τυγχάνειν <θεραπείας>.
- 10 Ἐνιοὶ δὲ λέγουσιν ὡς πλείων μὲν ὁ λιβανωτὸς ἐν τῇ Ἀραβίᾳ γίνεται, καλλίων δὲ ἐν ταῖς ἐπικειμέναις νήσοις ὧν ἐπάρχουσιν· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ καὶ σχηματοποιεῖν ἐπὶ τῶν δένδρων οἷον ἂν θέλωσι· καὶ τάχα τοῦτό γε οὐκ ἀπίθανον· ἐνδέχεται <γὰρ> ὁποῖαν ἂν βούλωνται ποιεῖν τὴν ἐντομήν. εἰσὶ δὲ τινες καὶ μεγάλοι σφόδρα τῶν χόνδρων, ὥστ' εἶναι τῷ μὲν ὄγκῳ χειροπληθιαίους σταθμῷ δὲ πλεόν ἢ τρίτον μέρος μνᾶς. ἀργὸς δὲ κομίζεται πᾶς ὁ λιβανωτὸς, ὅμοιος δὲ τῇ προσόψει φλοιῷ. τῆς σμύρνης δὲ ἡ μὲν στακτὴ ἡ δὲ πλαστή· δοκιμάζεται δ' ἡ μὲν ἀμείνων τῇ γεύσει, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης τὴν ὁμόχρων λαμβάνουσι. περὶ μὲν οὖν λιβανωτοῦ καὶ σμύρνης σχεδὸν τοσαῦτα ἀκηκόαμεν ἄχρι γε τοῦ νῦν.

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 15. 57 ; cf. 16. 135.

<sup>2</sup> δ' ἔχει conj W ; διέταται P<sub>2</sub>Ald ; om. H.

<sup>3</sup> θεραπείας add. Sch. from G ; οὐδεμιᾶς τυγχάνειν UMAld. ; οὐ μιᾶς τυγχάνειν P<sub>2</sub>. But there is no sign of a lacuna in the MSS., and οὐδεμιᾶς is probably corrupt, as W. suggests. οὐδε θερ. is inconsistent with 9. 4. 2.

<sup>4</sup> πλείων conj. W. ; ἡδίων P<sub>2</sub>Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. IV. 8-10

of a further more important piece of ignorance ; for they believed that the frankincense and the myrrh were produced by the same tree. Wherefore the account derived from those who sailed from the city of Heroes is more to be believed ; <sup>1</sup> in fact the frankincense-tree which grows above Sardes in a certain sacred precinct has <sup>2</sup> a leaf like that of bay, if we may judge at all by this ; and the frankincense derived both from its stem and its branches is like in appearance and in smell, when it is burnt as incense, to other frankincense. This is the only tree which can never be cultivated.<sup>3</sup>

Some say that the frankincense-tree is more abundant<sup>4</sup> in Arabia, but finer in the adjacent islands <sup>5</sup> over which the Arabians bear rule ; <sup>6</sup> for there it is said that they mould the gum on the trees to any shape that they please. And perhaps this is not incredible, since it is possible to make any kind of incision that they like. Some of the lumps<sup>7</sup> of gum are very large, so that one is large enough in bulk to fill the hand and in weight is more than a third of a pound. All frankincense is gathered in the rough and is like bark in appearance. Myrrh<sup>8</sup> is either ' fluid ' <sup>9</sup> (myrrh-oil) or ' solid ' (agglutinated). That of better quality is tested by its taste, and of this they select that which is of uniform colour.<sup>10</sup> Now of frankincense and myrrh these are about all the facts that have come to our notice at present.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 12. 60.

<sup>6</sup> ἐπαρχουσιν conj. Coraës ; ἐνυπαρχουσι P<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>7</sup> τῶν χόνδρων conj. Sch. : τῶ χόνδρῳ P<sub>2</sub>Ald.

<sup>8</sup> i e. here the commodity so called.

<sup>9</sup> cf. *Odor*. 29.

<sup>10</sup> ὁμόχρων conj. Sch. ; ὁμόχρω UM ; ὁμόχρουν Ald. ; τὴν ἑτέραν καταλαμβάνουσι P<sub>2</sub>.

## THEOPHRASTUS

V. Περὶ δὲ κιναμώμου καὶ κασίας τάδε λέγουσι· θάμνους μὲν ἀμφότερα ταύτ' εἶναι οὐ μεγάλους ἀλλ' ἡλίκοις ἄγνου, πολυκλάδους δὲ καὶ ξυλῳδοις. ὅταν δὲ ἐκκόψωσιν, ὅλον τὸ κινάμωμον διαιρεῖν εἰς πέντε μέρη· τούτων δὲ τὸ πρῶτον πρὸς τοῖς βλαστοῖς βέλτιστον εἶναι, ὃ τεμνεται σπιθαμιαῖον ἢ μικρῷ μείζον· ἐπόμενον δὲ τὸ δεύτερον, ὃ καὶ τῇ τομῇ ἔλαττον· εἴτα τὸ τρίτον καὶ τέταρτον· ἔσχατον δὲ τὸ χεῖριστον τὸ πρὸς τῇ ῥίζῃ· φλοιὸν γὰρ ἐλάχιστον ἔχειν· χρήσιμος δὲ οὗτος, οὐ τὸ ξύλον· δι' ὃ καὶ τὸ ἀκροφυῆς κράτιστον, πλείστον γὰρ ἔχειν καὶ τὸν φλοιόν. οἱ μὲν οὕτω λέγουσιν.

- 2 Ἄλλοι δὲ θαμνώδες μὲν καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον φρυγανῳδες εἶναί φασιν· δύο δ' αὐτοῦ γένη, τὸ μὲν μέλαν τὸ δὲ λευκόν. λέγεται δὲ τις καὶ μῦθος ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ· φύεσθαι μὲν γὰρ φασιν ἐν φάραγξιν, ἐν ταύταις δ' ὄφεις εἶναι πολλοὺς δῆγμα θανάσιμον ἔχοντας, πρὸς οὓς φραζάμενοι τὰς χεῖρας καὶ τοὺς πόδας καταβαίνουσι καὶ συλλέγουσιν, εἴθ' ὅταν ἐξενέγκωσι διελόντες τρία μέρη διακληροῦνται πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον, καὶ ἦν ἂν λάχῃ ὁ ἥλιος καταλείπουσιν· ἀπιόντες δ' εὐθὺς ὁρᾶν φασιν καιομένην ταύτην· οὗτος μὲν οὖν τῷ ὄντι μῦθος.
- 3 Τὴν δὲ κασίαν φασὶ τὰς μὲν ῥάβδους παχυτέρας ἔχειν, ἰνώδεις δὲ σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ εἶναι περιφλεῦσαι· χρήσιμον δὲ καὶ ταύτης τὸν φλοιόν.

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 12. 85-94.

<sup>2</sup> A similar tale is told of frankincense by Herodotus (3. 107), who has an equally surprising tale about cinnamon (3. 111).

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. v. 1-3

*Of cinnamon and cassia : various accounts.*

V. <sup>1</sup> Of cinnamon and cassia the following account is given : both are shrubs, it is said, and not of large size, but of the same size as bushes of chaste-tree, with many branches and woody. When they cut down the whole cinnamon-tree, they divide it into five parts ; of these the first is that which grows next the branches and this is the best : this is cut in lengths a span long or a little longer ; next comes the second kind, which is cut in shorter lengths ; then come the third and the fourth, and last the least valuable wood, which grows next the root ; for this has least bark, and it is the bark and not the wood which is serviceable ; wherefore the part which grows high up the tree is the best, since it has the most bark. Such is the account given by some.

Others say that cinnamon is shrubby or rather like an under-shrub ; and that there are two kinds, one black, the other white. <sup>2</sup> And there is also a tale told about it ; they say that it grows in deep glens, and that in these there are numerous snakes which have a deadly bite ; against these they protect their hands and feet before they go down into the glens, and then, when they have brought up the cinnamon, they divide it in three parts and draw lots for it with the sun ; and whatever portion falls to the lot of the sun they leave behind ; and they say that, as soon as they leave the spot, they see this take fire. Now this is sheer fable.

<sup>3</sup> Cassia, they say, has stouter branches, which are very fibrous and difficult to strip of the bark <sup>4</sup> ; and it is the bark of this tree also which is serviceable.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 12. 95-97.

<sup>4</sup> περιφλοῖσαι H. ; περιφλεῦσαι UMP, Ald. cf. *de igne* 72.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὅταν οὖν τέμνωσι τὰς ῥάβδους, κατακόπτειν ὥς διδάκτυλα τὸ μῆκος ἢ μικρῷ μείζω, ταῦτα δ' εἰς νεόδωρον βύρσαν καταρράπτειν· εἴτ' ἐκ ταύτης καὶ τῶν ξύλων σηπομένων σκωλήκια γίνεσθαι, ἃ τὸ μὲν ξύλον κατεσθίει, τοῦ φλοιοῦ δ' οὐχ ἄπτεται διὰ τὴν πικρότητα καὶ δριμύτητα τῆς ὀσμῆς. καὶ περὶ μὲν κασίας καὶ κινναμώμου τοσαῦτα λέγεται.

- VI. Τὸ δὲ βάλσαμον γίνεται μὲν ἐν τῷ αὐλῶνι τῷ περὶ Συρίαν. παραδείσους δ' εἶναί φασι δύο μόνους, τὸν μὲν ὅσον εἴκοσι πλέθρων τὸν δ' ἕτερον πολλῷ ἐλάττονα. τὸ δὲ δένδρον μέγεθος μὲν ἡλίκον ῥόα μεγάλη πολύκλαδον δὲ σφόδρα· φύλλον δὲ ἔχειν ὅμοιον πηγάνῳ, πλὴν ἔκλευκον, αἰείφυλλον δὲ εἶναι· καρπὸν δὲ παρόμοιον τῇ τερμίνθῳ καὶ μεγέθει καὶ σχήματι καὶ χρώματι· εὐῶδες σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο καὶ μᾶλλον τοῦ δακρύου.
- 2 Τὸ δὲ δάκρυον ἀπὸ ἐντομῆς συλλέγειν, ἐντέμνειν δὲ ὄνυξι σιδηροῖς ὑπὸ τὸ ἄστρον, ὅταν μάλιστα πνίγη ὦσι, καὶ τὰ στελέχη καὶ τὰ ἄνω. τὴν δὲ συλλογὴν ὅλον τὸ θέρος ποιεῖσθαι· οὐκ εἶναι δὲ πολὺ τὸ ῥέον, ἀλλ' ἐν ἡμέρᾳ τὸν ἄνδρα συλλέγειν ὅσον κόγχην· τὴν δ' ὀσμὴν διαφέρουσιν καὶ πολλήν, ὥστε ἀπὸ μικροῦ πολὺν ἐφικνεῖσθαι τόπον. ἀλλ' οὐ φοιτᾶν ἐνταῦθα ἄκρατον ἀλλὰ τὸ συνηγμένον κεκραμένον· πολλὴν γὰρ δέχεσθαι

<sup>1</sup> νεόδωρον conj. Sch.; νεόδωρον P<sub>2</sub>Ald.    <sup>2</sup> Plin. 12 111-123

<sup>3</sup> εὐῶδες . . . τοῦτο P<sub>2</sub>Ald.; εὐώδη . . . τοῦτον W. after Sch.'s conj. But the clause begins without a conjunction, and some

When then they cut off the branches, they chop them up into lengths of about two fingers' breadth or rather more, and these they sew up in raw<sup>1</sup> hide; and then from the leather and the decaying wood little worms are engendered, which devour the wood but do not touch the bark, because it is bitter and has a pungent odour. This is all the information forthcoming about cinnamon and cassia.

*Of balsam of Mecca.*

VI. <sup>2</sup> Balsam of Mecca grows in the valley of Syria. They say that there are only two parks in which it grows, one of about four acres, the other much smaller. The tree is as tall as a good-sized pomegranate and is much branched; it has a leaf like that of rue, but it is pale; and it is evergreen; the fruit is like that of the terebinth in size shape and colour, and this too is very fragrant,<sup>3</sup> indeed more so than the gum.

<sup>4</sup> The gum, they say, is collected by making incisions, which is done with bent pieces of iron at the time of the Dog star, when there is scorching heat; and the incisions are made both in the trunks and in the upper parts of the tree. The collecting goes on throughout the summer; but the quantity which flows is not large; in a day a single man can collect a shell-full<sup>5</sup>; the fragrance is exceeding great and rich, so that that which comes from a small amount is perceived for a wide distance. However it does not reach us in a pure state; what is collected is mixed with other things; for it mixes freely with

words about the *flower* may have dropped out, to which this clause refers; *cf.* however *Odor.* 32.

<sup>4</sup> Diosc. 1. 19.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 12. 117.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κράσιν· καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλάκις εἶναι  
κεκραμένον· εὖοσμα δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τὰ ῥαβδία·  
3 καθαίρειν γὰρ καὶ τῶνδε ἔνεκα καὶ του διαφόρου·  
πωλείσθαι <γὰρ> τίμια. καὶ τὴν ἐργασίαν τὴν  
περὶ τὰ δένδρα σχεδὸν ἐν ταύτῃ αἰτία εἶναι καὶ  
τὴν βροχὴν· βρέχεσθαι γὰρ συνεχῶς. συναιτίαν  
δὲ δοκεῖν εἶναι τοῦ μὴ μεγάλα γίνεσθαι τὰ δένδρα  
καὶ τὴν τῶν ῥαβδίων τομήν. διὰ γὰρ τὸ πολλά-  
κις ἐπικείρεσθαι ῥάβδους ἀφίεναι καὶ οὐκ εἰς ἓν  
ἐκτείνειν τὴν ὀρμήν.

4 \* Ἀγριον δὲ οὐδὲν εἶναι βάλαμον οὐδαμοῦ· γί-  
νεσθαι δὲ ἐκ μὲν τοῦ μείζονος παραδείσου ἀγγεί-  
δια δώδεκα ὅσον ἡμιχοαῖα, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἐτέρου δύο  
μόνον· πωλείσθαι δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄκρατον δις πρὸς  
ἀργύριον τὸ δ' ἄλλο κατὰ λόγον τῆς μίξεως· καὶ  
τοῦτο μὲν διαφέρον τι φαίνεται κατὰ τὴν εὖοσ-  
μίαν.

VII. Ὁ δὲ κάλαμος γίνεται καὶ ὁ σχοῖνος ὑπερ-  
βάλλοντι τὸν Λίβανον μεταξὺ τοῦ τε Λιβάνου  
καὶ ἄλλου τινὸς ὅρους μικροῦ ἐν τῷ αὐλωνίσκῳ  
τούτῳ, καὶ οὐχ ὥς τινὲς φασὶ τοῦ Ἀντιλιβάνου· ὁ  
γὰρ Ἀντιλίβανος μακρὰν ἀπέχει τοῦ Λιβάνου  
καὶ μεταξὺ τούτων ἐστὶν ὃν αὐλῶνα καλοῦσι πε-  
δίον πολὺ καὶ καλόν. ὅπου δὲ ὁ κάλαμος καὶ ὁ  
σχοῖνος φύεται λίμνη μεγάλη τυγχάνει, πρὸς  
ταύτην δὲ ἐν τῷ ἔλει τῷ ἀνεξηραμμένῳ πεφύκασι·

---

<sup>1</sup> του I conj. ; τοῦ MSS. G's rendering shews that the explanation of the 'different reason' (i.e. to strengthen the tree) has dropped out of our texts.      <sup>2</sup> γὰρ add. Sch.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VI. 2-VII. 1

other things; and what is known in Hellas is generally mixed with something else. The boughs are also very fragrant. In fact it is on account of these boughs, they say, that the tree is pruned (as well as for a different reason<sup>1</sup>), since<sup>2</sup> the boughs cut off can be sold for a good price. In fact the culture of the trees has the same motive<sup>3</sup> as the irrigation (for they are constantly irrigated). And the cutting of the boughs seems likewise to be partly the reason why the trees do not grow tall; for, since they are often cut about, they send out branches instead of putting out all their energy in one direction.

Balsam is said not to grow wild anywhere. From the larger park are obtained twelve vessels containing each about three pints, from the other only two such vessels; the pure gum sells for twice its weight in silver, the mixed sort at a price proportionate to its purity. Balsam then appears to be of exceptional fragrance.

*Of other aromatic plants—all oriental, except the iris.*

VII. <sup>4</sup> Sweet-flag and ginger-grass grow beyond the Libanus between that range and another small range, in the depression thus formed; and not, as some say, between Libanus and Anti-Libanus. For Anti-Libanus is a long way from Libanus, and between them is a wide fair plain called 'The Valley.' But, where the sweet-flag and ginger-grass grow, there is a large lake,<sup>5</sup> and they grow near it in the dried up marshes, covering an extent

<sup>3</sup> The 'motive' is the production of boughs. ἐν ταύτῃ αἰτίᾳ I conj.; ταύτην αἰτίαν UMP, Ald.; ἐν ταύτῃ αἰτίᾳ conj. W.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 12. 104 and 105.

<sup>5</sup> cf. C.P. 6. 18. 2.



## THEOPHRASTUS

τοπον δὲ ἔχουσι πλείον ἢ τριάκοντα σταδίωv. οὐκ ὄξουσι δὲ χλωροὶ ἀλλὰ ξηρανθέντες, τῇ προσόψει δὲ οὐδὲν διαφέρουσι τῶν ἄλλων· εἰσβάλλουσι δ' εἰς τὸν τόπον εὐθύς ὅσμη προσ-  
 2 βάλλει· οὐ μὴν πορρωτέρω γε ἢ ἀποπνοὴ γίνεται, καθάπερ τινὲς φασι, ταῖς προσφερομέναις ναυσὶ πρὸς τὴν χώραν· καὶ γὰρ ὁ τόπος οὗτος ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀπέχει πλείους ἢ ἑκατὸν πεντήκοντα σταδίους· ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ Ἀραβίᾳ τὴν ἀποπνοὴν εἶναι φασι τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς χώρας εὐοσμον.

Ἐν μὲν οὖν Συρίᾳ τὰ περιττὰ τῇ ὁσμῇ σχεδὸν ταύτ' ἐστίν· ἡ γὰρ χαλβάνη βαρύτερον καὶ μᾶλλον φαρμακῶδες· ἐπεὶ καὶ αὕτη γίνεται περὶ Συρίαν ἐκ τοῦ πανάκου καλουμένου. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα τὰ εὐοσμα οἷς πρὸς τὰ ἀρώματα χρῶνται, τὰ μὲν ἐξ Ἰνδῶν κομίζεται κακεῖθεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν καταπέμπεται, τὰ δ' ἐξ Ἀραβίας, οἷον πρὸς τῷ κιναμώμῳ καὶ τῇ κασίᾳ καὶ κώμακον· ἕτερον δ' εἶναι τὸ κώμακον καρπὸν· τὸ δ' ἕτερον παραμίσγουσιν εἰς τὰ σπουδαιότατα τῶν μύρων. τὸ δὲ καρδάμωμον καὶ ἄμωμον οἱ μὲν ἐκ Μηδείας, οἱ δ' ἐξ Ἰνδῶν καὶ ταῦτα καὶ τὴν νάρδον καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἢ τὰ πλείστα.

3 Οἷς μὲν οὖν εἰς τὰ ἀρώματα χρῶνται σχεδὸν τάδε ἐστί· κασία κινάμωμον καρδάμωμον νάρδος ναῖρον βάλσαμον ἀσπάλαθος στύραξ ἱρίς νάρθη

<sup>1</sup> οὐκ ὄξουσι conj. Guilandinus, cf. *C.P.* 6. 14. 8; οὐ δοκοῦσι *P<sub>2</sub>*Ald H.

<sup>2</sup> cf. *C.P.* 6. 18. 1. τῶν ἄλλων: sc. καδάμων καὶ σχοίνων.

<sup>3</sup> προσφερομέναις ναυσὶ πρὸς conj. Scal.; προσφ. εἶναι πρὸς *P<sub>2</sub>*Ald.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 9. 9. 2 n. 'The plant,' i.e. one of the plants so called.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 12. 135; cf. 13. 18.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VII. 1-3

of more than thirty furlongs. They have no fragrance<sup>1</sup> when they are green, but only when they are dried, and in appearance they do not differ<sup>2</sup> from ordinary reeds and rushes; but, as you approach the spot, immediately a sweet smell strikes you. However it is not true, as some say, that the fragrance is wafted to ships approaching<sup>3</sup> the country; for indeed this district is more than 150 furlongs from the sea. However it is said that in Arabia the breezes wafted from the land are fragrant.

Such then are the plants in Syria which have remarkable fragrance. For that of *khalbane* is more oppressive and somewhat medicinal; <sup>4</sup>for this perfume also is produced in Syria from the plant called all-heal. As to all the other fragrant plants used for aromatic odours, they come partly from India whence they are sent over sea, and partly from Arabia, for instance, *komakon*<sup>5</sup>—as well as cinnamon and cassia. The fruit called *komakon* is said to be distinct<sup>6</sup> from this; the *komakon* of which we are speaking is a perfume which they mix with the choicest unguents. Cardamom and Nepaul cardamom some say come from Media; others say that these come from India, as well as spikenard and most, if not all, of the other species.

Now this is a general list of the plants used for perfumes:—cassia cinnamon cardamom spikenard *nairon* balsam of Mecca *aspalathos* storax iris *narte*

<sup>1</sup> *εἶναι* has no government, and W. considers the passage corrupt. Comparison of Plin. *l.c.* suggests that the original text may have been something like this: τὸ κόμακον καρπὸν ὄν· τὸν δὲ χυλὸν κ.τ.λ., i.e. 'komakon is of different character from these, being a fruit, whose juice—' Plin. calls κ. a kind of cinnamon.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κόστος πάνακες κρόκος σμύρνα κύπειρον σχοῖνος  
κάλαμος ἀμάρακον λωτὸς ἄννητος. τούτων δὲ τὰ  
μὲν ρίζαι τὰ δὲ φλοιοὶ τὰ δὲ κλώνες τὰ δὲ ξύλα  
τὰ δὲ σπέρματα τὰ δὲ δάκρυα τὰ δὲ ἄνθη. καὶ  
τὰ μὲν πολλαχοῦ γίνεται, τὰ δὲ περιττότατα καὶ  
εὐοδμότατα πάντα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν  
ἀλεεινῶν τόπων. ἐκ γὰρ αὐτῆς Εὐρώπης οὐδέν  
ἐστὶν ἔξω τῆς Ἰριδος.

- 4 Αὕτη δ' ἀρίστη ἐν Ἰλλυριοῖς, οὐκ ἐν τῇ πρὸς  
θάλατταν χώρα, ἀλλ' ἐν τῇ ἀνακεχωρηκυῖα κει-  
μένη δὲ μᾶλλον πρὸς ἄρκτον. τόποι δὲ τόπων  
διαφέρουσιν ἐν οἷς ἀμείνων· ἐργασία δὲ περὶ αὐ-  
τὴν οὐδεμία πλὴν τοῦ περικαθήραντα ἀναξηρᾶναι.

Τὰ γὰρ ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ φυόμενα ρίζια, καθάπερ  
τό τε τῇ νάρδῳ προσεμφερῇ τὴν ὁσμὴν ἔχον καὶ  
ἕτερ' ἄττα, μικράν τινα καὶ ἀσθενῇ τὴν εὐωδίαν  
ἔχει. καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν εὐόσμων ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον  
εἰρήσθω.

VIII. Περὶ δὲ τῶν ὀπῶν ὅσα μὴ πρότερον εἰ-  
ρηται, λέγω δ' οἶον εἴ τινες φαρμακώδεις ἢ καὶ  
ἄλλας ἔχουσι δυνάμεις, πειρατέον ὁμοίως εἰπεῖν·  
ἅμα δὲ καὶ περὶ ριζῶν, καὶ γὰρ τῶν ὀπῶν τινες ἐκ  
τούτων καὶ χωρὶς αὐταὶ καθ' αὐτὰς πολλὰς καὶ  
παντοίας ἔχουσι δυνάμεις, ὅλως δὲ περὶ πάντων  
φαρμακῶδων, οἶον καρποῦ χυλισμοῦ φύλλων ρι-  
ζῶν πόας· καλοῦσι γὰρ καὶ πόαν ἓνια τῶν φαρ-  
μακῶδων οἱ ριζοτόμοι.

<sup>1</sup> cf. C.P. 6. 14. 8; 6. 18. 12; Plin. 21. 40.

<sup>2</sup> See Index App. (25).

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VII. 3-VIII. 1

*kostos* all-heal saffron-crocus myrrh *kypeiron* ginger-grass sweet-flag sweet marjoram *lotos* dill. Of these it is the roots, bark, branches, wood, seeds, gum or flowers which in different cases yield the perfume. Some of them grow in many places, but the most excellent and most fragrant all come from Asia and sunny regions. From Europe itself comes none of them except the iris.

<sup>1</sup> This is best in Illyria, not in the part near the sea, but in that which is further inland and lies more to the north. In different districts it varies in quality; no special attention is needed, except to scrape the roots clean and dry them.

As for the roots which grow in Thrace, such as one<sup>2</sup> which has a smell like spikenard and certain others, their fragrance is but slight and feeble. Let this suffice for an account of sweet-smelling plants.

*Of the medicinal juices of plants and the collection of them:  
general account.*

VIII. Now we must endeavour to speak in like manner of those juices which have not been mentioned already, I mean, such as are medicinal or have other properties; and at the same time we must speak of roots; for some of the juices are derived from roots, and apart from that roots have in themselves divers properties of all kinds; and in general we must discuss medicinal things of all kinds, as fruit, extracted juice,<sup>3</sup> leaves, roots, 'herbs'; for the herb-diggers call some medicinal things by this name.

<sup>3</sup> *χυλισμοῦ* P<sub>2</sub>Ald.H; *καυλοῦ* conj. W. The list is of the aspects in which the herbalist would regard the plant, not of the parts of the plant.

## THEOPHRASTUS

Τῶν δὲ ῥιζῶν πλείους μὲν εἰσιν αἱ δυνάμεις καὶ πρὸς πλείω· ζητοῦνται δὲ μάλιστα αἱ φαρμακώδεις ὡς χρησιμώταται, διαφέρουσαι τῷ τε μὴ πρὸς ταῦτὰ καὶ τῷ μὴ ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἔχειν τὴν δύναμιν. ὡς δ' οὖν ἐπὶ πᾶν αἱ πλείσται μὲν ἐν αὐταῖς ἔχουσι καὶ τοῖς καρποῖς καὶ τοῖς ὀποῖς, ἔνιαι δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς φύλλοις· τὰς δὲ φυλλώδεις δυνάμεις τὰς πολλὰς σχεδὸν πόας καλοῦσιν, ὥσπερ εἴρηται μικρῷ πρότερον, οἱ ῥιζοτόμοι.

<sup>2</sup> Ὁ μὲν οὖν ὀπισμὸς γίνεται τῶν ὀπιζομένων ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ τοῦ θέρους, τῶν μὲν ἐνισταμένου τῶν δὲ προεληλυθότος. ἡ δὲ ῥιζοτομία γίνεται τινων καὶ ὑπὸ πυροτομίαν καὶ μικρῷ πρότερον, οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ἢ γε πλείων τοῦ μετοπώρου μετ' Ἀρκτοῦρον, ὅταν φυλλορροήσωσιν, ὅσων δὲ καὶ ὁ καρπὸς χρήσιμος, ὅταν ἀμερθῶσι τὸν καρπὸν. ἔστι δὲ ὁ ὀπισμὸς ἢ ἀπὸ τῶν καυλῶν, ὥσπερ τοῦ τιθυμάλλου καὶ τῆς θριδακίνης καὶ σχεδὸν τῶν πλείστων, ἢ ἀπὸ τῶν ῥιζῶν, ἢ τρίτον ἀπὸ τῆς κεφαλῆς, ὥσπερ τῆς μήκωνος· ταύτης γὰρ μόνῃς οὕτω καὶ τοῦτ' ἴδιον αὐτῆς. τῶν μὲν οὖν καὶ αὐτόματος ὁ ὀπὸς

<sup>1</sup> From this point to 9. 19. 4, *γίνεσθαι*, the text is repeated in U, with considerable variations, as a tenth book. Ald. also repeats the first few lines of this passage (down to end of § 1) as a fragment of a tenth book. The two Medicean MSS also repeat 9. 8. 1, τῶν δὲ ῥιζῶν, down to 9. 10. 3, βέλτιστοι δὲ καὶ οἷς, as part of a tenth book. The 'tenth book' readings in each case are distinguished by a \*.

<sup>2</sup> ῥιζῶν: ῥίζα signifies a medicinal plant in general (cf. ῥιζοτόμοι) as well as 'root'; the double sense makes translation of this section awkward: I print it 'root' where it has the wider sense.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VIII. 1-2

<sup>1</sup> The properties of 'roots' <sup>2</sup> are numerous and they have numerous uses; but those which have medicinal virtues are especially sought after, as being the most useful; and they differ in not all being applied to the same <sup>3</sup> purposes and in not all having their virtue in the same parts of them.<sup>4</sup> To speak generally, most 'roots' have it in themselves<sup>5</sup>; or else it is found in the fruits or the juices of the plant; and in some cases in the leaves as well, and it is to the virtues of the leaves in most cases that the herb-diggers refer, when they speak, as has just been said,<sup>6</sup> of 'herbs.'

The collection of the juice from plants from which it is collected is mostly done in summer, in some cases at the beginning of that season, in others when it is well advanced. The digging of roots is done in some cases at the time of wheat-harvest or a little earlier, but the greater part of it in autumn after the rising of Arcturus when the plants have shed their leaves, and, in the case of those whose fruit is serviceable, when they have lost their fruit. The collection of juice is made either from the stalks,<sup>7</sup> as with *tithymallos* (spurge) wild lettuce and the majority of plants, or from the roots, or thirdly from the head, as in the case of the poppy; for this is the only plant which is so treated <sup>8</sup> and this is its peculiarity. In some plants the juice collects of its own accord in

<sup>2</sup> ταῦτά conj Scal. from G; ταῖτα Ald.

<sup>4</sup> After δύναμιν U\*Ald.\* add ὥσπερ εἴρηται μικρῷ πρότερον; omitted here by Sch.: see below. <sup>5</sup> Sc. in the roots.

<sup>6</sup> ὥσπερ . . . πρότερον inserted here by Sch.: see above; ὥσπερ εἴρηται Ald

<sup>7</sup> καυλῶν Vin. Vo. Cod Cas.: so also G; καρπῶν Ald. HM\*.

<sup>8</sup> μόνης οὕτω καὶ conj. W.; μόνης καὶ Ald. H; μόνον οὕτω καὶ M\*.

## THEOPHRASTUS

συνίσταται δακρυώδης τις, ὥσπερ καὶ τῆς τραγα-  
κάνθης· ταύτην γὰρ οὐδὲ τέμνειν ἐστί· τῶν δὲ  
πλείστων ἀπὸ τῆς ἐντομῆς. ὦν ἐνίους μὲν εὐθύς  
εἰς ἀγγεῖα συνάγουσιν, ὥσπερ καὶ τὸν τοῦ τιθυ-  
μάλλου ἢ μηκωνίου, καλοῦσι γὰρ ἀμφοτέρως, καὶ  
ἀπλῶς ὅσα πολύοπα τυγχάνει· τῶν δὲ μὴ πολυό-  
πων ἐρίφ λαμβάνουσιν ὥσπερ καὶ τῆς θριδακίνης.  
Ἐνίων δ' οὐδ' ὀπισμὸς ἀλλ' οἶον χυλισμός  
ἐστίν, ὥσπερ ὅσα κόψαντες ἢ τρίψαντες καὶ ὕδωρ  
ἐπιχέαντες ἀπηθοῦσι καὶ λαμβάνουσι τὴν ὑπό-  
στασιν· ξηρὸς δὲ δῆλον ὅτι καὶ ἐλάττων ὁ χυλὸς  
τούτων. ἔστι δὲ τῶν μὲν ἄλλων ῥιζῶν τὸ χύλισ-  
μα ἀσθενέστερον τοῦ καρποῦ, τοῦ κωνείου δὲ  
ἰσχυρότερον, καὶ τὴν ἀπαλλαγὴν ῥάῳ ποιεῖ καὶ  
θάττω μικρὸν πάνυ καταπότιον δοθέν· ἐνεργό-  
τερον δὲ καὶ εἰς τὰς ἄλλας χρείας. ἰσχυρὸν δὲ  
καὶ τὸ τῆς θαψίας. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα ἀσθενέ-  
στερα. οἱ μὲν οὖν ὀπισμοὶ σχεδὸν τοσαυταχῶς  
γίνονται.

Τῆς δὲ ῥιζοτομίας οὐκ ἔστι τοιαύτη διαφορὰ  
πλὴν ἐν ταῖς ὥραις οἶον θέρους ἢ μετοπώρου, καὶ  
τῷ τάσδε ἢ τάσδε τῶν ῥιζῶν· οἶον τοῦ ἐλλεβόρου  
τὰς κάτω τὰς λεπτάς· τὴν γὰρ ἄνω τὴν παχεῖαν  
τὴν κεφαλῶδη φασὶν ἀχρεῖον εἶναι καὶ διδόναι

<sup>1</sup> cf. Diosc. 2. 136 ; Plin. 20. 58

<sup>2</sup> cf. Diosc. 3. 7.

<sup>3</sup> ῥάῳ conj. Sch.; ῥαιο U; ῥαδίως M<sup>a</sup> Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VIII. 2-4

the form of a sort of "gum, as with tragacanth; for incision of this plant cannot be made; but in most it is obtained by incision. In some cases the juice is collected straight into vessels, for instance that of *lithymallos* (spurge) or *mekonion* (for the plant has both names) and in general the juice of specially juicy plants is so collected. But that of those which do not yield abundant juice is taken with a piece of wool, as also that of wild lettuce.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> In some cases there can be no collection of juice, but there is a sort of extraction of it, for instance in the case of plants which are cut down or bruised; they then pour water over them and strain off the fluid, keeping the sediment; but it is plain that in these cases the juice obtained is dry and less copious. In most 'roots' the juice thus extracted is less powerful than that of the fruit, but in hemlock it is stronger and it causes an easier<sup>3</sup> and speedier<sup>4</sup> death even when administered in a quite small pill; and it is also more effective for other uses. <sup>5</sup> That of *thapsia* is also powerful, while all the rest are less so. Such then is a general account of the various ways of obtaining the juices of plants.

*Of the cutting of roots for medicinal purposes, and of certain superstitious connected therewith.*

As to cutting of the roots there is no such diversity of practice, except as to the season, which may be summer or autumn, and as to the particular roots selected. <sup>6</sup> Thus in hellebore the slender lower roots are taken, for they say that the thick upper part<sup>7</sup> which forms a sort of head is useless, and that

<sup>1</sup> θάττω conj. Sch.; ῥάττω UM; θάττων U\*M\*Ald.

<sup>5</sup> cf. Plin. 13. 125. <sup>6</sup> Plin. 25. 53. <sup>7</sup> i.e. rhizome.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ταῖς κυσὶν ὅταν βούλωνται καθαίρειν. καὶ ἐφ' ἐτέρων δέ τινων τοιαύτας λέγουσι διαφοράς.

- 5 Ἔτι δὲ ὅσα οἱ φαρμακοπῶλαι καὶ οἱ ῥιζοτόμοι τὰ μὲν ἴσως οἰκείως τὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπιτραγωδοῦντες λέγουσι. κελεύουσι γὰρ τὰς μὲν κατ' ἄνεμον ἱσταμένους τέμνειν, ὥσπερ ἐτέρας τέ τινας καὶ τὴν θαψίαν, ἀλειψάμενον λίπα· τὸ γὰρ σῶμα ἀνοιδεῖν ἐὰν ἐξ ἐναντίας. κατ' ἄνεμον δὲ καὶ τοῦ κυνοσβάτου τὸν καρπὸν συλλέγειν, εἰ δὲ μὴ κίνδυνον εἶναι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. τὰς δὲ νύκτωρ τὰς δὲ μεθ' ἡμέραν, ἐνίας δὲ πρὶν τὸν ἥλιον ἐπιβάλλειν, οἶον καὶ τὸ καλούμενον κλύμενον.

- 6 Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν καὶ τὰ παραπλήσια τούτοις τάχ' ἂν οὐκ ἄλλοτρίως δόξειεν λέγειν· ἐπισινεῖς γάρ τινων αἱ δυνάμεις· ἐξάπτειν γάρ φασιν ὥσπερ πῦρ καὶ κατακαίειν· ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ ἐλλέβορος ταχὺ καρηβαρεῖν ποιεῖ, καὶ οὐ δύνανται πολὺν χρόνον ὀρύττειν, δι' ὃ καὶ προεσθίουσι σκόροδα καὶ ἄκρατον ἐπιπίνουσιν. ἀλλὰ τὰ τοιαῦτα ὥσπερ ἐπίθετα καὶ πόρρωθεν, οἶον τὴν παιωνίαν, οἱ δὲ γλυκυσίδην καλοῦσι, νύκτωρ κελεύουσιν ὀρύττειν· ἐὰν γὰρ ἡμέρας καὶ ὀφθῇ τις ὑπὸ δρυοκολάπτου τὸν μὲν καρπὸν ἀπολέγων κινδυνεύειν τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς, τὴν δὲ ῥίζαν τέμνων ἐκπίπτειν τὴν ἔδραν.

---

<sup>1</sup> ἔτι δὲ ὅσα conj. Sch. from (†; ἔτι δ' ὡς U\*; ἔτι δὲ ὡς Ald H; ἐστι δὲ ὡς M\*.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VIII. 4-6

it is only given to dogs when it is desired to purge them. And in certain other plants also such differences are mentioned.

Further we may<sup>1</sup> add statements made by druggists and herb-diggers, which in some cases may be to the point, but in others contain exaggeration. Thus they enjoin that in cutting some roots one should stand to windward,—for instance, in cutting *thapsia* among others, and that one should first anoint oneself with oil,<sup>2</sup> for that one's body will swell up if one stands the other way. Also that the fruit of the wild rose must be gathered standing to windward, since otherwise there is danger to the eyes. Also that some roots should be gathered at night, others by day, and some before the sun strikes on them, for instance those of the plant called honeysuckle.<sup>3</sup>

These and similar remarks may well seem to be not off the point, for the properties of these plants are hurtful; they take hold, it is said, like fire and burn; <sup>4</sup> for hellebore too soon makes the head heavy, and men cannot go on digging it up for long; wherefore they first eat garlic and take a draught of neat wine therewith. On the other hand the following ideas may be considered far-fetched and irrelevant; <sup>5</sup> for instance they say that the peony, which some call *glykyside*, should be dug up at night, for, if a man does it in the day-time and is observed by a woodpecker while he is gathering the fruit, he risks the loss of his eyesight; and, if he is cutting the root at the time, he gets *prolapsus ani*.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 13. 124; Diosc. 4. 153.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 9. 18. 6.      <sup>4</sup> Plin. 25. 50.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 27. 85; 25. 29.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 7 Φυλάττεσθαι δὲ καὶ τὴν κενταυρίδα τέμνοντα  
 τριόρχην, ὅπως ἂν ἄτρωτος ἀπέλθῃ. καὶ ἄλλας  
 δέ τινας αἰτίας. τὸ δ' ἐπευχόμενον τέμνειν οὐθὲν  
 ἴσως ἄτοπον· ἀλλ' εἴ τι καὶ ἄλλο προστιθέασιν,  
 οἶον ὅταν τὸ πάνακες τὸ Ἀσκληπίειον καλούμενον·  
 ἀντεμβάλλειν γὰρ τῇ γῇ παγκαρπίαν <καὶ>  
 μελιττοῦταν· ὅταν δὲ τὴν ξίριν, τριμήνου μελιτ-  
 τούτας ἀντεμβάλλειν μισθόν· τέμνειν δὲ ἀμφήκει  
 ξίφει περιγράψαντα εἰς τρίς· καὶ ὅτι ἂν πρῶτον  
 τμηθῇ μετέωρον ἔχειν εἴθ' οὕτω τὸ ἕτερον τέμνειν.
- 8 Καὶ ἄλλα δὲ τοιαῦτα πλείω. περιγράφειν δὲ  
 καὶ τὸν μανδραγόραν εἰς τρίς ξίφει, τέμνειν δὲ  
 πρὸς ἐσπέραν βλέποντα. τὸν δ' ἕτερον κύκλῳ  
 περιορχεῖσθαι καὶ λέγειν ὡς πλείστα περὶ ἀφ-  
 ροδισίων. τοῦτο δ' ὅμοιον ἔοικε τῷ περὶ τοῦ  
 κυμίνου λεγομένῳ κατὰ τὴν βλασφημίαν ὅταν  
 σπείρωσι. περιγράφειν δὲ καὶ τὸν ἐλλέβορον  
 τὸν μέλανα καὶ τέμνειν ἰστάμενον πρὸς ἔω καὶ  
 κατευχόμενον· ἀετὸν δὲ φυλάττεσθαι καὶ ἐκ  
 δεξιᾶς καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς· κίνδυνον γὰρ εἶναι τοῖς  
 τέμνουσιν, ἐάνπερ ἐγγὺς ἐπιγένηται ὁ ἀετός, ἀπο-

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 25. 69 adds that this plant was therefore also called  
 τριόρχις. cf. Diosc. 4. 162.

<sup>2</sup> καὶ . . . αἰτίας U\*M\* ; ? καὶ ἄλλα δὲ τοιαῦτα W.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 25. 30 and 31.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VIII. 7-8

It is also said that, while cutting feverwort<sup>1</sup> one must beware of the buzzard-hawk, if one wishes to come off unhurt; and other reasons for caution<sup>2</sup> are also given. That one should be bidden to pray while cutting is not perhaps unreasonable, but the additions made to this injunction are absurd; for instance as to cutting the kind of all-heal which is called that of Asklepios; <sup>3</sup> for then it is said that one should put in the ground in its place an offering made of all kinds of fruits and a cake; and that, when one is cutting gladwyn,<sup>4</sup> one should put in its place to pay for it cakes of meal from spring-sown wheat,<sup>5</sup> and that one should cut it with a two-edged sword, first making a circle round it three times,<sup>6</sup> and that the piece first cut must be held up in the air while the rest is being cut.

And many similar notions are mentioned. Thus it is said that one should draw three circles round mandrake with a sword, and cut it with one's face towards the west; and at the cutting of the second piece one should dance round the plant and say as many things as possible about the mysteries of love. (This seems to be like the direction given about cummin,<sup>7</sup> that one should utter curses at the time of sowing.) One should also, it is said, draw a circle round the black hellebore and cut it standing towards the east and saying prayers, and one should look out for an eagle both on the right and on the left; for that there is danger to those that cut, if your eagle should come near, that

<sup>1</sup> cf. Plin. 21. 42, who read *Ipiv*. cf. Diosc. 4. 22, where *ξυρίς* is called a kind of *Ipis*; so also Plin. 21. 142.

<sup>2</sup> *τριμήνου* conj. Salm.; *τριμήνου* M\*Ald.H.

<sup>3</sup> *τρῖς* conj. Sch.; *τρεις* U\*M\*P<sub>2</sub>Ald. So also in next section.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 7. 3. 3.

## THEOPHRASTUS

θνήσκειν ἐνιαυτῷ. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐπιθέτοις ἔοικεν, ὥσπερ εἴρηται. τρόποι δ' οὐκ εἰσὶ τῶν ῥιζοτομιῶν πλὴν οὓς εἵπομεν.

IX. Ἔστι δέ, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, τῶν μὲν πάντα χρήσιμα καὶ ἡ ῥίζα καὶ ὁ καρπὸς καὶ ὁ ὀπός, ὥσπερ ἄλλων τε καὶ τοῦ πανάκου· τῶν δὲ ἡ ῥίζα καὶ ὁ ὀπός, οἷον τῆς σκαμμωνίας καὶ τοῦ κυκλαμίνου καὶ τῆς θαψίας καὶ ἐτέρων, καθάπερ καὶ τοῦ μανδραγόρου· τοῦ γὰρ μανδραγόρου τὸ φύλλον χρήσιμον εἶναι φασὶ πρὸς τὰ ἔλκη μετ' ἀλφίτου, τὴν δὲ ῥίζαν πρὸς ἐρυσίπελας ξυσθεῖσάν τε καὶ ὄξει δευθεῖσαν καὶ πρὸς τὰ ποδαγρικὰ καὶ πρὸς ὕπνον καὶ πρὸς φίλτρα· διδόασιν δ' ἐν οἴνῳ ἢ ὄξει· τέμνουσι δὲ τροχίσκους ὥσπερ ῥαφανίδος καὶ ἐνείραντες ὑπὲρ γλεύκους ἐκρέμασαν ἐπὶ καπνῷ.

- 2 Ὁ δὲ ἐλλέβορος ἐπὶ ταῦτά τῇ τε ῥίζῃ καὶ τῷ καρπῷ χρήσιμος, εἴπερ οἱ ἐν Ἀντικύρῃ, καθάπερ φασί, τῷ καρπῷ καθαίρουσιν· ἔχει δὲ <τὸν> σησαμώδη τοῦτον.

Πλείω δὲ καὶ τοῦ πανάκου τὰ χρήσιμα καὶ οὐ πάντα πρὸς τὰ αὐτά· ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν καρπὸς πρὸς τὰς ἐξαμβλώσεις καὶ τὰς δυσουρίας, ὁ δὲ ὀπὸς ἡ χαλβάνη καλουμένη πρὸς τε τὰς ἐξαμβλώσεις καὶ πρὸς τὰ σπάσματα καὶ τοὺς τοιούτους πόνους, ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τὰ ὦτα καὶ τὰς φωνασκίας·

<sup>1</sup> εἰάνπερ ἐγγὺς ἐπιγένηται conj. W.; εἰάν δὲ ὁ ἐγγὺς μὴ ἀποτέμνη δ' αὐτὸς ἀποθνήσκει ἐνιαυτῷ UMald. Similar confusion with variations in U\*M\*PP<sub>2</sub>: restoration a makeshift. cf. Plin. 25. 50. <sup>2</sup> 9. 8 1.

<sup>3</sup> Diosc. 4. 75; Plin. 26. 104 and 121.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 9. 12. 1.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. VIII. 8-IX. 2

they may die<sup>1</sup> within the year. These notions then seem to be irrelevant, as has been said. There are however no methods of root-cutting besides those which we have mentioned.

*Of the medicinal uses of divers parts of plants.*

IX. As was said,<sup>2</sup> of some plants the root, fruit and juice are all serviceable, as of all-heal among others; of some the root and the juice, as of scammony<sup>3</sup> cyclamen thapsia and others, such as mandrake; for the leaf of this, they say, used with meal, is useful for wounds, and the root for erysipelas, when scraped and steeped in vinegar, and also for gout, for sleeplessness, and for love potions. It is administered in wine or vinegar; they cut little balls of it, as of<sup>4</sup> radishes, and making a string of them hang them up in the smoke over must.

<sup>5</sup> Of hellebore both root and fruit are useful for the same purposes,<sup>6</sup>—if it is true, as is said, that the people of Anticyra use the fruit as a purge; this fruit contains the well-known<sup>7</sup> drug called *sesamodes*.

Various parts of all-heal are also useful, and not all for the same purposes; the fruit is used in cases of miscarriage and for disorders of the bladder, while the juice,<sup>8</sup> which is called *khalbane*, is used in cases of miscarriage and also for sprains and such-like troubles; also for the ears, and to strengthen the

<sup>1</sup> Diosc. 4. 108, 109 and 162.

<sup>2</sup> ταῦτα conj. Sch. from G; ταῦτα U\*M\*Ald.

<sup>3</sup> I have inserted τὸν. cf. 9. 14. 4; Plin. 22. 133; 25. 52 and 64; Diosc. l.c. The drug was actually called *σῆσαμοειδής* or *σῆσαμοειδής*. For the sense of τοῦτον cf. 3. 7. 3; 3. 8. 3 and reff.

<sup>8</sup> This seems to be a mistake. cf. 9. 7. 2; Diosc. 3. 83; Plin. 12. 126.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἡ δὲ ῥίζα πρὸς τε τοὺς τόκους καὶ τὰ γυναικεῖα καὶ πρὸς ὑποζυγίων φύσας· χρησίμη δὲ καὶ πρὸς το ἱρινον μύρον διὰ τὴν εὐωδίαν· ἰσχυρότερον δὲ τὸ σπέρμα τῆς ῥίζης. γίνεται δὲ περὶ Συρίαν καὶ τέμνεται περὶ πυραμητόν.

8 Τοῦ δὲ κυκλαμίνου ἡ μὲν ῥίζα πρὸς τε τὰς ἐκπυήσεις τῶν φλεγμονῶν καὶ πρόσθετον γυναιξὶ καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἔλκη ἐν μέλιτι· ὁ δὲ ὀπὸς πρὸς τὰς ἀπὸ κεφαλῆς καθάρσεις ἐν μέλιτι ἐγγεχόμενος, καὶ πρὸς τὸ μεθύσκειν, ἐὰν ἐν οἴνῳ διαβρέχων διδῶ τις πίνειν. ἀγαθὴν δὲ τὴν ῥίζαν καὶ ὠκυτόκιοι περίαπτον καὶ εἰς φίλτρα· ὅταν δὲ ὀρύξωσι, κατακαίουσιν εἰτ' οἴνῳ δεύσαντες τροχίσκους ποιοῦσιν, ὥσπερ τῆς τρυγὸς ἢ ῥυπτόμεθα.

4 Καὶ τοῦ σικύου δὲ τοῦ ἀγρίου τὴν μὲν ῥίζαν <πρὸς> ἀλφούς καὶ ψώρας βοσκημάτων· τὸ δὲ σπέρμα χυλισθὲν ποιεῖ τὸ ἐλατήριον. συλλέγεται δὲ τοῦ φθινοπώρου· τότε γὰρ βέλτιστον.

5 Τῆς δὲ χαμαίδρυος τὰ μὲν φύλλα πρὸς τὰ ῥήγματα καὶ πρὸς τὰ τραύματα ἐν ἐλαίῳ τριβόμενα καὶ πρὸς τὰ νεμόμενα ἔλκη· τὸν δὲ καρπὸν καθαίρειν χολήν· ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς· πρὸς δὲ τὰ ἄργεμα προσάγειν τὸ φύλλον τρίψαντα ἐν ἐλαίῳ. ἔχει δὲ φύλλα μὲν οἷάπερ δρύς, τὸ δὲ ἀνάστημα τῆς ὄλης ὅσον σπιθαμιαῖον· εὖοσμον δὲ καὶ ἡδύ.

Τὸ μὲν οὖν μὴ πρὸς ταὐτὸ πάντα τὰ μέρη χρήσιμα τυγχάνειν οὐκ ἴσως ἄτοπον· τὸ δὲ τῆς

<sup>1</sup> ἐκπυήσεις conj. Coraës from Plin. 26. 120, *eruptiones*; ἐκπνεύσεις M\*Ald.

<sup>2</sup> Diosc. 2. 164; Plin. 25. 133; 26. 149.

<sup>3</sup> cf. Plin. 23. 63.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. IX. 2 5

voice. The root is used in childbirth, for diseases of women, and for flatulence in beasts of burden. It is also useful in making the iris-perfume because of its fragrance; but the seed is stronger than the root. It grows in Syria and is cut at the time of wheat-harvest.

Of cyclamen the root is used for suppurating<sup>1</sup> boils; also as a pessary for women and, mixed with honey, for dressing wounds; the juice for purgings of the head,<sup>2</sup> for which purpose it is mixed with honey and poured in; it also conduces to drunkenness, if one is given a draught of wine in which it has been steeped. They say also that the root is a good charm for inducing rapid delivery and as a love potion; <sup>3</sup>when they have dug it up, they burn it, and then, having steeped the ashes in wine, make little balls like those made of wine-lees which we use as soap.

<sup>4</sup>Of 'wild cucumber' (squirting cucumber) the root is used for<sup>5</sup> white leprosy and for mange in sheep, while the extracted juice makes the drug called 'the driver.'<sup>6</sup> It is collected in autumn, for then it is best.

Of germander the leaves pounded up in olive-oil are used for fractures and wounds and for spreading sores; the fruit purges bile, and is good also for the eyes; for ulcers<sup>7</sup> in the eye they pound up the leaf in olive-oil before applying it. It has leaves like the oak, but its entire growth is only about a palm high; and it is sweet both to smell and taste.

Now that all parts are not serviceable for the same purpose is perhaps not strange; it is more

<sup>4</sup> Diosc. 4. 150; Plin. 20. 3.      <sup>5</sup> *πρὸς* add. St.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 9. 14. 1 and 2.      <sup>7</sup> cf. 7. 6. 2; Diosc. 3. 98.



## THEOPHRASTUS

αὐτῆς ῥίζης τὸ μὲν ἄνω τὸ δὲ κάτω καθαίρειν θαυμασιώτερον, οἷον καὶ τῆς θαψίας καὶ τῆς ἰσχάδος, οἱ δ' ἄπιον καλοῦσι, καὶ τῆς λιβανωτίδος· ὅτι γὰρ αὐ καὶ κάτω καὶ ἄνω ταῦτά δύναται [καθαίρειν], καθάπερ τὸ ἐλατήριον, οὐθὲν ἄτοπον.

6 Ἐχει δὲ ἡ θαψία φύλλον μὲν ὅμοιον τῷ μαράθῳ πλὴν πλατύτερον καυλὸν δὲ ναρθηκώδη ῥίζαν δὲ λευκίην.

Ἡ δ' ἰσχὰς ἡ ἄπιος φύλλον μὲν ἔχει πηγανῶδες βραχὺ καυλοῦς δ' ἐπιγίους τρεῖς ἡ τέτταρας ῥίζαν δὲ οἶανπερ ὁ ἰσφόδελος πλὴν λεπυριώδη· φιλεῖ δὲ ὀρεινὰ χωρία καὶ κοχλακώδη. συλλέγεται δὲ τοῦ ἥρος. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ἴδιον τῶν εἰρημένων.

X. Ὁ δὲ ἐλλέβορος ὃ τε μέλας καὶ ὁ λευκὸς ὥσπερ ὁμώνυμοι φαίνονται· περὶ δὲ τῆς ὄψεως διαφωνοῦσιν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ὁμοίους εἶναι, πλὴν τῷ χρώματι μόνον διαφέρειν τὴν ῥίζαν τοῦ μὲν λευκὴν τοῦ δὲ μέλαιναν· οἱ δὲ τοῦ μὲν μέλανος τὸ φύλλον δαφνωδες τοῦ δὲ λευκοῦ πρασῶδες, τὰς δὲ ῥίζας ὁμοίας πλὴν τῶν χρωμάτων. οἱ δ' οὖν ὁμοίους λέγοντες τοιάνδε φασὶν εἶναι τὴν μορφήν· καυλὸν μὲν ἀνθερικόδη βραχὺν σφόδρα· φύλλον δὲ πλατύσχιστον, παρόμοιον σφόδρα τῷ τοῦ νάρθηκος, μῆκος δ' ἔχον· εὐθὺ δ' ἐκ τῆς ῥίζης

<sup>1</sup> ὅτι γὰρ conj. W.; ὅσα γὰρ UU\*M\*; τὰ γὰρ M; τὸ γὰρ Ald.

<sup>2</sup> Diosc. 4. 153; Plin. 13. 124.

<sup>3</sup> Diosc. 4. 175.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. IX. 5-X. 1

surprising that part of the same 'root' should purge upwards and another part downwards, as is the case with *thapsia* and *iskhas*—which some call *apios* (spurge)—and with *libanotis*; for<sup>1</sup> it is not strange that on the other hand the same parts should purge both upwards and downwards, as is the case with 'the driver.'

<sup>2</sup> *Thapsia* has a leaf like fennel, but broader, a stalk like that of ferula, and a white root.

<sup>3</sup> *Iskhas* (or *apios*) has a leaf like rue and short, three or four prostrate stems, and a root like that of asphodel, except that it is composed of scales; <sup>4</sup> it loves mountain districts with a gravelly soil. It is collected in spring. Now this account applies only to the above-mentioned plants.

*Of hellebores, the white and the black: their uses and distribution.*

X. <sup>5</sup> The white and the black hellebore appear to have nothing in common except the name. But accounts differ as to the appearance of the plants; some say that the two are alike and differ only in colour, the root of the one being white, of the other black; some however say that the leaf of the 'black' is like that of bay, that of the white like that of the leek, but that the roots are alike except for their respective colours. Now those who say that the two plants are alike describe the appearance<sup>6</sup> as follows:—the stem is like that of asphodel and very short; the leaf has broad divisions, and is extremely like that of ferula, but is long; it is closely attached to the root and

<sup>1</sup> cf. Diosc. 3. 134.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 25. 47-61. See Index. cf. 9. 11. 5 n.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. of the two plants regarded as one; but the text of the following description seems to be hopelessly confused.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἡρτημένον καὶ ἐπιγειόφυλλον· πολύρριζον δ' εὖ μάλα ταῖς λεπταῖς καὶ χρησίμοις.

- 2 Ἄναιρεῖν δὲ τὸν μὲν μέλανα καὶ ἵππους καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὕς, δι' ὃ καὶ οὐδὲν νέμεσθαι τούτων· τὸν δὲ λευκὸν νέμεσθαι τὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἐκ τούτου πρῶτον συνοφθῆναι τὴν δύναμιν καθαιρομένων ἐκείνων· ὠραίος δὲ μετοπώρου, τοῦ δ' ἥρος ἄωρος· ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὴν πυλαίαν οἱ ἐκ τῆς Οἴτης συλλέγουσι· πλείστος γὰρ ἐνταῦθα φύεται καὶ ἄριστος· μοναχοῦ δὲ φύεται τῆς Οἴτης περὶ τὴν Πυράν.

Μίσγεται δὲ πρὸς τὴν πόσιν, ὅπως εὐεμὲς ἦ, τὸ τῆς ἐλλαβορίνης σπέρμα· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ ποάριον.

- 3 Φύεται δὲ ὁ μὲν μέλας πανταχοῦ· καὶ γὰρ ἐν τῇ Βοιωτίᾳ καὶ ἐν Εὐβοίᾳ καὶ παρ' ἄλλοις πολλοῖς· ἄριστος δὲ ὁ ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλικῶνος, καὶ ὅλως τὸ ὄρος εὐφάρμακον. ὁ δὲ λευκὸς ὀλιγαχοῦ· βέλτιστοι δὲ καὶ οἷς χρῶνται μάλιστα τέτταρες ὁ Οἰταῖος ὁ Ποντικὸς ὁ Ἐλεάτης ὁ Μαλιώτης. φασὶ δὲ τὸν Ἐλεάτην ἐν τοῖς ἀμπελῶσι φύεσθαι καὶ ποιεῖν τὸν οἶνον οὕτω διουρητικὸν ὥστε λαγαροὺς εἶναι πάνν τοὺς πίνοντας.

- 4 Ἄριστος δὲ πάντων καὶ τούτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὁ Οἰταῖος. ὁ δὲ Παρνάσιος καὶ ὁ Αἰτωλικός, γίνεταί γὰρ καὶ ἐνταῦθα καὶ πολλοὶ καὶ ὠνοῦνται καὶ πωλοῦσιν οὐκ εἰδότες, [οὐχ ὅτε] σκληροὶ καὶ

---

<sup>1</sup> Which were held apparently at Thermopylae regularly in autumn and sometimes in spring: the meeting would give opportunities for sale. ἀλλὰ implies a spring meeting.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. x. 1-4

creeps on the ground ; the plant has numerous roots, to wit, the slender roots which are serviceable.

Also they say that the black is fatal to horses oxen and pigs, wherefore none of these animals eat it ; while the white is eaten by sheep, and from this circumstance the virtue of the plant was first observed, since it purges them ; it is at its prime in autumn, and past its prime when spring comes. However the people of Mount Oeta gather it for the meetings<sup>1</sup> of the Amphictyons ; for it grows there in greatest abundance and best, though at only one place in the district of Oeta, namely about Pyra.

(The seed of rupture-wort is mixed with the potion given to promote easy vomiting ; this plant is a small herb).

The black kind of hellebore grows everywhere ; it is found in Boeotia, in Euboea and in many other places ; but best is that from Mount Helicon, which mountain is in general rich in medicinal herbs. The white occurs in few places ; the best and that which is most used comes from one of four places, Oeta,<sup>2</sup> Pontus, Elea, and Malea.<sup>3</sup> They say that that of Elea grows in the vineyards and makes the wine so diuretic that those who drink it become quite emaciated.

But best of all these and better than that found anywhere else is that of Mount Oeta, while that of Parnassus and that of Aetolia (for the plant is common in these parts too and men buy and sell it, not knowing<sup>4</sup> the difference) are tough and ex-

<sup>2</sup> δ before Οἰταῖος add. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> Μαλιώτης conj. Halinermann, cf. Strabo 9. 3. 3 ; Μασσαλιώτης Ald. Plin. l.c. gives Parnassus as the fourth locality: cf. § 4.

<sup>4</sup> The words οὐχ ᾔστε may have arisen from οὐκ εἰδότες.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἄγαν περισκελεῖς. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ὅμοια ταῖς μορφαῖς ὄντα ταῖς δυνάμεσι διαφέροντα.

Καλοῦσι δὲ τὸν μέλανά τινες ἔκτομον Μελαμπόδιον, ὡς ἐκείνου πρῶτον τεμόντος καὶ ἀνευρόντος. καθαίρουσι δὲ καὶ οἰκίας αὐτῷ καὶ πρόβατα συνεπάδοντές τινα ἐπωδὴν καὶ εἰς ἄλλα δὲ πλείω χρῶνται.

XI. Πολλὰ δὲ ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ πανάκη καὶ οἱ τιθύμαλλοι καὶ ἕτερ' ἄττα. πάντακες γὰρ καλοῦσι πρῶτον μὲν τὸ ἐν Συρίᾳ, περὶ οὗ μικρῷ πρότερον εἴρηται. ἄλλα δὲ τὰ τρία, τὸ μὲν Χειρώνειον καλούμενον τὸ δ' Ἀσκληπίειον τὸ δ' Ἡράκλειον. ἔχει δὲ τὸ μὲν Χειρώνειον φύλλον μὲν ὅμοιον λαπάθῳ μείζον δὲ καὶ δασύτερον, ἄνθος δὲ χρυσοειδές, ῥίζαν δὲ μικράν· φιλεῖ δὲ μάλιστα τὰ χωρία τὰ πίονα· χρῶνται δὲ πρὸς τε τοὺς ἔχεις καὶ τὰ φαλάγγια καὶ τοὺς σήπας καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐρπετὰ διδόντες ἐν οἴνῳ καὶ ἀλείφοντες μετ' ἐλαίου· τοῦ δ' ἔχεις τὸ δῆγμα καὶ καταπλάττοντες καὶ ἐν ὀξίνῃ πιεῖν διδόντες· ἀγαθὴν δὲ φασὶ καὶ ἐλκῶν ἐν οἴνῳ καὶ ἐλαίῳ καὶ φυμάτων ἐν μέλιτι.

- 2 Τὸ δ' Ἀσκληπίειον τὴν ῥίζαν μῆκος μὲν ὡς σπιθαμὴν λευκὴν δὲ καὶ παχεῖαν σφόδρα, καὶ φλοιὸν παχὺν καὶ ἰλυκώδη· καυλὸν δὲ ἔχει γονατώδη πανταχόθεν, φύλλον δὲ οἷον περὶ ἡ θαψία πλὴν παχύτερον· ἀγαθὸν δὲ εἶναί φασὶ ἐρπετῶν

<sup>1</sup> From this phrase *ἐκτομον* came to be used as a synonym for 'black hellebore.' cf. l'lin. 25. 47; Diosc. 4. 149; Hesych. and Galen, *Lex. Hipp.* s.v.

<sup>2</sup> 9. 9. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 25. 32; 26. 139.

<sup>4</sup> *μικρὰν* conj. H. from Plin. 25. 32. *radix parva*; *μακρὰν* U\* Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. X. 4-XI. 2

ceeding harsh. These plants then, while resembling the best form in appearance, differ in their virtues.

Some call the black the 'hellebore of Melampus,'<sup>1</sup> saying that he first cut and discovered it. Men also purify horses and sheep with it, at the same time chanting an incantation; and they put it to several other uses.

*Of the various kinds of all-heal.*

XI. There are also several kinds of all-heal *tithymallos* (spurge) and other herbs. To begin with, one plant called all-heal is the one found in Syria, of which we have recently spoken.<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup> Then come the three other kinds, known as that of Chaeronea, that of Asclepios, and that of Heracles. That of Chaeronea has a leaf like monk's rhubarb, but larger and rougher, a golden flower, and a small <sup>4</sup> root; and it specially loves rich ground; they use it for the bites of snakes, spiders, vipers <sup>5</sup> and other reptiles, administering it in wine or anointing the place with it mixed with olive-oil. In treating a snake-bite they use a plaster of it, and also give a draught of it mixed with vinegar <sup>6</sup>; and they also say that it is good for sores <sup>7</sup> when mixed with wine and olive-oil, and for tumours when mixed with honey.

<sup>8</sup> The kind called after Asklepios has a white and very stout root about a span long and a thick bark which is crusted with salt <sup>9</sup>; its stem is jointed all the way up, its leaf like that of *thapsia*, but thicker; it is said that it is good to scrape and drink

<sup>5</sup> *σῆπας* conj. Scal., cf. Arist. *Mir. Ausc.* 164; *σῆπας* Ald.

<sup>6</sup> *καὶ ἐν ὀξὺν* conj. Sch., cf. 9. 13. 3; *ἐν ὀξὺν καὶ* PAld.

<sup>7</sup> For the genitive cf. §§ 2, 3; Xen. *Mem.* 3. 8. 3.

<sup>8</sup> Plin. 25. 30; Diosc. 3. 49.

<sup>9</sup> *ἀλυσκώδη*; ? 'has a briny taste.'

## THEOPHRASTUS

τε ξύοντα πίνειν, καὶ σπληνὸς ὅταν αἷμα περὶ αὐτὸν ἐν μελικράτῳ, καὶ κεφαλαίας τρίβοντα ἐν ἐλαίῳ ἀλείφειν καὶ ἄλλο τι εἶναι πονῇ τις ἀφανές, καὶ γαστρὸς ὀδύνης ἐν οἴνῳ ξύοντα. δύνασθαι δὲ καὶ τὰς μακρὰς ἀρρωστίας ἐκκλίνειν. ἔπειτα τῶν ἐλκῶν τῶν μὲν ὑγρῶν ξηρὸν ἐπιπάττοντα προκατακλύζοντα ἐν οἴνῳ θερμῷ, τῶν δὲ ξηρῶν ἐν οἴνῳ δεῦσαι καὶ καταπλάττειν.

- 3 Τὸ δ' Ἑράκλειον φύλλον μὲν ἔχει μέγα καὶ πλατὺ καὶ τρισπίθαμον πανταχῇ, ῥίζαν δὲ ὡς δακτύλου τὸ πάχος δίκραν ἢ τρίκραν, τῇ γεύσει μὲν ὑπόπικρον τῇ δ' ὀσμῇ καθάπερ λιβανωτοῦ καθαροῦ. ἀγαθὴν δὲ τῆς ἱερᾶς νόσου μιγνυμένην φώκης πιτύᾳ ὅσον τεταρτημόριον πίνειν, καὶ ὀδύνης κατὰ γαστέρα ἐν οἴνῳ γλυκεῖ, καὶ ἐλκῶν τῶν μὲν ὑγρῶν ξηρὰν τῶν δὲ ξηρῶν ἐν μέλιτι. αὗται μὲν οὖν ταύτας ἔχουσι διαφορὰς τε καὶ δυνάμεις.
- 4 Ἄλλα δὲ πανάκη τὸ μὲν λεπτόφυλλον τὸ δὲ οὐ· αἱ δὲ δυνάμεις ἀμφοῖν αἱ αὐταί, πρόσθετόν τε γυναιξὶ καὶ κατὰ πλάσμα μετ' ἀλφίτου καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἔλκη τὰ ἄλλα καὶ πρὸς τὰ νεμόμενα.
- 5 Συνώνυμοι δὲ καὶ οἱ στρύχνοι καὶ οἱ τιθύμαλ-

---

<sup>1</sup> κεφαλαίας conj. Sch.; κεφαλῆς Ald.

<sup>2</sup> τῶν ἐλκῶν conj. Sch.; τῶν δὲ ἐλκώδων (sic) U\*; τῶν ἐλκωδῶν Ald. H. cf. § 3.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 25. 32; Diosc. 3. 48.

<sup>4</sup> δίκραν ἢ τρίκραν conj. Sch.; δίκραν ἢ τρίκραν UM; δίκραν ἢ τρίκραν U\*; δίκραν ἢ τρίκραν Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XI. 2-5

it against bites of reptiles, to take it in a posset of honey for disorders of the spleen, when the blood collects about it, and against headache<sup>1</sup> to pound it up in olive-oil and anoint the head; that it is of use also in other obscure troubles, and against stomach-ache, if scraped and taken in wine. It is said also to be able to prevent long periods of sickness. Again for running sores<sup>2</sup> one may sprinkle it on in hot wine, first washing the place, while for dry sores one may soak it in wine and apply a plaster.

<sup>3</sup>The kind named after Herakles has a large broad leaf, three spans each way, a root as thick as a man's finger, forking in two or three<sup>4</sup>; in taste it is somewhat bitter, in smell like pure frankincense<sup>5</sup>; <sup>6</sup>it is good to drink it against epilepsy, mixed with the rennet of a seal in the proportion of one to four, or in sweet wine against pain<sup>7</sup> in the stomach; it may be used dry<sup>8</sup> for running sores, and mixed with honey for dry ones. Such are the special features about these plants and their respective virtues.

<sup>9</sup>There are also other kinds of all-heal, of which one has a fine leaf, the other not; the properties of both kinds are the same; namely they are used as a pessary for women, and a plaster may be made of them mixed with meal for spreading sores as well as for ordinary sores.

*Of the various plants called strykhnos.*

As to *strykhnos* again and *tithymallos* (spurge) there is in either case more than one form of the plant

<sup>5</sup> λιβανωτοῦ καθαρῷ conj. Sch.; λιβανωτὸν καθαρὸν UM; λιβανωτοῦ U\*; λιβανωτοῦ καθαρῶν Ald.H καθαρῷ perhaps due to καθάπερ. <sup>6</sup> cf. Fr. 175; Diosc. 2. 75.

<sup>7</sup> ὀδύνης conj. W.; ὀδύναι UMU\*Ald.

<sup>8</sup> ξηρὰν conj. Sch.; ξηρὰ U\*Ald.; ξηραὶ M. <sup>9</sup> Plin. 35. 33.



## THEOPHRASTUS

λοι. τῶν γὰρ στρύχνων ὁ μὲν ὑπνώδης ὁ δὲ  
μανικός. καὶ ὁ μὲν ὑπνώδης ἐρυθρὰν ἔχων τὴν  
ρίζαν ὥσπερ αἶμα ξηρανομένην, ὀρυττομένην δὲ  
λευκὴν, καὶ καρπὸν ἐρυθρότερον κρόκου, φύλλον  
δὲ τιθυμᾶλλω ὅμοιον ἢ μηλέα τῇ γλυκείᾳ καὶ  
αὐτὸ δασὺ καὶ πυγμὴν μέγα. τούτου τῆς ρίζης  
τὸν φλοιὸν κόπτοντες λίαν καὶ βρέχοντες ἐν οἴνῳ  
ἰκράτῳ διδόασι πιεῖν καὶ ποιεῖ καθεύδειν. φύε-  
ται δὲ ἐν χαράδραις καὶ τοῖς μνήμασιν.

- 6 Ὁ δὲ μανικός, οἱ δὲ θρύορον καλοῦσιν αὐτὸν οἱ  
δὲ περιττόν, λευκὴν ἔχει τὴν ρίζαν καὶ μακρὰν  
ὡς πήχεως καὶ κοίλην. δίδεται δ' αὐτῆς, ἐὰν μὲν  
ὥστε παίζειν καὶ δοκεῖν ἑαυτῷ κάλλιστον εἶναι,  
δραχμὴ σταθμῷ. ἐὰν δὲ μᾶλλον μαίνεσθαι καὶ  
φαντασίας τινὰς φαίνεσθαι, δύο δραχμαί. ἐὰν δ'  
ὥστε μὴ παύεσθαι μαινόμενον τρεῖς, καὶ συμ-  
παραμιγνύναι φασὶν ὁπὸν κενταυρίου. ἐὰν δὲ  
ὥστε ἀποκτεῖναι, τέτταρες. ἔχει δὲ τὸ μὲν φύλλον  
ὅμοιον εὐζώμῳ πλὴν μείζον, τὸν δὲ καυλὸν ὥσπερ  
ὀργυίας, κεφαλὴν δὲ ὥσπερ γηθύου μείζω δὲ καὶ  
δασυτέραν. ἔοικε δὲ καὶ πλατάνου καρπῷ.

<sup>1</sup> cf. 7. 15. 4, where a third στρύχνος is mentioned, which is δμώνυμος, not συνώνυμος, i.e. which has nothing in common with these two στρύχνου except the name. cf. also 9. 15. 5.

<sup>2</sup> κρόκου conj. Dalec. from Diosc. 4. 72, καρπὸν . . . κροκί-  
ζοντα; κόκκου MSS.

<sup>3</sup> πυγμὴν μέγα U; πυθμὴν μέγας U\* Ald. H.; W. adopts Bod.'s  
conjecture σπιθαμὴν μέγα.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 21. 177-179; Diosc. 4. 73.

<sup>5</sup> θρύορον Ald. H.; θρυόρον U\*; βρυόρον U; βρύορον MmBas.;

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xi. 5-6

denoted by the name. <sup>1</sup> Of the plants called *strykhnos* one induces sleep, the other (thorn-apple) causes madness. The first-mentioned has a root which becomes red like blood as it dries, but when first dug up it is white; its fruit is a deeper orange than saffron,<sup>2</sup> its leaf like that of *tithymallos* or the sweet apple; and it is itself rough, and about a foot high.<sup>3</sup> The 'bark' of the root of this they bruise severely, and soaking it in neat wine give it as a draught, and it induces sleep. It grows in water-courses and on tombs.

<sup>4</sup> The kind which produces madness (which some call *thryoron*<sup>5</sup> and some *perilton*<sup>6</sup>) has a white hollow root about a cubit long. Of this three twentieths of an ounce in weight is given, if the patient is to become merely sportive and to think himself a fine fellow; twice this dose<sup>7</sup> if he is to go mad outright and have delusions<sup>8</sup>; thrice the dose, if he is to be permanently insane; (and then they say that the juice of centaury is mixed with it); four<sup>9</sup> times the dose is given, if the man is to be killed. The leaf is like that of rocket, but larger, the stem about a fathom long; the 'head'<sup>10</sup> is like that of a long onion, but larger and rougher. And it also resembles the fruit of the plane-tree.

*briorem* G. Plin. *l.c.* seems to have read ἐρυθρὸν; Diosc. *l.c.* βρύον.

<sup>6</sup> περiltόν Ald. H., i.e. 'violent'; *pissum* G; Plin. *l.c.* *perisson*; Diosc. *l.c.* πέρσιον.

<sup>7</sup> δραχμαὶ conj. Sch.; δραχμας Ald.

<sup>8</sup> καὶ . . . φαίνεσθαι om. UM: ungrammatical, and possibly a gloss; but cf. Diosc. and Plin. *l.c.*

<sup>9</sup> τέτταρες conj. Sch.; τέτταρας Ald; τέσσαρας U\*.

<sup>10</sup> 7. 4. 10 it was said that γήθρον has no 'head,' i.e. bulb; here the 'head' seems to be the inflorescence. cf. Diosc. and Plin. *l.c.*

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 7 Τῶν δὲ τιθυμάλλων ὁ μὲν παράλιος καλούμενος κόκκινον φύλλον ἔχει περιφερές, καυλὸν δὲ καὶ τὸ ὅλον μέγεθος ὡς σπιθαμῆς τὸν δὲ καρπὸν λευκόν. ἀμᾶται δὲ ὅταν ἄρτι περκάξῃ σταφυλή, καὶ ξηρανθεὶς ὁ καρπὸς δίδεται πίνειν τριφθεὶς ὅσον τρίτον μέρος ὀξύβαφον.
- 8 Ὁ δ' ἄρρην καλούμενος τὸ μὲν φύλλον ἐλαιῶδες ἔχει, τὸ δὲ ὅλον μέγεθος πηχυαῖον. τοῦτον ὀπίζουσιν ἅμα τρυγητῷ καὶ θεραπεύσαντες οὕτως ὡς δεῖ χρῶνται· καθαίρει δὲ κάτω μᾶλλον.
- 9 Ὁ δὲ μυρτίτης καλούμενος τιθύμαλλος λευκός· τὸ μὲν φύλλον ἔχει καθάπερ ὁ μύρρινος, πλήν ἀκανθῶδες ἀπ' ἄκρον· κλήματα δ' ἀφίησιν ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν ὡς σπιθαμιαῖα, ταῦτα δ' οὐχ ἅμα φέρει τὸν καρπὸν ἀλλὰ παρ' ἔτος, τὰ μὲν νῦν τὰ δ' εἰς νέωτα, πεφυκότα ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς ῥίζης. φιλεῖ δὲ ὀρεινὰ χωρία. ὁ δὲ καρπὸς αὐτοῦ καλεῖται κάρνυν. ἀμῶσι δ' ὅταν ἀδρύνωνται αἱ κριθαὶ καὶ ξηραίνοντες καὶ ἀποκαθαίροντες· αὐτὸν τὸν καρπὸν πλύναντες ἐν ὕδατι καὶ πάλιν ξηράναντες διδόασιν πιεῖν συμμιγνύντες δύο μέρη τῆς μελαίνης μήκωνος, τὸ δὲ συναμφότερον ὅσον ὀξύβαφον· καθαίρει δὲ φλέγμα κάτω· ἐὰν δὲ τὸ κάρνυν αὐτὸ διδῶσι, τρίψαντες ἐν οἴνῳ γλυκεῖ διδόασιν ἢ ἐν σησάμῳ πεφρυγμένῳ κατατραγεῖν. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τοῖς τε φύλλοις καὶ τοῖς ὀποῖς καὶ τοῖς καρποῖς χρήσιμα.

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 26. 68.

<sup>2</sup> κόκκινον conj. W.; κόκκος MSS cf. Plin. l.c. *ramis rubentibus*. <sup>3</sup> Diosc. 4. 164; Plin. 26. 62-65.

<sup>4</sup> οὕτως ὡς δεῖ χρ. conj. Sch.; οὕτως ὡς δὴ χρ. U\*; οὕτως χρ. Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xi. 7-9

### *Of the various kinds of tithymallos.*

<sup>1</sup> Of the various plants called *tithymallos* (spurge) that which is called sea-spurge has a round scarlet<sup>2</sup> leaf; the stem (and the size of the plant generally) is about a span long, and the fruit is white. It is gathered when the grape is just turning, and the dried fruit is given in a draught, the dose being the twenty-fourth part of a pint.

<sup>3</sup> That which is called the 'male' has a leaf like the olive, and the height of the whole plant is a cubit. Of this they collect the juice at the time of vintage, and, after preparing it, use it as occasion demands<sup>4</sup>; and it purges chiefly downwards.

<sup>5</sup> The kind of *tithymallos* called 'myrtle-like' is white; it has a leaf like the myrtle, but spinous at the tip; it puts out earthward twigs about a span long, and these bear the fruit" not all at the same time but in alternate years, so that from the same root grow fruits partly this and partly next year. It loves hill-country. The fruit of it is called a 'nut.' They gather it when the barley is ripening and dry and clean it; (it is the actual fruit<sup>7</sup> which they clean); they wash it in water and, after drying it again, give it in a draught, mixing with it two parts of 'black<sup>8</sup> poppy'; and the whole dose amounts to about an eighth of a pint. It purges phlegm downwards. If they administer the 'nut' itself, they first pound it up in sweet wine, or give it in parched sesame to bite up. These plants then have leaves juices or fruits which are serviceable.

<sup>5</sup> Diosc. 4. 164; Plin. 26. 66.

<sup>6</sup> cf. *C.P.* 4. 6. 9.

<sup>7</sup> W. adds δὲ after αὐτὸν. The treatment of the leaves has perhaps dropped out. cf. Plin. *l.c.* (J's version is even shorter.

<sup>8</sup> μέλαινα must here mean 'dark,' i.e. red. See Index.

## THEOPHRASTUS

10 Τῶν δὲ λιβανωτίδων, δύο γάρ εἰσιν, ἡ μὲν ἄκαρπος ἡ δὲ κάρπιμος, ἡ μὲν καὶ τῷ καρπῷ καὶ τῷ φύλλῳ χρησίμη ἡ δὲ μόνον τῇ ῥίζῃ. καλεῖται δὲ ὁ καρπὸς κάχρυ. ἔχει δὲ αὕτη τὸ μὲν φύλλον ἑοικὸς σελίνῳ ἐλείψω μείζον δὲ πολὺ, καυλὸν δὲ μέγεθος πήχεως ἢ μείζω, ῥίζαν δὲ μεγάλην καὶ παχεῖαν λευκὴν ὅζουσαν ὥσπερ λιβανωτοῦ, καρπὸν δὲ λευκὸν τραχὺν προμήκη· φύεται δὲ μάλιστα ὅπου ἂν αὐχμηρὰ χωρία ἢ καὶ πετρώδη χρησίμη δὲ ἡ μὲν ῥίζα πρὸς τε τὰ ἔλκη καὶ πρὸς τὰ γυναικεῖα πινομένη ἐν οἴνῳ αὐστηρῷ μέλανι· ὁ δὲ καρπὸς πρὸς τε τὰς στραγγουρίας καὶ πρὸς τὰ ὤτα καὶ ἄργεμα καὶ πρὸς ὀφθαλμίας καὶ ὥστε γάλα γυναιξὶν ἐμποιεῖν.

11 Ἡ δὲ ἄκαρπος ἔχει τὸ φύλλον ὁμοιον θριδακίνης τῆς πικρᾶς τραχύτερον δὲ καὶ λευκότερον, ῥίζαν δὲ βραχεῖαν. φύεται δὲ ὅπουπερ ἐρείκη πλείστη. δύναται δὲ ἡ ῥίζα καθαίρειν καὶ ἄνω καὶ κάτω· τὸ μὲν γὰρ πρὸς τὴν βλάστην ἄνω, τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὴν γῆν κάτω· κωλύει δὲ καὶ εἰς ἱμάτια τιθεμένη τοὺς σήτας. συλλέγεται δὲ περὶ πυροτομίας.

XII. Χαμαιλέων δὲ ὁ μὲν λευκὸς ὁ δὲ μέλας· αἱ δὲ δυνάμεις τῶν ῥιζῶν καὶ αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ ῥίζαι τοῖς εἶδεσι διάφοροι. τοῦ μὲν γὰρ λευκῆ καὶ παχεῖα καὶ γλυκεῖα καὶ ὀσμὴν ἔχουσα βαρεῖαν· χρήσιμον δὲ φασι πρὸς τε τοὺς ῥοῦς, ὅταν ἐψηθῇ

<sup>1</sup> Diosc. 3. 74; Plin 19. 187.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Plin. 24. 99 and 101.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 7. 6. 2; 9. 9. 5.

<sup>4</sup> ὅπουπερ ἐρείκη conj. Dalec. etc. from Diosc. l.c.; ὅπουπερ εἴρηται Ald.H.; ὁπότε ἐρείκη U\*.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XI. 10 XII. 1

*Of the two herbs called libanotis.*

<sup>1</sup>Of the plants called *libanotis*, (for there are two) one is barren, the other fruitful, the latter having both fruit and leaves that are serviceable, the former only a serviceable root. The fruit is called *kakhry*.<sup>2</sup> This plant has a leaf like marsh celery, but much larger, a stem a cubit long or more, a large stout white root, which smells like frankincense, and a white rough elongated fruit. It grows chiefly wherever there is parched and rocky soil; the root is serviceable for sores, and for diseases of women when given in a draught of dry black wine. The fruit is good for strangury, for the ears, for ulcers<sup>3</sup> on the eye, for ophthalmia and for producing milk in women.

The barren kind has a leaf like that of the bitter lettuce, but rougher and paler; the root is short. It grows where there is abundance of heather.<sup>4</sup> The root can purge both upwards and downwards, the upper part being used for the former, that nearer the ground for the latter purpose. Also, if it is put among clothes, it prevents moth. It is gathered at the time of wheat-harvest.

*Of the two kinds of chamaeleon.*

XII. <sup>5</sup>Of chamaeleon there is the white kind and the dark; the properties of the roots are different, and the roots also differ<sup>6</sup> in appearance. In the one case the root is white stout and sweet, and it has a heavy smell; they say that when cooked it is serviceable against flux; it is chopped up like

<sup>5</sup> Diosc. 3. 8; Plin. 22. 45 and 46, who explains the name (*mutat cum terra colores*). See Index.

<sup>6</sup> διαφέρουσαι conj. W.; διαφέρει U; διαφέρουσι δὲ M; διδφορον Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κατατμηθεῖσα καθάπερ ῥαφανὶς ἐνειρομένη ἐφ' ὀλοσχοίνου, καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἔλμινθα τὴν πλατεῖαν, ὅταν ἀσταφίδα προφάγῃ πίνειν ἐπιξέοντα ταύτην ὅσον ὀξύβαφον ἐν οἴνῳ αὐστηρῶ. ἀναίρει δὲ καὶ κύνα καὶ σὺν· κύνα μὲν ἐν ἀλφίτοις ἀναφυραθείσα μετὰ ἐλαίου καὶ ὕδατος, σὺν δὲ μετὰ ῥαφάνων μεμιγμένη τῶν ὀρειῶν. γυναικὶ δὲ δίδοται ἐν τρυγί γλυκεία ἢ ἐν οἴνῳ γλυκεῖ. καὶ ἐὰν βούληται τις ἀσθενοῦντος ἀνθρώπου διαπειρᾶσθαι εἰ βιώσιμος, λούειν κελεύουσι τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ περιενέγκῃ βιώσιμος. φύεται δὲ ὁμοίως πανταχοῦ, καὶ ἔχει τὸ φύλλον ὅμοιον σκολύμφῳ μείζον δέ· αὐτὸ δὲ πρὸς τῇ γῇ τινα κεφαλὴν ἔχει ἀκανοειδῆ μεγάλῃν, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἄκανον καλοῦσιν.

- 2 Ὁ δὲ μέλας τῷ μὲν φύλλῳ παρόμοιος, σκολυμῶδες γὰρ ἔχει πλὴν ἔλαττον καὶ λειότερον, αὐτὸς δ' ὅλος ἐστὶν ὥσπερ σκιάδιον, ἢ δὲ ῥίζα παχεῖα καὶ μέλαινα διαρραγεῖσα δὲ ὑπόξανθος. χωρία δὲ φιλεῖ ψυχρὰ καὶ ἀργά· δύναται δὲ λέπραν τε ἐξελαύνειν ἐν ὃξει τριβόμενος καὶ ξυσθεὶς ἐπαλειφόμενος καὶ ἀλφὸν ὡσαύτως· ἀναίρει δὲ καὶ τοὺς κύνας.

- 3 Μήκωνες δ' εἰσὶν ἄγριαι πλείους· ἡ μὲν κερατῖτις καλουμένη μέλαινα· ταύτης τὸ φύλλον ὡς-

<sup>1</sup> cf. 9. 9. 1.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Pseudo-Diosc. 4. 175 and Index.

<sup>3</sup> ἀκανοειδῆ conj. Sch.; κονοειδῆ U\*; κωνοειδῆ mP; ὁμοίαν ἀκανῶ PAld.

<sup>4</sup> δὲ after τὴν om. Sch.; ? τινα κεφαλὴν W.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xii. 1-3

radishes<sup>1</sup> and the pieces strung on a rush ; it is also good against the broad maw-worm ; the patient first eats a bunch of raisins and then drinks about an eighth of a pint of this scraped up in a draught of dry wine. It is fatal to dogs and pigs ; to kill a dog it is well mixed up in a meal paste with oil and water, to kill a pig it is mixed with 'mountain cabbage' (spurge).<sup>2</sup> It is given to a woman in sweet wine-lees or sweet wine. And if one wishes to discover whether a man that is sick will recover, they say that he should be washed with this for three days, and, if he survives the experience, he will recover. It grows everywhere alike and has a leaf like the golden thistle, but larger ; the plant itself has a large thistle-like<sup>3</sup> head<sup>4</sup> close to the ground ; some actually<sup>5</sup> call it the thistle.

<sup>6</sup> The dark kind resembles the other in leaf, which is like that of the golden thistle but smaller and smoother ; the plant itself is in general appearance like a sunshade ; the root is stout and black, and when broken is yellowish. It likes cold uncultivated soil : it has the property of expelling leprosy ; for this it is given pounded up in vinegar, or else scrapings of it are made into a plaster ; and it is also used for the white leprosy. This plant is also fatal to dogs.<sup>7</sup>

*Of the various plants called 'poppy.'*

<sup>8</sup> There are several kinds of wild poppy : the one called the horned poppy is black : the leaf of this is

<sup>1</sup> δὲ καὶ ἄκανον I conj. ; δ' ἄκανθαν U\* mPar., so also Diosc. l.c. ; δ' ἄκανον PAld.G.

<sup>2</sup> Diosc. 3. 9 ; Plin. l.c.

<sup>3</sup> κύνας : κυνοραϊστας, dog-ticks, conj. Reinesius from Plin. ricinos canum.

<sup>4</sup> Diosc. 4. 64 ; Plin. 20. 205 and 206.



## THEOPHRASTUS

περ φλόμου τῆς μελαίνης ἦττον δὲ μέλαν, τοῦ δὲ  
καυλοῦ τὸ ὕψος ὥς πηχυαῖον, ῥίζα δὲ παχεῖα καὶ  
ἐπιπόλαιος, ὁ δὲ καρπὸς καμπύλος ὥσπερ κερά-  
τιον· συλλέγεται δὲ περὶ πυροτομίας. δύναται  
δὲ καθαίρειν κοιλίαν, τὸ δὲ φύλλον ἄργεμα προ-  
βάτοις ἀφαιρεῖν. φύεται δὲ παρὰ θύλατταν, οὗ  
ἂν ἡ πετρώδη χωρία.

- 4 Ἐτέρα δὲ μήκων ῥοιὰς καλουμένη παρομοία  
κιχορίῳ τῷ ἀγρίῳ, δι' ὃ καὶ ἐσθίεται· ἐν τοῖς  
ἀρουραίοις δὲ φύεται, μάλιστα ἐν ταῖς κριθαῖς·  
ἄνθος δ' ἔχει ἐρυθρὸν κωδύαν δ' ὅσην ὄνυχα τοῦ  
δακτύλου. συλλέγεται δὲ πρὸ τοῦ θερισμοῦ τῶν  
κριθῶν, ἐγχλωροτέρα δὲ μᾶλλον. καθαίρει δὲ  
κάτω.

- 5 Ἐτέρα δὲ μήκων Ἑρακλεία καλεῖται τὸ μὲν  
φύλλον ἔχουσα οἶον στρουθός, ᾧ τὰ ὀθόνια λευ-  
καίνουσι, ῥίζαν δὲ λεπτὴν ἐπιπόλαιον, τὸν δὲ  
καρπὸν λευκόν. ταύτης ἡ ῥίζα καθαίρει ἄνω-  
χρῶνται δέ τινες πρὸς τοὺς ἐπιλήπτους ἐν μελι-  
κράτῳ. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ὥσπερ ὁμωνυμία τινὲ  
συνεῖληπται.

XIII. Τῶν δὲ ῥιζῶν καὶ ἐν τοῖς χυμοῖς αἱ  
διαφοραὶ καὶ ἐν ταῖς ὁσμαῖς· αἱ μὲν γάρ εἰσι  
δριμεῖαι αἱ δὲ πικραὶ αἱ δὲ γλυκεῖαι, καὶ αἱ μὲν  
εὐοδμοὶ αἱ δὲ βαρεῖαι. γλυκεῖα μὲν ἢ τε νυμφαία  
καλουμένη· φύεται δ' ἐν ταῖς λίμναις καὶ ἐν τοῖς  
ἐλώδεσιν, οἶον ἔν τε τῇ Ὀρχομενίᾳ καὶ Μαραθῶνι

<sup>1</sup> ὥσπερ κεράτιον conj. W.; ὥσπερ κέρας UM; ὥσπερ τῶν κερα-  
τίων U\*Ald.

<sup>2</sup> Diosc. l.c.; Plin. 19. 167-169.

<sup>3</sup> Diosc. 4. 66; Plin. 20. 207, cf. 19. 21.

like that of the black mullein, but it is not so black ; the stem grows about a cubit high, the root is stout and shallow, the fruit is twisted like a little horn<sup>1</sup>: it is gathered at the time of wheat harvest. It has the property of purging the belly, and the leaf is used for removing ulcers on sheep's eyes. It grows by the sea, wherever there is rocky ground.

<sup>2</sup> Another kind of poppy is that called *rhoias*, which is like wild chicory, wherefore it is even eaten: it grows in cultivated fields and especially among barley. It has a red flower, and a head as large as a man's finger-nail. It is gathered before the barley-harvest, when it is still somewhat green. It purges downwards.

<sup>3</sup> Another kind of poppy is called *Herakleia*: it has a leaf like soap-wort, with which <sup>4</sup> they bleach linen: the root is slender and does not run deep, and the fruit is white. The root of this plant purges upwards: and some use it in a posset of mead for epileptics.

<sup>5</sup> These kinds then are distinct plants, though they come under one name.

*Of roots possessing remarkable taste or smell.*

XIII. The differences between roots are shown in their tastes <sup>6</sup> and in their smells: some are pungent, some bitter, some sweet: some again have a pleasant, others a disagreeable smell. The plant called yellow water-lily<sup>7</sup> is sweet: it grows in lakes and marshy places, as in the district of Orchomenus, at

<sup>1</sup> This appears to refer to *στρουθός*, not to *Ἡρακλεία*, as Plin. takes it. cf. 6. 4. 3 and Index, *στρούθιον* (2).

<sup>2</sup> i.e. *ροιάς* and *Ἡρακλεία* are popularly called 'poppies.' *δμωνυμία τινι* conj. W.; *δμώνυμα τινα* Ald.; *δμώνυμα τινι* U\*. cf. 7. 15. 4.

<sup>3</sup> *χυμοίς* conj. Sch.; *χυλοίς* Ald.

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 25. 75.

## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ περὶ Κρήτην· καλοῦσι δ' αὐτὴν οἱ Βοιωτοὶ  
μαδωναῖν καὶ τὸν καρπὸν ἐσθίουσιν. ἔχει δὲ τὸ  
φύλλον μέγα ἐπὶ τοῦ ὕδατος· εἶναι δέ φασιν  
ἰσχαιμον, εἰάν τρίψας τις ἐπὶ τὴν πληγὴν ἐπιθῇ·  
χρησίμη δὲ καὶ πρὸς δυσεντερίαν πινομένη.

- 2 Γλυκεῖα δὲ καὶ ἡ Σκυθική· καὶ ἔνιοι δὲ καλοῦ-  
σιν εὐθύς γλυκεῖαν αὐτήν· γίνεται δὲ περὶ τὴν  
Μαιωτίν· χρησίμη δὲ πρὸς τε τὰ ἄσθματα καὶ  
πρὸς τὴν βήχα ξηρὰν καὶ ὅλως τοὺς περὶ τὸν  
θώρακα πόνους· ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τὰ ἔλκη ἐν μέλιτι  
δύναται δὲ καὶ τὴν δίψαν παύειν, εἰάν τις ἐν τῷ  
στόματι ἔχῃ· δι' ὃ ταύτῃ τε καὶ τῇ ἵππακῇ  
διάγειν φασὶ τοὺς Σκύθας ἡμέρας καὶ ἑνδεκα καὶ  
δώδεκα.

- 3 [Ἡ δὲ ἀριστολογία τῇ ὁσφρήσει μὲν εὐοδμος τῇ  
δὲ γεύσει πικρὰ σφόδρα τῇ χροιᾷ δὲ μέλαινα.  
φύεται δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἢ βελτίστη· φύλλον δὲ  
ἔχει προσεμφερές τῇ ἀλσίνῃ πλὴν στρογγυλό-  
τερον· χρησίμη δὲ πρὸς πολλά, καὶ ἀρίστη πρὸς  
κεφαλῆς ἀγαθὴ δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα ἔλκη, καὶ  
πρὸς τὰ ἐρπετὰ καὶ πρὸς ὕπνον καὶ πρὸς ὑστέραν.  
τὰ μὲν οὖν προσάγειν κελεύουσιν ἐν ὕδατι ἀνα-  
δεύσαντα καὶ καταπλάττοντα, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς  
μέλι ἐνξύσαντα καὶ ἔλαιον· πρὸς δὲ τὰ τῶν  
ἐρπετῶν ἐν οἴνῳ ὀξίνῃ πίνειν καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ δῆγμα  
ἐπιπλάττειν· εἰς ὕπνον δὲ ἐν οἴνῳ μέλανι αὐστηρῶ  
κνίσαι· εἰάν δὲ αἱ μῆτραι προπέσωσι, τῷ ὕδατι  
ἀποκλύζειν.]

<sup>1</sup> Diosc. 3. 5; Plin. 25. 82.

<sup>2</sup> γλυκεῖαν: γλυκύρριζαν conj. Dalec., whence 'liquorice.' cf. Plin. 11. 284.

<sup>3</sup> cf. Plin. l.c., who took ἵππακῇ to be a plant.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XIII. 1-3

Marathon and in parts of Crete : the Boeotians, who eat the fruit, call it *madonais*. It has a large leaf which lies on the water : and it is said that it acts as a styptic if it is pounded up and put on the wound : it is also serviceable in the form of a draught for dysentery.

<sup>1</sup> 'Scythian root' (liquorice) is also sweet; some indeed call it simply 'sweet-root.'<sup>2</sup> It is found about Lake Maeotis : it is useful against asthma or a dry cough and in general for troubles in the chest : also, administered in honey, for wounds : also it has the property of quenching thirst, if one holds it in the mouth : wherefore they say that the Scythians, with the help of this and mares' milk cheese<sup>3</sup> can go eleven or twelve days without drinking.

<sup>4</sup> [Birthwort is fragrant to the smell but in taste is very bitter : in colour it is black. The best grows on the mountains : it has a leaf like *alsine*, but rounder : it is useful for many purposes, and is best for sores on the head<sup>5</sup> and other sores, also for bites of reptiles, for inducing sleep and for disorders of the womb.<sup>6</sup> It is directed that it should be applied as a plaster, steeped in water, and for the other purposes should be given shredded into honey and olive-oil : for snake-bites it should be taken in sour wine and also used as a plaster on the bite : to induce sleep it should be scraped up<sup>7</sup> and administered in black dry wine ; in cases of *prolapsus uteri* a lotion of it mixed with water should be applied.]

<sup>4</sup> Diosc. 3. 4 ; Plin. 25. 95. This section is repeated 9. 20. 4. with considerable variations : that seems to be its proper place.

<sup>5</sup> κεφαλῆς conj. W. ; κεφαλὴν Ald. cf. § 20, κεφαλόθλαστα.

<sup>6</sup> ὑστέρα conj. W., cf. below, ἐὰν δὲ αἱ μήτραι κ.τ.λ. and the duplicate passage § 20 ; ἕτερα MSS.

<sup>7</sup> κνίσαι conj. W. ; κνίσας U\* Ald.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 4 Αὗται μὲν οὖν γλυκεῖαι. ἄλλαι δὲ πικραί, αἱ δὲ βαρεῖαι τῇ γεύσει. γίνονται δέ τινες τῶν γλυκειῶν αἱ μὲν ἐκστατικάί, καθάπερ ἡ ὁμοία τῷ σκολύμῳ περὶ Τέγεαν, ἣν καὶ Πάνδειος ὁ ἀνδριαντοποιὸς φαγὼν ἐργαζόμενος ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ἐξέστη. αἱ δὲ θανατηφόροι, καθάπερ ἡ περὶ τὰ μέταλλα ἐν τοῖς ἔργοις τοῖς ἐν Θράκῃ· κούφη δὲ καὶ ἡδεῖα πάνυ τῇ γεύσει καὶ τὸν θάνατον ὑπνώδη τινὰ ποιοῦσα καὶ ἐλαφρόν. ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ τοῖς χρώμασι διαφορὰς οὐ τῷ λευκῷ καὶ μέλανι καὶ ξανθῷ μόνον, ἀλλ' ἔνιαι καὶ οἰνοχρώτες, αἱ δ' ἐρυθραί, καθάπερ ἡ τοῦ ἐρευθεδανού.
- 5 Ἡ δὲ τοῦ πενταφύλλου ἢ πενταπετοῦς, καλοῦσι γὰρ ἀμφοτέρως, ὀρυττομένη ἐρυθρὰ ξηραίνουμένη δὲ μέλαινα γίνεται καὶ τετράγωνος· ἔχει δὲ τὸ φύλλον ὥσπερ οἶναρον μικρὸν δὲ καὶ τὴν χροῖαν ὅμοιον· καὶ αὐξάνεται καὶ φθίνει ἅμα τῇ ἀμπέλῳ· πάντα δὲ πέντε τὰ φύλλα, δι' ὃ καὶ ἡ προσηγορία· καυλοὺς δὲ ἐπὶ γῆν ἴησι λεπτοὺς καὶ κνήμας ἔχει.
- 6 Τὸ δὲ ἐρευθεδανὸν φύλλον ὅμοιον κιττῷ πλὴν στρογγυλότερον· φύεται δ' ἐπὶ γῆς ὥσπερ ἄγρωστις, φιλεῖ δὲ παλίσκια χωρία. οὐρητικὴ δέ, δι' ὃ καὶ χρώνται πρὸς τὰ τῆς ὀσφύος ἀλγήματα καὶ πρὸς τὰς ἰσχυιάδας.
- Ἔνιαι δὲ ἰδιόμορφοί τινες, ὥσπερ ἡ τε τοῦ σκορπίου καλουμένου καὶ ἡ τοῦ πολυποδίου. ἡ

<sup>1</sup> These words shew that § 3 is out of place.

<sup>2</sup> cf. *C P.* 6. 4. 5.

<sup>3</sup> ἢ conj. Sch.; αἱ U\* Ald.

<sup>4</sup> ἐν τοῖς ἔργοις τοῖς W. from U\*. ? a gloss on μέταλλα.  
τὰ μετ. τὰ ἐν Θ. Ald. H.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 25. 139.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XIII. 4-6

<sup>1</sup> These then are sweet : other roots are bitter, and some unpleasant to the taste. Of those that are sweet <sup>2</sup> there are some that cause mental derangement, as the plant like the golden thistle which grows near Tegea : of this Pandeios the sculptor ate, and went mad while he was working in the temple. Others have fatal effects, as that <sup>3</sup> which grows near the mines in the fields of <sup>4</sup> Thrace : this however is inoffensive and quite sweet to the taste, and the death which it causes is easy and like falling asleep. There are also differences in colour, not merely as to being black or white or yellow, but some are quite wine-coloured and some are red, as the root of madder.

<sup>5</sup> The root of *pentaphyllon* or *pentapetes* (cinquefoil) <sup>6</sup> (for the plant bears both names) is red when it is dug up, but as it dries it becomes black and square : its leaf is like a vine-leaf, and it is small and like it in colour : it grows and fades along with the vine. It only has five leaves in all, whence its name : it sends out long slender stems on the ground, and it has joints.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>8</sup> Madder has a leaf like ivy, but it is rounder : it grows along the ground like dog's-tooth grass and loves shady spots. It has diuretic properties, wherefore it is used for pains in the loins or hip-disease.

Some roots are of peculiar shape, as that of the plant called 'scorpion-plant' (leopard's bane) <sup>9</sup> and that of polypody. For the former is like a scorpion

<sup>6</sup> πενταπετούς conj. Sch.; πενταπέτου UAld; πενταπέτου M U\*. cf. Diosc. 4. 42.

<sup>7</sup> καὶ κνήμας ἔχει U\*; καὶ κν. ἔ. πυκνάς Ald.; καὶ κνίκας ἔχει πυκνάς UM. cf. πολύκνημος, Diosc. 3. 94. Text probably defective, as nothing is said of the plant's medicinal use.

<sup>8</sup> Diosc. 3. 143; Plin. 19. 47.

<sup>9</sup> cf. 9. 18. 2.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μέν γὰρ ὁμοία σκορπίῳ καὶ χρησίμῃ δὲ πρὸς τὴν πληγὴν αὐτοῦ καὶ πρὸς ἄλλ' ἅττα. ἡ δὲ τοῦ πολυποδίου δασεῖα καὶ ἔχουσα κοτυληδόνας, ὥσπερ αἱ τοῦ πολύποδος πλεκτάναι. καθαίρει δὲ κάτω· κὰν περιάψῃται τις οὗ φασιν ἐμφύεσθαι πολύπουν. ἔχει δὲ φύλλον ὅμοιον τῇ πτερίδι τῇ μεγάλῃ καὶ φύεται ἐν ταῖς πέτραις.

XIV. Πασῶν δὲ τῶν ῥιζῶν αἱ μὲν πλείω χρόνον αἱ δὲ ἐλάττω διαμένουσιν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἐλλέβορος καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη χρήσιμος, ἡ δὲ ἀριστολοχία πέντε ἢ ἕξ, χαμαιλέων δὲ ὁ μέλας τετταράκοντα, κενταυρὶς δὲ δέκα ἢ δώδεκα· πίειρα δὲ ἡ ῥίζα καὶ πυκνή· πευκέδανον δὲ πέντε ἢ ἕξ, ἀμπέλου δὲ ἀγρίας ἐνιαυτόν, ἐὰν ἐν σκιᾷ ἢ καὶ ἄπληκτος, εἰ δὲ μή, σαπρὰ καὶ σομφώδης· ἄλλαι δὲ ἄλλους ἔχουσαι χρόνους. πάντων δὲ ὅλως τῶν φαρμάκων πλείστον διαμένει χρόνον τὸ ἐλατήριον, καὶ τὸ παλαιότατον ἄριστον. ἰατρὸς δ' οὖν τις ἔλεγεν οὐκ ἀλαζὼν οὐδὲ ψεύστης ὡς εἶη παρ' αὐτῷ καὶ διακοσίῳ ἐτῶν θαυμαστὸν δὲ τῇ  
 2 ἀρετῇ, δοῦναι δὲ αὐτῷ τινα δῶρον. αἰτία δὲ τῆς χρονιότητος ἡ ὑγρότης· διὰ γὰρ ταύτην καὶ ὅταν κόψωσι τιθέασιν εἰς τέφραν ὑγρόν, καὶ οὐδ' ὡς γίνεται ξηρόν, ἀλλ' ἄχρι πεντήκοντα ἐτῶν σβέννυσσι προσαγομενον τοὺς λύχνους. φασὶ δὲ μόνον

<sup>1</sup> cf. the mediaeval doctrine of 'signatures.'

<sup>2</sup> Diosc. 4. 186.

<sup>3</sup> τις οὐ conj. Sch.; τις ὡς Ald.; τις UM; τις ὡς U\*

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 27. 143.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 9. 8. 7.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 9. 20. 3.

<sup>7</sup> ἀπληκτος: ? by worms. cf. ἄκοπος.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XIII. 6 - XIV. 2

and is also useful <sup>1</sup> against the sting of that creature and for certain other purposes. <sup>2</sup> The root of polypody is rough and has suckers like the tentacles of the polyp. It purges downwards: and, if one wears it as an amulet, they say that one <sup>3</sup> does not get a polypus. It has a leaf like the great fern, and it grows on rocks.

*Of the time for which roots can be kept without losing their virtue.*

XIV. <sup>4</sup> Some roots keep a longer, some a shorter time. Hellebore retains its usefulness for as much as thirty years, birthwort five or six, the black chamaeleon for forty, feverwort <sup>5</sup> (whose root is thick and compact) for ten or twelve. Sulphur-wort keeps five or six years, the root of the 'wild vine' <sup>6</sup> (bryony) for a year, if it be kept in the shade and not damaged: <sup>7</sup> otherwise it rots and becomes spongy. <sup>8</sup> Others keep for various periods. But, to speak generally, of all plants used as drugs the 'driver' <sup>9</sup> keeps longest, and, the older it is, the better it is. At least a certain physician, who was no boaster nor liar, said that he had some which was 200 years old and of marvellous virtue, and that it was a present to him from some one. The cause of its keeping so long is its moisture: <sup>10</sup> for to secure this, as soon as they have cut it, they put it among ashes without drying it, and not even so does it become dry, but up to fifty years it will put the lamp <sup>11</sup> out if it is brought near it. And they say that alone of all

<sup>8</sup> *σπομφώδης* conj. Sch.; *σπογκώδης* Ald.H.

<sup>9</sup> A manufactured drug. cf. 9. 9. 4.

<sup>10</sup> Diosc. 4. 150; Plin. 20. 5.

<sup>11</sup> *λύχνους* conj. Sch.: so Vin.Cod.Cas.GPlin. l.c.; *αὐχμοὺς* U\* Ald; *χρόνους* UM.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἡ μάλιστα ὑπέρινον ἄνω ποιεῖν τῶν φαρμάκων· αὕτη μὲν οὖν ἰδιότης τις δυνάμεως.

- 3 Τῶν δὲ ῥιζῶν ὅσαι μὲν γλυκύτητά τινα ἔχουσιν  
 ξυμβαίνει θριπηδέστους γίνεσθαι χρονιζομένας,  
 ὅσαι δὲ δριμύειαι, τοῦτο μὲν μὴ πᾶσχειν ἀμαυροῦ-  
 σθαι δ' αὐτῶν τὰς δυνάμεις μανουμένων καὶ  
 κενουμένων. τῶν δ' ἔξω θηρίων ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν  
 ἄπτεται ῥίζης δριμύειας, ἡ δὲ σφονδύλη πασῶν  
 τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ἴδιον τῆς τοῦ ζώου φύσεως.

- 4 Πᾶσαν δὲ χεῖρω γίνεσθαι ῥίζαν, ἐὰν εἴσῃ τις  
 τελειωθῆναι καὶ ἀδρυνθῆναι τὸν καρπὸν· ὡσαύ-  
 τως δὲ καὶ τὸν καρπὸν, ἐὰν ὀπίσης τὴν ῥίζαν· ὥς  
 ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ δὲ αἱ φαρμακώδεις οὐκ ὀπίζονται,  
 ὧν δ' ἂν τὰ σπέρματα φαρμακώδη, αὗται δὲ  
 ὀπίζονται· χρῆσθαι δὲ τινὲς φασι μᾶλλον ταῖς  
 ῥίζαις, ὅτι ἰσχυρότερος ὁ καρπὸς ὥσθ' ὑπενεγκεῖν  
 τὸ σῶμα. φαίνεται δὲ οὐ καθ' ὅλου τοῦτο ἀλη-  
 θές· ἐπεὶ καὶ οἱ ἐν Ἀντικύρᾳ τοῦ σησαμώδους  
 [ἐλλεβόρου] διδόασιν, [ὅτι ὁ καρπὸς ὅμοιος ση-  
 σάμῳ].

XV. Φαρμακώδεις δὲ δοκοῦσιν εἶναι τόποι  
 μάλιστα τῶν μὲν ἔξω τῆς Ἑλλάδος οἱ περὶ τὴν  
 Τυρρηνίαν καὶ τὴν Λατίνην, ἐν ᾗ καὶ τὴν Κίρκην  
 εἶναι λέγουσιν· καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον γε, ὥς Ὀμηρός

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 27. 143.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. not engendered in the root.

<sup>3</sup> A beetle? cf. Arist. H.A. 5. 8.

<sup>4</sup> This section is omitted in U\*. Plin. 27. 144.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XIV. 2—XV. 1

drugs, or to a greater degree than any, it effects a thorough purge upwards: this then is a virtue peculiar to it.

Those roots which contain any sweetness become worm-eaten in course of time, but those that are pungent are not so affected, though their virtues diminish as they become flabby and waste away.

<sup>1</sup> No creature coming from without <sup>2</sup> touches a pungent root, but the *sphondyle* <sup>3</sup> attacks them all; this then is a peculiarity of this creature.

<sup>4</sup> Any root, they say, deteriorates if one lets the fruit grow to maturity and ripen: and so in like manner does the fruit, if you drain the root of its juice: and in general roots with medicinal properties do not have the juice of their roots taken, and only those whose seeds are medicinal are thus treated. But some say that they use the roots for choice, because the fruit is too powerful for the human body to be able to bear it. However this does not appear to be true as a universal rule, seeing that the people of Anticyra administer <sup>5</sup> doses of the drug <sup>6</sup> *sesamodes* made from hellebore, which is so called because its fruit is like sesame.

*Of the localities which specially produce medicinal herbs.*

XV. The places outside Hellas which specially produce medicinal herbs seem to be the parts of Tyrrhenia and Latium (where they say that Circe dwelt), and still more parts of Egypt, as Homer says:

<sup>5</sup> i.e. and it is in this case the *fruit* which is used. The drug in question, as well as the plant, was called *σησαμοειδής* or *σησαμοειδής*. cf. 9. 9. 2 n.; Diosc. 4. 149.

<sup>6</sup> Or (if *ἐλλεβόρου* is sound) 'of the sesame-like hellebore,' i.e. he 'black.' *ὅτι* . . . *σησάμφ* I have bracketed, as a gloss on *σησαμώδους*: *ἐλλεβόρου* is probably also a gloss.

## THEOPHRASTUS

φησι, τὰ περὶ Αἴγυπτον· ἐκεῖθεν γὰρ τὴν Ἑλένην φησὶ λαβεῖν “ἐσθλὰ τὰ οἱ Πολύδαμνα πόρεν Θῶνος παράκοιτις Αἰγυπτίῃ· τόθι πλείστα φύει ζεῖδωρος ἄρουρα φάρμακα, πολλὰ μὲν ἐσθλὰ τετυγμένα πολλὰ δὲ λυγρά.” ὦν δὴ καὶ τὸ νηπενθὲς ἐκεῖνό φησιν εἶναι καὶ ἄχολον, ὥστε λήθην ποιεῖν καὶ ἀπάθειαν τῶν κακῶν. καὶ σχεδὸν αὐταὶ μὲν εἰκόασιν ὥσπερ ὑπὸ τῶν ποιητῶν ὑποδεδεῖχθαι. καὶ γὰρ Αἰσχύλος ἐν ταῖς ἐλεγείαις ὡς πολυφάρμακον λέγει τὴν Τυρρηνίαν· “Τυρρηνὸν γενεάν, φαρμακοποιὸν ἔθνος.”

2 Οἱ δὲ τόποι πάντες πως φαίνονται μετέχειν τῶν φαρμάκων, ἀλλὰ τῷ μᾶλλον καὶ ἧττον διαφέρειν· καὶ γὰρ οἱ πρὸς ἄρκτον καὶ μεσημβρίαν καὶ οἱ πρὸς ἀνατολὰς ἔχουσι θαυμαστάς δυνάμεις. ἐν Αἰθιοπία γὰρ ἡ τοὺς οἰστοὺς χρίουσι ῥίζα τίς ἐστι θανατηφόρος. ἐν δὲ Σκύθαις αὕτη τε καὶ ἕτεραι πλείους, αἱ μὲν παραχρῆμα ἀπαλλάττουσαι τοὺς προσενεγκαμένους, αἱ δ' ἐν χρόνοις αἱ μὲν ἐλάττουσιν αἱ δ' ἐν πλείοσιν, ὥστ' ἐνίους καταφθίνειν. ἐν Ἰνδοῖς δὲ καὶ ἕτερα γένη πλείω, περιττότατα δέ, εἴπερ ἀληθῆ λέγουσιν, ἥ τε δυνάμην τὸ αἷμα διαχεῖν καὶ οἶον ὑποφεύγειν, καὶ πάλιν ἢ συνάγουσα καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὴν ἐπισπωμένη, ἃ δὴ φασιν εὐρῆσθαι πρὸς τὰ τῶν ὀφιδίων τῶν θανατηφόρων δῆγματα.

3 Περὶ δὲ τὴν Θράκην εἶναι μὲν καὶ ἐτέρας οὐκ ὀλίγας, ἰσχυροτάτην δὲ ὡς εἰπεῖν τὴν ἰσχαιμον, ἣν δὴ λέγουσιν οἱ μὲν κεντηθείσης τῆς φλεβὸς

<sup>1</sup> Od. 4. 221 foll.

<sup>2</sup> ὦν δὴ conj. Sch.; ὡς δὴ U\*; ἐν οἷς δὴ PAld.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xv. 1-3

for thence he says<sup>1</sup> that Helen brought "things of virtue which Polydamna, the Egyptian wife of Thon, gave her; there the grain-bearing earth produces most drugs, many that are good, and many baneful." Among these<sup>2</sup> he says was *nepenthes*, the famous drug which cures sorrow and passion, so that it causes forgetfulness and indifference to ills. So these lands seem to have been pointed out, as it were, by the poets. For Aeschylus too in his elegies speaks of Tyrrhenia as rich in drugs, for he tells of the "Tyrrhenian stock, a nation that makes drugs."

It seems that almost all places take their share in producing drugs, but that they differ in the extent to which they do so; for the regions of the North, South, and East have herbs of marvellous virtue. Thus in Ethiopia there is a certain deadly root<sup>3</sup> with which they smear their arrows. And in Scythia there is this and there are also others, some of which kill at once those who eat them, some after an interval, shorter or longer, so that in the latter case men have a lingering death. In India there are many other kinds,<sup>4</sup> but the most extraordinary,<sup>5</sup> if they tell the truth, are these: there is one which has the power to make the blood disperse and as it were to put it to flight,<sup>6</sup> and another which collects it and draws it to itself; these they say were discovered as remedies for the bites of deadly serpents.

In Thrace it is said there are fairly numerous other kinds, but that about the most powerful is 'blood-stancher,'<sup>7</sup> which stops and prevents the flow

<sup>3</sup> Somali arrow-poison. Index App. (27).

<sup>4</sup> γένη conj. Dalec.; μέρη Ald.

<sup>5</sup> περιττότατα conj. W.; περιττοτάτη Ald.

<sup>6</sup> ? add ποιεῖν after ὑποφύγειν. <sup>7</sup> Plin. 25. 83.

## THEOPHRASTUS

οἱ δὲ καὶ σφοδροτέρως διατμηθείσης ἴσχειν καὶ κωλύειν τὴν χύσιν. [ταῦτα μὲν οὖν, ὥσπερ εἶπομεν, ἔοικε δηλοῦν τὸ κοινόν.] τῶν μὲν οὖν ἕξω τόπων οἱ φαρμακωδέστατοι οὗτοι.

- 4 Τῶν δὲ περὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα τόπων φαρμακωδέστατον τό τε Πήλιον τὸ ἐν Θετταλία καὶ τὸ Τελέθριον τὸ ἐν Εὐβοίᾳ καὶ ὁ Παρνασσός, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἡ Ἀρκαδία καὶ ἡ Λακωνική· καὶ γὰρ αὗται φαρμακώδεις ἀμφοτέραι· δι' ὃ καὶ οἱ γε Ἀρκάδες εἰώθασιν ἀντὶ τοῦ φαρμακοποτεῖν γαλακτοποτεῖν περὶ τὸ ἔαρ, ὅταν οἱ ὅποι μάλιστα τῶν τοιούτων φύλλων ἀκμάζωσι· τότε γὰρ φαρμακωδέστατον τὸ γάλα· πίνουσι δὲ βόειον· δοκεῖ γὰρ πολυνομώτατον καὶ παμφαγώτατον εἶναι πάντων ὁ βούς.

- 5 Φύεται δὲ παρ' αὐτοῖς ὃ τε ἐλλέβορος ἀμφοτέρως καὶ ὁ λευκὸς καὶ ὁ μέλας· ἔτι δὲ δαῦκον δαφνοειδὲς κροκόεν, καὶ ἦν ἐκεῖνοι μὲν ῥάφανον ἀγρίαν καλοῦσι τῶν δ' ἰατρῶν τινες κεράϊν, καὶ ἦν οἱ μὲν ἀλθαίαν ἐκεῖνοι δὲ μαλάχην ἀγρίαν, καὶ ἡ ἀριστολοχία καὶ τὸ σέσελι καὶ τὸ ἵπποσέλινον καὶ τὸ πευκέδανον καὶ ἡ Ἡράκλεια καὶ ὁ στρύχνος ἀμφοτέρος ὃ τε φοινικοῦν ἔχων τὸν καρπὸν καὶ ὁ μέλανα.

- 6 Φύεται δὲ καὶ ὁ σίκυος ὁ ἄγριος, ἐξ οὗ τὸ ἐλατήριον συντίθεται· καὶ ὁ τιθύμαλλος, ἐξ οὗ τὸ ἵπποφάες· ἄριστον δὲ τοῦτο περὶ Τεγέαν καὶ κεῖνο μάλιστα σπινδαίνεται· φύεται δ' ἐκεῖ ἐπὶ πλεον·

---

<sup>1</sup> I omit ταῦτα . . . κοινόν as apparently out of place and a duplicate of the last sentence of § 8.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 25. 94; cf. 4. 5. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 25. 110.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xv. 3-6

of blood, some say if the vein is merely pricked, others even if it is deeply cut into.<sup>1</sup> These then of the places outside Hellas are those that are most productive of drugs.

<sup>2</sup> Of places in Hellas those most productive of drugs are Pelion in Thessaly, Telethron in Euboea, Parnassus, and also Arcadia and Laconia, for both these states produce medicinal herbs; wherefore the Arcadians are accustomed, instead of drinking medicine, to drink milk in spring when the juices of such plants are at their best, for then the milk has most medicinal virtue. It is cows' milk that they drink, since it appears that the cow eats more than any other animal and is more impartial as to what she eats.

<sup>3</sup> Both kinds of hellebore, the white and the black, grow in their country, and also carrot,<sup>4</sup> a saffron-coloured plant like bay, and a plant which the Arcadians call 'wild cabbage'<sup>5</sup> (spurge) but some physicians *kerāis*; also a plant called by some marsh mallow,<sup>6</sup> also birthwort hartwort alexanders sulphurwort *Herakleia*, and both kinds of *strykhnos*,<sup>7</sup> that which has a scarlet and that which has a black fruit.

There also grow there the 'wild cucumber' (squirting cucumber), of which the drug 'driver'<sup>8</sup> is compounded, and the *tithymallos* (spurge) of which *hippophaes*<sup>9</sup> is made; this is best about Tegea, and that kind is much sought after; it grows there in

<sup>4</sup> δαῦκον. This name recurs §8 and 9. 20. 2. Text must be defective here: the epithets are unintelligible, and perhaps belong to another plant whose name has dropped out. See Index.

<sup>5</sup> cf. 9. 12. 1. and Index.

<sup>6</sup> ἀλθαίαν conj. Sch., cf. 9. 18. 1; ἀλθέαν Ald. cf. Plin. 20. 222.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 9. 11. 5. <sup>8</sup> cf. 9. 9 4; 9. 14. 1.

<sup>9</sup> ἵπποφάες is elsewhere the name of a plant: cf. Diosc. 4 159. ἐξ οὗ may be corrupt, or the text defective.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πλείστον δὲ καὶ κάλλιστον φύεται περὶ τὴν Κλειτορίαν.

- <sup>1</sup> Ἡ δὲ πανάκεια γίνεται κατὰ τὸ πετραῖον περὶ Ψωφίδα καὶ πλείστη καὶ ἀρίστη. τὸ δὲ μῶλυ περὶ Φενεὸν καὶ ἐν τῇ Κυλλήνῃ. φασὶ δ' εἶναι καὶ ὅμοιον ᾧ ὁ Ὅμηρος εἶρηκε, τὴν μὲν ῥίζαν ἔχον στρογγύλην προσεμφερῇ κρομύῳ τὸ δὲ φύλλον ὅμοιον σκίλλῃ· χρῆσθαι δὲ αὐτῷ πρὸς τε τὰ ἰλεξιφάρμακα καὶ τὰς μαγείας· οὐ μὲν ὀρύττειν γ' εἶναι χαλεπὸν, ὥς Ὅμηρός φησι.

- <sup>8</sup> Τὸ δὲ κώνειον ἄριστον περὶ Σοῦσα καὶ ἐν τοῖς ψυχροτάτοις τόποις. γίνεται δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ Λακωνικῇ τὰ πολλὰ τούτων· καὶ γὰρ αὕτη πολυφάρμακος. ἐν Ἀχαΐᾳ δὲ ἥ τε τραγάκανθα πολλὴ καὶ οὐδὲν χείρων ὥς οἴονται τῆς Κρητικῆς ἀλλὰ καὶ τῇ ὄψει καλλίων· καὶ δαῦκον περὶ τὴν Πατραϊκὴν διαφέρων· τοῦτο δὲ θερμαντικὸν φύσει, ῥίζαν δὲ ἔχει μέλαιναν. φύεται δὲ τὰ πολλὰ τούτων καὶ ἐν τῷ Παρνασῷ καὶ περὶ τὸ Τελέθριον. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν κοινὰ πλείονων χώρων.

XVI. Τὸ δὲ δίκταμνον ἴδιον τῆς Κρήτης, θαυμαστὸν δὲ τῇ δυνάμει καὶ πρὸς πλείω χρήσιμον μάλιστα δὲ πρὸς τοὺς τόκους τῶν γυναικῶν. ἔστι δὲ τὸ μὲν φύλλον παρόμοιον τῇ βληχοῖ, ἔχει δέ τι καὶ κατὰ τὸν χυλὸν ἐμφερές τὰ δὲ κλωνία λεπτότερα. χρῶνται δὲ τοῖς φύλλοις, οὐ τοῖς κλωσὶν οὐδὲ τῷ καρπῷ· χρήσιμον δὲ πρὸς πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, μάλιστα δέ, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, πρὸς

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 25. 30-33.

<sup>2</sup> κατὰ conj. St.; καὶ Ald.H.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 25. 151.

<sup>4</sup> Σοῦσα: cf. 9. 16, 8; Λοῦσα (a town in Arcadia) conj. Sch. (usually Λοῦσοι), the other places mentioned being all in

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xv. 6--xvi. 1

considerable abundance, but in greatest abundance and best about Kleitoria.

<sup>1</sup> All-heal grows in great abundance and best in <sup>2</sup> the rocky ground about Psophis, moly about Pheneos and on Mount Kyllene. They say that this plant is like the moly mentioned by Homer, that it has a round root like an onion and a leaf like squill, and that it is used against spells and magic arts, but that it is not, as Homer says, difficult to dig up.

<sup>3</sup> Hemlock is best about Susa<sup>4</sup> and in the coldest spots. Most of these plants occur also in Laconia, for this too is a land rich in medicinal herbs. In Achaia tragacanth<sup>5</sup> is abundant and is as good as that of Crete, it is believed, and even fairer in appearance. *Daukon*<sup>6</sup> again is excellent in the country about Patrai<sup>7</sup>; this is by nature healing, and it has a black root. Most of these grow also on Mount Parnassus and about Telethron. So these plants are common to several lands.

*Of the medicinal herbs peculiar to Crete.*

XVI. <sup>8</sup>But dittany is peculiar to Crete. This plant is marvellous in virtue and is useful for many purposes, but especially for women in child-birth. Its leaf is like pennyroyal, to which it also bears some resemblance in taste; but the twigs are slenderer. They use the leaves, not the twigs nor the fruit: and the leaf is useful for many other purposes, but above all, Hellas. But Plin. 25. 154 has Susa: it can hardly be the Persian town.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 13. 115.

<sup>6</sup> Repeated 9. 20. 2; cf. 9. 15. 5 and Index.

<sup>7</sup> Πατραϊκὴν conj. Sch., cf. 9. 20. 2; πατρικὴν Ald.; σπαρτικὴν U\*; σπαρτικὴν MP; *Patrensi agro* G.

<sup>8</sup> Plin. 25. 92.



## THEOPHRASTUS

τὰς δυστοκίας τῶν γυναικῶν· ἡ γὰρ εὐτοκεῖν φασὶ ποιεῖν ἢ παύειν γε τοὺς πόνους ὁμολογουμένως· δίδεται δὲ πίνειν ἐν ὕδατι. σπάνιον δέ ἐστι· καὶ γὰρ ὀλίγος ὁ τόπος ὁ φέρων, καὶ τοῦτον αἱ αἷγες ἐκνέμονται διὰ τὸ φιληδεῖν. ἀληθές δέ φασιν εἶναι καὶ τὸ περὶ τῶν βελῶν, ὅτι φαγούσαις ὅταν τοξευθῶσι ἐκβάλλει. τὸ μὲν οὖν δίκταμνον τοιοῦτόν τε καὶ τοιαύτας ἔχει τὰς δυνάμεις.

- 2 Τὸ δὲ ψευδοδίκταμνον τῷ μὲν φύλλῳ ὅμοιον τοῖς κλωνίοις δ' ἔλαττον τῇ δυνάμει δὲ πολὺ λειπόμενον. βοηθεῖ μὲν γὰρ καὶ ταυτά, χειρὸν δὲ πολλῷ καὶ ἀσθενέστερον. ἔστι δὲ εὐθύς ἐν τῷ στόματι φανερὰ τοῦ δικτάμνου ἢ δύνάμις· δια-  
θερμαίνει γὰρ ἀπὸ μικροῦ σφόδρα. τιθέασι δὲ τὰς δεσμίδας ἐν νάρθηκι ἢ καλάμῳ πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἀποπνεῖν· ἀσθενέστερον γὰρ ἀποπνεύσαν. λέ-  
γουσι δέ τινες ὡς ἡ μὲν φύσις μία ἢ τοῦ δικ-  
τάμνου καὶ ἡ τοῦ ψευδοδικτάμνου, διὰ δὲ τὸ ἐν εὐγαιοτέροις φύεσθαι τόποις χειροὶ γίνεσθαι, καθάπερ καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ πλείω τούτων κατὰ τὰς δυνάμεις. τὸ γὰρ δίκταμνον φιλεῖ χώραν τραχείαν.

- 3 Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἕτερον δίκταμνον ὥσπερ ὁμώνυμον, οὔτε τὴν ὄψιν οὔτε τὴν δύναμιν ἔχον τὴν αὐτήν· φύλλον γὰρ ἔχει ὅμοιον σισυμβρίῳ τοὺς δὲ κλῶ-  
νας μείζους· ἔτι δὲ τὴν χρείαν καὶ τὴν δύναμιν οὐκ ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, θαυμαστὸν ἅμα καὶ ἴδιον τῆς νήσου. φασὶ δὲ

<sup>1</sup> ἐκβάλλει conj. Sch.; ἐκβάλλειν Ald.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 25 93.

<sup>3</sup> νάρθηκι ἢ conj. Sch.; νερθηκίδη ἢ U; νερθηκίδι ἢ M; νάρθηκι καὶ Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xvi. 1-3

as was said, against difficult labour in women; for it is said that either it makes labour quite easy or at least it confessedly makes the pains to cease: it is given as a draught in water. It is a scarce plant: for the region which bears it is not extensive, and the goats graze it down because they are fond of it. The story of the arrows is also said to be true,—that, if goats eat it when they have been shot, it rids them<sup>1</sup> of the arrow. Such then is dittany and such its properties.

<sup>2</sup> ‘False dittany’ is like it in leaf, but has smaller twigs, and in virtue is far inferior. For it is of service in the same ways, but is feebler and not nearly so powerful. The virtue of dittany is perceived directly it is taken into the mouth: for a small piece of it has a very warming effect. The bunches of it are put in the hollow stem of ferula<sup>3</sup> or a reed, so that it may not exhale its virtue: for, if it does so, it is less effective. Some say that dittany and ‘false dittany’ are essentially the same plant, but that the latter is an inferior form produced by growing in places with richer soil; just as many other things<sup>4</sup> become inferior in their properties for the same cause. For dittany loves rough ground.

<sup>5</sup> There is also another plant called ‘dittany,’ though it has nothing in common with these except the name. This has neither the same appearance nor the same virtue; for its leaf is like bergamot-mint and its twigs are larger, and further its use and virtue are differently shewn. The true plant is, as was said, marvellous, and is also peculiar to the island of Crete. Indeed some say that the plants

<sup>4</sup> πλείω τούτων Ald., probably a duplicate of ἄλλα πολλά; not represented in G; ἀλλοιοῦται conj. W. <sup>5</sup> Plin. 25. 94.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τινες ὅλως τῶν φύλλων καὶ τῶν ὀροδάμνων καὶ ἀπλῶς τῶν ὑπὲρ γῆς τὰ ἐν Κρήτῃ διαφέρειν, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων τῶν γε πλείστων τὰ ἐν τῷ Παρνασσῷ.

- 4 Τὸ δ' ἀκόνιτον γίνεται μὲν καὶ ἐν Κρήτῃ καὶ ἐν Ζακύνθῳ, πλείστον δὲ καὶ ἄριστον ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ τῇ ἐν Πόντῳ. ἔχει δὲ φύλλον μὲν κιχοριῶδες, ρίζαν δὲ ὁμοίαν τῷ σχήματι καὶ τῷ χρώματι καρίδι, τὴν δὲ δύναμιν τὴν θανατηφόρον ἐν ταύτῃ· τὸ δὲ φύλλον καὶ τὸν καρπὸν οὐθέν φασι ποιεῖν· καρπὸς δὲ ἐστὶ πόας οὐχ ὑλήματος. βραχεῖα δὲ ἡ πόα καὶ οὐδὲν ἔχουσα περιττόν, ἀλλὰ παρομοία τῷ σίτῳ τὸ δὲ σπέρμα οὐ σταχυηρόν. φύεται δὲ πανταχοῦ καὶ οὐκ ἐν ταῖς Ἀκόναις μόνον, ἀφ' ὧν ἔχει τὴν προσηγορίαν· αὕτη δὲ ἐστὶ κώμη τις τῶν Μαριανδυνῶν· φιλεῖ δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς πετρώδεις τόπους· οὐ νέμεται δὲ οὔτε πρόβατον οὔτ' ἄλλο
- 5 ζῶον οὐδέν. συντίθεσθαι δὲ τρόπον τινὰ πρὸς τὸ ἐργάζεσθαι καὶ οὐ παντὸς εἶναι· δι' ὃ καὶ τοὺς ἰατροὺς οὐκ ἐπισταμένους συντιθέναι σηπτικῷ τε χρῆσθαι καὶ πρὸς ἄλλα ἄττα· πινόμενον δ' οὐδεμίαν αἴσθησιν ποιεῖν οὔτ' ἐν οἴνῳ οὔτ' ἐν μελικράτῳ· συντίθεσθαι δὲ ὥστε κατὰ χρόνους τακτοὺς ἀναιρεῖν, οἶον δίμηνον τρίμηνον ἑξάμηνον ἐνιαυτόν, τοὺς δὲ καὶ δύο ἔτη· χεῖριστα δὲ ἀπαλ-

<sup>1</sup> ὀροδάμνων: this word seems to occur only here in T.

<sup>2</sup> Diosc. 4. 76 and 77; Plin. 27. 9 and 10.

<sup>3</sup> καρίδι conj. W.; καρία U; καρύα Ald. cf. Diosc. l.c.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 9. 8. 1.

<sup>5</sup> Plin. 6. 4, *portus Acone veneno aconito dirus*. But in 27. 10. he apparently did not recognise Ἀκόναις as a proper name,

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xvi. 3-5

of Crete are superior<sup>1</sup> in leaves boughs<sup>1</sup> and in general all the parts above ground to those of other places; while those of Parnassus are superior to most of those found elsewhere.

*Of wolf's-bane and its habitat, and of meadow-saffron.*

<sup>2</sup> Wolf's-bane grows in Crete and in Zakynthos, but is most abundant and best at Herakleia in Pontus. It has a leaf like chicory, a root like in shape and colour to a prawn,<sup>3</sup> and in this root resides its deadly property, whereas they say that the leaf and the fruit produce no effects. The fruit is that of a herb,<sup>4</sup> not that of a shrub or tree. It is a low-growing herb and shows no special feature, but is like corn, except that the seed is not in an ear. It grows everywhere and not only at Akonai,<sup>5</sup> from whence it gets its name (this is a village of the Mariandynoi)<sup>6</sup>: and it specially likes rocky ground. Neither sheep nor any other animals eat it.<sup>7</sup> In order to be effective it is said that it must be compounded in a certain manner, and that not everyone can do this: and so that physicians, not knowing how to compound it, use it as a septic and for other purposes: and<sup>8</sup> that, if drunk mixed in wine or a honey-posset, it produces no sensation: but that it can be so compounded as to prove fatal at a certain moment which may be in two three or six months, or in a year, or even in two years: and that the

and translates it *in nudis cautibus*, misled perhaps by τοὺς πετρώδεις τόπους below.

<sup>6</sup> Μαριανδυνῶν conj. Meurs.; περιανδύνων U\*Ald.H.

<sup>7</sup> U\* adds here βοηθεῖαι δὲ τοῖς ἐνεγκαμένοις εἰσὶ and omits §§ 5, 6 . . . εἶδέναι, continuing πολλάκις γὰρ φασὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα.

<sup>8</sup> δὲ add. Sch.

## THEOPHRASTUS

λάττειν τοὺς ἐν πλείστω χρόνῳ καταφθίνοντος τοῦ σώματος, ῥᾶστα δὲ τοὺς παραχρήμα. λυτικὸν δὲ φάρμακον οὐχ εὐρήσθαι, καθάπερ ἀκούομεν ἑτέρων τι φύεσθαι. ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἐγχωρίους ἀνασώζειν τινὰς μέλιτι καὶ οἴνῳ καὶ τοιούτοις τισί, σπανίως δὲ καὶ τούτους καὶ ἐργωδῶς.

- 6 Ἀλλὰ τοῦ ἐφήμερον τὸ φάρμακον εὐρήσθαι ἕτερον γάρ τι ῥίξιον εἶναι ὃ ἐφήμερον ἀπαλλάττει τοῦτο δὲ φύλλον ὅμοιον ἔχειν τῷ ἐλλεβόρῳ ἢ τῷ λειρίῳ· καὶ τοῦτο πάντας εἰδέναι· δι' ὃ καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδά φασι πολλάκις παροργισθέντα χρήσθαι, κᾶπειτα ἰατρεύειν αὐτὰ πρὸς τοῦτο ὀρμώντα, καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ ταχεῖαν ποιεῖσθαι τὴν ἀπαλλαγὴν οὐδὲ ἐλαφρὰν ἀλλὰ δυσχερὴ καὶ χρόνιον· εἰ μὴ ἄρα διὰ τὸ εὐθεράπευτον εἶναι καὶ ἀκατασκεύαστον ὥς δεῖ. φασὶ γοῦν καὶ παραχρήμα ἀπαλλάττεσθαι καὶ ὕστερον χρόνῳ τοὺς δὲ καὶ εἰς ἐνιαυτὸν ἄγειν, καὶ τὰς δόσεις ἀβοηθήτους εἶναι.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. no herb having that effect.

<sup>2</sup> ἑτέρων conj. Sch.; ἕτερόν τι φύεσθαι UAld.H.; ἕτερόν τι φυόμενον conj. W. G seems to have had a fuller text.

<sup>3</sup> ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἐγχ. UM; ἀλλὰ τινες τοῖς ἐνεγκαμένοις βοήθειαι εὐρηνται τοὺς γὰρ ἐγχ. Ald.H., which the indicative εὐρηνται shews to be a gloss.

<sup>4</sup> τοῦ ἐφήμερον U; τὰ ἐφ' ἡμέρον M; καὶ τὸ ἐφήμερον Ald. The passage about ἐφήμερον, which interrupts the account of ἀκόνιτον, is confused, and the text probably defective; translation a makeshift. The sense of εἰ μὴ . . . ὥς δεῖ being perhaps irrecoverable, the connexion of what follows is obscured. W. gives up the passage.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xvi. 5-6

longer the time the more painful the death, since the body then wastes away, while, if it acts at once, death is quite painless. And it is said that no antidote<sup>1</sup> which can counteract it has been discovered, like the natural antidotes to other<sup>2</sup> poisonous herbs of which we are told: though the country-folk<sup>3</sup> can sometimes save a man with honey and wine and such like things, only however occasionally and with difficulty.

(On the other hand they say that for meadow-saffron<sup>4</sup> the antidote has been found: for that there is another root which counteracts that herb:<sup>5</sup> and that it<sup>6</sup> has a leaf like hellebore<sup>7</sup> or the madonna lily:<sup>8</sup> and that this<sup>9</sup> is generally known. Wherefore they say that slaves often take meadow-saffron when greatly provoked, and then themselves have recourse<sup>10</sup> to the antidote and effect a cure,—seeing that the poison does not cause a speedy and easy death, but<sup>11</sup> one that is lingering and slow,—unless indeed, merely because the cure is so easy,<sup>12</sup> the antidote has not been properly prepared.<sup>13</sup> At least they say that though death may ensue at once, sometimes it only occurs after a considerable interval, which in some cases extends to a year, and that in these latter cases the dose given has incurable effects: and that

<sup>5</sup> δ ἐφήμερον PH.; δ ἐφημεραῖον U; δ ἐφ' ἡμεραῖον M; δ οὐκ ἐφήμερον Ald.

<sup>6</sup> τοῦτο δὲ Ald.; τόνδε δὲ καὶ U; τῶνδε δὲ καὶ M.

<sup>7</sup> i.e. the 'black': see Index.

<sup>8</sup> λειρίφ conj. Guilandinus from Diosc. 4. 84 (κρίνφ); αἰρίφ Ald. H. <sup>9</sup> τοῦτο Ald.; τοῦτο μὲν UM.

<sup>10</sup> After ὀρμῶντα UM add καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας ἐπὶ τοῦτο ὀρμᾶν and omit καὶ γὰρ . . . θανατηφόρων. <sup>11</sup> ἀλλὰ Ald.; οὐδὲ U\*.

<sup>12</sup> εὐθεράπευτον Ald.; ἀθεράπευτον U\*P.

<sup>13</sup> In which case apparently the slave outwits himself as well as his master by 'dying on him.'

## THEOPHRASTUS

ταῦτα δὲ ἐξακριβωθῆναι μάλιστα παρὰ τοῖς Τυρ-  
 7 ρηνοῖς τοῖς ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ. τοῦτο μὲν <οὖν> οὐδὲν  
 ἄτοπον, εἰ τρόπον μὲν τινα ἀβοήθητον ἄλλως δὲ  
 βοηθήσιμον, ὥσπερ καὶ ἕτερα τῶν θανατηφόρων.

Τὸ δὲ ἀκόνιτον ἄχρηστον, ὥσπερ εἴρηται, τοῖς  
 μὴ ἐπισταμένοις· οὐδὲ κεκτῆσθαι δὲ ἐξεῖναι, ἀλλὰ  
 θάνατον τὴν ζημίαν· τὴν δὲ τῶν χρόνων διαφορὰν  
 ἀκολουθεῖν κατὰ τὰς συλλογὰς· ἰσοχρόνους γὰρ  
 τοὺς θανάτους γίνεσθαι τοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς συλλογῆς  
 χρόνοις.

8 Θρασύας δ' ὁ Μαντινεὺς εὐρήκει τι τοιοῦτον,  
 ὥσπερ ἔλεγεν, ὥστε ῥαδίαν ποιεῖν καὶ ἄπονον τὴν  
 ἀπόλυσιν τοῖς ὁποῖς χρώμενος κωνεῖου τε καὶ  
 μήκωνος καὶ ἐτέρων τοιούτων, ὥστε εὖογκον εἶναι  
 σφόδρα καὶ μικρὸν ὅσον εἰς δραχμῆς ὀλκήν.  
 ἀβοήθητον δὲ πάντα καὶ δυνάμενον διαμένειν  
 ὅποσονοῦν χρόνον καὶ οὐδὲν ἀλλοιούμενον. ἐλάμ-  
 βανε δὲ τὸ κώνειον οὐχ ὅθεν ἐτύγχανεν ἀλλ' ἐκ  
 Σούσων καὶ εἴ τις ἄλλος τόπος ψυχρὸς καὶ πα-  
 λίσκιος· ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ τᾶλλα. συνετίθει δὲ  
 καὶ ἕτερα φάρμακα πολλὰ καὶ ἐκ πολλῶν. δεινὸς  
 δὲ καὶ Ἀλεξίας ὁ μαθητὴς αὐτοῦ καὶ οὐχ ἦττον  
 ἔντεχνος ἐκείνου· καὶ γὰρ τῆς ἄλλης ἰατρικῆς  
 ἔμπειρος.

---

<sup>1</sup> οὖν add. W.

<sup>2</sup> ἀκολουθεῖν κατὰ conj. W.; ἀκούειν εἶναι κατὰ Ald. H.; ἀκουεῖν  
 εἶναι καὶ M.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xvi. 6-8

these facts have been most carefully ascertained among the Tyrrhenians of Herakleia. Now<sup>1</sup> it is not surprising that in some circumstances the effects of the poison should be incurable, and yet in others that a cure should be possible, this being also the case with other deadly poisons.)

To return—wolf's bane, as has been said, is useless to those who do not understand it; in fact it is said that it is not lawful even to have it in one's possession, under pain of death; also that the length of time which it takes to produce its effects depends on<sup>2</sup> the time when it is gathered; for that the time which it takes to kill is equal to that which has elapsed since it was gathered.

*Of two famous druggists and of the virtues of hemlock.*

Thrasyas of Mantinea had discovered, as he said, a poison which produces an easy and painless end; he used the juices of hemlock poppy and other such herbs, so compounded as to make a dose of conveniently small size, weighing only somewhat less than a quarter of an ounce. For the effects of this compound there is absolutely no cure, and it will keep any length of time without losing its virtue at all. He used to gather his hemlock, not just anywhere, but at Susa<sup>3</sup> or some other cold and shady spot; and so too with the other ingredients; he also used to compound many other poisons, using many ingredients. His pupil Alexias was also clever and no less skilful than his master, being also versed in the science of medicine generally.

<sup>3</sup> Σούσων MSS.; Λούσων conj. Sch. cf. 9. 15. 8 n. The mention of Mantinea makes it likely that a place in Arcadia is intended.



## THEOPHRASTUS

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν εὐρήσθαι δοκεῖ πολλῶ μᾶλλον νῦν ἢ πρότερον. ὅτι δὲ διαφέρει τὸ χρῆσθαι πῶς ἐκάστῳ φανερόν ἐκ πολλῶν· ἐπεὶ καὶ Κεῖοι τῷ κωνεῖω πρότερον οὐχ οὕτω ἀλλὰ τρίβοντες ἐχρῶντο, καθάπερ οἱ ἄλλοι· νῦν δ' οὐδ' ἂν εἰς τρίψειεν, ἀλλὰ περιπτίσαντες καὶ ἀφελόντες τὸ κέλυφος, τοῦτο γὰρ τὸ τὴν δυσχέρειαν παρέχον δυσκατέργαστον ὄν, μετὰ ταῦτα κόπτουσιν ἐν τῷ ὄλμῳ καὶ διαττήσαντες λεπτὰ ἐπιπάττοντες ἐφ' ὕδωρ πίνουσιν, ὥστε ταχεῖαν καὶ ἐλαφρὰν γίνεσθαι τὴν ἀπαλλαγὴν.

XVII. Ἀπάντων δὲ τῶν φαρμάκων αἱ δυνάμεις ἀσθενέστεραι τοῖς συνειθισμένοις τοῖς δὲ καὶ ἀνενεργεῖς τὸ ὅλον. ἔνιοι γὰρ ἐλλέβορον ἐσθίνοντες πολλὴν ὥστε ἀναλίσκειν δέσμας ὅλας οὐδὲν πάσχουσιν· ὅπερ ἐποίει καὶ Θρασύας δεινότατος ὢν ὡς ἐδόκει περὶ τὰς ῥίζας. ποιοῦσι δὲ τοῦθ' ὡς ἔοικε καὶ τῶν νομέων τινές· δι' ὃ καὶ πρὸς τὸν φαρμακοπώλην τὸν θαυμαζόμενον ὡς κατήσθιε ῥίζαν μίαν ἢ δύο παραγενόμενος ὁ ποιμὴν καὶ ἀναλώσας ὅλην τὴν δέσμην ἐποίησεν ἀδόκιμον· ἐλέγετο δ' ὅτι καθ' ἐκάστην ἡμέραν τοῦτο ποιεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἕτεροι.

Κινδυνεύει γὰρ ἓνα τῶν φαρμάκων τῇ ἀσυνηθείᾳ φάρμακα γίνεσθαι, τάχα δὲ ἀληθέστερον

<sup>1</sup> δυσκατέργαστον: cf. C.P. 1 14. 4.

<sup>2</sup> διαττήσαντες conj. Hoffmann from G; διαπτήσαντες Ald. H.; διηθήσαντες U\* mP.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XVI. 9—XVII. 2

Now these things seem to have been ascertained far better in recent than in former times. And many things go to shew that the method of using the various drugs makes a difference; thus the people of Ceos formerly did not use hemlock in the way described, but just shredded it up for use, as did other people; but now not one of them would think of shredding it, but they first strip off the outside and take off the husk, since this is what causes the difficulty, as it is not easily assimilated<sup>1</sup>; then they bruise it in the mortar, and, after putting it through a fine sieve,<sup>2</sup> sprinkle it on water and so drink it; and then death is made swift and easy.

*How use diminishes the efficacy of drugs, and how they have not the same effect on all constitutions.*

XVII. <sup>3</sup>The virtues of all drugs become weaker to those who are accustomed to them, and in some cases become entirely ineffective. Thus some eat enough hellebore to consume whole bundles and yet suffer no hurt; this is what Thrasyas did, who, as it appeared, was very cunning in the use of herbs. And it appears that shepherds sometimes do the like; wherefore the shepherd who came before the vendor of drugs (at whom men marvelled because he ate one or two roots) and himself consumed the whole bundle, destroyed the vendor's reputation: it was said that both this man and others did this every day.

For it seems that some poisons become poisonous because they are unfamiliar, or perhaps it is a more accurate way of putting it to say that familiarity makes

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 27. 144.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- εἰπεῖν ὡς τῇ συνηθείᾳ οὐ φάρμακα· προσδεξα-  
μένης γὰρ τῆς φύσεως καὶ κατακρατούσης οὐκέτι  
φάρμακα, καθάπερ καὶ Θρασύας ἔλεγεν· ἐκείνος  
γὰρ ἔφη τὸ αὐτὸ τοῖς μὲν φάρμακον εἶναι τοῖς δ'  
οὐ φάρμακον, διαιρῶν τὰς φύσεις ἐκάστων· ᾤετο  
γὰρ δεῖν καὶ ἦν δεινὸς διαγινῶναι. ποιεῖ δέ τι  
δῆλον ὅτι πρὸς τῇ φύσει καὶ τὸ ἔθος. Εὐδημος  
γοῦν ὁ φαρμακοπώλης εὐδοκιμῶν σφόδρα κατὰ  
τὴν τέχνην συνθέμενος μηδὲν πείσεσθαι πρὸ  
ἡλίου δύναντος κατέφαγε μέτριον πάνυ καὶ οὐ  
3 κατέσχευεν οὐδ' ἐκράτησεν. ὁ δὲ Χῖος Εὐδημος  
πίνων ἐλλέβορον οὐκ ἐκαθαίρετο. καὶ ποτε ἔφη  
πιεῖν ἐν μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ δύο καὶ εἴκοσι πόσεις ἐν τῇ  
ἀγορᾷ καθήμενος ἐπὶ τῶν σκευῶν καὶ οὐκ ἐξανα-  
στήναι πρὸ τοῦ δείλην γενέσθαι· τότε δ' ἐλθὼν  
καὶ λούσασθαι καὶ δειπνεῖν ὥσπερ εἰώθει καὶ οὐκ  
ἐξεμέσαι· πλὴν οὗτός γε βοήθειάν τινα παρα-  
σκευασάμενος κατέσχε· κίσσηριν γὰρ ἐπιπάττων  
ἐπ' ὄξος δριμύ πιεῖν ἔφη μετὰ τὴν ἐβδόμην πόσιν,  
καὶ πάλιν ὕστερον ἐν οἴνῳ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον· τὴν  
δὲ τῆς κισσήριδος οὕτως ἰσχυρὰν εἶναι δύναμιν  
ὥστ' ἐάν τις εἰς πίθον ζέοντα <οἴνου> ἐμβάλῃ  
παύειν τὴν ζέσιν οὐ παραχρῆμα μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ  
ὅλως καταξηραίνουσάν τε δῆλον ὅτι καὶ ἀναδεχο-  
μένην τὸ πνεῦμα καὶ τοῦτο διιείσαν. οὗτος μὲν  
οὖν τό γε πλῆθος ταύτῃ τῇ βοηθείᾳ κατέσχευεν.  
4 "Ὅτι δὲ καὶ τὸ ἔθος ἰσχυρὸν φανερὸν ἐκ πολλῶν·

<sup>1</sup> This story is quoted by Apollonius, *Hist. Mirab.* 50.

poisons non-poisonous; for, when the constitution has accepted them and prevails over them, they cease to be poisons, as Thrasyas also remarked; for he said that the same thing was a poison to one and not to another; thus he distinguished between different constitutions, as he thought was right; and he was clever at observing the differences. Also, besides the constitution, it is plain that use has something to do with it. At least Eudemus, the vendor of drugs, who had a high reputation in his business, after making a wager that he would experience no effect before sunset, drank a quite moderate dose, and it proved too strong for his power of resistance: <sup>1</sup> while the Chian Eudemus took a draught of hellebore and was not purged. And on one occasion he said that in a single day he took two and twenty draughts in the market-place as he sat at his stall, and did not leave the place till it was evening, and then he went home and had a bath and dined, and was not sick. However this man was able to hold out because he had provided himself with an antidote; for he said that after the seventh dose he took a draught of tart vinegar with pumice-stone dust in it, and later on took a draught of the same in wine in like manner; and that the virtue of the pumice-stone dust is so great that, if one puts it into a boiling pot of wine,<sup>2</sup> it causes it to cease to boil, not merely for the moment, but altogether, clearly because it has a drying effect and it catches the vapour and passes it off. It was then by this antidote that Eudemus was able to contain himself in spite of the large quantity of hellebore which he took.

However many things go to show that use makes

<sup>1</sup> *ἀνταρ* add. Sch., cf. Plin. 36. 42; 14. 138.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ ἀψίνθιον τὰ μὲν ἐνταῦθα πρόβατα οὐ φασὶ τινες νέμεσθαι, τὰ δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ νέμεται καὶ γίνεται πióτερα καὶ καλλίω καί, ὥς δὴ τινες λέγουσιν, οὐκ ἔχοντα χολήν. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ταῦτα μὲν ἐτέρας ἂν τινος εἴη θεωρίας.

XVIII. Αἱ δὲ ρίζαι καὶ τὰ ὑλήματα, καθάπερ εἴρηται, πολλὰς ἔχουσι δυνάμεις οὐ πρὸς τὰ ἔμψυχα σώματα μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἄψυχα. λέγουσι γὰρ ἄκανθάν τινα εἶναι ἢ πηγνυσι τὸ ὕδωρ ἐμβαλλομένη· πηγνύναι δὲ καὶ τὴν τῆς ἀλθαίας ρίζαν, ἐάν τις τρίψας ἐμβάλῃ καὶ θῇ ὑπαίθριον· ἔχει δὲ ἡ ἀλθαία φύλλον μὲν ὅμοιον τῇ μαλάχῃ πλὴν μείζον καὶ δασύτερον, τοὺς δὲ καυλοὺς μαλακοὺς, αἶθος δὲ μήλινον, καρπὸν δ' ὅμοιον τῇ μαλάχῃ, ρίζαν δὲ ἰνώδη λευκὴν τῇ γεύσει δὲ ὥσπερ τῆς μαλάχης ὁ καυλός· χρῶνται δὲ αὐτῇ πρὸς τε τὰ ῥήγματα καὶ τὰς βήχας ἐν οἶνῳ γλυκεῖ καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ ἔλκη ἐν ἐλαίῳ.

Ἐτέραν δὲ τινα συνεψομένην τοῖς κρέασιν συνάπτειν εἰς ταῦτόν καὶ οἶον πηγνύναι· τὰς δὲ καὶ ἔλκειν, ὥσπερ ἡ λίθος καὶ τὸ ἥλεκτρον. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ἐν τοῖς ἀψύχοις.

Τὸ δὲ θηλύφονον, οἱ δὲ σκορπίον καλοῦσι διὰ τὸ τὴν ρίζαν ὁμοίαν ἔχειν τῷ σκορπίῳ, ἐπιξυό-

<sup>1</sup> cf. Plin. 27. 45.

<sup>2</sup> ὑλήματα: here a general term for shrubs and under-shrubs. cf. 9. 20. 6.

<sup>3</sup> Diosc. 3. 146; Plin. 20. 84.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xvii. 4-xviii. 2

much difference; <sup>1</sup> thus some say that the sheep of some places do not eat wormwood; yet those of Pontus not only eat it but become fatter and fairer and, as some say, have no bile. But these things may be said to belong to a different enquiry.

*Of plants that possess properties affecting lifeless objects.*

xviii. Herbs and shrubs,<sup>2</sup> as has been said, have many virtues which are shown in their effects not only on living bodies but on lifeless ones. Thus they say that there is a kind of *akantha* (gum arabic) which thickens water, when it is put in it; <sup>3</sup> and that so also does the root of marsh-mallow if one shreds it and puts it in and stands the water in the open air. Marsh-mallow has a leaf like mallow, but larger and rougher; the stems are soft, the flower yellow, the fruit like that of mallow, the root fibrous and white, with a taste like that of the stem of mallow. They use it for fractures and for coughs in sweet wine, and for sores in olive-oil.

<sup>4</sup> They say that there is another kind which, if cooked with meat, combines with it and as it were sets it hard; and there are others that attract things to them, like the magnet or amber. So much for effects produced on lifeless things.

*Of plants whose properties affect animals other than man.*

<sup>5</sup> Wolf's bane, which some call 'scorpion-plant' because it has a root like a scorpion, kills that animal

<sup>1</sup> Referred to by Apollon. *Hist. Mirab.* 41. cf. Diosc. 3. 147; Plin. 27. 42; 25. 67.

<sup>2</sup> Referred to by Ael. *H.A.* 9. 27; Apollon. *Hist. Mirab.* 41. cf. Plin. 25. 122 (cf. 27. 6); Diosc. 4. 76. This is evidently a different plant to the *σκόρπιος* mentioned 9. 13. 6. See Index.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μενον ἀποκτείνει τὸν σκορπίον· ἐὰν δέ τις ἐλ-  
λέβορον λευκὸν καταπάσῃ, πάλιν ἀνίστασθαί  
φασιν· ἀπόλλυσι δὲ καὶ βοῦς καὶ πρόβατα καὶ  
ὑποζύγια καὶ ἀπλῶς πᾶν τετράπουν ἐὰν εἰς τὰ  
αἰδοῖα τεθῇ ἢ ῥίζα ἢ τὰ φύλλα αὐθήμερον·  
χρήσιμον δὲ πρὸς σκορπίου πληγὴν πινόμενον.  
ἔχει δὲ τὸ μὲν φύλλον ὅμοιον κυκλαμίνῳ τὴν δὲ  
ρίζαν, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, σκορπίῳ. φύεται δὲ ὥσπερ  
ἡ ἄγρωστις καὶ γόνατα ἔχει· φιλεῖ δὲ χωρία  
σκιώδη. εἰ δὲ ἀληθὴ τὰ περὶ τὸν σκορπίον ἦδη  
καὶ τᾶλλα, οὐκ ἀπίθانا τὰ τοιαῦτα. καὶ τὰ  
3 μυθώδη δὲ οὐκ ἀλόγως συγκεῖται. ἐν δὲ τοῖς  
ἡμετέροις σώμασι χωρὶς τῶν πρὸς ὑγείαν καὶ  
νόσον καὶ θάνατον καὶ πρὸς ἄλλα δυνάμεις ἔχειν  
φασὶν οὐ μόνον τῶν σωματικῶν ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν  
τῆς ψυχῆς. . . . .

XIX. Πρὸς δὲ τὴν ψυχὴν τὸν μὲν στρύχνον  
ὥστε παρακινεῖν καὶ ἐξιστάναι, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη  
πρότερον, ἢ δὲ τοῦ ὀνοθήρα ῥίζα δοθεῖσα ἐν οἴνῳ  
πραότερον καὶ ἱλαρώτερον ποιεῖ τὸ ἦθος. ἔχει  
δὲ ὁ μὲν ὀνοθήρας τὸ μὲν φύλλον ὅμοιον ἀμυγδαλῇ  
μικρότερον δέ, τὸ δὲ ἄνθος ἐρυθρὸν ὥσπερ ῥόδον·  
αὐτὸς δὲ μέγας θάμνος· ῥίζα δὲ ἐρυθρὰ καὶ  
μεγάλη, ὅζει δὲ αὐανθείσης ὥσπερ οἴνου· φιλεῖ  
δὲ ὀρεῖνὰ χωρία. φαίνεται δὲ οὐ τοῦτο ἄτοπον·  
οἶον γὰρ προσφορά τις γίνεται δύνάμιν ἔχοντος  
οἰνώδη.

<sup>1</sup> σκορπίῳ conj. W.; σκορπίου Ald.

<sup>2</sup> 18. 3, λέγω δὲ σωματικῶν . . . 18. 11 (the account of the physical effects) is here omitted.

<sup>3</sup> 9. 11. 6.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XVIII. 2-XIX. 1

if it is shredded over him ; while if one then sprinkles him with white hellebore, they say that he comes to life again. It is also fatal to oxen sheep beasts of burden and in general to any fourfooted animal, and kills them the same day if the root or leaf is put on the genitals ; and it is also useful as a draught against a scorpion's sting. It has a leaf like cyclamen, and a root, as was said, like a scorpion.<sup>1</sup> It grows like dog's-tooth grass, and is jointed, and it loves shady places. Now if what has been told already about the scorpion be true, then other similar tales are not incredible. (Indeed fabulous tales are not composed without some reason).<sup>2</sup> And in relation to our own persons, apart from their effects in regard to health disease and death, it is said that herbs have also other properties affecting not only the bodily but also the mental powers. . . .

*Of plants possessing properties which affect the mental powers.*

XIX. As to those which affect the mind, *strykhnos*, as was said before,<sup>3</sup> is said to upset the mental powers and make one mad ; <sup>4</sup>while the root of *onotheras* (oleander) administered in wine makes the temper gentler and more cheerful. This plant has a leaf like the almond, but smaller,<sup>5</sup> and the flower is red like a rose. The plant itself (which loves hilly country) forms a large bush ; the root is red and large, and, if this is dried, it gives off a fragrance like wine. And this does not seem surprising, since there is a sort of 'bouquet' given off by a thing which has the peculiar quality of wine.

<sup>1</sup> Diosc. 4. 117 ; Plin. 26. 111.

<sup>2</sup> μικρότερον conj. W. ; πικρότερον UM ; πλατύτερον Ald. (so also Diosc. l.c.). G seems to have read μακρότερον.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- 2 Ἄλλα τάδε εὐηθέστερα καὶ ἀπιθανώτερα τά τε τῶν περιάπτων καὶ ὅλως τῶν ἀλεξιφαρμάκων λεγομένων τοῖς τε σώμασι καὶ ταῖς οἰκίαις. καὶ ὥς δὴ φασὶ τὸ τριπόλιον καθ' Ἑσίοδον καὶ Μουσαῖον εἰς πᾶν πρᾶγμα σπουδαῖον χρήσιμον εἶναι, δι' ὃ καὶ ὀρύττουσιν αὐτὸ νύκτωρ σκηνὴν πηξάμενοι. καὶ τὰ περὶ τῆς εὐκλείας δὲ καὶ εὐδοξίας ὁμοίως ἢ καὶ μᾶλλον· εὐκλειαν γάρ φασὶ ποιεῖν τὸ ἀντίρρινον καλούμενον· τοῦτο δ' ὁμοίον ἐστὶ τῇ ἀπαρίνῃ· ῥίζα δὲ οὐχ ὕπεστιν· ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ὥσπερ μόσχου ῥίνας ἔχει. τὸν δ' ἀπὸ
- 3 τούτου ἀλειφόμενον εὐδοξεῖν. εὐδοξεῖν δὲ καὶ ἂν τις τοῦ ἐλειοχρύσου τῷ ἄνθει στεφανῶται μύρῳ ῥαίνων ἐκ χρυσίου ἀπύρου. ἔχει δὲ ὁ ἐλειόχρυσος τὸ μὲν ἄνθος χρυσοειδές, φύλλον δὲ λευκὸν καὶ τὸν καυλὸν δὲ λεπτὸν καὶ σκληρὸν ῥίζαν δὲ ἐπιπόλαιον καὶ λεπτήν. χρῶνται δὲ αὐτῷ πρὸς τὰ δακετὰ ἐν οἴνῳ καὶ πρὸς τὰ πυρίκαυστα κατακαύσαντες καὶ μίξαντες μέλιτι. τὰ μὲν οὖν τοιαῦτα, καθάπερ καὶ πρότερον ἐλέχθη, συναύξειν βουλομένων ἐστὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν τέχνας.
- 4 Αἱ δὲ τῶν ῥιζῶν καὶ τῶν καρπῶν καὶ τῶν ὀπῶν φύσεις ἐπεὶ πολλὰς ἔχουσι καὶ παντοίας δυνάμεις, ὅσαι ταῦτ' ὀφείλουσι καὶ τῶν αὐτῶν αἰτίαι,

<sup>1</sup> ἀπιθανώτερα conj. Scal. after G: so also Cod. Cas. Vin. Vo.; πιθανώτερα U\*; πιθανότερα Ald.

<sup>2</sup> τριπόλιον U<sup>1</sup> Ald.; G from Plin. 21. 44 has *polium*. It may be observed that τριπόλιον can hardly have occurred in a hexameter. Hesych., however, gives τρισπόλιον as the name

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XIX. 2-4

*Of plants said to have magical properties.*

On the other hand what is said of amulets and charms in general for the body or the house is somewhat foolish and incredible.<sup>1</sup> Thus they say that *tripolion*<sup>2</sup> according to Hesiod and Musaeus is useful for every good purpose, wherefore they dig it up by night, camping on the spot. So too what is said of good or fair fame as affected by plants is quite as foolish or more so: for they say that the plant called snapdragon<sup>3</sup> produces fair fame. This plant is like bedstraw but it has no root: and the fruit has what resembles a calf's nostrils. The man who anoints himself with this they say wins fair fame. <sup>4</sup> And they say that the same result follows, if he crowns himself with the flower of gold-flower, sprinkling it with unguent from a vessel of unfired gold. The flower of gold-flower is like gold, the leaf is white. The stem also is white<sup>5</sup> and hard, the root is slender and does not run deep. <sup>6</sup> Men use it in wine against the bites of serpents, and to make a plaster for burns after burning it and mixing the ashes with honey. Such tales then, as was said before, proceed from men who desire to glorify their own crafts.

*A problem as to cause and effect.*

Now since the natural qualities of roots fruits and juices have many virtues of all sorts, some having the same virtue and causing the same result, while of a plant. Plin. *l.c.* seems to combine Diosc.'s account of *πόλιον* (3. 110) with his account of *τριπόλιον* (4. 132).

<sup>3</sup> τὸ ἀντίρρινον conj. St. from Diosc. 4. 130; Plin. 25. 129; τὸ ἀντίρριζον Ald.H.; τὸν ἀντ. UM; τὸ ἀντίριζον U\*.

<sup>4</sup> Diosc. 4. 57; Plin. 21. 66. Cited also by Athen. 15. 27.

<sup>5</sup> λευκὸν conj. Sch.; λεπτὸν UMU\*Ald.G.

<sup>6</sup> Diosc. *l.c.*; Plin. 21. 168 and 169.

## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ πάλιν ὅσαι τὰ ἐναντία, διαπορήσειεν ἂν τις κοινὸν ἴσως ἀπόρημα καὶ ἐφ' ἐτέρων ἀπόρων, πότερον ὅσα τῶν αὐτῶν αἷτια κατὰ μίαν τινὰ δύναμιν ἐστίν, ἢ καὶ ἀφ' ἐτέρων ἐνδεχεται ταῦτό γίνεσθαι. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ταύτῃ ἡπορήσθω· εἰ δέ τινων καὶ ἄλλων τὰς φύσεις ἢ τὰς δυνάμεις ἔχομεν εἰπεῖν, ταῦτα ῥητέον.

XX. Τὸ δὴ πέπερι καρπὸς μὲν ἐστὶ διττὸν δὲ αὐτοῦ τὸ γένος· τὸ μὲν γὰρ στρογγύλον ὥσπερ ὄροβος, κέλυφος ἔχον καὶ σάρκα καθάπερ αἱ δαφνίδες, ὑπέρυθρον· τὸ δὲ πρόμηκες μέλαν σπερμάτια μηχανικὰ ἔχον· ἰσχυρότερον δὲ πολὺ τοῦτο θατέρον· θερμαντικὰ δὲ ἄμφω· δι' ὃ καὶ πρὸς τὸ κώνειον βοηθεῖ ταῦτά τε καὶ ὁ λιβανωτός.

- 2 Ὁ δὲ Κνίδιος κόκκος στρογγύλον ἐρυθρὸν τῇ χροίᾳ μείζον δὲ τοῦ πεπέριος ἰσχυρότερον δὲ πολὺ τῇ θερμότητι, δι' ὃ καὶ ὅταν δίδωσι κατάποτον, διδόασιν γὰρ πρὸς κοιλίας λύσιν, ἐν ἄρτῳ ἢ στέατι περιπλάττοντες· κάει γὰρ ἄλλως τὸν φάρυγγα.

Θερμαντικὸν δὲ καὶ ἡ τοῦ πευκεδάνου <ρίζα,> δι' ὃ καὶ ἄλειμμά τι ποιοῦσιν ἐξ αὐτῆς ἰδρωτικὸν ὥσπερ καὶ ἐξ ἄλλων. δίδεται δὲ ἡ τοῦ πευκε-

<sup>1</sup> ἀφ' conj. Sch.; ἐφ' U\*P; Ald. omits the preposition.

<sup>2</sup> Cited by Athen. 2. 73; cf. Diosc. 2. 159.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 27. 70.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. XIX. 4-XX. 2

others have opposite virtues, one might raise a question which is perhaps equally perplexing in regard to other matters, to wit, whether those that produce the same effect do so in virtue of some single virtue which is common to them all, or whether the same result may not come about also from<sup>1</sup> different causes.—Let us be content to put the question thus: but now we must proceed to speak of the natural qualities or virtues of any other plants that we can mention.

*Of certain plants, not yet mentioned, which possess special properties.*

XX. <sup>2</sup> Pepper is a fruit, and there are two kinds: one is round like bitter vetch, having a case and flesh like the berries of bay, and it is reddish: the other is elongated and black and has seeds like those of poppy: and this kind is much stronger than the other. Both however are heating: wherefore these, as well as frankincense, are used as antidotes for poisoning by hemlock.

<sup>3</sup> The 'Cnidian berry' is round, red in colour, larger than that of pepper, and far stronger in its heating power; wherefore, when it is given as a pill <sup>4</sup> (for it is given to open the bowels) they knead it up in a piece of bread or dough: otherwise it burns the throat.

<sup>5</sup> The root <sup>6</sup> of sulphur-wort is also heating, wherefore they make of it an ointment to produce a sweat, as with other things so used. This root <sup>6</sup> is also

<sup>1</sup> κατάποτον conj. Sch.; κατὰ πότον Ald. cf. καταπότιον 9. 8. 3.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 9. 14. 1; Plin. 25. 117.

<sup>3</sup> ῥίζα add. W.

## THEOPHRASTUS

δάνου ρίζα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σπλῆνας· τὸ δὲ σπέρμα οὐ χρήσιμον οὐδὲ ὁ ὀπὸς αὐτῆς· γίνεται δὲ ἐν Ἀρκαδίᾳ.

Δαῦκον δὲ περὶ Πατραϊκὴν τῆς Ἀχαΐας διαφέρον, θερμαντικὸν φύσει· ρίζαν δὲ ἔχει μέλαιναν.

- 3 Θερμαντικὸν δὲ καὶ δριμύ καὶ τῆς ἀμπέλου τῆς ἀγρίας ρίζα· δι' ὃ καὶ εἰς ψίλωθρον χρήσιμον καὶ ἐφηλίδας ἀπάγειν· τῷ δὲ καρπῷ ψιλοῦσι τὰ δέρματα· τέμνεται δὲ πᾶσαν ὥραν ὀπώρας δὲ μάλιστα.

Δρακοντίου δὲ ρίζα βῆχας ἐν μέλιτι διδομένη παύειν χρησίμη· καυλὸν δὲ ἔχει ποικίλον ὀφιῶδη· σπέρματι δ' οὐ χρῶνται.

Ἡ δὲ τῆς θαψίας ἐμετική· ἐὰν δέ τις κατὰσχη, καθαίρει καὶ ἄνω καὶ κάτω· δύναται δὲ καὶ τὰ πελιώματα ἐξαιρεῖν· ὑπώπια δὲ ποιεῖ ἄλλα ἔκλευκα· ὁ δὲ ὀπὸς ἰσχυρότερος αὐτῆς καθαίρει καὶ ἄνω καὶ κάτω· σπέρματι δ' οὐ χρῶνται· γίνεται δὲ καὶ ἄλλοθι μὲν ἀτὰρ καὶ ἐν τῇ Ἀττικῇ· καὶ τὰ βοσκήματα ταύτης οὐχ ἄπτεται τὰ ἐγχώρια, τὰ δὲ ξενικὰ βόσκεται καὶ διαρροία διαφθείρεται.

- 4 Τὸ δὲ πολυπόδιον μετὰ τὰ ὕδατα ἀναβλαστεῖ σπέρμα δὲ οὐ φύει.

Τὸ δὲ τῆς ἐβένου ξύλον κατὰ μὲν τὴν πρόσοψιν ὁμοιον πύξω φλοῖσθὲν δὲ μέλαν γίνεται· χρήσιμον δὲ πρὸς ὀφθαλμίας ἀκόνη τριβόμενον.

<sup>1</sup> cf. 9. 15. 5.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 9. 15. 8. n.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 9. 14. 1; Diosc. 4. 181-183; Plin. 23. 19 and 21.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 7. 12. 2; Diosc. 2. 167. cf. Plin. 24. 89.

<sup>5</sup> Diosc. 4. 153; Plin. 13. 125 and 126.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xx. 2-4

given for the spleen : but neither its seed nor its juice is of use : it grows in Arcadia.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>2</sup> *Daukon* of excellent quality grows in the district of Patrai in Achaia, and is heating by nature : it has a black root.

<sup>3</sup> The root of the 'wild vine' (bryony) is also heating and pungent : wherefore it is useful as a depilatory and to remove freckles : and the fruit is used for smoothing hides. It is cut at any season, but especially in autumn.

<sup>4</sup> The root of edderwort given in milk is useful for stopping a cough. It has a variegated snake-like stem : the seed is not used.

<sup>5</sup> The root of *thapsia* has emetic properties : and, if one retains it, it purges both upwards and downwards. It is also able to remove bruises : and it restores other contusions to a pale colour.<sup>6</sup> Its juice is stronger and purges both upwards and downwards : the seed is not used. It grows especially in Attica, but also in other places : the cattle of the country do not touch it, but imported cattle feed on it and perish of diarrhoea.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>8</sup> Polypody springs up<sup>9</sup> after rain, and produces no seed.

<sup>10</sup> The wood of ebony is in appearance like box, but when barked it becomes black : it is useful against ophthalmia, and is rubbed on a whetstone for that use.

<sup>6</sup> ὀπώπια . . . ἔκλευκα : text perhaps defective.

<sup>7</sup> διάρροια conj. Sch. ; διάρροια ἢ UM : διάρροια αὐτοῖς γίνεται ἢ Ald.G.

<sup>8</sup> cf. 9. 13. 6 ; C.P. 2. 17. 4. The account of the virtues of this plant is evidently missing.

<sup>9</sup> ἀναβλαστει conj. W. ; αἰεὶ βάλλει Ald.

<sup>10</sup> Diosc. 1. 98 ; Plin. 24. 89.

Ἡ δὲ ἀριστολογία παχεῖα καὶ ἐσθιομένη πικρὰ τῷ χρώματι μέλαινα καὶ εὖσμος, τὸ δὲ φύλλον στρογγύλον, οὐ πολὺ δὲ τὸ ὑπὲρ τῆς γῆς. φύεται δὲ καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι· καὶ αὕτη βελτίστη. τὴν δὲ χρεῖαν αὐτῆς εἰς πολλὰ καταριθμοῦσιν· ἀρίστη μὲν πρὸς τὰ κεφαλόθλαστα, ἀγαθὴ δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἄλλα ἔλκη καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἐρπετὰ καὶ πρὸς ὕπνον καὶ πρὸς ὕστεραν ὡς πεσσός, τὰ μὲν σὺν ὕδατι ἀναδευομένη καὶ καταπλαττομένη, τὰ δ' ἄλλα εἰς μέλι ξυομένη καὶ ἔλαιον· τῶν δὲ ἐρπετῶν ἐν οἴνῳ ὀξύνῃ πινομένη καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ δῆγμα ἐπιπαττομένη· εἰς ὕπνον δὲ ἐν οἴνῳ μέλανι αὐστηρῶ κνισθεῖσα· ἐὰν δὲ αἱ μῆτραι προπέσωσι, τῷ ὕδατι ἀποκλύζειν. αὕτη μὲν οὖν ἔοικε διαφέρειν τῇ πολυχρηστίᾳ.

5 Τῆς δὲ σκαμμωνίας ὥσπερ ἐξ ἐναντίας ὁ ὀπὸς μόνον χρήσιμος ἄλλο δ' οὐδέν.

Ἡ δὲ τῆς πετιίδος ῥίζα μόνον τῷ χυλῷ γλυκύστρυφνος· ἔλμινθα δὲ πλατεῖαν ἐκβάλλει· σπέρμα δὲ οὐκ ἔχει οὐδὲ ὀπὸν· τέμνεσθαι δὲ ὠραίαν μετοπώρου φασίν.

Ἡ δ' ἔλμις σύμφυτον ἐνίοις ἔθνεσιν· ἔχουσι γὰρ ὡς ἐπὶ πᾶν Αἰγύπτιοι Ἀραβες Ἀρμένιοι Ματαδίδες Σύροι Κίλικες· Θράκες δ' οὐκ ἔχουσιν οὐδὲ Φρύγες· τῶν δὲ Ἑλλήνων Θηβαῖοί τε οἱ περὶ τὰ γυμνάσια καὶ ὅλως Βοιωτοί· Ἀθηναῖοι δ' οὐ.

Πάντων δὲ τῶν φαρμάκων ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν βελτίω τὰ ἐκ τῶν χειμερινῶν καὶ προσβόρρων

<sup>1</sup> cf. 9. 13. 3.    <sup>2</sup> καὶ μάλιστα conj. W.; μάλιστα καὶ Ald.

<sup>3</sup> αὕτη conj. Scal.; αὕτη Ald.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xx. 4-5

<sup>1</sup> Birthwort is a stout plant and is bitter to the taste : it is black in colour and fragrant ; the leaf is round. However there is not much of the plant above ground. It grows especially <sup>2</sup> on mountains, and then <sup>3</sup> it is best. Many uses of it for various purposes are enumerated ; it is best for bruises on the head, good also for other wounds, against snake-bites, to produce sleep, for the womb as a pessary : for some purposes it is soaked with water and applied as a plaster, for others it is scraped into honey and olive-oil : against snake-bites it is drunk in sour wine and also sprinkled over the bite ; to induce sleep it is given pounded up in black dry wine : <sup>4</sup> in cases of *prolapsus uteri* it is used in water as a lotion. This plant then seems to have a surpassing variety of usefulness.

<sup>5</sup> Of scammony, as though by contrast, only the juice is useful and no other part.

Of male-fern no part but the root is useful and it has a sweet astringent taste. It expels the flat worm. It has no seed nor juice : and they say it is ripe for cutting in autumn.

<sup>6</sup> (This worm naturally infests certain races : speaking generally the following are liable to it—the Egyptians, the Arabians, the Armenians, the Matadides, the Syrians, the Cilicians : the Thracians have it not, nor the Phrygians. Among the Hellenes those Thebans who frequent wrestling-schools and the Boeotians generally are liable to it : but not the Athenians.)

Of all drugs, to speak generally, those are better which come from places that are wintry, face the

<sup>4</sup> Cited by Apollon. *Hist. Mirab.* 29.

<sup>5</sup> Diosc. 4. 170 ; Plin. 27. 78-80. <sup>6</sup> Plin. 27. 145.



## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ ξηρῶν· δι' ὃ καὶ τῶν ἐν Εὐβοίᾳ τὰ ἐν ταῖς  
Αἰγαῖς ἢ τὰ ἐν τῇ Τελεθρίῳ φασί· ξηρότερα γάρ·  
τὸ δὲ Τελέθριον σύσκιον.

- 6 Περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν ῥιζῶν ὅσαι φαρμακώδεις καὶ  
ὅποιασούν ἔχουσι δυνάμεις εἴτε ἐν αὐταῖς εἴτε ἐν  
τοῖς ὅποις ἢ καὶ ἄλλῳ τινὶ τῶν μορίων, καὶ τὸ  
ὅλον εἴ τι φρυγανικὸν ἢ ποῶδες ἔχει τοιαύτας  
δυνάμεις, καὶ περὶ τῶν χυλῶν τῶν τε εὐόσμων  
καὶ τῶν ἀόσμων καὶ ὅσας ἔχουσι διαφοράς,  
αἵπερ οὐθὲν ἡττον φυσικαί εἰσιν, εἴρηται.

## ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS, IX. xx. 5-6

north and are dry: wherefore of those which grow in Euboea best, they say, are the drugs of Aigai or Telethrion, these places being dry, while Telethrion is also shady.

<sup>1</sup> Thus we have spoken of drugs, those that are medicinal and those that have virtues of whatsoever kind, whether in the root itself, or in the juice, or in any other of their parts, and in general of all the shrubby or herbaceous plants which have such virtues, as well as their tastes, whether they be fragrant or without fragrance, with the differences between them, which are equally part of their essential character.

<sup>1</sup> This section begins a tenth book in *UM* Ald.H.G; *cf.* 9. 8. 1 n. The concluding words can hardly represent the original text.



## **MINOR WORKS**

## INTRODUCTION TO THE TREATISES CONCERNING ODOURS AND CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS

THE text of the two *opuscula* given here is reprinted from that of Wimmer in the Teubner series, 1862, and in the Didot edition, 1866; the latter is very carelessly printed: a few slight alterations are mentioned in the notes. Both works are included in the Aldine edition (1497), and in that of Camotius (see p. x). For the *de odoribus* two MSS., Cod. Vaticanus (A) and Cod. Parisiensis (Q) were collated by Brandis. The text of the *de signis* is considered by Wimmer to be very corrupt and defective: he has admitted some emendations made by Schneider from an old Latin translation published at Bologna in 1516. Schneider's commentary makes frequent reference to an edition of the *opuscula* of Theophrastus by Turnebus and Daniel Furrlanus, printed at Hanau in Prussia in 1605, and reprinted there in 1615.

The *de signis* was one of Aratus' authorities for his *Diosemeia*: I have only however made reference to that work where it appears to throw light on the text of Theophrastus. These and most other references for the two fragments I owe chiefly to Schneider.

## CONCERNING ODOURS

### CONTENTS

#### SECTIONS.

- 1-3. Introductory : Of odours in general and the classification of them.
4. Of natural odours : Of those of animals and of the effect of odours on animals.
5. Of smell and taste.
6. Of odours in plants.
- 7-13. Of artificial odours in general and their manufacture : especially of the use of perfumes in wine.
- 14-20. Of the oils used as the vehicle of perfumes.
- 21-26. Of the spices used in making perfumes and their treatment.
- 27-31. Of the various parts of plants used for perfumes, and of the composition of various notable perfumes.
- 32-35. Of the properties of various spices.
- 35-36. Of the medicinal properties of certain perfumes.
- 37-41. Of rules for the mixture of spices, and of the storing of various perfumes.
- 42-50. Of the properties of certain perfumes.
- 51-56. Of other properties and peculiarities of perfumes.
- 57-59. Of the making of perfume-powders and compound perfumes.
- 61-63. Of the characteristic smells of animals, and of certain curious facts as to the smell of animal and vegetable products.
- 64-69. Of odours as compared with other sense-impressions.

## ΠΕΡΙ ΟΣΜΩΝ

I. Αἱ ὀσμαὶ τὸ μὲν ὅλον ἐκ μίξεώς εἰσι καθάπερ οἱ χυμοί· τὸ γὰρ ἄμικτον ἅπαν ἄοδμον ὥσπερ ἄχυμον, διὸ καὶ τὰ ἀπλᾶ ἄοδμα, οἶον ὕδωρ ἀήρ πῦρ· ἡ δὲ γῆ μάλιστ' ἡ μόνη ὀδμὴν ἔχει διὸ μάλιστα μικτή.

Τῶν δ' ὀδμῶν αἱ μὲν ὥσπερ ἀειδεῖς καὶ ὑδαρεῖς καθάπερ ἐπὶ τῶν χυμῶν, αἱ δ' ἔχουσαί τινας ἰδέας. αἱ δ' ἰδέαι δοκοῦσι μὲν ἀκολουθεῖν ταῖς τῶν χυμῶν, οὐ μὴν ἔχουσί γε πᾶσαι τὰς αὐτὰς προσηγορίας, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς πρότερον εἵπομεν, οὐδ' ὅλως οὕτω διωρισμέναι τοῖς εἶδεσιν ὥσπερ οἱ χυμοὶ ἀλλ' ὥς ἂν τοῖς γένεσιν, ὅτι τὰ μὲν  
2 εὖοςμα τὰ δὲ κάκοςμα. τῆς δ' εὐωδίας καὶ κακωδίας οὐκέτι τὰ εἶδη κατωνόμασται καίπερ ἔχοντα διαφορὰς μεγάλας ἐπὶ γ' αὐτῶν τῶν γλυκέων καὶ πικρῶν, ἀλλὰ δριμεῖα λέγεται καὶ ἰσχυρὰ καὶ μαλακὴ καὶ γλυκεῖα καὶ βαρεῖα ὀδμή· κοινὰ δ' ἔναι τούτων καὶ τῶν κακωδῶν.

---

<sup>1</sup> i.e. there is not one set of terms applied to the varieties of 'good' and another distinct set applied to the varieties of 'evil' odours, but we get a cross-division, some terms (such as 'strong') being applied to varieties of both classes. cf. 64-66.

## CONCERNING ODOURS

*Introductory : Of odours in general and the classification of them.*

I. ODOURS in general, like tastes, are due to mixture : for anything which is uncompound has no smell, just as it has no taste : wherefore simple substances have no smell, such as water air and fire : on the other hand earth is the only elementary substance which has a smell, or at least it has one to a greater extent than the others, because it is of a more composite character than they.

Of odours some are, as it were, indistinct and insipid, as is the case with tastes, while some have a distinct character. And these characters appear to correspond to those of tastes, yet they have not in all cases the same names, as we said in a former treatise ; nor in general are they marked off from one another by such specific differences as are tastes : rather the differences are, one may say, in generic character, some things having a good, some an evil odour.<sup>1</sup> But the various kinds of good or evil odour, although they exhibit considerable differences, have not received further distinguishing names, marking off one particular kind of sweetness or of bitterness from another : we speak of an odour as pungent, powerful, faint, sweet, or heavy, though some of these descriptions apply to evil-smelling things as well as to those which have a good odour.



## THEOPHRASTUS

Ἡ δὲ καθόλου καὶ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ πᾶσι τοῖς δια-  
φθειρομένοις σαπρότης. ἅπαν γὰρ τὸ σηπόμενον  
κακῶδες, εἰ μὴ τις τὴν ὀξύτητα λέγει τοῦ οἴνου  
3 σαπρότητα τῇ ὁμοιότητι τῆς φθορᾶς. ἐν ἅπασι  
δ' ἐστὶν ἡ τοῦ σαπροῦ κακωδία καὶ ἐν φυτοῖς  
καὶ ἐν ζώοις καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἀψύχοις· ἐν ἅπασι δὲ  
διαφθειρομένοις ὦν μὴ ἡ σύστασις εὐθὺς ἐκ  
τοιαύτης ὕλης· ἔχει γὰρ ἕνια καὶ τὴν τῆς ὕλης  
ὁσμὴν, οὐ μὴν ἐπὶ πάντων γε τοῦτ' ἀκολουθεῖ.  
πολλὰ γὰρ οὐ κακῶδη τὰ ἐκ τῶν σαπρῶν, ὡς  
οὐδ' οἱ μύκητες οἱ ἐκ τῆς κόπρου φνόμενοι· τὰ δ'  
ἐκ σήψεως φνόμενα καὶ συνιστάμενα κακῶδη.  
εὖοσμα μὲν οὖν ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν τὰ πεπεμμένα  
καὶ λεπτὰ καὶ ἥκιστα γεῶδη· τὸ γὰρ τῆς ὁσμῆς  
ἐν ἀναπνοῇ· κακῶδη δὲ δηλονότι τὰναντία. πολλὰ  
δὲ ὥσπερ τῶν γλυκέων ἐμφαίνει τινὰ πικρότητα,  
καὶ τῶν εὐωδῶν βαρύτητα ταῖς ὁσμαῖς.

4 II. Ἐχει δὲ ἕκαστον ὁσμὴν ἰδίαν καὶ ζώων  
καὶ φυτῶν καὶ τῶν ἀψύχων ὅσα ὁσμώδη· πολλὰ

---

<sup>1</sup> And so here we have a term which possibly is applied only to the one class of 'evil' odours.

<sup>2</sup> Which is not an 'evil' odour.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. putridity is a quality which things acquire as they decay, and does not necessarily imply that they are themselves formed out of decaying matter. In fact things so produced are not always 'putrid.'

<sup>4</sup> The sense is apparently that 'lighter' (or less solid) things exhale a lighter and pleasanter odour because in their

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 2-4

Putridity however is a general term, applied, one may say, to anything which is subject to decay<sup>1</sup>: for anything which is decomposing has an evil odour,—unless indeed the name putridity be extended to sourness<sup>2</sup> in wine because the change in the wine is analogous to decomposition. The evil odour of putridity is found in all things, alike in plants in animals and in inanimate things: it attends the decay of things which are not formed directly out of a substance which is decaying: for some things have also the odour of that substance, though it is not found in every case.<sup>3</sup> Thus in many instances things which are produced by decaying matter have no evil odour: for instance, mushrooms which grow from dung have none: but things which grow from decay and are actually formed out of it have such an odour. To speak generally then, things that have been cooked, delicate things, and things which are least of an earthy nature have a good odour,<sup>4</sup> (odour being a matter of exhalation), and it is obvious that those of an opposite character have an evil odour. But, even as many things pleasant to the taste present a certain bitterness, so many things that have a good odour have a kind of heavy scent.

*Of natural odours; of those of animals and of the effect of odours on animals.*

II. Every plant animal or inanimate thing that has an odour has one peculiar to itself: but in many

case exhalation is easier. The sense given to ἀναπνοή requires illustration (the passages cited by L.S. are not in point). Sch., construing apparently as W. does, 'since smell depends on breathing' (? inhalation), admits that he does not see the point of this clause.

## THEOPHRASTUS

δ' ἡμῖν οὐ φαίνεται διὰ τὸ χειρίστην ἔχειν τὴν αἴσθησιν ταύτην ὡς εἰπεῖν. ἐπεὶ τοῖς γε ἄλλοις καὶ τὰ παντελῶς ἄοδμα φαινόμενα δίδωσίν τινα ὁσμήν, ὥσπερ αἱ κριθαὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις αἱ ἐκ τῆς Κεδροπόλιος, ἃς οὐκ ἐσθίουσιν διὰ τὴν κακωδίαν. ἡμᾶς δὲ καὶ αἱ τῶν ζώων λανθάνουσιν τῶν ὁσμωδῶν δοκούντων. εὐωδία μὲν οὖν οὐθὲν φαίνεται καθ' αὐτὸ χαίρειν ὡς εἰπεῖν, ἀλλ' ὅσα πρὸς τὴν τροφήν καὶ τὴν ἀπόλαυσιν. πονεῖν δ' ἔνια φαίνεται ταῖς ὁσμαῖς καὶ ταῖς εὐωδίαις, εἴπερ ἀληθὲς τὸ ἐπὶ τῶν γυπῶν καὶ τῶν κανθάρων. τοῦτο δὲ δῆλον ὡς δι' ἐναντίωσιν τῆς ἐν αὐτοῖς φύσεως. ὡς δὲ καθ' ἕκαστον ἄμα δεῖ τὴν γε κρᾶσιν τὴν ἐκάστου καὶ τὴν τῆς ὁσμῆς λαμβάνειν δύναμιν.

Ἔισι μὲν οὖν ἔνιαι τῶν εὐόσμων καὶ ἐν ταῖς τροφαῖς, οἷον αἱ τῶν ἀκροδρύων καὶ ἀπίων καὶ μήλων· αὗται γὰρ ἄνευ τῆς προσφορᾶς ἡδεῖαι, καὶ μᾶλλον ὡς εἰπεῖν. οὐ μὲν ἀλλ', ὥς γ' ἀπλῶς διελεῖν αἱ μὲν εἰσι καθ' αὐτάς αἱ δὲ κατὰ συμβεβηκός· αἱ μὲν τῶν χυλῶν καὶ τῆς τροφῆς κατὰ συμβεβηκός, αἱ δ' ὥσπερ τῶν ἀνθῶν καθ' αὐτάς. ὡς δ' ἐπίπαν τὰ εὖοσμα, καθάπερ καὶ πρότερον ἐλέχθη, δύσχυμα καὶ στρυφνὰ καὶ ὑπόπικρα.

<sup>1</sup> In Thrace. cf. Arist. *H.A.* 9. 36. Turn. quotes an illustration from Scriptor *θαυμασίων ἀκουσμάτων* 126.

<sup>2</sup> εὐωδίαις. ?εὐώδεσι.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 4-5

cases it is not obvious to us because, one might almost say, our sense of smell is inferior to that of all other animals. Thus things which appear to us to have no odour give forth an odour of which other animals are conscious : for instance beasts of burden can smell the barley of Kedropolis,<sup>1</sup> and refuse to eat it because of its evil odour. Also we are unaware of the odour of animals which appear to possess one. Now no animal appears to take pleasure in a good odour for its own sake, so to speak, but only in the odour of things which conduce to its nurture and enjoyment. Indeed some animals seem to be annoyed by odours, even good<sup>2</sup> ones, if what is said of vultures and beetles be true ; the explanation is that their natural character is antipathetic to odours. To appreciate this in particular cases one should take into consideration the temperament of the animal in question and also its power of smell.

### *Of smell and taste.*

Now the odour of some things which have a good odour resides in things which are used for food, for instance that of stone-fruits<sup>3</sup> pears and apples, the smell of which is sweet even if one does not eat them ; indeed it may be said to be sweeter in that case. However, to make a general distinction, some odours exist independently, while others are incidental ;<sup>4</sup> those of juices and things used for food are incidental, those of flowers exist independently. And, as was said above,<sup>5</sup> things which have a good odour are generally of unpleasant, astringent or

<sup>3</sup> ἀκροδρόων here apparently plums, peaches, etc.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. the smell is a kind of 'accident,' or by-product of the taste.

<sup>5</sup> 1. 3.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἔνια δὲ τῶν εὐχύμων καὶ κακῶδη, καθάπερ καὶ τὸ Αἰγύπτιον καλούμενον σῦκον, γλυκὺ ὄν, καὶ εἰ μὴ πανταχοῦ ἀλλ' ἐνιαχοῦ. καὶ ἡ ἄρκευθος ἐμφαίνει τινὰ τῇ μασήσει κακωδίαν γλυκεῖα οὔσα· τὸ δ' οὔρον ποιεῖ εὐώδες.

- 6 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τῶν ὁσμῶν αἱ μὲν ἐν φυτοῖς καὶ τοῖς τούτων μορίοις, οἶον κλωσὶ φύλλοις φλοιοῖς καρποῖς δακρύοις, αἱ δὲ ὥσπερ διείλομεν ἐν ζώοις [καὶ φυτοῖς] καὶ τοῖς ἀψύχοις, αὗται μὲν φανερὸν ὅτι πέψιν ἔκασται λαμβάνουσιν ἐν τοῖς οἰκείοις [αἷς]· καὶ τὸ εὐώδες καὶ κακῶδες ἀκολουθεῖ κατὰ τὰς οἰκείας φύσεις, ἡ δὲ πέψις τῷ οἰκείῳ θερμῷ. ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἀψύχοις ταῖς τῶν ἀπλῶν δυνάμεσι καὶ γίνονται καὶ μεθίστανται καθάπερ οἱ χυμοί.

- 7 III. Ὅσαι δὲ δὴ κατὰ τέχνην καὶ ἐπίνοιαν γίνονται περὶ τούτων πειρατέον εἰπεῖν ὥσπερ καὶ περὶ τῶν χυλῶν. ἐν ἀμφοῖν δὲ δῆλον ὡς αἰὲς πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον [ἦν] ἡμῖν ἡ ἀναφορά· πᾶσα γὰρ τέχνη στοχάζεται τούτου. εἰσὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ τοῖς ἀμίκτοις ὁσμαί τινες πρὸς ἃς συνεργεῖν πειρῶνται καὶ ταῖς παρασκευαῖς, ὡς καὶ πρὸς τὰς τῶν χυμῶν εὐστομίας. οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ὥς γ' ἀπλῶς

<sup>1</sup> cf. *H.P.* 1. 11. 2.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. the berry: Sch. would read *ἀρκευθίς*. cf. *H.P.* 3. 12. 4, with which this statement is inconsistent. Sch. suggests punctuating—γλυκὺ ὄν. καὶ εἰ μὴ πανταχοῦ ἀλλ' ἐνιαχοῦ καὶ ἡ ἄρκευθος κ.τ.λ. <sup>3</sup> καὶ φυτοῖς om. Turn.

<sup>4</sup> αἷς I omit; ἢ καὶ τὸ εὐ. conj. Turn.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 5-7

somewhat bitter taste. Again some things which have a good taste have also an evil odour, such as the carob,<sup>1</sup> which is sweet (this is true of some regions, if not of all) Again the Phoenician cedar,<sup>2</sup> though it is sweet to the taste, when chewed produces a sort of evil odour, though it makes the water fragrant.

### *Of odours in plants.*

Some odours being found in plants or in their parts—as twig, leaf, bark, fruit, gum—and others, as we distinguished, in animals<sup>3</sup> and in inanimate things, it is plain that the former are matured each of them in the part to which it belongs; and<sup>4</sup> a good or evil odour follows according to the natural character of that part, the maturing being due to the warmth which is found in it. On the other hand in inanimate things the odour, like the taste, is formed and modified by the properties of the simple substances of which the thing is made.

### *Of artificial odours in general and their manufacture: especially of the use of perfumes in wine.*

III. Next we must endeavour to speak of those odours, and also those tastes, which are artificially<sup>5</sup> and deliberately produced. In either case it is clear that improvement is always what we have in view; for that is the aim of every artificial process. Now even uncompounded substances have certain odours, which men endeavour to assist by artificial means,<sup>6</sup> even as they try to assist nature in producing palatable tastes. However, to speak generally, the

<sup>5</sup> The same phrase occurs in similar connexion *C. P.* 6. 11. 2.

<sup>6</sup> Text defective. Ald Bas. Vo. have marks of omission. W. after Turn. gives *καὶ ταῖς παρὰ σκευαῖς, ὡς καὶ > ταῖς τῶν χυμῶν εὖστο < μίαις >*, which I have slightly altered.

## THEOPHRASTUS

εἰπεῖν ἐν μίξει τὸ πλεόν, καὶ οὕτως αἱ <μίξεις>  
 δυοῖν μὲν ὡς τῷ γένει λαβεῖν, ὑγροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ·  
 τριχῶς δὲ γί<νονται>, ὅταν ἡ ὁμογενὲς ὁμογενεῖ,  
 ἡ παράλλαττον τῷ παραλλάττοντι, ἡ ὑγρῷ ὑγρὸν  
 ἡ ξηρῷ ξηρόν, <ἡ ὑγρῷ ξηρόν>.

- 8 Ἐκ δυοῖν γὰρ τούτων καὶ ἡ τῶν χυλῶν καὶ  
 τῶν ὁσμῶν γένεσις· ὡς μὲν οἱ τὰ ἀρώματα καὶ τὰ  
 διαπάσματα συντιθέντες ξηροῖς πρὸς ξηρά· ὡς  
 δ' οἱ τὰ μύρα κεραννύντες ἡ τῷ οἴνῳ ἐπιχέοντες  
 ὑγροῖς πρὸς ὑγρά. τὸ δὲ τρίτον, ὃ καὶ πλείστον  
 ἐστίν, ὡς οἱ μυρεψοὶ ξηροῖς πρὸς ὑγρά· παντὸς  
 γὰρ μύρου καὶ χρίσματος ἡ σύνθεσις αὕτη. δεῖ  
 δ' εἰδέναι ποῖαι ποίοις εὐμικτοὶ καὶ ποῖαι ποίοις  
 συνεργοῦσιν εἰς τὸ ποιεῖν μίαν ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῶν  
 χυμῶν. καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖ ταῦτὸ τοῦτο ζητοῦσιν οἱ  
 μιγνύντες καὶ οἶον ἀρτύοντες. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν  
 ἐν οἷς καὶ δι' ὧν αἱ τέχναι ποιοῦνται τὰ τέλη.

- 9 Μίγνυνται δὲ τὰ μὲν αὐτῆς τῆς ὁσμῆς ἕνεκα  
 καὶ πρὸς ταύτην τὴν αἴσθησιν, τὰ δ' ὥσπερ  
 ἡδύνειν βουλόμενα τὴν γεῦσιν, οἶον ὡς οἱ τὰ μύρα  
 τοῖς οἴνοις ἐπιχέοντες ἡ τὰ ἀρώματα ἐμβάλλοντες.

<sup>1</sup> I have supplied *μίξεις* to fill the lacuna marked by W. after *οὕτως αἱ*: the text to the end of the section is defective, but a makeshift restoration and rendering seem possible: the sense of *οὕτως* is obscure.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 7-9

result is usually obtained by a mixture, and accordingly<sup>1</sup> such mixtures are of two things (or classes of things), a liquid and a solid: but there are three ways in which the result may be reached (the combination<sup>2</sup> being one either of like with like, or of unlike substances), according as a liquid is compounded with another liquid, a solid with another solid, or a solid with a liquid.

For tastes and odours alike are derived from these two things: the method of the makers of spices and perfume-powders<sup>3</sup> is to mix solid with solid, that of those who compound unguents or flavour wines is to mix liquid with liquid: but the third method, which is the commonest, is that of the perfumer, who mixes solid with liquid, that being the way in which all perfumes<sup>4</sup> and ointments are compounded. Further one must know which odours will combine well with which, and what combination makes a good blend, just as in the case of tastes: for there too those who make combinations and, as it were, season their dishes, are aiming at this same object. So much for the ingredients and the methods whereby these arts attain their ends.

The object of the mixture is in the one case simply the production of a particular odour and the gratification of the corresponding sense, in the other there is a desire to produce, as it were, a pleasanter taste: this for instance is the object of flavouring wine with perfumes or of putting spices into it.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. given two components we have three possible combinations, *A* with *A*, *B* with *B*, or *A* with *B*.

<sup>2</sup> διαδόματα. cf. Plin. 13. 19; 21. 125.

<sup>4</sup> The difference between *μύρον* and *χρίσματος* does not appear; *μύρον* seems to be loosely used, as just above it was used of an entirely liquid mixture.



## THEOPHRASTUS

αἱ γὰρ αἰσθήσεις σύνεγγυς οὔσαι ποιούσιν τινα ἀπόλαυσιν ἀλλήλων, ὅθεν καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς γενστοῖς ζητοῦσι τὰς εὐσμίας.

- 10 Ἀπορήσειε δ' ἄν τις ἴσως διὰ τί ποτε μύρον καὶ τᾶλλα εὖσμα τοὺς μὲν οἶνους ἡδύνει τῶν δὲ βρωμάτων οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ πάντα λυμαίνεται καὶ ἀπύρωτα καὶ πεπυρωμένα. τὸ δ' αἴτιον ὑποληπτέον ὅτι συμβαίνει τῶν μὲν ξηρῶν ἀφαιρεῖσθαί τε τὸν οἰκεῖον χυλὸν διὰ τὴν ἰσχὺν καὶ ἅμα συνεπιφαίνειν τὸν αὐτοῦ ὄντα στρυφνὸν καὶ ὑπόπικρον· ἅπαν γὰρ τὸ εὖσμον τοιοῦτον, διαμασσωμένοις δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐμφανὲς διὰ τε τὴν
- 11 θλίψιν καὶ τομὴν καὶ ἔτι τῷ χρονίζεσθαι. τὸν δ' οἶνον οὐδέτερον ποιεῖ· καὶ γὰρ ὁ χυλὸς ἰσχυρότατος καὶ πλείων εἰς τὸ μὴ κρατεῖσθαι καὶ οὐδένα τῇ γεύσει χρόνον ἐπιδιατρίβων ἀλλ' ὅσον ἐπιθιγγάνων, ὥστε τὸ μὲν ἡδὺ ἐνδιδόναι τῇ αἰσθήσει τὸ δὲ πικρὸν καὶ δύσχυμον τῇ γεύσει μὴ ἐμφαίνειν, ἀλλὰ συμβαίνειν τῷ ὄντι καθάπερ ἡδυσμα γίνεσθαι τῷ πόματι τὴν ὁσμὴν· τῷ μὲν γὰρ γλυκεῖ καὶ μάλιστα δεομένῳ διὰ τὸ μηδὲν ἔχειν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις ὥσπερ μιᾶς ἐξ ἀμφοῖν γενομένης

<sup>1</sup> cf. 67; Arist. *de Sens.* 5.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Arist. *l.c.*

<sup>3</sup> As opposed to wine. Sch., misunderstanding this, thinks *ξηρῶν* corrupt.

<sup>4</sup> I have restored *καὶ*, which Sch. and W. omit, missing the point of the antithesis *μὲν . . . δέ*.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 9-11

<sup>1</sup> For the two senses of taste and smell being akin to one another, each provides in a way for the enjoyment of the other: wherefore it is through things which appeal to the taste, as well as those which appeal to the sense of smell, that men try to discover fragrant odours.

The question may perhaps be raised why perfume and other fragrant things, while they give a pleasant taste to wine,<sup>2</sup> yet have not this effect on any other article of food, but in all cases spoil food, whether it be cooked or not. The explanation we must take to be that this is what happens—the perfume if mixed with solid<sup>3</sup> things is in any case powerful enough to deprive them of their proper taste, and at the same time it makes obtrusive its own taste, which is astringent and somewhat bitter,—all perfumeries having that character,—while, if one bites up the food, this effect is even<sup>4</sup> more apparent because the food is crushed and broken up, and also because it remains longer in the mouth. But on wine neither effect is produced, since in this the taste is very strong and too generally diffused to be overpowered: also wine does not linger on the palate for any length of time, but merely touches it, so that, while it makes one conscious of its own pleasant taste, it does not make the palate feel the bitter unpalatable taste of the perfume: in fact the odour of this acts as a sort of relish<sup>5</sup> to the draught. This effect indeed<sup>6</sup> it has on wine which is sweet and specially needs the addition of perfume, because it has no ‘relish’ of its own; while with other wines the reason is that, as the effect of the mixture, the

<sup>2</sup> Sc. ‘bouquet.’

<sup>3</sup> I have restored γὰρ, omitted by Sch. and W.

## THEOPHRASTUS

διὰ τὴν μίξιν. ὁ γὰρ οἶνος, ὥσπερ καὶ πρότερον ἐλέχθη, δεινὸς δέξασθαι τὰς ὁσμάς.

- 12 Ἐχει δ' ἀπόρησιν καὶ τόδε, διὰ τί τὰ μὲν ἄνθη καὶ τὰ στεφανώματα ἀσθενέστερα ὄντα ταῖς ὁσμαῖς καὶ πόρρωθεν ὄζει, ἢ δ' ἱρις καὶ τὸ νάρδον καὶ τὰλλα τὰ εὖοσμα τῶν ξηρῶν ἰσχυρότερα ἐγγύθεν· καὶ ἔνια γε προσενεγκάμενοις, ἔνια δὲ καὶ τρίψεως προσδεῖται καὶ διαιρέσεως, τὰ δὲ καὶ πυρώσεως, ὥσπερ ἡ σμύρνα καὶ ὁ λιβανωτὸς
- 13 καὶ πᾶν τὸ θυμιατόν. αἴτιον δ' ὅτι τῶν μὲν ἀνθῶν ἐπιπολῆς τὸ ποιοῦν τὴν ὁσμὴν ἅτε μανῶν ὄντων καὶ οὐκ ἐχόντων βάθος, τῶν δὲ ῥιζῶν καὶ πάντων τῶν στερεῶν ἐν βάθει, τὰ δ' ἔξωθεν ἀπεξηραμμένα καὶ πεπυκνωμένα· διὸ καὶ ἀφίᾱσι πόρρω τὰς ἀποπνοίας, τὰ δ' οἶον ἀνοίξεως δέονται τῶν πόρων, ὅθεν διαιρούμενα καὶ κοπτόμενα πάντ' εὐωδέστερα, τὰ δ' ἄνθη κακωδέστερα τριβόμενα· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐκφαίνει τὸ οἰκεῖον τὰ δὲ προσλαμβάνει τὸ ἀλλότριον. ὁ δὲ λιβανωτὸς καὶ ἡ σμύρνα πυκνοτέραν ἔτι τὴν φύσιν ἔχοντα προσδέονται πυρώσεως μαλακῆς, ἢ κατὰ μικρὸν ἐκθερμαίνουσα ποιήσει τὴν ἀναθυμίασιν. ἐὰν γὰρ κόπτη τις ἢ τρίβῃ ταῦτα, προσοίσονται μὲν

<sup>1</sup> i.e. of the unadulterated wine and of the perfume.

<sup>2</sup> C.P. 6. 19. 2. Sch.'s reasons for bracketing this sentence seem inadequate.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. fragrant leaves, etc. cf. H.P. 1. 12. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Made from the rhizomes: cf. H.P. 1. 7. 2, and Index.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 11-13

two<sup>1</sup> odours combine, as it were, to form one. Wine indeed, as was said before,<sup>2</sup> has a special property of assimilating odours.

Another question also suggests itself,—why it is that, while the smell of flowers and other<sup>3</sup> things used for garlands, though it is not so strong, can be perceived even at a great distance, the iris-perfume,<sup>4</sup> spikenard and other fragrant solids smell stronger at a short distance: and of some of these the smell is only perceived when they are eaten, while some need even to be bruised and broken up, and others to be subjected to fire, as myrrh frankincense and anything that is burnt as incense. The explanation is that, whereas in flowers that which causes the smell is on the surface, seeing that the texture of flowers is open and they are not substantial, in all such solid substances as roots the power of producing smell is diffused through a substantial mass, while the exterior parts are dried up and of close texture: and this is why flowers emit the scent which exhales from them to a long distance, while things like roots need an opening of their passages. Hence, when these are broken up or bruised, they are in all cases more fragrant, while, <sup>5</sup>if flowers are crushed, they have a comparatively evil smell: for under such treatment roots give forth the property which belongs to them, but flowers acquire a property which is not their own. Again frankincense and myrrh, since they are by nature of even closer texture than roots, need a gentle application of fire, which, by gradually warming them, will cause the scent to be exhaled. For, if these substances are bruised or crushed, they will indeed present an odour, but it will not be so

<sup>1</sup> cf. Arist. *Probl.* 12. 9; 13. 3 and 11.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὁσμὴν οὐχ ὁμοίως δὲ ἡδεῖαν οὐδ' εὐταμίευστον.  
τούτων μὲν οὖν τοιαῦταί τινες αἱ αἰτίαι.

- 14 IV. Τῶν δὲ μύρων ἡ σύνθεσις καὶ ἡ κατασκευὴ  
τὸ ὅλον οἶον εἰς θησαυρισμόν ἐστι τῶν ὁσμῶν·  
διόπερ εἰς τοῦλαιον τίθενται· τοῦτο γὰρ χρονιώ-  
τατον καὶ ἅμα πρὸς τὴν χρεῖαν μάλισθ' ἀρμόττον.  
ἐπεὶ φύσει ἥκιστα δεκτικὸν ὁσμῆς διὰ τὴν πυκνό-  
τητα καὶ τὸ λίπος, αὐτῶν δὲ τούτων τὸ λιπαρώ-  
τατον, οἶον τὸ ἀμυγδάλινον· τὸ δὲ σησάμινον  
καὶ τὸ ἐκ τῶν ἐλαιῶν μάλιστα.

- 15 Χρῶνται δὲ μάλιστα τῷ ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς  
Αἰγυπτίας καὶ Συρίας, ἥκιστα γὰρ λιπαρόν· ἐπεὶ  
καὶ τῷ ἐκ τῶν ἐλαιῶν μάλιστα χρῶνται τῷ  
ὤμοτριβεὶ τῆς φαυλίας· δοκεῖ γὰρ ἀλιπέστατον  
ἔχειν καὶ λεπτότατον· καὶ τούτῳ νέῳ καὶ μὴ  
παλαιῷ· τὸ γὰρ ὑπὲρ ἐνιαυτὸν ἀχρεῖον παχύ-  
τερον καὶ λιπαρότερον γενόμενον. ἔλαιον μὲν  
οὖν τὸ τοιοῦτον οἰκειότατον, ἀλιπέστατον γάρ.  
φασὶ δὲ τινες καὶ <ἐν> τῷ χρίσματι τὸ ἐκ τῶν  
πικρῶν ἀμυγδάλων· πολλὰ δὲ γίνεται περὶ Κιλι-  
16 κίαν καὶ ποιοῦσιν ἐξ αὐτῶν χρίσμα. φασὶ δὲ  
καὶ εἰς τὰ σπονδαῖα τῶν μύρων ἀρμόττειν, ὥσπερ  
καὶ τὸ ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου καὶ αὐτό· ποιεῖ δὲ <τὰ>  
κελύφη αὐτῶν εὖοσμον εἰς τὸ ἔλαιον ἐμβαλλό-

<sup>1</sup> This passage was misunderstood by Plin. 13. 19. The sense seems to be that the viscous character of oil, though preservative of perfume, is not easily receptive of it.

<sup>2</sup> cf. *H. P.* 4. 2. 1; 4. 2. 6. βάλανος, *balanites aegyptiaca*. See Index.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 13-16

sweet nor so lasting as when they have been subjected to fire. Such are the explanations of these difficulties.

*Of the oils used as the vehicle of perfumes.*

IV. Now the composition and preparation of perfumes aim entirely, one may say, at making the odours last. That is why men make oil the vehicle of them, since it keeps a very long time and also is most convenient for use. <sup>1</sup> By nature indeed oil is not at all well suited to take in an odour, because of its close and greasy character : and of particular oils this is specially true of the most viscous, such as almond-oil, while sesame-oil and olive-oil are the least receptive of all.

The oil most used is that derived from the Egyptian <sup>2</sup> or Syrian *balanos*, since this is the least viscous ; the olive-oil which is most used is that which is pressed from 'coarse olives' <sup>3</sup> in the raw state, since this is thought to be the least greasy and the least coarse : this is used while it is new, not when it is old, for that which is kept above a year is useless, having become thick and viscous. This then is the kind of olive-oil which is most suitable, since it is the least greasy. Some say that for unguent the oil derived from bitter almonds is best : these are abundant in Cilicia, where an unguent is made from them. It is said that this is suitable for choice perfumes, like the oil of the Egyptian *balanos* : this is suitable in itself, <sup>4</sup> however the shells of the fruit are thrown into the oil to give it a good odour : indeed they are also thrown into

<sup>3</sup> cf. *H.P.* 2. 2. 12 ; *C.P.* 6. 8. 3 and 5.

<sup>4</sup> *αὐτὸ* conj. Sch. ; *τοῦτο* Vulg. W.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μενα· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ τῶν πικρῶν. ἤδη δὲ πῶς οὐκ ἐναντίον ἅμα μὲν τὸ ἀοσμότατον ζητεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ τὸ ὠμοτριβὲς ἐκ τῶν φανλιῶν, ἅμα δ' ἐν τούτοις ποιεῖν; δριμύτητα γὰρ ἔχει τὸ τῶν ἀμυγδάλων· εἰ μὴ ἄρ' ὅτι τὸ ἔλαιον ἐψόμενον κακῶδες. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐπισκεπτέον.

- 17 Χρῶνται δὲ πρὸς πάντα τοῖς ἀρώμασι, τοῖς μὲν ἐπιστύφοντες τὸ ἔλαιον τοῖς δὲ καὶ τὴν ὁσμήν ἐκ τούτων ἐμποιοῦντες. ὑποστύφουσι γὰρ πᾶν εἰς τὸ δέξασθαι μᾶλλον τὴν ὁσμήν, ὥσπερ τὰ ἔρια εἰς τὴν βαφήν. ὑποστύφεται δὲ τοῖς ἀσθενεστέροις τῶν ἀρωμάτων, εἴθ' ὕστερον ἐμβάλλουσιν ἀφ' οὗ ἂν βούλωνται τὴν ὁσμήν λαβεῖν· ἐπικρατεῖ γὰρ αἰεὶ τὸ ἔσχατον ἐμβαλλόμενον καὶ ἂν ἔλαττον ἦ· οἶον ἔαν εἰς κοτύλην σμύρνης ἐμβληθῇ μνᾶ καὶ ὕστερον ἐμβληθῶσι κιναμώμου δραχμαὶ δύο, κρατοῦσιν αἱ τοῦ κιναμώμου δύο δραχμαί.

- 18 Θαυμάσειε δ' ἂν τις ἴσως τοῦτό τε καὶ διὰ τί ποτε τὰ ἀρώματα προεμβαλλόμενα δεκτικώτερον ποιεῖ τοῦλαιον ὁσμήν ἔχοντα· δεῖ γὰρ ἁῶδες εἶναι τὸ δεξόμενον, τὸ δὲ κατειλημμένον ὑφ' ἐτέρου οὐκ ἁῶδες, ὥσθ' ἡττον ἐχρῆν εἶναι δεκτικόν. αἴτιον δ' ἀμφοτέρων ἡ πάντων τὸ αὐτό. ξηρὰ γὰρ ὄντα τὸ λίπος ἔλκει πρὸς ἑαυτὰ

<sup>1</sup> τὸ conj. Sch.; τὰ Vulg. W. Sch. also adds ἀμυγδάλων after πικρῶν.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. those derived from the Egyptian *balanos* and bitter almonds.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 16-18

that<sup>1</sup> which is made<sup>2</sup> from bitter almonds. Once more, is it not inconsistent to seek the vehicle which has the least odour of its own, such as the oil which is pressed raw from 'coarse olives,' and yet at the same time to use the above-mentioned<sup>2</sup> oils as vehicles? (for oil of almonds has a pungent smell). Possibly the explanation is that it is only by being cooked that oil acquires an evil smell.<sup>3</sup> These matters then are subject for enquiry.

They use spices in the making of all perfumes; some to thicken<sup>4</sup> the oil, some in order to impart their odour. For in all cases they thicken the oil to some extent to make it take the odour better, just as they treat wool for dyeing. The less powerful spices are used for the thickening, and then at a later stage they put in the one whose odour they wish to secure. <sup>5</sup>For that which is put in last always dominates, even if it is in small quantity; thus, if a pound of myrrh is put into a half-pint of oil, and at a later stage a third of an ounce of cinnamon is added, this small amount dominates.

At this one may well wonder; and also why it is that the previous addition of spices, which have an odour of their own, renders the oil more receptive: for the vehicle should be scentless, but a substance over which another substance has thus prevailed, cannot be scentless, so that it ought, one would think, to have become *less* receptive. However both facts, or rather all of them, may be accounted for in the same way:—the spices, being solid, attract to

<sup>3</sup> Sc. 'and these oils are used in the raw state' (?). I do not see how Furlanus' explanation, quoted by Sch., is to be found in the text. The following sentence shews that T. does not claim to have settled the question.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. to make it less volatile.

<sup>5</sup> cf. Plin. 13. 19.



## THEOPHRASTUS

καὶ ἀναδέχεται, διὸ καὶ τὴν συνέχειαν ἐξαιρεῖ·  
μανὸν δὲ γενόμενον [καὶ] τοῦ λίπους ἀφαιρεθέντος  
ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἡ οἰκεία μάλιστα ὁσμή, δεκτικώτερον  
ἐγένετο τοῦ ἐπιβαλλομένου διὰ τὸ μὴ ἀντιστα-  
τεῖν.

- 19 Ἡ δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀρωμάτων ὁδμή καὶ ἀσθενὴς  
ἄτε εἰς τὸ λιπαρὸν ἀνηλωμένη, καὶ ἔτι κατέχεται  
τούτῳ διὰ τὸ πληρῶσαι τοὺς πόρους. ὥστε κατὰ  
λόγον κἂν ἔλαττον ἢ τὸ ἐπιβαλλόμενον ἐπικρατεῖν  
τὴν τούτου ὁσμήν· εἰς ἀσθενέστατον γὰρ ἐμπίπτει  
καὶ δεκτικώτερον. ἀνὰ λόγον δ' ἔχει καὶ ἡ πολυ-  
χροنيότης ἢ ἐν ἐκάστῳ καὶ ἡ πρὸς τὴν πύρρωσιν  
εὐσθένεια καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα. τὸ γὰρ δεκτι-  
κώτατον, οἶον τῆς βαλάνου, καὶ χροنيώτατον, καὶ  
διὰ τὴν αὐτὴν αἰτίαν· μάλιστα γὰρ ὥσπερ ἐν  
γίνεται καὶ συμφυὲς τὸ μάλιστα δεχόμενον· αἰ-  
γὰρ τὸ τοιοῦτον διαμονώτατον, διὸ καὶ πυρούμε-  
νον μάλιστα ἀπαθές.

- 20 Ὡσαύτως δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων<sup>1</sup> τὸ σησάμινον,  
τοῦτο γὰρ δεκτικώτατον· τὸ δὲ ἀμυγδάλινον παρ-  
ακμάζει ταχὺ καὶ ὀλιγοχροنيώτατον διὰ τὴν ἐναν-  
τίαν αἰτίαν· τὸ γὰρ ἥκιστα δεξάμενον τάχιστα  
μεθίησι. τοῦ ῥοδίνου δὲ μάλιστα δεκτικὸν τὸ

<sup>1</sup> I have bracketed καὶ.

<sup>2-2</sup> This passage is omitted, apparently by accident, in both W.'s texts, though represented in his Latin version. I

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 18-20

themselves the viscid part of the oil, and so it attaches itself to them ; thus the density of the oil is destroyed : the oil, thus becoming thinner by the removal<sup>1</sup> of its viscid part which chiefly contains the characteristic odour, becomes more receptive of the spice which is added to it, because it does not now offer resistance.

Again that odour which is due to the spices becomes less powerful as it is spent on the viscid part of the oil, while at the same time it is preserved by this because it has entirely filled up its passages. Wherefore it naturally follows that, even if the added spice is in small quantity, its odour predominates, since it passes into a vehicle which is in itself not at all powerful and which is more receptive than itself. A corresponding account may be given of the keeping quality of the several oils, of their power of resisting fire, and other such qualities. Thus that oil which is most receptive, for instance, that of the Egyptian *balanos*, will also keep longest, and for the same reason ; namely that that oil which is most receptive unites, more than others, into one single substance, as it were, with the spices. Such a substance will always last longer than others ; which also explains why, if exposed to fire, it is less affected than others.

Of the other oils the same applies to that of sesame, this being specially receptive ; <sup>2</sup> but, for the contrary reason, almond-oil soon loses its virtue and keeps for a shorter time than any other, for that oil which has been least receptive parts soonest with the property received. Sesame-oil however receives rose-perfume better than other oils <sup>2</sup> because of its

have printed it from Sch.'s text. The omission is evidently due to the double occurrence of τὸ σήσαμνον.

## THEOPHRASTUS

σησάμινον διὰ τὴν λιπαρότητα· πυρούμενον δὲ ἐξόζει σησάμου καθάπερ ἀναλυόμενον. αἱ μὲν οὖν τῶν ἐλαίων φύσεις καὶ δυνάμεις τοιαῦται.

- 21 V. Τὰ δ' ἄρώματα πάντα σχεδὸν καὶ εὖοσμα πλὴν τῶν ἀνθῶν ξηρὰ καὶ θερμὰ καὶ στυπτικά. τὰ δὲ καὶ ἔχοντά τινα πικρότητα, καθάπερ καὶ ἐν τοῖς πρότερον εἶπομεν, ὥσπερ ἱρις σμύρνα λιβανωτός, ὡς δ' ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν καὶ τὰ μύρα. κοινόταται δὲ τῶν δυνάμεων τό τε στυπτικὸν καὶ τὸ θερμαντικόν, ἃ δὴ καὶ ἐργάζονται.

- 22 Ὑποστίφονται μὲν οὖν πάντα πυρούμενα, τὰς δ' ὁσμὰς τὰς κυρίας ἔνια λαμβάνει ψυχρὰ καὶ ἀπύρρωτα. καὶ ἔοικεν ὥσπερ τῶν ἀνθῶν τὰ μὲν ψυχροβαφῇ τὰ δὲ θερμοβαφῇ παραπλησίως ἔχειν καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ὁσμῶν. πάντων δὲ ἡ ἔψησις εἰς τε τὴν ὑπόστυψιν καὶ τὰς κυρίας ὁσμὰς ἐνισταμένων τῶν ἀγγείων ὕδατι γίνεται, καὶ οὐκ αὐτῷ τῷ πυρὶ χρωμένων· τοῦτο δέ, ὅτι μαλακὴν εἶναι δεῖ τὴν θερμότητα, καὶ ἀπουσία πολλὴ γένοιτ' ἂν τῇ φλογὶ χρωμένων, καὶ ἔτι καῦσιν ἂν ὀζοι.

- 23 Ποιεῖ δ' ἐλάττω τὴν ἀπουσίαν ὅσα πυρούμενα λαμβάνει τὰς κυρίας ὁσμὰς μᾶλλον ἢ ὅσα ψυχρὰ διὰ τὸ προφυρᾶσθαι τὰ πυρούμενα, τὰ μὲν οἶνφ εὐώδει, τὰ δὲ ὕδατι· ἦττον γὰρ ἀναπίνει· τὰ δὲ ψυχρὰ ξηρὰ ὄντα μᾶλλον, καθάπερ ἱρις κοπεῖσα.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 20-23

viscid quality ; and, when subjected to fire, it gives out a smell of sesame, as though it were being disintegrated. Such are the special characters and properties of the various oils.

*Of the spices used in making perfumes and their treatment.*

V. Almost all spices and sweet scents except flowers are dry hot astringent and mordant. Some also possess a certain bitterness, as we said above, as iris, myrrh, frankincense, and perfumes in general. However the most universal qualities are astringency and the production of heat ; they actually produce these effects.

All spices are given their astringent quality by exposure to fire, but some of them assume their special odours even when cold and not exposed to fire ; and it also appears that, just as with vegetable dyes some are applied hot and some cold, so is it with odours. But in all cases the cooking, whether to produce the astringent quality or to impart the proper odour, is done in vessels standing in water and not in actual contact with the fire ; the reason being that the heating must be gentle, and there would be considerable waste if these were in actual contact with the flames ; and further the perfume would smell of burning.

However there is less waste when the perfume obtains its proper odour by exposure to fire than when it does so in a cold state, since those perfumes which are subjected to fire are first steeped either in fragrant wine or in water : for then they absorb<sup>1</sup> less : while those which are treated in a cold state, being dry, absorb<sup>1</sup> more, for instance bruised iris-root. Thus, if

<sup>1</sup> ἀναρτίζει. So Sch. explains. cf. ἐκπύρωσιν, 24

## THEOPHRASTUS

- λαμβάνοντος γὰρ τοῦ ἀμφορέως ξηρᾶς ἱριδος  
κεκομμένης μέδιμνον καὶ δύο ἡμίεκτα πολλήν  
ποιεῖν φασὶν ἀπουσίαν, ἐὰν δὲ μετρίως φυράσῃ  
λείπειν ὅσον δύο χόας, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς ἔλαττον.
- 24 Γίνεται δὲ τὸ βέλτιον ἱρινον ἐὰν ἢ ξηρὰ καὶ  
ἀπύρωτος ἢ ἱρίς· ἀκρατεστέρα γὰρ ἢ δύναμις ἢ  
ἐὰν φυραθεῖσα καὶ πυρουμένη. συμβαίνει δὲ  
ὥσπερ καὶ ἐκθλίβεσθαι μᾶλλον ἐκ τῶν προ-  
πεφυραμένων διὰ τὸ ἥττον ἀναδέχεσθαι καὶ  
ἔλκειν εἰς αὐτό· προστύφοντες δὲ οὐ πολὺν χρό-  
νον ἐῶσι τὰ ἀρώματα ἀλλ' ἐξαιροῦσιν, ὅπως μὴ  
πολὺ ἐκπίνωσιν.
- 25 Πρὸς ἕκαστον δὲ τῶν μύρων ἐμβάλλουσι τὰ  
πρόσφορα τῶν ἀρωμάτων, οἶον εἰς μὲν τὴν κύ-  
προν καρδάμωμον ἀσπάλαθον ἀναφυράσαντες τῷ  
εὐώδει. εἰς δὲ τὸ ρόδιον σχοῖνον ἀσπάλαθον  
κάλαμον. ἢ δ' ἀναφύρασις ὁμοίως. καὶ τοῖς  
ἄλλοις ἀεὶ τὰ ἀρμόττοντα. τῷ ροδίῳ δ' ἐμβάλ-  
λονται καὶ ἄλλες πολλοὶ καὶ τοῦτ' ἴδιον παρὰ  
τᾶλλα, διὸ καὶ πλείστη ἀπουσία γίνεται· μίγ-  
νται γὰρ εἰς τὸν ἀμφορέα δύο μέδιμνοι.
- 26 Τῆς δὲ κύπρου ἢ μὲν ἐργασία παραπλησία τῇ

<sup>1</sup> Dry measure : the equivalents given are, of course, only approximate.

<sup>2</sup> τὸ βέλτιον ἱρινον W. after Sch.; τὸ βέλτιον τὸ ἱρινον vulg. The article must be omitted in one place or the other.

<sup>3</sup> κύπρος, called from a tree of that name : not mentioned in *H. P.* cf. *Plin.* 12. 119.

<sup>4</sup> cf. *H. P.* 9. 7. 2 and 3.

<sup>5</sup> cf. *H. P.* 9. 7. 3.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 23-26

into eight and a half gallons of oil we put thirteen gallons<sup>1</sup> of dry and bruised iris-root, they say that much loss is caused, while if one does not steep it too much, only about eleven pints and a half are wasted : and in the case of most perfumes the waste is less.

However the superior<sup>2</sup> iris-perfume is made by using the root dry and not subjecting it to fire : for then its virtue asserts itself more completely than when it is steeped in a liquid or subjected to fire. It also comes to pass that, if the perfumes have been first steeped, their virtues are, as it were, squeezed out of them to a greater extent, because they take in and absorb less : and so, when they are making them astringent, they do not leave the spices in the oil for long, but take them out, so that they should not absorb an excessive amount.

For making each perfume they put in the suitable spices. Thus to make *kypros*<sup>3</sup> they put in cardamom<sup>4</sup> and *aspalathos*,<sup>5</sup> having first steeped them in sweet wine.<sup>6</sup> To make rose-perfume they put in ginger-grass *aspalathos* and sweet-flag : and these are steeped as in the case of *kypros*. So too into each of the others are put the spices which suit them. Into rose-perfume moreover is put a quantity of salt<sup>7</sup> : this treatment is peculiar to that perfume, and involves a great deal of waste, twenty-three gallons<sup>8</sup> of salt being put to eight gallons and a half of the perfume.

The manufacture of *kypros* resembles that of

<sup>6</sup> τῷ εὐώδει here evidently means the same as τῷ γλυκεῖ, 44, where τῷ οἶνῳ τῷ εὐώδει occurs just above : cf. μελικράτῳ ἢ γλυκεῖ, C.P. 6. 17. 2.

<sup>7</sup> To prevent decay, as Diosc. 2. 53 explains.

<sup>8</sup> Turn. suggests that μέδιμνοι should be μναῖ, the initial M having been misunderstood by a copyist.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τοῦ ῥοδίνου· πλὴν ἀλλ' ἐάν τις μὴ ταχέως ἐξαίρη  
καὶ ἀποθλίβῃ σῆψις ἐγγινομένη φθείρει τὰ μύρα  
διὰ τὴν δυσωδίαν· ποιεῖ γὰρ σῆψιν ἀνυγραι-  
νομένη. παραπλησία δ' ἐργασία καὶ τοῦ μηλίνου·  
προστυφέντος γὰρ ἐλαίου καὶ τὰ μῆλα ἐμβάλ-  
λουσιν εἰς ψυχρόν, εἴτ' ἐξαιροῦσι πάλιν πρὸ τοῦ  
μελαίνεσθαι κατὰ πάσας τὰς ἐμβολάς· μελαινο-  
μένων γὰρ σῆψις διὰ τὸ ἀνυγραίνεσθαι, καθάπερ  
καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς κύπρου.

- 27 VI. Ἄπαντα δὲ συντίθενται τὰ μύρα τὰ μὲν  
ἀπ' ἀνθῶν τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ φύλλων τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ κλωνῶς  
τὰ δ' ἀπὸ ῥίζης τὰ δ' ἀπὸ ξύλων τὰ δ' ἀπὸ καρ-  
ποῦ τὰ δ' ἀπὸ δακρύων. μικτὰ δὲ πάνθ' ὥς  
εἰπεῖν. ἀπ' ἀνθῶν μὲν οἶον τὸ ῥόδιον καὶ τὸ  
λευκοῖνον. καὶ τὸ σούσινον· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο ἐκ  
τῶν κρίνων· ἔτι δὲ τὸ σισύμβρινον καὶ τὸ ἐρπύλ-  
λινον καὶ ἡ κύπρος καὶ πρὸς τούτοις τὸ κρόκινον·  
βέλτιστος δ' ἐν Αἰγίνῃ καὶ Κιλικίᾳ. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν  
φύλλων οἶον τό τε μύρρινον καὶ τὸ οἰνάνθινον·  
αὕτη δ' ἐν Κύπρῳ φύεται ὀρεινὴ καὶ πολύοδμος·  
ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι οὐ γίνεταί διὰ τὸ  
ἄοδμον.

- 28 Ἀπὸ ῥιζῶν δὲ τό τε ἱρινον καὶ τὸ νάρδιον καὶ  
τὸ ἀμαράκινον ἐκ τοῦ κόστου· τοῦτο γὰρ ὄνο-

<sup>1</sup> cf. Diosc. 1. 58.

<sup>2</sup> I have bracketed καὶ as suggested by Sch.

<sup>3</sup> This passage, with some variations, is quoted by Athen.  
15. 39. <sup>4</sup> cf. Plin. 13. 11.

<sup>5</sup> cf. H.P. 6. 6. 11. for the plant, and for the perfume  
Athen. 15. 38.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 26-28

rose-perfume, except that, unless one soon takes out the flowers and squeezes them out, decay sets in and ruins the perfume by giving it a disagreeable smell, since they cause decay as they get soaked. Similar also is the manufacture of quince-perfume<sup>1</sup>: the oil is first made astringent, and is cold when the quinces<sup>2</sup> are put into it: then they take them out before they turn black, removing each batch before the next is put in: for, as they turn black, decay ensues because they get soaked through—just as in the case of *kypros*.

*Of the various parts of plants used for perfumes, and of the composition of various notable perfumes.*

VI. <sup>3</sup> Perfumes are compounded from various parts of the plant, flowers leaves twigs root wood fruit and gum: and in most cases the perfume is made from a mixture of several parts. Rose and gilliflower perfumes are made from the flowers: so also is the perfume called *susino*,<sup>4</sup> this too being made from flowers, namely, lilies: also the perfumes named from bergamot-mint and tufted thyme, *kypros*, and also the saffron-perfume; the crocus which produces this is best in Aegina and Cilicia. Instances of those made from the leaves are the perfumes called from myrtle and drop-wort<sup>5</sup>: this grows in Cyprus on the hills and is very fragrant: that which grows in Hellas yields no perfume, being scentless.

<sup>6</sup> From roots are made the perfumes named from iris spikenard and sweet marjoram,<sup>7</sup> an ingredient in which is *koston*; for it is the root to which this name

<sup>1</sup> Instances of perfumes made from twigs seem to be missing. <sup>7</sup> cf. 30. Text perhaps defective.



## THEOPHRASTUS

μάζουσι τὴν ῥίζαν. τὸ δὲ χρῖσμα τὸ Ἑρετρικὸν ἐκ τοῦ κυπείρου. κομίζεται δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν Κυκλάδων τὸ κύπειρον. ἀπὸ ξύλου δὲ ὁ φοῖνιξ καλούμενος· ἐμβάλλουσι γὰρ τὴν ὀνομαζομένην σπάθην ξηράναντες. ἀπὸ καρπῶν δὲ τό τε μήλινον καὶ τὸ μύρτινον καὶ τὸ δάφνινον· τὸ δ' Αἰγύπτιον ἐκ πλειόνων, ἐκ τε τοῦ κιναμώμου καὶ ἐκ σμύρνης καὶ ἐξ ἄλλων.

29 Ἔτι δ' ἐκ πλειόνων τούτου τὸ μεγαλεῖον· καὶ γὰρ ἐκ κιναμώμου . . . καὶ ἐκ τῆς σμύρνης κοπτομένης ἔλαιον ῥεῖ· στακτὴ γὰρ καλεῖται διὰ τὸ <κατὰ> μικρὸν στάζειν. ὃ δὴ μόνον τινὲς φασιν ἀπλοῦν εἶναι καὶ ἀσύνθετον τῶν μύρων τὰ δ' ἄλλα πάντα σύνθετα, πλὴν τὰ μὲν ἐκ πλειόνων τὰ δ' ἐξ ἐλαττόνων, ἐξ ἐλαχίστων δὲ τὸ ἴρινον. οἱ μὲν οὖν οὕτω λέγουσιν, οἱ δὲ τὴν ἐργασίαν τῆς στακτῆς εἶναι τοιάνδε· τὴν σμύρναν ὅταν κόψωσι καὶ διατηῇσιν ἐν ἐλαίῳ βαλανίνῳ πυρὶ μαλακῷ ὕδωρ ἐπιχεῖν θερμόν· συνιζάνειν δ' εἰς βυθὸν τὴν σμύρναν καὶ τοῦλαιον καθάπερ ἰλύν· ὅταν δὲ τοῦτο συμβῇ, τὸ μὲν ὕδωρ ἀπηθεῖν τὴν δ' ὑπόστασιν ἀποθλίβειν ὀργάνοις.

30 Τὸ δὲ μεγαλεῖον ἐκ ῥητίνης κεκαυμένης συντίθεσθαι καὶ ἐλαίου βαλανίνον· μίγνυσθαι δὲ κασίαν κινάμωμον σμύρναν. πλείστην δὲ πραγματεῖαν περὶ τὸ μεγαλεῖον καὶ τὸ Αἰγύπτιον εἶναι,

<sup>1</sup> cf. *H.P.* 9. 7. 3; *C.P.* 6. 11. 13.

<sup>2</sup> cf. *H.P.* 2. 8. 4. σπάθην appears to be a conj. of W. for vulg. πλάτην: ἐλάτην Turn. cf. *LS.* s.v.

<sup>3</sup> Said to be called after the inventor, one Megallos: cf. *Plin.* 13. 13.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 28-30

is applied. The Eretrian unguent is made from the root of *kypeiron*,<sup>1</sup> which is obtained from the Cyclades as well as from Euboea. From wood is made what is called 'palm-perfume': for they put in what is called the 'spathe,'<sup>2</sup> having first dried it. From fruits are made the quince-perfume, the myrtle, and the bay. The 'Egyptian' is made from several ingredients, including cinnamon and myrrh.

Again from several parts of the plant is made the perfume called *megaleion*,<sup>3</sup> which is made from cinnamon and . . .<sup>4</sup> and from the myrrh when it is bruised flows an oil: it is in fact called *stakte*<sup>5</sup> (in drops) because it comes in drops slowly. Some indeed say that this is the only simple uncompounded perfume, and that all the others are compound, though made from a larger or smaller number of ingredients, and that iris-perfume is made from the smallest number of all. Some assert this, but others declare that the manufacture of *stakte* (myrrh-oil) is as follows: having bruised the myrrh and dissolved it in oil of *balanos* over a gentle fire, they pour hot water on it: and the myrrh and oil sink to the bottom like a deposit; and, as soon as this has occurred, they strain off the water and squeeze the sediment in a press.

*Megaleion*, these authorities say, is compounded of burnt resin<sup>6</sup> and oil of *balanos*, with which are mixed cassia cinnamon and myrrh. They add that this perfume and the Egyptian are the most troublesome

<sup>4</sup> The end of the account of *megaleion* and the beginning of that of myrrh-perfume seem to be missing. ? Supply καὶ κασίας καὶ σμύρνης.

<sup>5</sup> cf. H.P. 9. 4. 10.

<sup>6</sup> cf. Plin. 13. 7.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πλείστων γὰρ μίξιν καὶ πολυτελεστάτων. τῷ δὲ μεγαλείῳ καὶ τὸ ἔλαιον ἔψεσθαι δέχ' ἡμέρας καὶ δέκα νύκτας, εἶτα οὕτως τὴν ῥητίνην ἐμβάλλεσθαι καὶ τὰλλα· δεκτικώτερον γὰρ ἀφεψηθέν. τὸ δ' ἀμαράκινον τὸ χρηστὸν ἐκ τῶν βελτίστων ἀρωμάτων συντίθεσθαι χωρὶς ἀμαράκου· τούτῳ δ' οὐ χρῆσθαι μόνῳ τῶν ἀρωμάτων τοὺς μυρεψοὺς οὐδ' εἰς ἓν μύρον, ἀλλὰ ψευδώνυμός τις ἢ ἐπὶ κλησις.

- 31 Ποιοῦσι δὲ καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀχρωμάτιστα τὰ δὲ κεχρωματισμένα. χρωματίζουσι δὲ ἀμαράκινον ῥόδιον μεγαλεῖον, ἀχρωμάτιστα δὲ τῶν μὲν πολυτελῶν Αἰγύπτιον μήλινον κύπρος, τὰ δ' εὐτελῆ πάντα· ταῦτα δὲ ἀχρωμάτιστα διότι τὸ μὲν Αἰγύπτιον καὶ τὴν κύπρον λευκὰ εἶναι βούλονται, τῷ δὲ μηλίνῳ τὴν τῶν μήλων χροάν, τοῖς δ' εὐτελέσιν οὐ λυσιτελεῖ τὸ χρῶμα προστιθέναι. χρωματίζουσι δὲ τὰ μὲν ἐρυθρὰ τῇ ἀγχούσῃ, τὸ δ' ἀμαράκινον τῷ καλουμένῳ χρώματι· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ ῥίζιον ὃ ἄγουσιν ἐκ τῆς Συρίας.

- 32 VII. Συνεργεῖν δὲ δοκοῦσι πρὸς τὰς γεύσεις οὐχ αἱ ὁδομαὶ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ αἱ δριμύτητες καὶ αἱ θερμότητες ἐνίων, διὸ καὶ τῶν οἶνων τισὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μιγνύντες ὥσπερ κέντρον ἐμποιοῦσιν. ἔστι δὲ ἡ μὲν σμύρνη θερμὴ καὶ δηκτικὴ μετὰ

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 30-32

to make, since no others involve the mixture of so many and such costly ingredients. To make *megaleion*, they say, the oil is boiled for ten days and nights, and not till then do they put in the resin and the other things, since the oil is more receptive when it has been thoroughly boiled. The superior kind of sweet marjoram-perfume,<sup>1</sup> they say, is made of all the best spices except sweet marjoram: in fact this is the only spice which perfumers do not use for any perfume, and the name is a misnomer.

Some perfumes are made up colourless, some are given a colour. They give a colour to sweet marjoram-perfume, rose-perfume, and *megaleion*, while among expensive kinds the Egyptian, quince-perfume and *kypros* are colourless, as well as all the cheaper kinds. The reason why these are made without colour is that it is desired that the Egyptian and *kypros* should look white and that quince-perfume should have the colour of quinces, while it is not worth while to add colour to the cheaper sorts. The dye used for colouring red perfumes is alkanet; the sweet marjoram-perfume is dyed with the substance called *khroma* (dye), which is a root imported from Syria.

### *Of the properties of various spices.*

VII. It is thought that not only the smells of perfumes contribute to a pleasant taste, but also the qualities of pungency and heat which are found in some of them: accordingly some of these perfumes are also mixed with certain wines to give, as it were, 'point' to them. Thus myrrh is hot and has a biting quality as well as being astringent, and it also

<sup>1</sup> Clearly distinct from that mentioned in 28.

## THEOPHRASTUS

στύψεως, ἔχει δὲ καὶ πικρίαν. τὸ δὲ κινάμωμον δριμύτητά τινα μετρίαν μετὰ θερμότητος. παραπλησίως δὲ καὶ τὸ κόστον. ἡ δὲ κασία τούτων ὑπερβάλλει θερμότητι καὶ δριμύτητι καὶ στύψει. θερμὴ δὲ καὶ στυπτικὴ καὶ ἡ ἱρίς, καθ' ὑπερβολὴν δὲ καὶ πικρὰ νέα οὔσα καὶ τὸν χρώτα τῶν ἐργαζομένων ἀφελκοῖ. δηκτικὸν δὲ καὶ τὸ καρδάμωμον μετὰ θερμότητος. τοῦ δὲ βαλσάμου ὁ μὲν ὁπὸς καὶ τὸ καρπίον ἀνδρικώτερα πρὸς ἀμφοτέρα ταῦτα, τὸ δὲ ξύλον ἀσθενέστερον. παραπλησίαν δ' ἔχει τούτῳ δύναμιν καὶ τὸ ἄμωμον.

33 Ὁ δὲ σχοῖνος δηκτικώτερον μὲν τοῦ καλάμου καὶ θερμότερον, στυπτικὰ δὲ ὁμοίως ἄμφω. τούτων δὲ στυπτικώτερον τὸ κύπειρον. στύφει δὲ καὶ ἡ ἀσπάλαθος ἡ εὐώδης. ἡ δὲ νάρδος δηκτικὴ μετὰ θερμότητος. τὸ δὲ μάρον καὶ τὸ χρώμα τὸ εἰς τὸ ἀμαράκινον ἐμμιγνύμενον θερμαντικά. [συνεργεῖ δὲ καὶ τῆς ἀγχούσης τὸ ρίζιον εἰς τὴν χροάν τοῦ ῥοδίνου καὶ τῆς ἱρίδος.]

34 Νέα μὲν οὖν ὄντα τῶν ἀρωμάτων ἔνια δυνάμεις μὲν εὐθύς ἔχει βαρείας καὶ δριμείας, παλαιούμενα δὲ μέχρι τῆς ἀκμῆς γλυκαίνεται, εἴτ' ἀναλύεται πάλιν. οἶον ἡ ἱρίς εἰς μὲν τὴν ἐργασίαν ἀκμάζει μετὰ τὴν συλλογὴν τρία ἔτη, καὶ διαμένει δὲ πλείστον χρόνον ἕξ ἔτη. τὸ δὲ μάρον ἔτη δύο. ἡ δὲ σμύρνα δέκα ἔτη διαμένει βελτίων γενομένη. παραπλησίως δὲ τούτοις ἡ τῆς ἀκμῆς διαμονὴ καὶ τοῦ κινάμωμου καὶ τοῦ κόστου καὶ τῆς κασίας. σχοῖνος δὲ καὶ κάλαμος παρακμάζει ταχύ. τῶν δ' ἀνθῶν τὰ μὲν εὐθύς χλωρὰ ὄντα

<sup>1</sup> cf. Plin. 21. 42.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Index, σχοῖνος (2).

<sup>3</sup> cf. Index, κάλαμος ὁ εὐώδης.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 32-34

has a bitter quality. Cinnamon again has a fair amount of pungency as well as heat. So too is it with *koston*. Cassia exceeds both of these in heat pungency and astringency. Iris-perfume is hot and astringent, and excessively bitter when it is fresh,<sup>1</sup> in which state it causes sores on the skin of those that work on it. Cardamom has also a biting quality as well as heat. The juice and the fruit of balsam of Mecca are more active in producing both these qualities, while the wood is less so. Nepaul cardamom has also a property similar to this.

Ginger-grass<sup>2</sup> has a more biting quality than sweet-flag,<sup>3</sup> and is hotter; but both are equally astringent. *Kypeiron* is however more astringent than either. The sweet-scented *aspalathos* also has this quality. Spikenard has a biting quality as well as heat. *Maron* and the *khroma* which is mixed with sweet marjoram-perfume are heating. <sup>4</sup>The root of alkanet also contributes to the colour of rose-perfume and iris-perfume.

Now some spices when they are fresh have at first heavy and pungent qualities, but in course of time become sweet till they have reached their prime, and then lose their properties again. Thus the iris is at its prime for manufacturing the perfume for three years after it was gathered, and <sup>5</sup>lasts for six years at longest.<sup>5</sup> *Maron* lasts two years; myrrh ten, and improves with time. Cinnamon *koston* and cassia keep at their best for about the same periods as these. Ginger-grass and sweet-flag soon get past their prime. Of flowers some, like the rose, possess

<sup>4</sup> This sentence seems irrelevant here.

<sup>5-5</sup> καὶ—ἔτη. These words are omitted, apparently by accident, in both W.'s editions, though represented in his Latin translation.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τὰς δυνάμεις ἔχει, καθάπερ τὸ ρόδον, τὰ δὲ ξηραν-  
θέντα, καθάπερ ὁ κρόκος καὶ ὁ μελίλωτος· χλωρὰ  
γὰρ ὑγρότερα.

- 35 Τὰς μὲν οὖν φύσεις καὶ δυνάμεις τῶν ἀρωμάτων  
ἐκ τούτων θεωρητέον.

VIII. Δοκεῖ δὲ τὸ μεγαλεῖον ἀφλέγμαντον  
εἶναι παντὸς τραύματος· τὸ δὲ ρόδινον ἄριστον  
πρὸς τὰ ὤτα. ταῦτα δ' οὐκ ἀλόγως. τοῦ μὲν  
γὰρ ἡ σύνθεσις ἐκ ῥητίνης κεκαυμένης, ὥσπερ  
ἐλέχθη, καὶ κασίας καὶ κινναμώμου καὶ σμύρνης,  
ἅπαντα δὲ ταῦτα στυπτικὰ καὶ ξηραντικά. τὸ  
δὲ ρόδινον τοῖς ὡσὶν ἀγαθὸν ὅτι ἐν ἀλσὶν ἡ  
ποίησις· ἀναξηραίνει γὰρ καὶ ἐκθερμαίνει διὰ  
τοὺς ἄλας· διὸ καὶ ἡ ἀλοσάχνη ἀγαθόν. ἀλλὰ  
τὸ τῆς στραγγουρίας λόγου δεῖται· καὶ γὰρ ταύτη  
λέγουσι μάλιστα βοηθεῖν. αἴτιον δ' ἂν εἴη διότι  
πᾶν τὸ ὑπεξάγειν μέλλον ἀναλῦσαι δεῖ πρότερον  
τὸ ὑπεξαχθησόμενον· τοῦτο δὲ οἱ ἅλεις ποιοῦσιν,  
ἡ δ' εὐωδία τὴν ὁρμὴν ἀπέδωκε. <sup>1</sup>

- 36 Διὰ τί δὲ τὸ ἴρινον εὖοσμον μὲν οὐ ποιεῖ δὲ τὴν  
ὁρμὴν; ἡ διότι στυπτικὸν καὶ συνάγει τοὺς  
πόρους, ὥστε συγκλείσει κωλύειν τὴν δίοδον;  
ἀλλὰ καὶ κοιλίας λυτικὴ διὰ τε τὴν θερμότητα  
καὶ διὰ τὸ ἀποστύφειν τοὺς ἐπὶ τὴν κύστιν  
πόρους· ἀποκλειομένων γὰρ τούτων εἰς τὴν  
κοιλίαν ἡ συρροή. τὸ δὲ ὅλον φαρμακῶδες καὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. C. P. 6. 14. 8 and 11.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 34-36

their virtues from the 'first while they are still fresh, some only after they are dried, as crocus and *melilotos*,<sup>1</sup> these having a certain amount of moisture while they are fresh.

These examples may suffice for study of the characters and properties of spices.

### *Of the medicinal properties of certain perfumes.*

VIII. *Megaleion* is believed to relieve the inflammation caused by any wound, and rose-perfume to be excellent for the ears. And this is probable enough. For the former is composed, as was said, of burnt resin cassia cinnamon and myrrh, and all these have astringent and drying properties: while the reason why rose-perfume is good for the ears is that salt is used in the manufacture of it: for it is by reason of the salt that it dries and warms (which is why 'sea-foam'<sup>2</sup> is also good for the ears). Its use against strangury however needs explanation: for it is said to be specially helpful against this. The explanation may be that anything which is to remove the difficulty must first dissolve that which is to be removed; and this is the effect of the salt, while the fragrance supplies the necessary stimulus.

Why however, it may be asked, though iris-perfume is fragrant, does it not give the stimulus? Perhaps it is because it is astringent and closes the passages, so that by shutting them it prevents free course. On the other hand this perfume acts as a laxative on the bowels because of its heating quality and because it astringes the passages leading to the bladder: for, when these are closed, the liquid collects in the bowels. In general iris-

<sup>2</sup> Said to be a zoophyte: cf. Arist. *H.A.* 9. 14. 2.



## THEOPHRASTUS

τὸ ἱρινον καὶ ἄλλα τῶν μύρων. ἡ δ' αἰτία πάντων ὡς καθόλου εἰπεῖν ἐν ταῖς δυνάμεσι ταῖς εἰρημέναις, ὅτι στυπτικὰ καὶ θερμαντικά· τὰ ἀρώματα γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα φαρμακώδη. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἔξω τῆς τέχνης.

37 IX. Κράσις δὲ καὶ μίξις οὐκ ἔστιν ὠρισμένη τῶν ἀρωμάτων, ὥστ' ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν αἰεὶ χρηστὰ καὶ ὅμοια γίνεσθαι, ἀλλοῖα δὲ συμβαίνει διὰ τὴν ἀνωμαλίαν τῶν δυνάμεων τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἀρώμασι. τῆς δ' ἀνωμαλίας αἰτίαι πλείους. μία μὲν, ἥπερ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καρποῖς, ἡ τοῦ ἔτους κατάστασις· αὕτη γὰρ πολυχουστέρας ὅτε δ' ἀσθνεστεράς τὰς δυνάμεις <ποιεῖ>. ἑτέρα δὲ ἐν τῇ συλλογῇ, τὸ προτερῆσαι τῆς ἀκμῆς ἢ ὑστερῆσαι· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο οὐ μικρὸν διαφέρει. τρίτη δ' ἡ μετὰ τὴν συλλογὴν, ὅσα χρόνου δεῖται πρὸς τὴν ἀκμὴν, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη· καὶ γὰρ ἐνταῦθά ἐστι τὸ προτερεῖν καὶ ὑστερεῖν.

38 Τούτων δὲ τὸ μὲν τῶν ἐτῶν οὐκ ἐφ' ἡμῖν, πλὴν εἰς τὸ εἰδέναι τὰ ποῖα σφοδροτέρας καὶ ἀσθνεστεράς ἔχει τὰς δυνάμεις· τὰ δὲ κατὰ τὰς ἀκμὰς τῆς τε συλλογῆς καὶ μετὰ τὴν συλλογὴν ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐστί, τῷ εἰδότει μᾶλλον τὸ ἐπιτυγχάνειν.

Ἡ μὲν οὖν γένεσις καὶ σύνθεσις τῶν μύρων ἐκ τούτων.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 36-38

perfume, as well as others, has medicinal properties. And the explanation in all cases, to put it generally, lies in the above-mentioned properties of astringency and heating; for it is spices possessing these properties that are medicinal. However these matters lie outside our subject of study.

*Of rules for the mixture of spices, and of the storing of various perfumes.*

IX. There is no fixed rule for the combination and mixture of spices in the sense that the same components will always produce a satisfactory and a uniform result: the result varies by reason of the varying quality of the virtues found in the spices. For this there are several reasons. One, which applies also to fruits, is the character of the season; this causes the virtues to be sometimes much more than ordinarily powerful, sometimes less so. Another is to be found in the time of collection, according as it is made before or after the spices are in their prime. A third cause operates after the collection, that is, in the case of those spices which need time to come to their prime, as was said<sup>1</sup>: for here too it is possible to be too soon or too late.

Of these causes that which depends on the seasons is not within our control, except so far as we can discover which spices in a particular season have powerful, and which weak virtues.<sup>2</sup> But we can control those which depend on collecting them when in their prime, or on keeping them after they are collected, that is, if we know pretty well how to hit the right moment.

So much for the origin and composition of perfumes.

<sup>1</sup> 34.

<sup>2</sup> i.e. and we can select accordingly.

## THEOPHRASTUS

Πολυχροنیωτάτον δ' ἐστὶ τό τ' Αἰγύπτιον καὶ τὸ Ἴρινον καὶ τὸ ἀμαράκινον καὶ τὸ νάρδιον, πάντων δὲ μάλιστα ἡ στακτὴ, διαμένει γὰρ ὅποσονοῦν χρόνον. μυροπώλης δέ τις ἔφη παρ' αὐτῷ μεμενηκέναι Αἰγύπτιον μὲν ὀκτὼ ἔτη, Ἴρινον δὲ εἴκοσι, καὶ ἔτι διαμένειν βέλτιον ὄν τῶν ἀκμαζόντων. ἡ μὲν οὖν χροنیότης ἐν τούτοις.

39 Τὰ δ' ἄνθινα πάντα ἀσθενῇ. συμβαίνει δὲ τοῖς ἀνθίνουσιν ἀκμάζειν μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πᾶν μετὰ δίμηνον, μεταβάλλειν δ' ἐπὶ τὸ χεῖρον ἐνιαυτοῦ προελθόντος καὶ περικαταλαβούσης τῆς ὥρας ἐν ἣ τὴν ἀκμὴν λαμβάνει τὸ ἄνθος. ἀνὰ λόγον δὲ τῇ ἀσθενείᾳ καὶ τὸ εὐπέπαντα εἶναι καὶ ὅλως εὐδιάπνευστα· τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν ῥιζῶν καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν χροنیωτέρα· πλείων γὰρ ἡ ὁσμὴ καὶ ἰσχυροτέρα καὶ σωματωδεστέρα.

40 Διαφθείρει δὲ τὰ μύρα καὶ ὥρα θερμὴ καὶ τόπος καὶ ὁ ἥλιος, ἂν τεθῶσι· διὸ καὶ οἱ μυροπῶλαι ζητοῦσι τὰς οἰκίας ὑπερώους καὶ μὴ προσηλίους ἀλλ' ὅτι μάλιστα παλίσκίους· ἀφαιρεῖται γὰρ τὰς ὁσμὰς ὁ ἥλιος καὶ τὸ θερμόν καὶ ὅλως ἐξίστησι τῆς φύσεως μᾶλλον τοῦ ψυχροῦ· τὸ δὲ ψυχρὸν καὶ ὁ πάγος, εἰ καὶ ἀοσμότερον ποιεῖ διὰ τὸ συστέλλειν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀφαιρεῖταί γε τὴν δύναμιν τελέως. ἡ πονηρὰ γὰρ φθορά, καθάπερ τῶν οἴνων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων χυλῶν, τῷ

41 τὸ οἰκεῖον ἀφαιρεῖσθαι θερμόν. διὸ καὶ εἰς ἀγγεῖα μολυβδᾶ ἐγγέουσιν καὶ τοὺς ἀλαβάστρους ζητοῦσι τοιοῦτον λίθου· ψυχρὸν γὰρ καὶ πυκνὸν καὶ ὁ

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 38-41

Those which last longest are the Egyptian, the iris, the sweet marjoram and the spikenard perfumes : but myrrh-oil has the longest life of any ; for it will keep any time. A certain perfumer said that he had had Egyptian perfume in his shop for eight years, and iris-perfume for twenty, and that it was still in good case, in fact better than fresh perfume. These are instances of perfumes which will keep a long time.

On the other hand all those made from flowers have little vigour. These are usually at their best after two months, but they deteriorate when a year has past and the season has come round again at which the flowers are at their best. Also, as these perfumes lack vigour, so also do they quickly mellow, and, in most cases, quickly evaporate. Those made from roots and the other parts of the plant last longer, their odour being fuller stronger and more substantial.

Perfumes are ruined by a hot season or place or by being put in the sun. This is why perfumers seek upper rooms which do not face the sun but are shaded as much as possible. For the sun or a hot place deprives the perfumes of their odour, and in general makes them lose their character more than cold treatment : while cold and frost, even if they make them less odorous by congealing them, yet do not altogether deprive them of their virtue. For the most destructive thing that can happen to them, as to wines and other savours, is that they should be deprived of their proper heat. This is why men put them into vessels of lead and try to secure phials of alabaster—a stone which has the required effect : for lead is cold and of close texture, and stone has

## THEOPHRASTUS

μόλυβδος καὶ ὁ λίθος ὁ τοιοῦτος· καὶ ἄριστος τοῖς μυροῖς ὁ μάλιστα τοιοῦτος. ὥστε δι' ἄμφω τηροῦσι, καὶ τῷ ψυχρῷ καὶ τῷ πυκνῷ, μήτε διέντες ἔξω τὴν ὁσμὴν μήθ' ὅλως ἐπιδεχόμενοι μηδέν. καὶ γὰρ ἡ ἀναπνοὴ φθείρει καὶ τὸ ἔξωθεν ἐπεισιδὼν καὶ ἀλλότριον· ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰ πνεύματα φθείρει καὶ καταναλίσκει, καθάπερ ἐλέχθη, τὰς ὁσμάς, ἄλλως τε καὶ τὰς μὴ φυσικὰς.

42 X. Κεφαλαλγῇ δὲ τῶν μὲν πολυτελῶν τὸ ἀμαράκινον καὶ τὸ νάρδινον καὶ μεγαλεῖον, τῶν δ' εὐτελῶν ὅλως μὲν τὰ πλείστα μάλιστα δὲ τὸ δάφνινον. ἐλαφρότατα δὲ τὸ ῥόδινον καὶ ἡ κύπρος, ἃ καὶ τοῖς ἀνδράσι μάλιστα ἀρμόττειν δοκεῖ, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις τὸ κρίνον· ταῖς δὲ γυναιξὶν ἡ στακτὴ καὶ τὸ μεγαλεῖον καὶ τὸ Αἰγύπτιον καὶ τὸ ἀμαράκινον καὶ τὸ νάρδινον· διὰ γὰρ τὴν ἰσχὺν καὶ τὸ πάχος οὐκ εὐαπόπνοα οὐδ' εὐαφαίρετα· ζητοῦσι <γὰρ> τὰ χρόνια.

43 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ μὲν ἀσθενῇ τὰ δ' ἰσχυρά, καὶ ἰσχυρότερα τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν ῥιζῶν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ προειρημένα, διὰ τοῦτο τὰ μὲν ἄνθινα μὴ τριβόμενα εὐοσμότερα, τὰ δ' ἀπὸ τῶν ῥιζῶν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ τριβόμενα· τὰ μὲν γὰρ διαπνεῖται τε καὶ ἅμα διαθερμαίνόμενα διὰ τὴν τριῖψιν ἐξίσταται καὶ ἀλλοιοῦται, τὰ δὲ διὰ τὴν ἰσχὺν

---

<sup>1</sup> e.g. alabaster, which here at least is spoken of as a kind of stone.      <sup>2</sup> γὰρ ins. Sch.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 41-43

the same character, that being the best for keeping perfumes which has it in the highest degree.<sup>1</sup> So that vessels made of these materials keep the perfume well for both reasons, their coolness and their closeness of texture: they neither let the odour pass away through them, nor do they take in anything else. For evaporation destroys the perfume, and so also does any foreign substance which finds its way in: for even draughts of air destroy odours and cause them to waste, as was said, especially those odours which do not belong to a thing's essential nature.

### *Of the properties of certain perfumes.*

X. Headache is caused by sweet marjoram spike-nard and *megaleion* among costly perfumes: most of the cheap ones have also this effect, notably that made from bay. The lightest are rose-perfume and *kypros*, which seem to be the best suited to men, as also is lily-perfume. The best for women are myrrh-oil, *megaleion*, the Egyptian, sweet marjoram, and spikenard: for these owing to their strength and substantial character do not easily evaporate and are not easily made to disperse, and <sup>2</sup> a lasting perfume is what women require.

Inasmuch however as some perfumes are stronger than others, the stronger being those made from roots and the others already mentioned, for this reason those derived from flowers are more fragrant if they are not bruised, while bruising improves those made from roots and the others. For the former kind evaporate and pass off as they are warmed by the bruising, thus losing their character, while the latter owing to their strength have, as it

- ὥσπερ ἀνοιγομένων τινῶν πόρων ἐκ τῆς τρίψεως  
 44 ἐμφανεστέραν ποιεῖ τὴν ὁσμήν. δ καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῶν  
 τῶν ῥιζῶν καὶ ὅλως τῶν στερεῶν συμβαίνει,  
 καθάπερ ἐλέχθη. κατὰ δὲ τῶν ἀνθῶν ἐναντίως,  
 ὥστε ἡκολούθηκεν ἐκάτερα τῇ ἀρχῇ. τὰ δ' ἐκ  
 τῆς σμύρνης εὐλογώτατα δι' ἄμφω· καὶ γὰρ  
 μίγνυται μᾶλλον καὶ <ῆ> θερμότης ἢ τῆς τρίψεως  
 οὐκ ἄλλοτρία, μαλακὴ τις οὔσα· καὶ γὰρ <ῆ>  
 σμύρνα ζητεῖ τινα πύρωσιν. ἀπλῶς δὲ πᾶν τὸ  
 πολυόδμον ἄντ' εὐῶδες ἄντε κακῶδες ἄντε δριμύ  
 ἄντ' ὀξύ ἄντ' ὅποιονοῦν τυγχάνη, κινούμενον ἐμ-  
 φανεστέρον· τότε γὰρ ὥσπερ ἐνεργεία ἀναμίγνυται  
 μᾶλλον τῷ ἕρι.

Τῶν δὲ μύρων τὸ Αἰγύπτιον καὶ ἡ στακτὴ καὶ  
 εἴ τι ἄλλο πολυόδμον [καὶ] μίγνύμενα τῷ οἴνῳ τῷ  
 εὐῶδει ἡδίω· παραιρεῖται γὰρ ἡ βαρύτης αὐτῶν·  
 ἐπεὶ καὶ ἡ σμύρνη αὐτὴ πρὸς τὴν ἀναθυμίασιν  
 βρεχθεῖσα ἐν τῷ γλυκεῖ, καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς πρότερον  
 ἐλέχθη.

- 45 Πρὸς δὲ τὰς δυνάμεις σκοπούμενοις δόξειεν ἂν  
 ἄτοπον εἶναι τὸ συμβαῖνον ἐπὶ τοῦ ῥοδίνου· κου-  
 φότατον γὰρ ὄν καὶ ἀσθενέστατον ἀφανίζει τὰς  
 τῶν ἄλλων ὁσμάς ὅταν προμυρισθῶσι· διὸ καὶ  
 οἱ μυροπῶλαι τοὺς ἐπιδιστάζοντας καὶ μὴ ὠνου-  
 μένους παρ' αὐτῶν ἐπιμυρίζουσι τούτῳ πρὸς τὸ  
 μὴ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὰ παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων. αἴτιον  
 δ' ὅτι λεπτότατον ὄν καὶ προσφιλὲς τῇ αἰσθήσει  
 διὰ τὴν κουφότητα μάλιστα δικνεῖται καὶ συμ-

<sup>1</sup> ἡ ins. W.

<sup>2</sup> ἡ ins. W.

<sup>3</sup> The words ἄντε δριμύ are omitted in both W.'s editions, but represented in his Latin version.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 43-45

were, certain passages<sup>\*</sup> opened by the bruising, and so their fragrance is made more obvious. This, as was said, also takes place in the case of the roots themselves and of the solid things in general; but the result in the case of flowers is just the opposite, so that both kinds behave according to their origin. That this should apply to the perfumes made from myrrh is quite natural for both reasons; they mingle more than others with the air, and the heat<sup>1</sup> due to the bruising is not prejudicial, since it is gentle, and myrrh<sup>2</sup> in fact requires a certain amount of heating. And in general any strong odour, whether it be pleasing or the reverse, whether it be pungent<sup>3</sup> or sharp, or whatever its character, becomes more pronounced with movement; for then it becomes, as it were, active and mingles more with the air.

The Egyptian perfume, myrrh-oil, and any others that have a strong odour become<sup>4</sup> sweeter if they are mixed with fragrant wine; for then their heavy quality is removed. In fact myrrh itself is made to exhale a more fragrant odour by being steeped in sweet wine, as was said<sup>5</sup> in a former treatise.

If one has regard to the virtues of the perfumes in question, one may well be surprised at what happens in the case of rose-perfume:—though it is lighter and less powerful than any other, if one has first been scented with it, it destroys the odour of the others. And this is why perfumers, if a purchaser hesitates and is not inclined to buy this perfume, scent him with it so that he is not able to smell the others. The explanation is that, being very delicate and acceptable to the sense of smell, by reason of its lightness it penetrates as no

<sup>\*</sup> I have bracketed καλ.

<sup>5</sup> C.P. 6. 17. 2.



- πληροῖ τοὺς πόρους, ὥσθ' ἡ αἴσθησις κατειλημ-  
 46 μένη καὶ πλήρης οὖσα κρίνειν ἀδυνατεῖ. δύο γάρ εἰσι τρόποι, τάχα δὲ τρεῖς, οἱ κωλύοντες τὴν κρίσιν. εἰς μὲν ὁ νῦν εἰρημένος· ἄλλος δ' ὁ ἀπὸ τῶν ἰσχυρῶν ὥσπερ μεθύσκων τὴν αἴσθησιν καὶ καρηβαρᾶν ποιῶν· τρίτος δ' ὅταν προκαταληφθῇ τῷ βελτίονι· τὸ γὰρ ἐπεισάγειν τὸ χεῖρον οὐ ῥάδιον· οὐ δέχεται γὰρ ἡ αἴσθησις, ὥσπερ οὐδ' ἐπὶ τῶν χυλῶν καὶ ὅλως τῶν κατὰ τὴν τροφήν.
- 47 Κατισχναίνειν δὲ δοκεῖ τὸ ῥόδον καὶ τὴν σύνθετον ὁσμὴν· ὅταν γὰρ ἀκμάζῃ τὸ ἄνθος, ῥοδίζουσι τὰς συνθέσεις, ἀνοιγόμεναι δ' ἐξόζουσι τούτου μόνου καὶ μάλιστα. παύεται δὲ ταχὺ καὶ λήγει διὰ τὴν ἀσθένειαν καὶ λεπτότητα, δι' ἣν καὶ ἐξόζει τῶν ἄλλων· λεπτὴ γὰρ οὖσα ἡ ἀναπνοὴ καὶ ἡθροισμένη τῇ κατακλείσει προτερεῖ τε τῶν λοιπῶν καὶ διαδίδεται πανταχοῦ. διὰ ταῦτό δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἀπολήγει ταχὺ καὶ κατακρατεῖται πάλιν· ἀσθενεῖ γὰρ τὸ λεπτόν καὶ μαλακόν.
- 48 Ποιοῦσι δέ τινες τοῦτο καὶ τῶν οἴνων, ὥστε προποθέντες ἀφανίζειν τὴν τῶν ἄλλων ἡδονήν. ἐνιοὶ δ' ὥστε μὴ ἐπιδέχεσθαι ῥαδίως τοὺς ἄλλους,

<sup>1</sup> cf. 57, 58. *σύνθετος ὁσμὴ* or *σύνθεσις* seems to mean a kind of pot-pourri, which was from time to time renewed with fresh rose-petals. Sch. understands *σύνθεσις* to mean 'clothes in a wardrobe' (cf. Lat. *synthesis*), but it must surely have the same meaning here as *σύνθετος ὁσμὴ*: Sch.'s citation from 57 does not seem to prove his point, and *μένουσι πολὺν χρόνον αἱ συνθέσεις* in 58 is conclusive against him. cf. also 69.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 45-48

other can and fills up the passages of the sense, so that being entirely taken up and filled with it, it is unable to judge of others. For the power of judging is inhibited in two, or possibly in three ways; one is that which has just been mentioned; another is that the sense of smell is, as it were, intoxicated with its powerful virtues and becomes stupefied: the third is that the sense may be preoccupied with the superior odour; for then it is not easy to introduce after it what is inferior, since the sense of smell refuses this—just as the sense of taste in like case refuses flavours and foods in general.

It is also thought that the rose even weakens the effect of compound perfume<sup>1</sup>; for, when the flower is at its best, they treat compound perfumes with it; and, when these come to be opened, they smell only or chiefly of rose. However this effect is only temporary and transient because of the weakness and delicacy of the rose-scent, (the very quality which also causes it to assert<sup>2</sup> itself over the scent of the other ingredients). For, as it is so delicate and is compressed by confinement, it is exhaled before the others and disperses in all directions. It is also for this reason that the rose-scent only asserts itself for a short time and then is overpowered again; for anything that is delicate and subtle must be lacking in vigour.

Certain wines have also a similar effect: if they are first drunk, there is no satisfaction in others. Some again make it even difficult to take others

<sup>2</sup> i.e. when the pot-pourri is first opened: the 'delicacy' of the rose-scent causes it to be given off quickly and so (1) to be the first scent perceived, (2) to be volatile. εἰδω in this passage is used with gen. in two distinct senses.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ὥσπερ ὁ Ἐρυθραίας ἀλυκός τις ὦν καὶ μαλακός. τὴν αἰτίαν <δὲ> πειρατέον ἐκ τῶν ὁμοίων λαμβάνειν· ἔχει δὲ τοῦτ' ἴδιον τὸ ῥόδινον, ὥσπερ σχεδὸν καὶ μικρῷ πρότερον εἴρηται· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλα πάντ' ἢ τὰ πλείστα κεφαλαλγῇ, τοῦτο δέ, ὥσπερ ἐλέχθη, λυτικὸν καὶ βύρους καὶ ἀλγηδόνας καὶ τῆς ἀπὸ τῶν μύρων.

49 Ἡ δ' αἰτία φανερά διὰ τῶν προειρημένων, εἴπερ ἐπικρατεῖ καὶ διαδύεται πανταχοῦ. τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλ' ὅσα κεφαλαλγῇ βαρέα διὰ τὸ ἐκ τοιούτων συγκεῖσθαι τὰ μὲν ρίζων τὰ δ' ὀπῶν· τοῦτο δὲ καὶ τῇ ὁσμῇ ἐλαφρὸν καὶ τῇ θερμότητι σύμμετρον εἰς τὸ συμπέσαι καὶ διανοῖξαι τοὺς πόρους. οἱ γὰρ δὴ πόνοι τῆς κεφαλῆς ἢ καθυγραινομένης ἢ πνευματουμένης τῷ ἐναπολαμβάνεσθαι, ὥστε τὸ μὲν ἐκκρίναι δεῖ τὸ δὲ πέψαι ἢ ἀφελεῖν.

50 Πρὸς ἅπαντα δὲ ἡ θερμότης χρήσιμον, καὶ εἰς ἀφαίρεσιν καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον εἰς τὸ πέττειν καὶ διανοίγειν τοὺς πόρους, εἰς ἃ συμβάλλεται τὸ ἐν τῷ ἀλλ' πεποιῆσθαι· καὶ γὰρ ἀναστομοῦσι καὶ διαθερμαίνουνσιν οἱ ἄλλες. ἡ δ' εὐοσμία καὶ ὁρμήν τινα ποιεῖ πρὸς τὴν κίνησιν. ἀγαθὸν δὲ καὶ δοκεῖ πρὸς τοὺς κόπους εἶναι τῇ θερμότητι σύμμετρον ὃν καὶ τῇ κουφότητι καὶ τῇ διαδύσει πρὸς τοὺς ἐντὸς πόρους· ὥς δέ τινες φασιν, οὐχ ἥττον ἢ κύπρος ἔτι τούτου· μαλακὴ γὰρ ἡ ὁσμὴ καὶ

<sup>1</sup> cf. 52.

<sup>2</sup> δὲ ins. W.

<sup>3</sup> i.e. the case is so far analogous to that of rose-perfume; but the comparison does not hold as to what follows.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 48-50

after them; this is the effect for instance of wine of Erythrae,<sup>1</sup> which has a taste of brine and is subtle. The<sup>2</sup> explanation one must endeavour to find by comparing analogous cases.<sup>3</sup> However there is one peculiarity which as we have already more or less indicated, is possessed by rose-perfume only; while all or most of the others are heady, this, as was said, gives actual relief from heaviness and discomfort, even from that caused by other perfumes.

The reason for this is plain in view of what has been already said, seeing that this perfume overpowers others and penetrates everywhere. For the others that are heady are heavy because they are made of heavy substances, whether roots or juices; while this perfume is both light as to its scent and also by its heat well adapted to bring the passages to a suitable temperature and to open them. For pains in the head are due to an excess of moisture in it, or of air which gets confined in it, so that it is necessary to get rid of the one, and to raise the temperature of the other or to remove it.

And for all such purposes heat is useful, both for removing the moisture or air, and, still more, for raising the temperature of the passages and opening them: and to these ends it is helpful that the perfume should have been prepared with salt, since the effect of salt is to open the passages and to warm them thoroughly. Again the fragrance also supplies a stimulus to movement. This perfume is also considered to be good against lassitude, because its heat and its lightness make it suitable, and also because it penetrates to the inner passages. Some however say that *kypros* is quite as efficacious: for this too has a delicate scent which is grateful to the

## THEOPHRASTUS

- προσφιλῆς τῇ χρωτὶ καὶ ἡ ταύτης. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν καὶ τὰ ὅμοια τούτοις ὥσπερ ἴδια ἂν εἶη.
- 51 XI. Τοῦ ῥοδίνου δὲ αἱ μίξεις καὶ ἐν ταῖς ὁσμαῖς καὶ ἐν τοῖς χυμοῖς, ἐὰν ἡρμοσμέναι τυγχάνωσιν, ἔχουσιν τινα χρεῖαν, αἱ μὲν ἀφαιροῦσαι τὴν βαρύτητα καὶ τὴν ἰσχύν, αἱ δ' εὐοδμίαν τινὰ αἱ δὲ γλυκύτητα ἐμποιοῦσαι, καθάπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν οἴνων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἐν Θιάσῳ ὁ ἐν τῇ πρυτανείῳ διδόμενος, θαυμαστός τις ὡς ἔοικε τὴν ἡδονὴν, ἡρτυμένος ἐστίν· ἐμβάλλουσι γὰρ εἰς τὸ κεράμιον σταῖς μέλιτι φυράσαντες, ὥστε τὴν μὲν ὁσμὴν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, τὴν δὲ γλυκύτητα ἀπὸ τοῦ σταιτὸς λαμβάνειν τὸν οἶνον.
- 52 Συμβαίνειν δὲ τοῦτο καὶ κατὰ τὰς τῶν οἴνων μίξεις· οἶνον ἑάν τις κεράσῃ σκληρὸν καὶ εὖοσμον μαλακῇ καὶ ἀόσμῳ, καθάπερ τὸν Ἡρακλεώτην καὶ τὸν Ἐρυθραῖον, τοῦ μὲν τὴν μαλακότητα τοῦ δὲ τὴν εὖοσμίαν παρεχομένου· συμπίπτει γὰρ ἅμα τὰ κακὰ ἀλλήλων ἀφανίζειν τῇ μαλακότητι θατέρου <καὶ τῇ εὖοσμῇ θατέρου>. πολλὰς δὲ καὶ ἄλλας οἱ ἔμπειροι λέγουσι καὶ ἴσασι μίξεις. ὁ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ὁσμῶν εὐλογον συμβαίνειν, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν χρωμάτων ἂν τις λαμβάνῃ τὰς ἀρμοττούσας μίξεις. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν ἴδιον τοῦ ῥοδίνου.
- 53 Τὸ δὲ κοινὸν ἐπὶ πάντων ἀπόρημα, τί δὴ ποτε

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by Athen. 1. 58.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 48.

<sup>3</sup> This sentence must be defective: as it stands, the effect of only one wine is given, though the effect is said to be

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 50-53

skin. These and similar properties may be considered peculiar to these particular perfumes.

*Of other properties and peculiarities of perfumes.*

XI. The admixture of rose-perfume, whether in scents or in flavours, if it be well blended, is beneficial, in the one case by removing the heaviness and strength of the scent, in the other by imparting a fragrant scent or a sweet taste to the flavour, as in the case of wines. <sup>1</sup> Thus the wine which is served in the town-hall of Thasos, which appears to be of wonderfully delightful quality, is thus flavoured. For they put into the jar a lump of dough which has been kneaded up with honey, so that the wine gets its fragrance from itself, but its sweet taste from the honeyed dough.

This result also follows, it is said, from the mixture of different wines,—for example, if a strong fragrant wine be mixed with one that is mild and without fragrance, (for instance, if wine of Heraclea be mixed with wine of Erythrae),<sup>2</sup> since the latter contributes its mildness and the former its fragrance: <sup>3</sup> for the effect is that they simultaneously destroy one another's inferior qualities through the mildness of the one and the fragrance of the other. There are many other such blends mentioned by and known to experts. And it is quite to be expected that such a result should follow from blending odours, as it does from blending colours, if one discovers the suitable combinations. This then is peculiar to rose-perfume.

However there is one question which applies to all perfumes, namely, why it is that they appear to mutual. I have added *καὶ τῇ εὐσμίᾳ θατέρου* after Sch.; his text however is *συμπίπτει γὰρ ἅμα, καὶ τὰ κακὰ ἀλλήλων ἀφανίζει, τῇ μαλακότητι <καὶ τῇ εὐσμίᾳ> θατέρου.*

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀπὸ τοῦ καρποῦ τῆς χειρὸς ἡδιστα φαίνεται, διο καὶ οἱ μυροπῶλαι τοῦτο μυρίζουσι τὸ μέρος. τὴν δ' αἰτίαν ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ληπτέον, ὅτι τὸ θερμὸν ἐξίστησι καὶ ἀλλοιοῖ· ταχεῖα δ' ἤδη ἡ αἴσθησις τοῖς μύροις ἀναμιγνυμένοις τῷ χρωτί.

- 54 Ἀπορεῖται δὲ δίοτι οἱ μὴ εἰωθότες μυρίζεσθαι μᾶλλον ἐξόζουσι τῶν συνεχῶς μυριζομένων· εἴη μὲν γὰρ ἂν λέγειν καὶ ὅτι φαντασίαι καὶ οὐκ ἀλήθειαι διὰ τὸ μὴ εἰωθός· εἰ δ' οὖν καὶ ἀληθές, ἔοικε τὸ μὲν οἶον συναναμίγνυσθαι πλείοσιν ὁσ-  
μαῖς ἐτέραις ὑφ' ὧν ἀμαυροῦται, συγκαταμιγνυ-  
μένου καὶ τοῦ χρωτός, τὸ δὲ ὥσπερ ἀκέραιον  
δέχεσθαι τὸ μανὸν καὶ ἐκφαίνειν τῇ αἰσθήσει  
χροניζόμενον. εἴη δ' ἂν καὶ ἐναντίως λαβεῖν ὡς  
ἡττον δεχομένου διὰ τὸ ἀσύνηθες, βραδύτερον δ'  
ἀναμιγνύμενα πλείω χρόνον ἐξόζειν. καὶ τοῦτο  
μὲν ἔλαττον καὶ οὐ φανερώς ὁμολογούμενον.

- 55 Ἀπτεται δὲ μάλιστα τοῦ χρωτός καὶ κεφαλῆς  
καὶ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ πλείστον χρόνον ἐμμένει τὰ

<sup>1</sup> So. a part of the body which, not being fleshy, does not spoil the scent by its warmth. So Plin. 13. 19. appears to give the point—*experimentum (unguentorum) inversa manu capitur, ne carnosae partis calor vitiet*, though it may be questioned whether *inversa manu* represents καρποῦ. Pliny's

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 53-55

be sweetest when the scent comes from the wrist<sup>1</sup>; so that perfumers<sup>2</sup> apply the scent to this part. The explanation must be sought by observing what happens in the contrary case, inasmuch as heat changes or destroys the character of a scent, and the effect on the sense of smell is immediately perceived when perfumes are brought into close contact with the skin.

The question is also raised why those who do not habitually use perfumes smell of them more strongly, when they do so, than those who use them habitually. The suggestion might be made that this is an illusion due to the fact that the use is not habitual, and does not represent what really happens. If however it does, it would appear that in the one case the perfume becomes, as it were, confused with a number of other scents which weaken its force (the smell of the skin also becoming mixed with it), while in the other case the porous condition of the skin takes in the scent as it were uncontaminated, and so makes it perceptible by the sense of smell, because it lingers for some time. One might also make a suggestion of opposite character, that the skin takes in perfumes less readily because it is not used to them, and so, as the perfumes mingle with it more slowly, they preserve<sup>3</sup> their scent for a longer time. One may add that this is a small point and that all do not agree as to the fact.

Those perfumes whose scent is strongest get the best hold on the skin head and other parts of the body, and last for the longest time: such are phrase presumably means the back of the hand, and suggests that ἀπὸ τοῦ καρποῦ may be corrupt.

<sup>1</sup> Sc. in offering samples for choice.

<sup>2</sup> Sc. it is not absorbed by the skin.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἰσχυρότατα ταῖς ὁσμαῖς, οἷον μεγαλείον, Αἰγύπτιον, ἀμαράκινον· τὰ δ' ἀσθενῆ καὶ <οὐ> πολυοδμα, κούφην ἔχοντα τὴν ἀναπνοήν, ταχεῖαν ποιεῖ καὶ τὴν ἀπόλειψιν, ὥσπερ τό τε ῥόδιον καὶ ἡ κύπρος.

- 56 Ἐνια δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν οὐ χεῖρον ὄξει, διαπεπνευκυίας εἴ τις ἐνὴν βαρύτης. τὰ δὲ καὶ ὅλως ἔμμονα μᾶλλον, ὥσπερ ἡ νάρδος καὶ τὸ ἴρινον, πάντων δὲ μάλιστα <τὰ> ἰσχυρότατα. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἐν τε τοῖς λουτροῖς καὶ τῇ ἀνέσει διατηρεῖ πῶς τὴν ὁσμὴν ἣ οὐ συγκακύνει· τὰ δὲ κακυνόμενα πλείω ποιεῖ δυσωδίαν αὐτῶν τῶν ἰδρώτων, ὥς ἂν σήψεώς τινος ἢ διαφθορᾶς γινόμενης.

Καὶ τὰ μὲν περὶ τῆς τῶν μύρων ποιήσεώς τε καὶ δυνάμεως ἐπὶ τασούτον εἰρήσθω.

- 57 XII. Τὰ δὲ περὶ τὴν τῶν ξηρῶν μίξιν, ἐξ ὧν <τὰ> διαπάσματα καὶ αἱ συνθέσεις, οὐκ ἔτι ζητεῖ μίξιν τῶνδ' ἐκ τινων ὠρισμένων, ἀλλ' ὅσῳ ἂν τις πλείω καὶ ποικιλώτερα μίξῃ, τοσοῦτ' καὶ ἡ ὁσμὴ λαμπροτέρα καὶ ἡδίων, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν ἀρωμάτων τῶν προχείρων· εἰς ταὐτὸ γὰρ μιγνύντες ἅπαντα χρῶνται. ζητοῦσι δ' ἐν τούτοις καὶ σπεύδουσιν ὥστε μὴ ἐνὸς ἀλλὰ πάντων

---

<sup>1</sup> τὰ ins. Sch.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 55-57

*megaleion*, Egyptian perfume and sweet marjoram-perfume. Those on the other hand which are weak and have not a powerful scent, since they are volatile and evaporate, also quickly come to an end: for instance rose-perfume and *kypros*.

There are some however whose scent is even better on the second day, when any heavy quality that they possessed has evaporated. Some again are altogether more permanent, as spikenard and iris-perfume, and the stronger<sup>1</sup> a perfume is, the longer it lasts. Again some perfumes for some reason keep their scent in the bath when the body is relaxed, or at least do not help to produce a disagreeable effect; while others become disagreeable and cause an even more unpleasant odour than the sweat, as though some sort of decomposition or decay took place.

Let this suffice for an account of the manufacture and properties of perfumes.

*Of the making of perfume-powders and compound perfumes.*

XII. As to the mixing of solid substances to make powders<sup>1</sup> and compound perfumes, we do not find it here necessary to mix certain specified ingredients: the more numerous and the more various the perfumes that are mixed, the more distinguished and the more grateful will be the scent—just as though one were mixing whatever spices themselves<sup>2</sup> were procurable. As a matter of fact the custom is to use a mixture made of all kinds. Again in perfumes of this class the aim and object is not to make the mixture smell of some one particular thing, but to

<sup>2</sup> Sc. the natural products from which the manufactured perfumes are made.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κοινήν τινα τὴν ὁσμήν εἶναι. διὸ καὶ ἀνοίγοντες  
διὰ τινων ἡμερῶν τὸ ἐξόζον ἐξαιροῦσιν ἀεὶ καὶ  
τῶν ἰσχυρῶν ἐλάττω μιγνύουσιν, ὥσπερ . . . τὰ  
δ' ὅλως οὐ μιγνύουσιν, ὥσπερ τὸ ἐρυσίσκηπτρον,  
ὑπὲρ οὗ καὶ ἀρτίως ἐλέχθη.

58 Βρέχουσι δὲ συντιθέντες τῷ οἴνῳ τῷ εὐώδει  
ἔοικε δ' οὖν χρήσιμος εἶναι πρὸς τὰς εὐοσμίας, εἴ  
γε καὶ οἱ μυρεψοὶ χρῶνται. μένουσι δὲ πολλὴν  
χρόνον αἱ συνθέσεις. ἡ δὲ χρῆσις τούτων μὲν εἰς  
τὴν τῶν ἱματίων ὁσμήν, τῶν δὲ διαπασμάτων εἰς  
τὴν στρωμνὴν, ὅπως πρὸς τὸν χρῶτα προσπίπτῃ·  
καὶ γὰρ ἄπτεται μᾶλλον καὶ ἐμμονώτερον τοῦτο,  
καὶ ὥσπερ ἀντ' ἐκείνου τοῦτο ποιοῦσιν. οἱ δὲ  
πρότερον ἐνέβαλον οἴνῳ καταβρέχοντες εὐώδει  
πρὸς τὸ παραιεῖσθαι τὴν ὁσμήν, ἔνια δὲ καὶ  
μελικράτῳ καὶ οἴνῳ μιγνύντες ἀνέδεδον, τὰ δὲ  
καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ μελικράτῳ. τὸ γὰρ ὅλον ἄμφω  
ταῦτα συννεργεῖ πρὸς εὐοσμίαν. διαμένουσι δὲ  
αἱ συνθέσεις. φανερόν δ' ἐκ τούτων ὅπερ καὶ  
πρότερον ἐλέχθη, διότι τὰ ξηρὰ καὶ εὐοσμότερα  
πρὸς ἄλληλα <μιχθέντα> ταῖς ὁσμαῖς.

59 Εὐλόγως δὲ τὰ μύρα φαρμακῶδη διὰ τὴν τῶν  
(61) ἀρωμάτων δυναμιν· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἀρώματα τοιαῦτα.  
δηλοῖ δὲ τά τε καταπλάσματα καὶ ἃ δὴ τινες

<sup>1</sup> The example is missing. Turn. supplies *costum et amomum* from Plin. 13. 16, which does not however certainly refer to this passage; see 69, where this passage seems to be repeated.

<sup>2</sup> The reference of ἐκείνου is obscure.

<sup>3</sup> *μιχθέντα* add. Turn.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 57-59

produce a general scent derived from them all. This is why every few days they open the vessel and remove each time that perfume whose scent is overpowering the others, adding at the same time smaller quantities of the less powerful scents, such as . . .,<sup>1</sup> while some perfumes are never added, such as galingale, of which we spoke just now.

When they make compound perfumes, they moisten the spices with fragrant wine: and this certainly seems to be useful for producing fragrance, seeing that perfumers also use it. These compound perfumes last a long time. They are used to impart a pleasant odour to clothes, while the powders are used for bedding, so that they may come in contact with the skin: for this kind of preparation gets a better hold and is more lasting, so that men use it thus instead of scenting their bodies directly.<sup>2</sup> Some, before putting the powder in the bedding, soak it in fragrant wine, so that it may acquire its scent: and some powders they moisten by mixing them with mead and wine, or again simply with mead. For in general both these things help to give them fragrance. Compound perfumes also last well. From which what was said above becomes manifest, inasmuch as solid perfumes, when mixed<sup>3</sup> with one another, acquire a greater fragrance.

<sup>4</sup> It is to be expected that perfumes should have medicinal properties in view of the virtues of spices: for these too have such virtues. The effects of

<sup>1</sup> In W.'s text, which I have followed, there is some rearrangement (after Furlanus) of the order of sentences in this chapter and the next: *e.g.* part of § 61 is transferred to § 59. Both figures are retained for convenience of reference.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μαλάγματα καλοῦσιν οἷας ἀποδείκνυται δυνάμεις  
τά τε φύματα καὶ τὰ ἀποστήματα διαχέοντα καὶ  
ἄλλα πλείω τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα διαλλοιοῦντα,  
ἐπιπολῆς μὲν ἄλλα καὶ τὰ ἐν βάθει, οἶον, ἅν  
τις καταπλάσῃ τὰ ὑποχόνδρια καὶ τὸ στῆθος,  
εὐθὺς σὺν τοῖς ἐρυγμοῖς ἀποδίδωσιν εὐώδεις τὰς  
ὀσμάς. . . .

61 XIII. Αἱ δὲ τῶν ζώων ὀσμαὶ κατὰ τὰς ἰδίας  
(59) γίνονται φύσεις· ἐκάστῳ γάρ ἐστί τις οἰκεία κατὰ  
τὴν κρᾶσιν. αὗται δ' ἡδεῖαι μὲν καὶ καθαραὶ  
[καὶ] κατὰ τὰς ἀκμὰς καὶ ὅταν εὖ ἔχωσιν ἑαυτῶν,  
ἔτι δὲ ἡδίους ἀπαλῶν καὶ νέων ὄντων. πλείστα  
δὲ καὶ κακωδέσταται περὶ τὰς ὀχείας καὶ ὅλως  
συντηκομένων καὶ καμνόντων σωμάτων· διὸ καὶ  
οἱ τράγοι καὶ οἱ ἔλαφοι καὶ λαγοὶ καὶ τᾶλλα  
τότε μάλιστα ὀζει.

62 Θαυμαστὸν δὲ καὶ ἴδιον τὸ συμπάσχειν τὰς  
(60) τραγέας, ὅταν ἡ ὥρα καθήκῃ τῆς ὀρμῆς. αἴτιον  
δὲ δηλονότι τὸ ὑπολείπεσθαί τινα ἐν τῷ δέρματι  
δύναμιν ἢ ὑγρότητα τοιαύτην ἀφ' ἧς ἡ ὀρμὴ  
γίνεται καὶ ζώντων· κινουμένης οὖν καὶ διαθερ-  
μαινομένης ταύτης ὑπὸ τοῦ ἀέρος εὐλογον καὶ  
τὰ δέρματα καθ' ὅσον ἐπιβάλλει. διὸ καὶ ὥς

---

<sup>1</sup> § 60 on some other medicinal effects of perfumes is omitted.      <sup>2</sup> καὶ bracketed by W.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 59-62

plasters and of what some call 'poultices' prove what virtues they display, since they disperse tumours and abscesses and produce a distinct effect on various other parts of the body, on its surface, but also on the interior parts: for instance, if one lays a plaster on his abdomen and breast, the patient forthwith produces fragrant odours along with his eructations.<sup>1</sup>

*Of the characteristic smells of animals, and of certain curious facts as to the smell of animal and vegetable products.*

XIII. The smells of animals correspond to their several characters: each has a smell of its own according to its particular composition. These smells are pleasant and pure when<sup>2</sup> the animal is in its prime and in good condition, and even pleasanter when they<sup>3</sup> are young and tender. But the smell is strongest and least pleasant at the breeding season, and generally when the body is wasting or out of condition: wherefore goats stags hares and other animals have most smell at such times.

It is a remarkable fact and peculiar to the goat that goat-skins<sup>4</sup> are sympathetically affected when the breeding season comes round. The reason plainly is that there remains somehow in the hide the sort of virtue or moisture from which arises the breeding impulse when the animal is alive. It is natural therefore that, when this is excited and warmed by the air, the skin also should be excited<sup>5</sup> so far as it belongs to it to be so affected. Wherefore the original cause as it were of the

<sup>1</sup> ἐαντῶν can hardly be sound: ? αὐτὰ (sc. τὰ ζῶα).

<sup>2</sup> i.e. the skin of a dead goat.

<sup>3</sup> W. adds κνωῖσθαι after ἐπιβάλλει.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πρῶτον αἴτιον ἢ διάθεσις· τότε γὰρ καὶ οἱ μὴ ὀχεύοντες ὄξουσι καὶ οἱ ἄγονοι καὶ αἱ αἰγες ὅλως. ἢ δ' ὀχεία τότε μὲν μεγάλην μερίδα συμβάλλεται, καθ' αὐτὴν δ' αἰτία γίνεται ἢ διάθεσις.

- 63 Συμβαίνει δὲ τρόπον τινὰ καὶ ἐν ἄλλοις ἢ τοιαύτῃ συμπάθεια· καὶ γὰρ ὁ οἶνος ἅμα τῇ σταφυλῇ δοκεῖ συναυθεῖν καὶ τὰ σκόροδα καὶ τὰ κρόμνα τότε δριμύτατον ὄξειν, ὅταν <τὰ> ἐν τῇ γῇ βλαστάνῃ· πλὴν τούτοις ἅμα συμβαίνει καὶ αὐτοῖς βλαστάνειν. ὅλως δὲ πάντα κινεῖται τὰ φλοιόριζα καὶ σαρκόριζα μὴ ἀπεξηραμμένα κατὰ τὰς βλαστητικὰς ὥρας· ἢ γὰρ ἐνυπάρχουσα δύνამις ἐν αὐτοῖς κινεῖται. θαυμασιώτατον δὲ τῶν τοιούτων τὸ ἐπὶ τοῦ στέατος τῆς ἄρκτου συμβαῖνον, εἴπερ ἅμα ταῖς φωλίαις ἐπαίρεται καὶ ἐκπληροῖ τὰ ἀγγεῖα.

- 64 XIV. Τί δὴ ποτε Δημόκριτος τοὺς μὲν χυμοὺς πρὸς τὴν γεῦσιν ἀποδίδωσι, τὰς δ' ὀσμὰς καὶ τὰς χροὰς οὐχ ὁμοίως πρὸς τὰς ὑποκειμένας αἰσθήσεις; ἔδει γὰρ ἐκ τῶν σχημάτων. ἢ τοῦτό γε πρὸς ἅπαντας κοινόν; ἅπαντες γὰρ οἱ μὲν μόνης

<sup>1</sup> i.e. to form a 'crust.'

<sup>2</sup> τὰ ins. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> cf. H.P. 1. 6. 7.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. when the fat of the living bear becomes abnormally developed. Plin. 8. 128. expresses his surprise at T.'s credulity

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 62-64

phenomenon is the special condition of the animal at such periods: for at these times even those males which are not breeding have the smell, and the sterile goats and the females in general. Indeed, though at that particular time the fact that animals are actually breeding is a powerful factor in producing the smell, yet their condition is in itself a cause.

Similar sympathetic behaviour is found in a manner in other things also. Thus wine appears to 'bloom'<sup>1</sup> at the same time as the growing grape, and stored garlic and onions appear to have the most pungent smell at the season when those<sup>2</sup> in the ground are sprouting: however in this case sprouting takes place in the stored vegetables also. And in general any plant whose root is in layers<sup>3</sup> or fleshy becomes active at the season of sprouting, unless it has been completely dried: for it is the force latent in such plants which is stirred into activity. But the most remarkable phenomenon of the kind is what occurs with bears' grease: it makes active growth at the time of the bear's winter sleep<sup>4</sup> and completely fills the vessels in which it is kept.

*Of odours as compared with other sense-impressions.*

XIV. What can be the reason why Democritus, though he assigns various flavours to the sense of taste, yet does not in like manner assign various smells and colours to the senses to which they belong? According to his system he should have done so. Perhaps the same criticism should apply to all who have dealt with the subject: for they all in this matter: his version (*coctas ursorum carnes*) adds to the marvel.



## THEOPHRASTUS

οἱ δὲ μάλιστα ταύτης τὰ πάθη λέγουσι καὶ τὰς διαφοράς, ὥς ἐν χρώμασι λευκὸν καὶ μέλαν, καὶ ἐν χυμοῖς γλυκὺ καὶ πικρόν, οὐχ οὕτω δ' ἐν ὁσμαῖς· οὐδὲν γὰρ πλὴν τό τ' εὖοσμον καὶ τὸ κάκοσμον. οὐδ' ἐν ἀπτοῖς· πλείω γὰρ εὐθὺ τὰ ὑποκειμενα, σκληρὸν μαλακὸν τραχὺ λεῖον.

65 Ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐν φωναῖς, ὅξυν καὶ βαρὺ. ἔτι δὲ τὰ μὲν μικτὰ τὰ δ' ἄμικτα. ἄμικτοι χυλοὶ οἱ μὲν τῷ μὴ καταμερίζεσθαι ὥστ' ἐξ ἀμφοῖν, οἷον ὕδωρ ἔλαιον φλέγμα αἷμα, ὅλως πᾶν τὸ ἐπινέον ἢ τὸ διαιροῦν, ὥσπερ τὸ ὄξος καὶ τὸ γάλα. τὸ γὰρ τῇ πιέσει καὶ τρίψει μιγνύμενον ἕτερον εἶδος. ἄλλον δὲ τρόπον οἱ μὴ εὐμικτοὶ πρὸς τὴν χρεῖαν ἢ καὶ λυμαινόμενοι ἀλλήλους, οἷον ἢ θάλαττα καὶ τὰ νιτρώδη καὶ πικρὰ ὕδατα τοὺς οἶνους καὶ τὰ πότιμα, ἐὰν μὴ εὐθὺς χρήταί τις.

66 Ὅσμαι δὲ αἱ μὲν οὕτως ἄμικτοι πλείους καὶ ὥστε καθόλου λαβεῖν αἱ κακῶδεις ταῖς κακῶδεσι. ὥς δὲ βέλτιόν τι τὸ ἐξ ἀμφοῖν ἔργον εὐρεῖν εἰ

<sup>1</sup> i.e. taste.

<sup>2</sup> There seems to be some confusion here, as in the first sentence of the section T. complained that colours are *not* classified. The following passage is unusually elliptical, and the text is probably defective. T.'s complaint seems to be that sense-experiences *in general* have been inadequately classified (cf. 2); and in 66 foll. he specially mentions smells.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 64-66

either give the various qualities and distinguish the experiences of this sense<sup>1</sup> alone or at least comparatively neglect the others: thus with colours<sup>2</sup> they distinguish white and black, and with flavours sweet and bitter, yet they make no corresponding classification of smells, but merely class them as 'pleasant' or 'unpleasant.' So too they fail to distinguish different experiences of the sense of touch, whereas several belong immediately to this sense, as hardness, softness, roughness, smoothness.

In sounds still more are there differences, as that between shrill and deep. Again some sense-experiences are simple, some compound. Flavours are simple first in the sense that they cannot be resolved into two components<sup>3</sup>: instances are water oil phlegm blood,<sup>4</sup> and in general anything which floats, like milk,<sup>5</sup> or which causes separation, like vinegar. (Where mixture can be produced by pressure or crushing, it is quite a different matter). Secondly there are flavours which do not readily combine in another sense, namely for human use, or which even spoil one another if they are mixed, as sea-water, or water with soda in it or which has a bitter taste: these spoil wines or other things that are good to drink, unless they are taken at once.

Now the odours which in this sense do not combine are numerous, and, speaking generally, it is the pleasant odours which do not combine with the unpleasant ones. It would indeed be difficult, if not impossible, to find a case in which mixture is an

<sup>3</sup> Sch. and W. after Turn. add <ἐν γινεσθαι> after ἀμφοῖν, which seems unnecessary.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. a liquid which, in one way or another, refuses to mix with another liquid.

<sup>5</sup> ? cream.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μὴ ἀδύνατον, εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην δὲ δύναμιν <οὐχ>  
ἅπαν ὡς εἰπεῖν πρὸς πᾶν εὖοσμον. ἀλλ' ἔνθα  
μὲν ἴσως χεῖρω ποιεῖ ἔνθα δὲ βελτίω, καθάπερ  
ἐπὶ τῶν μύρων· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἀφαιρεῖται τὸ ἄκρα-  
τον καὶ σκληρόν, τὰ δ' ἀποθηλύνει καὶ ὥσπερ  
ἐξυδατοῖ τὰς ὀσμάς. ἐν δὲ τοῖς ξηροῖς ἅπασαι  
πάσαις μικταί.

67 Τὰ γὰρ διαπάσματα ὅσφ' ἂν ἡ πλειόνων  
ἀμείνω. ποιεῖ δὲ καὶ ἡ τοῦ οἴνου κατὰμξις καὶ  
μύρα ἔνια καὶ θυμιάματα εὖοσμότερα, καθάπερ  
τὴν σμύρναν. δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ τὸ μύρον ἡδύνειν τοὺς  
οἶνους, διὸ καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ οἴνοποιτᾷ μιγνύουσιν  
οἱ δὲ οὕτως ἐπιχεόμενον πίνουσιν. οὐκ ἄλογον  
δὲ συνέγγυς τὰς αἰσθήσεις οὔσας καὶ ἐν τοῖς  
αὐτοῖς ὑποκειμένοις ἔχειν τινὰ ἐπικοινωνίαν· ὡς  
γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ πᾶν οὐδεὶς οὔτε χυλὸς ἄοσμος οὔτε  
ὀσμὴ ἄχυλος· τοῦτο δὲ ὅτι οὐδεμία ἐκ μὴ ἔχοντος  
χυλόν.

68 Συμβαίνει δὲ καὶ μεταβάλλειν τὰς ὀσμάς ἅμα  
τοῖς χυλοῖς, ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τε τοῦ οἴνου καὶ ἐπὶ  
καρπῶν τινῶν· ἐνίων δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ ἄνθει πρότερον,  
ὥσπερ τῶν βοτρυῶν· ἡ δὲ τῶν μύρων εἰς ἀκμὴν  
μόνον καὶ οἶον φθίσιν. μετακινοῦνται δ' ἐν ταῖς  
ἐτείαις ὥραις πάνθ' ὡς εἰπεῖν, μάλιστα δὲ τὰ

---

<sup>1</sup> I have inserted οὐχ, suggested by Sch.

<sup>2</sup> Like Sch. I fail to see the relevance of this remark.  
The sense required is 'while the fruit is still on the tree':

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 66-68

improvement to the odour: in fact one might say that not<sup>1</sup> every combination of one fragrant thing with another will produce such a quality, but though sometimes the effect of such mixture is an improvement, sometimes it may be the reverse, as in the case of perfumes: for while the effect of some admixtures is to remove excessive strength or harshness, in other cases the odour is enfeebled and made, as it were, insipid. With solids however all combinations are possible.

In fact powders are the better, the more ingredients they have. Also the admixture of wine makes some perfumes and things used for incense more fragrant, for instance myrrh. It appears also that perfume sweetens wines, wherefore some add it in the manufacture, some put it in at the time of drinking. Nor is it unnatural that between these senses, since they are akin and are affected by the same objects, there should be a sort of reciprocity: for, to speak generally, no taste is unaccompanied by smell and no smell is unaccompanied by taste, the reason being that a thing which has no taste produces no smell.

It is also the case that smells actually change along with tastes, for instance in wine and certain fruits. And in some cases, as with grapes, the change takes place earlier, during<sup>2</sup> the flowering period: while in perfumes it occurs only when they have reached their best and are about, as it were, to go off. Almost all perfumes undergo alteration at certain seasons of the year, and this applies specially to the weakest kinds: in the case of those made

possibly ἀνθεῖ has got in from below and we should read καρπῶ.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀσθενέστατα, τὰ δ' ἄνθινά καθ' ἣν ὥραν ἀνθεῖ τὸ ἄνθος.

- 69 [Τὰς συνθέσεις ποιοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν ἀρωμάτων· θραύσαντες πολλὰ καὶ μίξαντες εἰς ταῦτό κλείουσιν εἰς κιβώτιον, εἴτ' ἀνοίγοντες διὰ τινων ἡμερῶν ὅτι ἂν μάλιστα ὄξειν δοκῇ τοῦτ' αἶρουσι, καὶ πάλιν δὲ καὶ πάλιν διαλείποντες χρόνον, ὅπως ἂν μηδενὸς ἐξόζη. θαυμαστὴν δ' ὁσμὴν λαμβάνει τὰ ἱμάτια εἰς ταῦτα τιθέμενα.

Τὸ δὲ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς Αἰγυπτίας μύρον αὐτὸ μὲν οὐκ ἄγαν ἀναπνεῖ, μιγνύμενον δὲ ποιεῖ τὰλλα βελτίω μάλιστα δὲ τὴν ἱρίν]. . . .

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. 63.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 57, of which this section seems to be a repetition.

<sup>3</sup> cf. 15.

## CONCERNING ODOURS, 68-69

from flowers this period is that at which the plants from which they are made are in bloom.<sup>1</sup>

[Compound<sup>2</sup> perfumes are made from spices: they bruise and mix a variety of these and shut them up together in a box. Then after a few days they open the box and take out the spice which seems to have the strongest smell: this treatment is repeated at intervals, so that the smell of no one ingredient may overpower the others. And clothes put away with such perfumes acquire a marvellous fragrance.

The perfume<sup>3</sup> made of the Egyptian *balanos*, though it has not much scent of its own, when mixed with others, especially iris-perfume, improves them]. . . .<sup>4</sup>

<sup>4</sup> The remaining sentences (§§ 70, 71) seem to be disconnected scraps, which perhaps do not belong to this treatise at all. The text of them being defective, it seems not worth while to attempt translation.

## ΠΕΡΙ ΣΗΜΕΙΩΝ ΤΑΤΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΠΝΕΥΜΑ- ΤΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΧΕΙΜΩΝΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΕΤΔΙΩΝ

Ι. Σημεῖα ὑδάτων καὶ πνευμάτων καὶ χειμώνων καὶ εὐδιῶν ὧδε ἐγράψαμεν καθ' ὅσον ἦν ἐφικτόν, ἃ μὲν αὐτοὶ προσκοπήσαντες ἃ δὲ παρ' ἐτέρων οὐκ ἀδοκίμων λαβόντες.

Τὰ μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄστροις δυομένοις καὶ ἀνατέλλουσιν ἐκ τῶν ἀστρονομικῶν δεῖ λαμβά-  
2 νειν. εἰσὶ δὲ δύοσεις διτταί· οἳ τε γὰρ ἀφανισμοὶ δύοσεις εἰσὶ· τοῦτο δὲ ἐστὶν ὅταν ἅμα συνδύνη τῷ ἡλίῳ τὸ ἄστρον, καὶ ὅταν ἀνατέλλοντος δύνῃ. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἀνατολαὶ διτταί, αἱ μὲν ἐφ' ὅταν προανατέλλῃ τοῦ ἡλίου τὸ ἄστρον, αἱ δ' ἀκρό-  
νυχαι ὅταν ἅμα δυομένῳ ἀνατέλλῃ.

Αἱ μὲν οὖν τοῦ Ἀρκτούρου λεγόμεναι ἀνατολαὶ ἀμφοτέρως συμβαίνουσιν· ἡ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ χειμῶνος ἀκρόνυχός ἐστιν, ἡ δὲ μετωπορινὴ ἐφ' α. τῶν δ' ἄλλων αἱ πλεῖσται τῶν ὀνομαζομένων ἐφ' αἰ, οἷον Πλειάδος καὶ Ὠρίωνος καὶ Κυνός.

3 Τῶν δὲ λοιπῶν σημείων ἔνια μὲν ἴδια κατὰ πάσας χώρας ἐστὶν ἐν ὅσαις ὄρη ὑψηλὰ καὶ αὐλῶνές εἰσι, μάλιστα δὲ ὅσα πρὸς θάλασσαν καθήκει τῶν ὑψηλῶν· τῶν τὲ γὰρ πνευμάτων ἀρχομένων τὰ νέφη προσπίπτει πρὸς τοὺς τοιούτους τόπους, καὶ μεθισταμένων εἰς τοὺνναντίον

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS

*Introductory: general principles.*

I. THE signs of rain wind storm and fair weather we have described so far as was attainable, partly from our own observation, partly from the information of persons of credit.

Now those signs which belong to the setting or rising of the heavenly bodies must be learnt from astronomy.<sup>1</sup> Their settings are twofold, since they may be said to have set when they become invisible. And this occurs when the star sets along with the sun, and also when it sets at sunrise. In like manner their risings are twofold: there is the morning rising, when the star rises before the sun, and there is the rising at nightfall, when it rises at sunset.

Now what are called the risings of Arcturus occur at both times, his winter rising being at nightfall and his autumn rising at dawn. But the rising of most of the familiar constellations is at dawn, for instance, the Pleiad Orion and the Dog.

Of the remaining signs some belong specially to all such lands as contain high mountains and valleys, specially where such mountains extend down to the sea: for, when the winds begin to blow, the clouds are thrown against such places, and, when the winds

<sup>1</sup> Or, perhaps, 'from my astronomical works.'



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀντιμεθίστανται καὶ ὑγρότερα γινόμενα διὰ βάρος εἰς τὰ κοῖλα συγκαθίζει. διὸ δεῖ προσέχειν οὐ ἂν τις ἰδρυμένος ᾗ. ἔστι γὰρ αἰεὶ τινα λαβεῖν τοιοῦτον γινόμενα καὶ ἔστι σαφέστατα σημεῖα τὰ ἀπὸ τούτων.

4. Διὸ καὶ ἀγαθοὶ γεγένηνται κατὰ τόπους τινὰς ἀστρονόμοι ἔνιοι, οἷον Μωτρίκετας ἐν Μηθύμνῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ Λεπετύμνου, καὶ Κλεόστρατος ἐν Τενέδῳ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰδῆς, καὶ Φαινὸς Ἀθήνησιν ἀπὸ τοῦ Λυκαβηττοῦ τὰ περὶ τὰς τροπὰς συνεῖδε, παρ' οὗ Μέτων ἀκούσας τὸν τοῦ ἐνὸς δέοντα εἴκοσιν ἐνιαυτῶν <κύκλον> συνέταξεν. ἦν δὲ ὁ μὲν Φαινὸς μέτοικος Ἀθήνησιν ὁ δὲ Μέτων Ἀθηναῖος. καὶ ἄλλοι δὲ τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον ἡστρολόγησαν.
5. Ἄλλα δέ ἐστι σημεῖα ἃ λαμβάνεται ἀπὸ τε ζώων τῶν κατ' οἰκίαν καὶ ἐτέρων τινῶν τόπων καὶ παθημάτων, μάλιστα δὲ κυριώτατα <τὰ> ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ τῆς σελήνης· ἡ γὰρ σελήνη νυκτὸς οἷον ἡλιὸς ἐστὶ· διὸ καὶ αἱ σύνοδοι τῶν μηνῶν χειμέριοί εἰσιν, ὅτι ἀπολείπει τὸ φῶς τῆς σελήνης ἀπὸ τετράδος φθίνοντος μέχρι τετράδος ἰσταμένου. ὥσπερ οὖν ἡλίου ἀπόλειψις γίνεται κατὰ τὸν ὁμοῖον τρόπον καὶ τῆς σελήνης ἔκλειψις.
6. δεῖ οὖν προσέχειν μάλιστα ταῖς ἀνατολαῖς ταῖς τούτων καὶ ταῖς δύσεσιν ὁποίας ἂν ποιῶνται τὸν βουλούμενον προγινώσκειν.

---

<sup>1</sup> ἀντιμεθίστανται. ? ἀντιμεθίσταται.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 5. 140. Of Matriketas nothing is known.

<sup>3</sup> Said (Plin. 2. 31) to have first recognised the Ram and the Archer. Athen. (7. 278 b) connects him with Tenedos.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 3-6

change, the clouds also change<sup>1</sup> and take a contrary direction, and, as they become laden with moisture, they settle down in the hollows because of their weight. Wherefore good heed must be taken to the local conditions of the region in which one is placed. It is indeed always possible to find such an observer, and the signs learnt from such persons are the most trustworthy.

Thus in some parts have been found good astronomers: for instance, <sup>2</sup>Matriketas at Methymna observed the solstices from Mount Lepetymnos, Cleostratus<sup>3</sup> in Tenedos from Mount Ida, Phaeinos at Athens from Mount Lycabettus: Meton, who made the cycle<sup>4</sup> of nineteen years, was the pupil of the last-named. Phaeinos was a resident alien at Athens, while Meton was an Athenian. Others also have made astronomical observations in like manner.

Again there are other signs which are taken from domestic animals or from certain other quarters and happenings. Most important of all are the<sup>5</sup> signs taken from the sun and moon: for the moon is as it were a nocturnal sun. Wherefore also the meetings of the months are stormy, because the moon's light fails from the fourth day from the end of one month to the fourth day from the beginning of the next: there is therefore a failure of the moon corresponding to the failure of the sun. Wherefore anyone who desires to forecast the weather must pay especial heed to the character of the risings and settings of these luminaries.

<sup>4</sup> Called 'the great year': cf. Aelian. *V.H.* 10. 7. τὸν τοῦ ἐνδὲς δέοντα εἰκοσιν ἐνιαυτῶν <κύκλον> conj. Sch. ἐνιαυτὸν conj. W.

<sup>5</sup> τὰ seems necessary. ? κύρια τὰ.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- Πρῶτον μὲν οὖν ληπτέον ὅτι αἱ διχοτομίαι διορίζουσι τὰς ὥρας, ὥστε ἐπὶ τούτων δεῖ ἀθρεῖν καὶ ἐνιαυτὸν καὶ μῆνα καὶ ἡμέραν. διχοτομεῖ δὲ τὸν μὲν ἐνιαυτὸν Πλειάς τε δυομένη καὶ ἀνατέλλουσα· ἀπὸ γὰρ δύσεως μέχρι ἀνατολῆς τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ ἐστίν. ὥστε δίχα τέμνεται ὁ
- 7 πᾶς χρόνος. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ αἱ τροπαὶ καὶ ἰσημερίαι ποιοῦσιν. οἷα τις ἂν οὖν ἦ κατὰστασις τοῦ ἀέρος Πλειάδος δυομένης, οὕτω ἔχει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ μέχρι τροπῶν, καὶ μεταβάλλῃ, μετὰ τροπᾶς· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ μεταβάλλῃ, διέχει ἕως ἰσημερίας, καὶ κεῖθεν ὡσαύτως μέχρι Πλειάδος, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης μέχρι τροπῶν θερινῶν, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν μέχρι ἰσημερίας, καὶ ἀπὸ ἰσημερίας μέχρι Πλειάδος δύσεως.
- 8 Ὡς δ' αὐτως ἔχει καὶ περὶ τὸν μῆνα ἕκαστον· διχοτομοῦσι γὰρ αἱ τε πανσέληνοι καὶ αἱ ὀγδόαι καὶ αἱ τετράδες, ὥστε ἀπὸ νομηνίας ὡς ἀπ' ἀρχῆς δεῖ σκοπεῖν. μεταβάλλει γὰρ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἐν τῇ τετράδι, ἐὰν δὲ μή, ἐν τῇ ὀγδόῃ, εἰ δὲ μή, πανσελήνῳ· ἀπὸ δὲ πανσελήνου εἰς ὀγδὸν φθίνοντος, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης εἰς τετράδα, ἀπὸ δὲ τετράδος εἰς τὴν νομηνίαν.
- 9 Ὡς δ' αὐτως καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἡμέρας ἔχουσιν αἱ μεταβολαὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ. ἀνατολὴ γὰρ καὶ πρῶτ' καὶ μεσημβρία καὶ δειλὴ καὶ δύσις, καὶ τὰ τῆς νυκτὸς μέρη τὰ ἀνάλογα ταῦτ' οὖν ποιεῖ τοῖς εἰρημένοις περὶ πνευμάτων καὶ χειμῶνος καὶ εὐδίας. μάλιστα γὰρ ἐὰν μέλλῃ μεταβάλλειν, ἐν

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 6-9

Now the first point to be seized is that the various periods are all divided in half, so that one's study of the year the month or the day should take account of these divisions. The year is divided in half by the setting and rising of the Pleiad<sup>1</sup>: for from the setting to the rising is a half year. So that to begin with the whole period is divided into halves: and a like division is effected by the solstices and equinoxes. From which it follows that, whatever is the condition of the atmosphere when the Pleiad sets, that it continues in general to be till the winter solstice, and, if it does change, the change only takes place after the solstice: while, if it does not change, it continues the same till the spring equinox: the same principle holds good from that time to the rising of the Pleiad, from that again to the summer solstice, from that again to the autumnal equinox, and from that to the setting of the Pleiad.

So too is it with each month; the full moon and the eighth<sup>2</sup> and the fourth days make divisions into halves, so that one should make the new moon the starting-point of one's survey. A change most often takes place on the fourth day, or, failing that, on the eighth, or, failing that, at the full moon; after that the periods are from the full moon to the eighth day from the end of the month, from that to the fourth day from the end, and from that to the new moon.

The divisions of the day follow in general the same principle: there is the sunrise, the mid-morning, noon, mid-afternoon, and sunset; and the corresponding divisions of the night have like effects in the matter of winds storms and fair weather; that is to say, if there is to be a change, it will generally

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 18. 280.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Arat. 73 f.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- ταῖς διχοτομίαις μεταβάλλει. καθόλου μὲν οὖν τὰς ὥρας οὕτω δεῖ παρατηρεῖν, καθ' ἕκαστα δὲ τῶν σημείων κατὰ τὸν ὑπογεγραμμένον τρόπον.
- 10 "Υδατος μὲν οὖν σημεία τὰ τοιαῦτα δοκεῖ εἶναι. ἐναργέστατον μὲν οὖν τὸ ἐωθινόν, ὅταν πρὸ ἡλίου ἀνατολῆς φαίνεται ἐπιφοινίσσον σημεῖον· ἡ γὰρ αὐθημερινὸν ἐπισημαίνει ἡ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ. δημοῖ δὲ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα σημεία· ἐὰν γὰρ μὴ πρότερον, τριταῖα μάλιστα σημαίνει τὸ ἐπιφοινίσσον καὶ δύνοντος, ἡττον δὲ ἢ τὸ ἐωθινοῦ.
- 11 Καὶ ἐὰν δύνῃ χειμῶνος ἢ ἔαρος εἰς νεφέλιον, τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὥς τὰ πολλὰ ἐπισημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν ῥάβδοι νοτόθεν, ταῦτά δὲ ταῦτα βορρᾶθεν γινόμενα ἀσθενέστερα. καὶ ἐὰν ἀνίσχων μέλαν σημεῖον ἴσχη, καὶ ἐὰν ἐκ νεφελῶν <ἀν>έχη, ὑδατικόν, καὶ ἐὰν ἀκτῖνες ἀνίσχοντος ἀνατείνωσι πρὶν ἀνατεῖλαι, κοινὸν ὕδατος σημεῖον καὶ ἀνέμου. καὶ ἐὰν καταφερομένου τοῦ ἡλίου ὑφίστηται νέφος, ὑφ' οὗ ἐὰν σχίζονται αἱ ἀκτῖνες, χειμερινὸν τὸ σημεῖον. καὶ ὅταν καυματίας δύηται καὶ ἀνατέλλῃ, ἐὰν μὴ ἄνεμος γένηται, ὕδατος τὸ σημεῖον.
- 12 Τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ σημαίνει καὶ σελήνη πανσελήνῳ ἀνίσχουσα, ἀσθενέστερα δὲ ὁ μείς. ἐὰν μὲν ἢ πυρῶδης, πνευματώδῃ σημαίνει τὸν μῆνα, ἐὰν δὲ ζοφώδης, ὑδατώδῃ σημαίνει δὲ ὅτι ἂν σημαίνῃ τριταῖος ὦν ὁ μείς.

---

<sup>1</sup> τὸν ὑπογ. τρόπον seems to mean the same as the Aristotelian τὸν ὑφηγημένον τρόπον, e.g. *Eth. Nic.* 2. 7. 9. The rendering 'the following method' would however suit the context.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 9-12

occur at one of these divisions. In general therefore one should observe the periods in the way indicated, though as to particular signs we must follow the accepted method.<sup>1</sup>

### *The signs of rain.*

Now the signs of rain appear to be as follows: most unmistakable is that which occurs at dawn, when the sky has a reddish appearance before sunrise; for this usually indicates rain within three days, if not on that very day. Other signs point the same way: thus a red sky at sunset indicates rain within three days, if not before, though less certainly than a red sky at dawn.

Again, if the sun sets in a cloud in winter or spring, this generally indicates rain within three days. So too, if there are streaks of light from the south, while, if these are seen in the north, it is a less certain sign. Again, if the sun when it rises has a black mark, or if it rises<sup>2</sup> out of clouds, it is a sign of rain; while, if at sunrise there are rays<sup>3</sup> shooting out before the actual rising, it is a sign of rain and also of wind. Again if, as the sun sinks, a cloud forms below it and this breaks up its rays, it is a sign of stormy weather. Again, if it sets or rises with a burning heat, and there is no wind, it is a sign of rain.

Moonrise gives similar indications, at the time of full moon: they are less certain when the moon is not full. If the moon looks fiery, it indicates breezy weather for that month, if dusky, wet weather; and, whatever indications the crescent moon gives, are given when it is three days old.

<sup>2</sup> ἀνέχῃ conj. Sch.

<sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 344.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 13 Ἀστέρες πολλοὶ διάττοντες ὕδατος ἢ πνεύματος, καὶ ὅθεν ἂν διάττωσιν ἐντεῦθεν τὸ πνεῦμα ἢ τὸ ὕδωρ. καὶ ἐὰν ἀκτῖνες ἀθρόαι ἀνίσχωσιν ἀνιόντος ἢ δύνοντος, σημεῖον <ὑδατος>. καὶ ὅταν ἀνίσχοντος τοῦ ἡλίου αἱ αὐγαὶ οἶον ἐκλείποντος χρώμα ἰσχωσιν, ὕδατος σημεῖον. καὶ ὅταν νεφέλαι πόκοις ἐρίων ὅμοιαι ὦσιν, ὕδωρ σημαίνει. [ὕετοῦ δὲ σημεία] πομφόλυγες ἀνιστάμεναι πλείους ἐπὶ τῶν ποταμῶν ὕδωρ σημαίνουσι πολύ. ὥς δ' ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἱρις περὶ λύχνον ἢ διὰ λύχνου διαφαινομένη νότια σημαίνει ὕδατα.
- 14 Καὶ οἱ μύκητες ἐὰν νότια ᾖ, ὕδωρ σημαίνουσι, σημαίνουσι δὲ καὶ ἄνεμον κατὰ λόγον ὥς ἂν ἔχωσι πλήθους καὶ μεγέθους, σμικροὶ δὲ καὶ κεγχρώδεις καὶ λαμπροὶ ὕδωρ καὶ ἄνεμον. καὶ ὅταν χειμῶνος τὴν φλόγα <ὁ λύχνος> ἀπωθῇ διαλιπὼν οἶον πομφόλυγας, ὕδατος σημεῖον, καὶ ἐὰν πηδῶσιν αἱ ἀκτῖνες ἐπ' αὐτόν, καὶ ἐὰν σπινθήρες ἐπιγέωνται.
- 15 Ὅρνιθες λουόμενοι μὴ ἐν ὕδατι βιοῦντες ὕδωρ ἢ χειμῶνας σημαίνουσι. καὶ φρύνη λουομένη καὶ βάτραχοι μᾶλλον ἄδοντες σημαίνουσιν ὕδωρ. καὶ ἡ σαύρα φαινομένη, ἣν καλοῦσι σαλαμάνδραν, ἔτι δὲ καὶ χλωρὸς βάτραχος ἐπὶ δένδρου ἄδων ὕδωρ σημαίνει. χελιδόνες τῇ γαστρὶ τύπτουσαι τὰς λίμνας ὕδωρ σημαίνουσι. βοῦς τὴν προσθίαν ὀπλὴν λείξας χειμῶνα ἢ ὕδωρ σημαίνει. ἐὰν

<sup>1</sup> cf. 37.      <sup>2</sup> ὕδατος ins. Furl.      <sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 344.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 18. 356.      <sup>5</sup> ὕετοῦ δὲ σημεία bracketed by Sch.

<sup>6</sup> cf. Arist. *Meteor.* 3. 4; Plut. *Quaest. Nat.* 1. 2.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 42.

<sup>8</sup> i.e. breaks up into small 'grains' (?). cf. 25, 42, 54.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 13-15

Many shooting<sup>1</sup> stars are a sign of rain or wind, and the wind or rain will come from that quarter from which they appear. Again, if at sunrise or sunset the sun's rays appear massed together, it is a sign of rain.<sup>2</sup> Also it is a sign of rain when at sunrise the rays<sup>3</sup> are coloured as in an eclipse; and also when there are clouds<sup>4</sup> like a fleece of wool. The rising of bubbles<sup>5</sup> in large numbers on the surface of rivers is a sign of abundant rain. And in general, when a rainbow<sup>6</sup> is seen round or through a lamp, it signifies rain from the south.

Again, if the wind is from the south, the snuff<sup>7</sup> of the lamp-wick indicates rain; it also indicates wind in proportion to its bulk and size: while if the snuff is small, like millet-seed,<sup>8</sup> and of bright colour, it indicates rain as well as wind. Again, when in winter the lamp rejects<sup>9</sup> the flame but catches, as it were, here and there in spurts, it is a sign of rain: so also is it, if the rays of light leap up on the lamp, or if there are sparks.

It is a sign of rain or storm when birds which are not aquatic take a bath. It is a sign of rain when a toad takes a bath, and still more so when frogs are vocal. So too is the appearance of the lizard known as 'salamander,'<sup>10</sup> and still more the chirruping of the green frog in a tree. It is a sign of rain when swallows<sup>11</sup> hit the water of the lakes with their belly. It is a sign of storm or rain when the ox

<sup>9</sup> i.e. refuses to light properly. The appearance seems to be that described Verg. *Georg.* 1. 391 (*scintillare oleum*). In the same passage *putres concrevere fungos* perhaps illustrates the comparison of the snuff to millet-seed above.

<sup>10</sup> cf. *de igne* 60, where it is explained why the salamander puts fire out.

<sup>11</sup> Plin. 18. 363; Verg. *Georg.* 1. 377.



## THEOPHRASTUS

δὲ εἰς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἀνακύπτων ὁσφραίνεται, ὕδωρ σημαίνει.

- 16 Κορώνη ἐπὶ πέτρας κορυσσομένη ἦν κύμα κατακλύζει ὕδωρ σημαίνει· καὶ κολυμβῶσα πολλάκις καὶ περιπετομένη ὕδωρ σημαίνει. κόραξ πολλὰς μεταβάλλειν εἰωθὼς φωνάς, τούτων ἂν ταχὺ δις φθέγγηται καὶ ἐπιρροιζήσῃ καὶ τινάξῃ τὰ πτέρω, ὕδωρ σημαίνει. καὶ ἂν ὑετῶν ὄντων πολλὰς μεταβάλλῃ φωνὰς καὶ ἂν φθειρίζηται ἐπ' ἐλαίας. καὶ ἂν τε εὐδίας ἂν τε ὕδατος ὄντος μιμῆται τῇ φωνῇ οἷον σταλαγμούς, ὕδωρ σημαίνει. ἂν τε κόρακες ἂν τε κολοιοὶ ἄνω πέτῳνται καὶ ἱερακίζωσιν, ὕδωρ σημαίνουσι. καὶ ἂν κόραξ εὐδίας μὴ τὴν εἰωθυῖαν φωνὴν ἴῃ καὶ ἐπιρροιβδῇ, ὕδωρ σημαίνει.
- 17 Ἐὰν ἱέραξ ἐπὶ δένδρου καθεζόμενος καὶ εἴσω εἰσπετόμενος φθειρίζηται, ὕδωρ σημαίνει. καὶ θέρους ὅταν πολλοὶ ἀθρόοι φανῶσιν ὄρνιθες οἱ βιοτεύουσιν ἐν νήσῳ, ὕδωρ σημαίνουσιν· ἂν δὲ μέτριοι, ἀγαθὸν αἰξὶ καὶ βοτοῖς, ἂν δὲ πολλοὶ ὑπερβολῇ, αὐχμὸν ἰσχυρόν. ὅλως δὲ ὄρνιθες καὶ ἀλεκτρύονες φθειριζόμενοι ὕδατικὸν σημεῖον, καὶ ὅταν μιμῶνται ὕδωρ ὡς ὕον.
- 18 Καὶ ἡ νῆττα ἡμέρος <ἂν> ὑπιοῦσα ὑπὸ τὰ γεῖσα ἀποπτερυγίζεται, ὕδωρ σημαίνει, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ κολοιοὶ καὶ ἀλεκτρύονες, ἂν τε ἐπὶ λίμνῃ ἢ θαλάττῃ ἀποπτερυγίζωνται, ὡς νῆττα ὕδωρ ση-

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 18. 364; Verg. Georg. 1. 375.

<sup>2</sup> ἐπιρροιζήσῃ. Sc. with his wings probably; not, as LS. 'croaks.' Plin. (18. 362) seems to have had a fuller text, or to have drawn also on some other authority.

<sup>3</sup> ὑετῶν ὄντων can hardly mean 'while it is raining.'

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 15-18

licks his fore-hoof; if he puts<sup>1</sup> his head up towards the sky and snuffs the air, it is a sign of rain.

It is a sign of rain when a crow puts back its head on a rock which is washed by waves, or when it often dives or hovers over the water. It is a sign of rain if the raven, who is accustomed to make many different sounds, repeats one of these twice quickly and makes a whirring<sup>2</sup> sound and shakes his wings. So too if, during a rainy season,<sup>3</sup> he utters many different sounds, or if he searches for lice perched on an olive-tree. And if, whether in fair or wet weather, he imitates, as it were, with his voice falling drops, it is a sign of rain. So too is it if ravens or jackdaws fly high and scream<sup>4</sup> like hawks. And, if a raven in fair weather does not utter his accustomed note and makes a whirring with his wings,<sup>5</sup> it is a sign of rain.

It is a sign of rain if a hawk perches on a tree, flies right into it and proceeds to search for lice: also, when in summer a number of birds living on an island pack together: if a moderate number collect, it is a good sign for goats and flocks, while if the number is exceedingly large, it portends a severe drought. And in general it is a sign of rain when cocks and hens search for lice; as also when they make a noise like that of falling rain.

Again it is a sign of rain when a tame<sup>6</sup> duck gets under the eaves and flaps its wings. Also it is a sign of rain when jackdaws and fowls flap their wings whether on a lake or on the sea—like the duck. It

<sup>1</sup> *ἱερακίζωσιν*. ? 'hover like hawks.' However, Arat. 231 understood it to refer to the voice: so LS.

<sup>2</sup> *ἐπιρροιβδῆ*. Exact sense uncertain. *cf.* Soph. *Ant.* 1004.

<sup>6</sup> *ἡμερος*. ? ἡ *ἡμερος*.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- μαίνει. καὶ ἐρωδιὸς ὀρθριον φθεγγόμενος ὕδωρ ἢ πνεῦμα σημαίνει· καὶ ἐὰν ἐπὶ θάλατταν πετόμενος βοᾷ, μᾶλλον ὕδατος σημεῖον ἢ πνεύματος, καὶ ὅλως βοῶν ἀνεμῶδες.
- 19 Καὶ ὁ σπίνος ἐν οἰκίᾳ οἰκουμένη ἐὰν φθέγγηται ἔωθεν, ὕδωρ σημαίνει ἢ χειμῶνα. καὶ χύτρα σπινθηρίζουσα πᾶσα περίπλεως ὕδατος σημεῖον. καὶ ἱουλοι πολλοὶ πρὸς τοῖχον ἔρποντες ὑδατικόν. δελφίς παρὰ γῆν κολυμβῶν καὶ ἀναδυόμενος πυκνὰ ὕδωρ ἢ χειμῶνα σημαίνει.
- 20 "Τμηττος ἐλάττων, ἄνδρος καλούμενος, ἐὰν τῷ κοίλῳ νεφέλιον ἔχῃ, ὕδατος σημεῖον· καὶ ἐὰν ὁ μέγας "Τμηττος τοῦ θέρους ἔχῃ νεφέλας ἄνωθεν καὶ ἐκ πλαγίου, ὕδατος σημεῖον. καὶ ἐὰν ὁ ἄνδρος "Τμηττος λευκὰς ἔχῃ ἄνωθεν καὶ ἐκ πλαγίου. καὶ ἐὰν περὶ ἰσημερίαν λῖψ πνεύσῃ, ὕδωρ σημαίνει.
- 21 Αἱ δὲ βρονταὶ αἱ μὲν χειμεριναὶ καὶ ἐωθιναὶ μᾶλλον <ἀνεμον ἢ> ὕδωρ σημαίνουσιν· αἱ δὲ θεριναὶ μεσημβρίας καὶ ἐσπεριναὶ βρονταὶ ὑδατικόν σημεῖον. ἀστραπαὶ δὲ ἐὰν γε πανταχόθεν γένωνται, ὕδατος ἂν ἢ ἀνέμου σημεῖον, καὶ ἐσπεριναὶ ὡσαύτως. καὶ ἐὰν ἀκρωρίας νότου πνέοντος νοτόθεν ἀστράψῃ, ὕδωρ σημαίνει ἢ ἀνεμον. καὶ ζέφυρος ἀστράπτων πρὸς βορείου ἢ χειμῶνα ἢ ὕδωρ σημαίνει. καὶ θέρους αἱ ἐσπερίαι ἀστραπαὶ ὕδωρ ἀντίκα σημαίνουσιν ἢ

<sup>1</sup> Sch. cites Plin. 18. 364, *vermes terreni erumpentes*, as representing this, which seems doubtful.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Plin. 18. 361; Cic. *Div.* 2. 70.

<sup>3</sup> ἐὰν τῷ. ? ἐὰν ἐν τῷ.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 18-21

is a sign of wind or rain when a heron utters his note at early morning: if, as he flies towards the sea, he utters his cry, it is a sign of rain rather than of wind, and in general, if he makes a loud cry, it portends wind.

It is a sign of rain or storm if a chaffinch kept in the house utters its note at dawn. It is also a sign if any pot filled with water causes sparks to fly when it is put on the fire. It is also a sign of rain when a number of millepedes<sup>1</sup> are seen crawling up a wall. A dolphin<sup>2</sup> diving near land and frequently re-appearing indicates rain or storm.

If the lesser Mount Hymettus, which is called the Dry Hill, has cloud in<sup>3</sup> its hollows, it is a sign of rain: so also is it, if the greater Hymettus has clouds in summer on the top and on the sides: or if the Dry Hymettus has white clouds on the top and on the sides; also if the south-west wind<sup>4</sup> blows at the equinox.

Thunder in winter and at dawn indicates wind<sup>5</sup> rather than rain; thunder in summer at midday or in the evening is a sign of rain. If lightning is seen from all sides, it will be a sign of rain or wind, and also if it occurs in the evening. Again, if when the south wind<sup>6</sup> is blowing at early dawn,<sup>7</sup> there is lightning from the same quarter, it indicates rain or wind. When the west wind is accompanied by lightning from the north, it indicates either storm or rain. Lightning in the evening in summer time indicates rain within three days, if not immediately.

<sup>1</sup> cf. Arist. *Probl.* 26. 26.

<sup>2</sup> ἀνεμων ἢ add. Furl. from Plin. 18. 354.

<sup>3</sup> cf. Soph. *Aj.* 257; Arist. *Probl.* 26. 20.

<sup>4</sup> ἀκρωπίας. cf. 42. So Arat. 216 renders.

## THEOPHRASTUS

τριῶν ἡμερῶν. καὶ ὁπώρας βορράθεν ἀστραπαὶ  
ὑδατικὸν σημεῖον.

- 12 Ἡ Εὐβοία ὅταν διαζωσθῇ μέσῃ, ὕδωρ διὰ  
ταχέων. καὶ ἐὰν ἐπὶ τὸ Πήλιον νεφέλη προσίξῃ,  
ὅθεν ἂν προσίξῃ, ἐντεῦθεν ὕδωρ ἢ ἄνεμον σημαίνει.  
ὅταν ἱρις γένηται, ἐπισημαίνει· ἐάν τε πολλαὶ  
ἱριδες γένωνται, σημαίνει ὕδωρ ἐπὶ πολὺ. ἀλλὰ  
πολλάκις καὶ οἱ ὀξεῖς ἥλιοι, ὅταν ἐκ νεφέλης.  
μύρμηκες ἐν κοίλῳ χωρίῳ ἐὰν τὰ ὡὰ ἐκφέρωσιν  
ἐκ τῆς μυρμηκιάς ἐπὶ τὸ ὑψηλὸν χωρίον, ὕδωρ  
σημαίνουσιν, ἐὰν δὲ καταφέρωσιν, εὐδίαν. ἐὰν  
παρήλιοι δύο γένωνται καὶ ὁ μὲν νοτόθεν ὁ δὲ  
βορράθεν, καὶ ἄλως ἅμα ὕδωρ διὰ ταχέων σημαί-  
νουνσι. καὶ ἄλως αἱ μέλαιναι ὑδατικὸν καὶ μᾶλ-  
λον αἱ δείλῃς.
- 23 Ἐν τῷ Καρκίνῳ δύο ἀστέρες εἰσὶν, οἱ καλού-  
μενοι Ὀνοι, ὧν τὸ μεταξὺ τὸ νεφέλιον ἢ Φάτνη  
καλουμένη. τοῦτο ἐὰν ζοφῶδες γένηται, ὑδατικόν.  
ἐὰν μὴ ἐπὶ Κυνὶ ὕσῃ ἢ ἐπὶ Ἀρκτούρῳ, ὥς ἐπὶ  
τὸ πολὺ πρὸς ἰσημερίαν ὕδωρ ἢ ἄνεμος. καὶ τὸ  
δημόσιον τὸ περὶ τὰς μυίας λεγόμενον ἀληθές·  
ὅταν γὰρ δάκνωσι σφόδρα, ὕδατος σημεῖον.  
σπίνος φθεγγόμενος ἔωθεν μὲν ὕδωρ σημαίνει  
ἢ χειμῶνα, δείλῃς δὲ ὕδωρ.
- 24 Τῆς δὲ νυκτὸς ὅταν τὸν Ὑμηττον κάτωθεν τῶν  
ἄκρων νεφέλη διαζώσῃ λευκῇ καὶ μακρά, ὕδωρ  
γίνεται ὡς τὰ πολλὰ μετρίων ἡμερῶν. καὶ ἐὰν

---

<sup>1</sup> Evidently an Attic saying, of days when only the upper part of the Euboean mountains was visible.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 21-24

Lightning from the north in late summer is a sign of rain.

<sup>1</sup> When Euboea has a girdle about it up to the waist, there will be rain in a short space. If cloud clings about Mount Pelion, it is an indication of rain or wind from the quarter to which it clings. When a rainbow appears, it is an indication of rain; if many rainbows appear, it is an indication of long-continued rain. So too is it often when the sun appears <sup>2</sup> suddenly out of cloud. It is a sign of rain if ants <sup>3</sup> in a hollow place carry their eggs up from the ant-hill to the high ground, a sign of fair weather if they carry them down. If two mock-suns <sup>4</sup> appear, one to the south, the other to the north, and there is at the same time a halo, these indicate that it will shortly rain. A dark halo round the sun indicates rain, especially if it occurs in the afternoon.

In the Crab are two stars called the Asses, and the nebulous space between them is called the Manger <sup>5</sup>; if this appears dark, it is a sign of rain. If there is no rain at the rising of the Dog or of Arcturus, there will generally be rain or wind towards the equinox. Also the popular saying about flies is true; when they bite excessively, it is a sign of rain. If a chaffinch <sup>6</sup> utters its note at dawn, it is a sign of rain or storm, if in the afternoon, of rain.

When at night a long stretch of white cloud encompasses Hymettus below the peaks, there will generally be rain in a few days. If cloud settles on

<sup>2</sup> cf. *H.P.* 8. 10. 3.

<sup>3</sup> *Plin.* 18. 364; *Verg. Georg.* 1. 379.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 29. <sup>5</sup> cf. 43, 51.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 19, of which this seems to be in part a repetition.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἐν Αἰγίνῃ [καὶ] ἐπὶ τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Ἑλλανίου  
νεφέλῃ καθίζηται, ὥς τὰ πολλὰ ὕδωρ γίνεται.  
ἐὰν ὕδατα πολλὰ γίνηται χειμερινά, τὸ ἔαρ ὥς  
τὰ πολλὰ γίνεται αὐχμηρόν· ἐὰν δ' αὐχμηρὸς  
ὁ χειμὼν, τὸ ἔαρ ὕδατῶδες. ὅταν χιόνες πολλαὶ  
γίνωνται, ὥς τὰ πολλὰ εὐετηρία γίνεται.

25 Φασὶ δέ τινες καὶ εἰ ἐν ἄνθραξι λαμπρὰ χάλαζα  
ἐπιφαίνεται, χάλαζαν προσημαίνειν ὥς τὰ πολλὰ·  
ἐὰν δὲ ὥσπερ κέγχροι μικροὶ λαμπροὶ πολλοί,  
ἀνέμου μὲν ὄντος εὐδίαν, μὴ ἀνέμου δὲ ὕδωρ ἢ  
ἄνεμον. ἔστι δ' ἄμεινον πρῶτον γίνεσθαι βόρειον  
ὕδωρ νοτίου καὶ τοῖς φυομένοις καὶ τοῖς ζώοις· δεῖ  
δὲ γλυκὺ εἶναι καὶ μὴ ἀλμυρὸν τοῖς γενομένοις.  
καὶ ὅλως ἔτος βέλτιον νοτίου βόρειον καὶ ὑγιει-  
νότερον. καὶ ὅταν <πάλιν> ὀχεύωνται πρόβατα  
ἢ αἰγες, χειμῶνος μακροῦ σημεῖον.

26 II. Ὑδατος μὲν οὖν ταῦτα λέγεται σημεῖα·  
ἀνέμου δὲ καὶ πνευμάτων τάδε. ἀνατέλλων ὁ  
ἥλιος καυματίας, κἂν μὴ ἀποστίλβῃ, ἀνεμῶδες  
τὸ σημεῖον· καὶ ἐὰν κοῖλος φαίνεται ὁ ἥλιος,  
ἀνέμου ἢ ὕδατος τὸ σημεῖον. καὶ ἐὰν ἐπὶ πολλὰς  
ἡμέρας καυματίας, αὐχμούς καὶ ἀνέμους πολυ-  
χρονίους σημαίνει. ἐὰν αἱ ἀκτῖνες αἱ μὲν πρὸς  
βορρᾶν αἱ δὲ πρὸς νότον σχίζονται τούτου μέσου

---

<sup>1</sup> So called also by Pind. *Nem.* 5. 19. Paus. 2. 30. 3 calls it the temple of Ζεὺς Παρελλήνιος. καὶ bracketed by Sch.

<sup>2</sup> cf. *C.P.* 2. 2.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 24-26

the temple of Zeus Hellanios<sup>1</sup> in Aegina, usually rain follows. If a great deal of rain falls in winter, the spring is usually dry; if the winter has been dry, the spring is usually wet. When there is much<sup>2</sup> snow in winter, a good season generally follows.

Some say that, if in the embers<sup>3</sup> there is an appearance as of shining hail-stones, it generally prognosticates hail; while, if the appearance is like a number of small shining millet-seeds,<sup>4</sup> it portends fair weather, if there is wind at the time, but, if there is no wind, rain or wind. It is better both for plants and for animals that rain should come from the north before it comes from the south; it must however be fresh and not briny to the taste. And in general a season<sup>5</sup> in which a north wind prevails is better and healthier than one in which southerly winds prevail. It is a sign of a long winter when sheep or goats have a second<sup>6</sup> breeding season.

### *The signs of wind.*

II. Such then are said to be the signs of rain. The following are signs of wind and breezes. <sup>7</sup> If the sun rises with a burning heat but does not shine brilliantly, it is a sign of wind. If the sun has a hollow appearance, it is a sign of wind or rain. If it blazes with a burning heat for several days, it portends long-continued drought or wind. If at dawn its rays are parted, some pointing to the north and some

<sup>1</sup> ἑνθραξί conj. Sch., supported by Plin. 18. 358; Arat. 309. ἀστράσι MSS.

<sup>4</sup> cf. 14, 42, 54.

<sup>5</sup> cf. C.P. 2. 2.

<sup>6</sup> πάλιν ins. Sch.; text probably defective.

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 18. 342.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- ὄντος κατ' ὀρθρον, κοινὸν ὕδατος καὶ ἀνέμου σημείον ἐστίν.
- 27 Ἔστι δὲ σημεία ἐν ἡλίῳ καὶ σελήνῃ, τὰ μὲν μέλανα ὕδατος τὰ δ' ἐρυθρὰ πνεύματος. εἰάν δὲ καὶ ὁ μείζ· βορείου ὄντος ὀρθὸς εἰστήκη, ζέφυροι εἰώθασιν ἐπιπνεῖν καὶ ὁ μὴν χειμερινὸς διατελεῖ. ὅταν μὲν ἡ κεραία <ἡ ἄνω> τοῦ μηνὸς ἐπικύπτῃ, βόρειος ὁ μείζ· ὅταν δ' ἡ κάτωθεν, νότιος· εἰάν δ' ὀρθὸς καὶ μὴ καλῶς ἐγκεκλιμένος μέχρι τετράδος καὶ εὐκυκλος, εἴωθε χειμάζειν μέχρι διχομηνίας. σημαίνει ζοφώδης μὲν ὦν ὕδωρ πυρώδης δὲ πνεῦμα.
- 28 Αἶθυιαι καὶ νῆτται [πτερυγίζουσai] καὶ ἄγριαι καὶ τιθασσαι ὕδωρ μὲν σημαίνουσι δνόμεναι, πτερυγίζουσai δὲ ἄνεμον. οἱ κέπφοι εὐδίας οὔσης ὅποι ἂν πέτωνται ἄνεμον προσημαίνουσι. στρουθοὶ χειμῶνος ἀφ' ἐσπέρας θορυβοῦντες ἢ ἀνέμου μεταβολὴν σημαίνουσιν ἢ ὕδωρ ὑέτιον. ἐρωδιὸς ἀπὸ θαλάσσης πετόμενος καὶ βοῶν πνεύματος σημείον ἐστίν· καὶ ὅλως βοῶν μέγα ἀνεμώδης.
- 29 Κύων κυλινδούμενος χαμαὶ μέγεθος ἀνέμου σημαίνει. ἀράχνια πολλὰ φερόμενα πνεῦμα ἢ χειμῶνα σημαίνει. ἢ ἄμπωτις βόρειον πνεῦμα σημαίνει, πλημμύρα δὲ νότιον. εἰάν μὲν γὰρ ἐκ βορείων πλημμύρα ἦκῃ, εἰς νότιον μεταβάλλει, εἰάν δ' ἐκ νοτίων ἄμπωτις γίνηται, εἰς βόρειον

---

<sup>1</sup> Plin. 18. 343 suggests that this is the meaning: text perhaps defective. cf. Verg. Georg. 1. 445.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 38.

<sup>3</sup> Lit. 'the crescent moon has a northerly character.' ἢ ἄνω add. Furl.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 26-29

to the south, while the orb itself is<sup>1</sup> clearly seen between, it is a sign of rain and wind.

Also black spots on the sun or moon indicate rain, red spots wind. Again, if, while a north wind blows, the horns<sup>2</sup> of the crescent moon stand out straight, westerly winds will generally succeed, and the rest of the month will be stormy. When the upper horn of the crescent moon is bent, northerly winds<sup>3</sup> will prevail for that part of the month: when the lower horn is bent, southerly winds will prevail. <sup>4</sup>If however the horns up to the fourth day point straight and have not a graceful bend inwards but round to a circle, it will generally be stormy till the middle of the month. If the moon is dusky, it indicates rain, if fiery, it indicates wind.

It is a sign of rain when gulls and ducks, whether wild or tame, plunge under water, a sign of wind when they flap their wings. Wherever the bird called *kepphos* flies during a calm, it is a sign of coming wind. If sparrows in winter begin to be clamorous at evening, it is a sign of a coming change or of a fall of rain. A heron flying from the sea and screaming is a sign that a breeze is coming: so is it in general a sign of wind when he screams loudly.

A dog rolling on the ground is a sign of violent wind. A number of cobwebs<sup>5</sup> in motion portends wind or storm. The ebb-tide indicates a north wind, the flowing tide a wind from the south. For, if the flowing tide sets from the north, there is a change to the south, and if an ebb-tide comes from the south, there is a change to the north. It is

<sup>1</sup> cf. 38; Plin. 18. 347; Verg. *Georg.* i. 428; the English sign, 'the young moon with the old moon in her arm.'

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 11. 84; Arist. *Probl.* 26. 61.

## THEOPHRASTUS

μεταβάλλει. θάλασσα οἰδοῦσα καὶ ἀκταὶ βοῶσαι καὶ αἰγιαλὸς ἡχῶν ἀνεμώδης. καὶ ὁ μὲν βορέας λήγων ἐλάττων ὁ δὲ νότος ἀρχόμενος. παρήλιος ὀπόθεν ἂν ἢ ὕδωρ ἢ ἄνεμον σημαίνει.

- 30 Ἡ πέμπτη καὶ δεκάτη ἀπὸ τροπῶν τῶν χειμερινῶν ὥς τὰ πολλὰ νότιος. βορείων δὲ γινομένων ξηραίνει πάντα, νοτίων δὲ ὑγραίνει. ἐὰν δὲ νοτίων ὄντων ψοφῇ <τι> τῶν κεκολλημένων, εἰς τὰ νότια σημαίνει τὴν μεταβολήν· ἐὰν δὲ πόδες οἰδῶσι, νοτία ἢ μεταβολή. τὸ δὲ αὐτὸ σημείον καὶ ἐκνεφίου. καὶ ὁδαξὼν τὸν δεξιόν. ἐχίνος ὁ χερσαῖος σημαντικόν· ποιεῖται δὲ δύο ὁπὰς ὅπου ἂν οἰκῇ, τὴν μὲν πρὸς βορρᾶν τὴν δὲ νοτόθεν· ὁποτέραν δ' ἂν ἀποφράττη, ἐντεῦθεν πνεῦμα σημαίνει, ἐὰν δ' ἀμφοτέρας, ἀνέμου μέγεθος.

- 31 Ἐὰν ὄρος . . . , πρὸς βορρᾶ ἄνεμον προσημαίνει. ἐὰν ἐν θαλάττῃ ἐξαίφνης πνεύματος γαλήνη γίνηται, μεταβολὴν πνεύματος ἢ ἐπίδοσιν. ἐὰν ἄκραι μετέωροι φαίνωνται ἢ καὶ νῆσοι ἐκ μιᾶς πλείους, νοτίαν μεταβολὴν σημαίνει· γῇ τε μέλαινα ὑποφαινομένη <βόρειον>, λευκὴ δὲ νότιον. αἱ ἄλωνες περὶ τὴν σελήνην πνευματώδεις μᾶλλον ἢ περὶ ἥλιον· σημαίνουσι δὲ πνεῦμα ῥαγεῖσαι περὶ ἄμφω, καὶ ἢ ἂν ῥαγῇ ταύτῃ πνεῦμα. ἐπι-

<sup>1</sup> cf. 40; Plin. 18. 359; Verg. Georg. 1. 356.

<sup>2</sup> cf. Arist. Probl. 28. 12 *ad fin.*

<sup>3</sup> ξηραίνει, ὑγραίνει seem to be used quasi-impersonally; but the text is perhaps defective.

<sup>4</sup> νότια MSS.; βόρεια conj. Furl., surely with good reason. cf. Arist. Probl. 1. 24.

<sup>5</sup> After δεξιὸν Sch. and W. mark a lacuna, which does not seem necessary. <sup>6</sup> cf. Arist. H.A. 9. 6 *ad fin.*

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 29-31

a sign of wind when the sea<sup>1</sup> has a swell or promontories moan or there is loud noise on the beach. Now the north wind has less force as it ceases to blow, the south wind as it begins. A mock sun, in whatever quarter it appears, indicates rain or wind.

The fifteenth<sup>2</sup> day after the winter solstice is generally marked by southerly winds. If there is a northerly wind, everything gets dried<sup>3</sup> up, if a southerly, there is abundant moisture. If, while a south wind is blowing, glued articles make a cracking sound, it indicates a change to a south<sup>4</sup> wind. If the feet swell, there will be a change to a south wind. This also sometimes indicates a hurricane. So too does it, if a man has a shooting pain in the right foot.<sup>5</sup> The behaviour<sup>6</sup> of the hedgehog is also significant: this animal makes two holes wherever he lives, one towards the north, the other towards the south: now whichever hole he blocks up, it indicates wind from that quarter, and, if he closes both, it indicates violent wind.

If a mountain . . . ,<sup>7</sup> it indicates wind from the north. If at sea during a wind there is a sudden calm, it indicates a change or an increase of wind. If promontories<sup>8</sup> seem to stand high out of the sea, or a single island looks like several, it indicates a change to south wind. If the land looks black from the sea, it indicates a north wind,<sup>9</sup> if white, a south wind. A halo<sup>10</sup> about the moon signifies wind more certainly than a halo about the sun: but in either case, if there is a break in the halo, it indicates wind, which will come from the quarter in which the break is. If the sky is overcast in whatever quarter

<sup>7</sup> I have marked a lacuna after *ῥπος*. Furl. renders *si mons versus aquilonem extenditur, venti signum est*, with what meaning I cannot see.

<sup>8</sup> cf. Arist. *Meteor.* 3. 4 *ad init.*

<sup>9</sup> *Βόρειον* add. Furl.

<sup>10</sup> cf. 51.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- νεφέλων ὅθεν ἂν ἀνατέλληται, ἐντεῦθεν ἄνεμος. αἱ κηλάδες νεφέλαι θέρους ἄνεμον σημαίνουσι.
- 82 Ἐὰν ἀστραπή πανταχόθεν γίνηται, ὕδωρ σημαίνει, καὶ ὅθεν ἂν αἱ ἀστραπαὶ πυκναὶ γίνωνται, ἐντεῦθεν πνεύματα γίνεται. θέρους ὅθεν ἂν ἀστραπαὶ καὶ βρονταὶ γίνωνται, ἐντεῦθεν πνεύματα γίνεται ἰσχυρά· ἐὰν μὲν σφόδρα καὶ ἰσχυρὸν ἀστράπτῃ, θάττον καὶ σφοδρότερον πνεύσουσιν, ἐὰν δ' ἡρέμα καὶ μανῶς, κατ' ὀλίγον. τοῦ δὲ χειμῶνος καὶ φθινοπώρου τούναντίον· παύουσι γὰρ τὰ πνεύματα αἱ ἀστραπαὶ· καὶ ὅσω ἂν ἰσχυρότεραι γίνωνται ἀστραπαὶ καὶ βρονταί, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον παύονται· τοῦ δ' ἔαρος ἦττον ἂν ταυτὰ σημεῖα λέγω, ὥσπερ καὶ χειμῶνος.
- 83 Ἐὰν νότου πνέοντος βορρᾶθεν ἀστράπτῃ, παύεται· ἐὰν ἔωθεν ἀστράπτῃ εἴωθε παύεσθαι τριταῖος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι πεμπταῖοι ἐβδομαῖοι ἐνναταῖοι, οἱ δὲ δειλινοὶ ταχὺ παύονται. οἱ βορέαι παύονται ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἐν περιτταῖς οἱ δὲ νότοι ἐν ἀρτίαις. ἄνεμοι αἴρονται ἀμ' ἡλίῳ ἀνατέλλοντι καὶ σελήνῃ. ἐὰν ἀνατέλλων ὁ ἥλιος καὶ σελήνῃ παύσωσιν, ἐπιτείνει τὰ πνεύματα· χρονιώτερα δὲ καὶ ἰσχυρότερα τὰ πνεύματα γίνεται τὰ ἡμέρας ἢ νύκτωρ ἀρχόμενα.
- 84 Ἐὰν ἐτησίαι πολὺν χρόνον πνεύσωσι καὶ μετόπωρον γένηται ἀνεμῶδες, ὁ χειμῶν νήνεμος γίνεται, ἐὰν δ' ἐναντίως, καὶ ὁ χειμῶν ἐναντίος.

---

<sup>1</sup> κηλάδες, i.e. a 'mackerel sky' (?) The word seems to occur nowhere else except in Hesych., who renders *ἄνυδρος*: derivation obscure. It should probably be read in § 51 for *κοιλάδες*.      <sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 354.

<sup>3</sup> ἔν. So. *εἶναι*, which perhaps should be added.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 31-34

the sun is first seen, there will be wind from that quarter. Light<sup>1</sup> clouds in summer-time indicate wind.

If lightning comes from all sides, it indicates rain, and from any quarter from which the flashes come in quick succession there will be wind. In summer<sup>2</sup> from whatever quarter lightning and thunder come, there will be violent winds: if the flashes are brilliant and startling, the wind will come sooner and be more violent; if they are of gentler character and come at longer intervals, the wind will get up gradually. In winter and autumn however the reverse happens, for the lightning causes the wind to cease: and, the more violent the lightning and thunder are, the more will the wind be reduced. In spring I consider that the indications would<sup>3</sup> not so invariably have the same meaning,—and this is also true of winter.

If, while a south wind is blowing, there comes lightning from the north, the wind ceases. If there is lightning at dawn, the wind generally ceases on the third day: other winds than a south wind however do not cease till the fifth seventh or ninth day, though a wind which got up in the afternoon will cease sooner. A north<sup>4</sup> wind generally ceases in an odd, a south wind in an even number of days. Winds get up at sunrise or moonrise. If the rising sun or moon have caused the wind to cease, presently<sup>5</sup> it gets up again with more force, and winds which begin to blow in the day-time last longer and are stronger than those which begin at night.

If periodic winds have been blowing for a long time, and a windy autumn follows, the winter is windless: if however the contrary happens, the character

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 2. 129.

<sup>5</sup> So Furl. renders: W. inserts *μη* after *σελήνη*.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πρὸς κορυφῆς ὄρους ὁπόθεν ἂν νεφέλη μηχανῇται, ταύτῃ ἄνεμος πνευσεῖται. αἱ νεφέλαι ἐκ τῶν ὀπισθεν προσίζουσai καὶ ὀπισθεν πνευσοῦνται. Ἄθως μέσος διεzeugμένος νότιος, καὶ ὅλως τὰ ὄρη διεζωσμένα νότια ὡς τὰ πολλά. οἱ κομήται ἀστέρες ὡς τὰ πολλά πνεύματα σημαίνουσιν, ἐὰν δὲ πολλοί, καὶ αὐχμὸν. μετὰ χιόνα νότος, μετὰ πάχνην βορέας εἶωθε πνεῖν. μύκητες ἐπὶ λύχνου νότιον πνεῦμα ἢ ὕδωρ σημαίνουσιν.

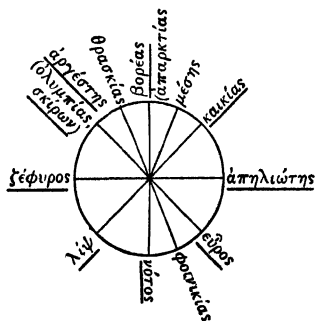
- 35 Αἱ δὲ στάσεις τῶν πνευμάτων οὕτως ἔχουσιν ὡς ἐν τῷ γράμματι διώρισται. τῶν δ' ἀνέμων ἔτι πνέουσι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐπιπίπτουσι μάλιστα ἀπαρκτίας θρακίας ἀργέστης. ὅταν δὲ μὴ ὑπ' ἀλλήλων διαλύωνται τὰ πνεύματα, ἀλλ' αὐτὰ καταμαρανθῶσι, μεταβάλλουσιν εἰς τοὺς ἐχομέ-

<sup>1</sup> cf. 22.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 57.

<sup>3</sup> cf. *de Ventis* 50; Arist. *Probl.* 28. 3.      <sup>4</sup> cf. 14, 25, 42, 52.

<sup>5</sup> The 'figure' (giving points of the compass) has not been preserved. Arist. *Meteor.* 2. 6. describes such a figure (ὁπογραφή), which may be reconstructed thus :—



## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 34-35

of winter is also reversed. From whatever quarter cloud streams out from a mountain peak, wind will blow in the direction thus indicated. Clouds which cling to the back of the mountain will also produce wind from the back of it. If there is a girdle<sup>1</sup> of cloud half way up Mount Athos, and if mountains in general wear such a girdle, there will generally follow a southerly wind. Comets<sup>2</sup> usually indicate wind, and, if there are many of them, drought is also indicated. After snow<sup>3</sup> a south wind, after hoar-frost a north wind generally blows. Snuff<sup>4</sup> in a lamp indicates wind or rain from the south.

The points from which the winds come are as they are given in the figure.<sup>5</sup> The winds which most often come on the top of other winds while these are still blowing are the north wind (*aparktiās*),<sup>6</sup> the north-north-east and the north-west. When however the winds are not dispersed by one another but die down of their own accord, they change<sup>7</sup> to the next winds on the figure, reckoning from left

Arist. does not seem to distinguish *βορέας* and *ἀπαρκτίας*: his *θρακίας* is T.'s *θρακίας*: his eight principal winds (underlined in diagram) correspond to those represented on the famous Tower of the Winds at Athens, built about two hundred years later.

<sup>6</sup> cf. Arist. *l.c.*

<sup>7</sup> Plin. 2. 128.



## THEOPHRASTUS

- νους ἐπὶ δεξιὰ, ὥσπερ ἡ τοῦ ἡλίου ἔχει φορά. ὁ νότος ἀρχόμενος ξηρὸς τελευτῶν δὲ ὑγρὸς. καὶ ὁ εὖρος. ὁ δ' ἀπηλιώτης ἀπὸ ἀνατολῆς ἰσημερινῆς ὑδατώδης· διὰ λεπτῶν δὲ ἄγει τὰ ὕδατα.
- 36 Ὑγροὶ δὲ μάλιστα ὁ τε καικίας καὶ λίψ· χαλαζώδης δ' ἀπαρκτίας καὶ θρακίας καὶ ἀργέστης· νιφετώδης δὲ ὁ τε μέσης [ἢ βορέας] καὶ ἀπαρκτίας· καυματώδης δὲ νότος καὶ ζέφυρος καὶ εὖρος· οἱ μὲν οἷς ἂν ἐκ πελάγους προσπίπτωσιν, οἱ δὲ οἷς ἂν διὰ γῆς. δασύνουσι δ' οὐρανὸν νέφεσι καὶ καλύπτουσι καικίας μάλιστα εἴτα λίψ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι ἄνεμοι ἀφ' ἑαυτῶν τὰ νέφη ὠθοῦσι, καικίας δὲ μόνος πνέων εἰς ἑαυτόν. αἰθριοὶ δὲ μάλιστα θρακίας καὶ ἀργέστης καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν ἀπαρκτίας· ἐκνεφίαι δὲ μάλιστα ὁ τε ἀπαρκτίας καὶ ὁ θρακίας καὶ ὁ ἀργέστης.
- 37 Γίνονται δὲ ἐκνεφίαι ὅταν εἰς ἀλλήλους ἐμπίπτωσι πνέοντες μάλιστα μὲν μετοπώρου τῶν δὲ λοιπῶν ἔαρος. ἀστραπαῖος δὲ θρακίας καὶ ἀργέστης καὶ ἀπαρκτίας καὶ μέσης. ἐὰν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ πάπποι φέρωνται πολλοὶ οἱ γινόμενοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκανθῶν, ἄνεμον σημαίνουσιν ἔσεσθαι μέγαν. ὅθεν ἂν ἀστέρες διάττωσι πολλοί, ἄνεμον

<sup>1</sup> I have bracketed ἡ βορέας as probably a gloss on ἀπαρκτίας; ἡ is difficult to account for otherwise. See diagram.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 360.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 35-37

to right according to the course of the sun. When the south wind begins to blow, it is dry, but it becomes wet before it ceases: so too does the south-east wind. The east wind, coming from the quarter where the sun rises at the equinox, is wet: but it brings the rain in light showers.

The north-east and south-west are the wettest winds; the north the north-north-east and the north-east bring hail; snow comes with the north-north-east<sup>1</sup> and north. The south, the west, and the south-east winds bring heat. Some of these have their effect on places which they strike as they come from the sea, others on places which they visit as they come over land. The winds which more than any others make the sky thick with cloud and completely cover it are the north-east and the south-west, especially the former. While the other winds repel the clouds from themselves, the north-east alone attracts them as it blows. Those winds which chiefly bring a clear sky are the north-north-west and the north-west, and next after them the north. Those which most have the character of a hurricane are the north the north-north-west and the north-west.

They acquire this character when they fall upon one another as they blow, especially in autumn, but to some extent in spring. Those which are accompanied by lightning are the north-north-west the north-west the north and the north-north-east. If at sea<sup>2</sup> a quantity of down is seen blown along, which has come from thistles, it indicates that there will be a great wind. Wind<sup>3</sup> may be expected from any quarter in which a number of shooting stars are

<sup>1</sup> cf. 13; Plin. 18. 352; Verg. *Georg.* 1. 365.

## THEOPHRASTUS

ἐντεῦθεν· ἐὰν δὲ πανταχόθεν ὁμοίως, πολλὰ πνεύματα σημαίνουσι.

Πνευμάτων μὲν οὖν σημεία ταῦτα.

- 88 III. Χειμῶνος δὲ τάδε. ἥλιος δυόμενος εἰς μὴ καθαρὸν. καὶ ὥς ἂν μερισθῇ δυόμενος, οὕτως αἱ ἡμέραι ἐπιτελοῦνται. οἶον εἰ τὸ τρίτον μέρος ἀπολειφθεῖη ἢ τὸ ἥμισυ. τὸ σελήνιον ἐὰν ὀρθὸν ἢ μέχρι τετράδος καὶ εἰ εὐκυκλον, χειμάσει μέχρι διχοτόμου· γέρανοι ἐὰν πρῶτ' πέτῳνται καὶ ἀθρόοι, πρῶτ' χειμάσει, ἐὰν δὲ ὀψέ καὶ πολὺν χρόνον, ὀψέ χειμάσει. καὶ ἐὰν ὑποστραφῶσι πετόμενοι, χειμῶνα σημαίνουσι.

- 39 Χῆνες βοῶντες μᾶλλον ἢ περὶ σῖτον μαχόμενοι χειμέριον. σπίνος στρουθὸς σπίζων ἔωθεν χειμέριον. ὄρχιλος [ὥς] εἰσιὼν καὶ εἰσδυόμενος εἰς ὅπας χειμῶνα σημαίνουσι καὶ ἐριθεὺς ὡσαύτως. κορώνη ἐὰν ταχὺ δις κρώξῃ καὶ τρίτον, χειμερία. καὶ κορώνη καὶ κόραξ καὶ κολοιδὸς ὀψέ ἄδοντες χειμέριοι. στρουθὸς ἐὰν λευκὸς ἢ χελιδὼν ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν μὴ εἰωθότων λευκῶν, χειμῶνα μέγαν σημαίνουσιν, ὥσπερ καί, μέλανεσ ἐὰν πολλοὶ φανῶσιν, ὕδωρ.

- 40 Καὶ ἐὰν ἐκ πελάγους ὄρνια φεύγωσι, χειμῶνα σημαίνουσι. καὶ σπίνος ἐν οἰκίᾳ οἰκουμένη φθεγγόμενος χειμέριον. ὅσα ὕδωρ σημαίνει, χειμῶνα ἄγει, ἐὰν μὴ ὕδωρ, χιόνα καὶ χειμῶνα.

<sup>1</sup> i.e. and the succeeding day will be more or less stormy in proportion. ἀπολειφθεῖη. ? ἀποληφθεῖη = 'may be obscured.'

<sup>2</sup> cf. 27. i.e. it is possible, more or less, to see the whole circle.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 37-40.

seen. If these appear in every quarter alike, it indicates many winds.

Such then are the signs of winds.

III. The following are signs of storm. The sun becoming obscured as it sinks indicates storm. And, according as its orb is divided as it sets, so the succeeding days turn out; for instance, a third or a half of the orb may remain visible.<sup>1</sup> If the horns<sup>2</sup> of the moon point straight up till the fourth day, and if it rounds to a circle, it will be stormy till the middle of the month. If cranes fly early and in flocks, it will be an early winter<sup>3</sup>; if they fly late and for a long time, it will be a late winter; and, if they wheel as they fly, it indicates stormy weather.

<sup>4</sup> It is a sign of storm when geese make more clamour than usual or fight for their food; so too is it when a sparrow or chaffinch twitters at dawn. It indicates a storm when the goldcrest<sup>5</sup> goes into holes and hides itself; so also when the redbreast does the same. It is a sign of storm when the crow caws twice in quick succession and then a third time; also when the crow or raven or jackdaw makes its call late. It is a sign of a great storm when a white sparrow or swallow is seen, or a white specimen of any other bird which is not usually white, even as the appearance of a large number of such birds of a dark colour signifies rain.

It is also an indication of storm when birds flee from the sea. A chaffinch uttering its note in an inhabited house is a sign of storm. All the signs which indicate rain bring stormy weather, that is to say, snow and storm, if not rain. If the raven utters

<sup>1</sup> So Arat. 343 f. interprets.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 18. 363.

<sup>5</sup> *ωs* bracketed by Sch.

## THEOPHRASTUS

κόραξ φωνὰς πολλὰς μεταβάλλων χειμῶνος χειμέριον. κολοιοὶ ἐκ τοῦ νότου πετόμενοι καὶ τευθίδες χειμέριαί. φωνὴ ἐν λιμένι ἀποψοφοῦσα καὶ πολὺπλοκον ἠχοῦσα χειμέριον. καὶ οἱ πνεύμονες οἱ θαλάττιοι ἐὰν πολλοὶ φαίνωνται ἐν τῷ πελάγει, χειμερινοῦ ἔτους σημείον. πρόβατα ἐὰν πρῶτ' ὀχεύηται, πρῶτον χειμῶνα σημαίνουνσι.

- 41 Μετοπώρῳ ἐὰν πρόβατα ἢ βόες ὀρύττωσι καὶ κοιμῶνται ἄθροοι πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἔχοντες τὰς κεφαλὰς, τὸν χειμῶνα χειμέριον σημαίνει. ἐν δὲ τῷ Πόντῳ φασίν, ὅταν Ἀρκτοῦρος ἀνατείλῃ θᾶπτον, ἐναντίους τῷ βορρᾷ νέμεσθαι. βόες μᾶλλον ἐσθίοντες τοῦ εἰωθότος καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν κατακλινόμενοι χειμέριον. καὶ ὅτα κρούων ὄνος χειμέριον. καὶ μαχόμενα πρόβατα καὶ ὄρνια περὶ σίτου παρὰ τὸ ἔθος προπαρασκευάζονται γάρ· καὶ μῦες τρίζοντες καὶ ὀρχούμενοι χειμέριον.

- 42 Καὶ κύων τοῖς ποσὶν ὀρύττουσα καὶ ὀλολυγὼν ἄδουσα μόνῃ ἀκρωρίας χειμέριον. γῆς ἔντερα πολλὰ φαινόμενα χειμῶνα σημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν πῦρ μὴ θέλῃ ἄπτεσθαι, χειμέριον. καὶ ἐὰν λύχνος ἄπτεσθαι μὴ ἐθέλῃ, χειμῶνα σημαίνει. καὶ τέφρα πηγνυμένη νιφετόν. λύχνος εὐδίας ἡσυχαῖος καίόμενος χειμῶνα σημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν χειμῶνος ὄντος μῦκαι μέλαιναί ἐπιγίνωνται, χειμῶνα σημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν ὥσπερ κέγχροις πολλοῖς κατά-

<sup>1</sup> τευθίδες. The word is perhaps corrupt and conceals the name of a bird.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 21, 29. πολὺπλοκον is Furlanus' conj. for Vulg. πολὺποδον.

<sup>3</sup> πνεύμονες. Plin. 18. 359. *pulmones*: cf. 9. 154.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 40-42

a great variety of sounds in winter, it is a sign of storm. Jackdaws flying from the south are a sign of storm, and so are cuttle-fish.<sup>1</sup> It is a sign of storm when a loud<sup>2</sup> voice is heard in harbour, which is re-echoed many times. It is a sign of a stormy season when a number of jelly-fish<sup>3</sup> appear in the sea. It indicates an early winter when the breeding season of sheep begins early.

If in autumn sheep or oxen dig holes and lie keeping their heads close to one another, it indicates a severe winter. They say that in Pontus when Arcturus rises, (the cattle<sup>4</sup>) face northwards as they graze. It is a sign of storm when cattle eat more than usual and lie down on their right sides.<sup>5</sup> So is it when the ass shakes<sup>6</sup> his ears, or when sheep or birds fight for their food more than usual, since they are then trying to secure a store against bad weather: also when mice squeak and dance.

A bitch digging holes with her paws and a tree-frog croaking alone at early dawn<sup>7</sup> are signs of storm: it indicates storm when a number of the worms<sup>8</sup> called 'the earth's entrails' appear. It is a sign of storm if the fire refuses to catch, or if a lamp refuses to light: while, if much ash is formed, it is a sign of snow. If a lamp burns steadily in fine weather, it is a sign of storm: so is it if in winter-time dark snuff<sup>9</sup> forms: if it is, as it were, full of numerous millet-seeds, there will be stormy weather;

<sup>1</sup> θάττων is clearly corrupt, and words indicating what the sign portends are missing. <sup>5</sup> cf. 54.

<sup>6</sup> ὅτα κρούων doubtful. Sch. suggests οὐδας for ὅτα.

<sup>7</sup> ἀκρωπίας. cf. 21.

<sup>8</sup> γῆς ἐντερα. So Arat. 225 explains. One might guess 'worm-casts.'

<sup>9</sup> cf. 14, 25, 34, 54.

## THEOPHRASTUS

πλεως ἦ, χειμερίσει· καὶ ἐὰν κύκλῳ περὶ τὸ λαμπρὸν ὧσιν εὐδίας οὔσης, χιονικόν.

- 43 Ἡ τοῦ ὄνου Φάτνη εἰ συνίσταται καὶ ζοφερά γίνεται, χειμῶνα σημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν ἀστραπὴ λαμπρὰ μὴ ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένῃ, χειμέριον. ἐπὶ Πλειάδι δυομένη ἐὰν λάμψῃ κατὰ Πάρνηθα καὶ Βρίληττον καὶ Ὑμηττον, ἐὰν μὲν ἅπαντα καταλάμψῃ, μέγαν χειμῶνα σημαίνει, ἐὰν δὲ τὰ δύο, ἐλάττω, ἐὰν δὲ Πάρνηθα μόνον, εὐδιεινόν· καὶ ἐὰν χειμῶνος ὄντος νεφέλῃ μακρὰ ἐπὶ τὸν Ὑμηττον ἦ, χειμῶνος ἐπίτασιν σημαίνει. Ἄθως καὶ Ὀλυμπος καὶ ὅλως ὀρέων κορυφαὶ κατεχόμεναι ὑπὸ νεφελῶν χειμέριον. ἐὰν εὐδίας γινομένης νεφέλιον φαίνεται ἐν τῷ ἀέρι παρατεταμένον καὶ τιλλόμενον, οὕτω παύεται ὁ χειμῶν.

- 44 Ἐὰν τὸ μετόπωρον εὐδιεινὸν παρὰ τὸ εἰκὸς γένηται, τὸ ἔαρ γίνεται ψυχρὸν ὥς τὰ πολλὰ. ἐὰν πρῶτ' χειμάζειν ἄρξηται, πρῶτ' παύεται καὶ ἔαρ καλόν, ἐὰν δὲ τοῦναντίον, καὶ ἔαρ ὀψιον ἔσται. ἐὰν χειμῶν ὑέτιος, τὸ ἔαρ αὐχμηρόν, ἐὰν δ' αὐχμηρὸς ὁ χειμῶν, τὸ ἔαρ καλόν. ἐὰν ἡ ὄπωρα γίνηται ἐπιεικῆς, τὰ πολλὰ γίνεται τοῖς προβάτοις λιμός. ἐὰν τὸ ἔαρ καὶ τὸ θέρος ψυχρὰ γίνηται, ἥ τε ὄπωρα γίνεται καὶ <τὸ> μετόπωρον πνιγερὸν καὶ οὐκ ἀνεμῶδες.

- 45 Οἱ πρίνοι ἐὰν εὐκαρπῶσι, χειμῶνες πολλοὶ σφόδρα γίνονται. ἐὰν ἐπὶ κορυφῆς ὄρους νέφος ὀρθὸν στῇ, χειμῶνα σημαίνει, ὅθεν καὶ Ἀρχίλοχος ἐποίησε "Γλαῦχ' ὄρα· βαθὺς γὰρ ἤδη κύμασιν

<sup>1</sup> ὄνου φάτνη. cf. 23, 51. See LS, s.v. *ónos*; Theocr. 22. 21. Plin. 18. 353, *coni in signo Cancræ duae stellae parvae*

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 42-45.

and if these in fine weather appear in a circle round the flame, it is a sign of snow.

If the 'Ass's Manger'<sup>1</sup> shrinks in size and becomes dark, it is a sign of storm; also if there is vivid lightning which does not remain in the same quarter. If at the setting of the Pleiad there is lightning over Parnes Brilessus and Hymettus—when it appears over all three mountains, it indicates a great storm; when over the two lesser heights, a less violent storm; when over Parnes alone, fine weather. Again, if during a storm a long cloud stretches over Hymettus, it signifies that the storm will increase in force. It is a sign of storm when Athos Olympus and mountain-peaks in general are covered with clouds. If during fine weather a cloud appears in the sky stretching a long way and torn to shreds, stormy weather will continue.

If the autumn is unusually fine, the succeeding spring is generally cold. If winter begins early, it ends early and there is a fair spring; if the reverse, spring will also be late. If the winter is wet, the spring will be dry, if the winter is dry, the spring will be fair. If the late summer is satisfactory, the sheep will generally suffer from hunger. If the spring and summer are cold, the late summer and autumn<sup>2</sup> will be stifling hot and windless.

If the kermes-oak<sup>3</sup> fruits well, there follows a long succession of storms. If a cloud stands upright on a mountain-peak, it indicates storm; whence Archilochus' lines "Mark you,<sup>4</sup> Glaucus; deep ocean

*aselli appellatae, exiguum inter illas spatium obtinente nubecula, quam praesepia appellant.* <sup>2</sup> rd add. Sch. <sup>3</sup> cf. 49.

<sup>4</sup> A comparison of war to stormy weather. Quoted also by Plut. *de Superstitione*, 72, and by Heraclides, *Allegoriae Homericæ*, 4. In both citations the Greek is corrupt.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ταράσσεται Πόντος ἀμφὶ δ' ἄκρα <Γυρῶν> ὀρθὸν ἴσταται νέφος Σῆμα χειμῶνος." ἐὰν δ' ὁμόχρων ἢ ὑμένι λευκῷ, χειμέριον. ὅταν ἐστῶτων νεφῶν ἕτερα ἐπιφέρηται τὰ δ' ἡρεμῇ, χειμέρια.

- 46 <Ὁ ἥλιος> ἐὰν χειμῶνος διαλάμψας πάλιν ἀποκρυφθῇ καὶ τοῦτο ποιήσῃ δις ἢ τρίς, ἡμέρα χειμέριος δίεισιν. ὁ τοῦ Ἑρμοῦ ἀστήρ χειμῶνος μὲν φαινόμενος ψύχῃ σημαίνει θέρους δὲ καῦμα. ὅταν μέλιτται μὴ ἀποπέτῳνται μακρὰν ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ εὐδία πέτῳνται, χειμῶνα ἐσόμενον σημαίνει. λύκος ὠρυόμενος χειμῶνα σημαίνει διὰ τριῶν ἡμερῶν. λύκος ὅταν πρὸς τὰ ἔργα ὁρμᾷ ἢ εἴσω χειμῶνος ὥρα, χειμῶνα σημαίνει εὐθύς.

- 17 "Ἔστι δὲ σημεῖον χειμῶνων μεγάλων καὶ ὄμβρων καὶ ὅταν γένῳνται ἐν τῷ μετοπώρῳ πολλοὶ σφῆκες, καὶ ὅταν ὄρνιθες λευκοὶ πρὸς τὰ ἐργάσιμα πλησιάζωσι, καὶ ὅλως τὰ ἄγρια θηρία ἐὰν πρὸς τὰ ἐργάσιμα, βόρειον καὶ χειμῶνος μέγεθος σημαίνει. τῆς Πάρνηθος ἐὰν τὰ πρὸς ζέφυρον ἄνεμον καὶ τὰ πρὸς Φύλης φράττηται νέφεσι βορείων ὄντων, χειμέριον τὸ σημεῖον.

- 48 "Ὅταν πνίγῃ γίνηται ἰσχυρά, ὥς τὰ πολλὰ ἀνταποδίδωσι καὶ γίνεται χειμῶν ἰσχυρός. ἐὰν ὕδατα ἑαρινὰ πολλὰ γένηται, καύματα ἰσχυρὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδινοῖς καὶ κοίλοις γίνεται. δεῖ οὖν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὁρᾶν. ἐὰν τὸ μετόπωρον εὐδιεινὸν γίνηται

<sup>1</sup> Γυρῶν. γυροῦν W. Heraclides gives γυρεῖν, Plut. γυρεῖον; but one MS. of Plut. gives γύρων with a marginal gloss 'sc. πετρῶν,' which suggests that the word is a proper name. Od. 4. 500 mentions the Γύραι (i.e. the 'round-backed rocks')

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 45-48

is now stirred up with waves, and about the heights of the Gyrae<sup>1</sup> there rises a cloud erect, the sign of storm." If the clouds are of uniform colour, like<sup>2</sup> a white membrane, it is a sign of storm. When, as some clouds are motionless, others move towards them while they remain at rest, it is a sign of storm.

If the sun in winter after gleaming out is again obscured, and this is repeated two or three times, it will be stormy all day. If the star Hermes appears in winter, it indicates cold, if in summer, heat. When in fine weather bees do not fly<sup>3</sup> long distances, but fly about where they are, it indicates that there will be a storm. The howling of a wolf indicates a storm within three days. When a wolf approaches or enters cultivated ground in the season of winter, it indicates that a storm will come immediately.

It is also a sign of great storms and heavy rain when many wasps appear in autumn, or when white birds<sup>4</sup> approach cultivated lands; and in general when wild creatures approach such lands, it indicates a north wind and a severe storm. If the western side of Parnes and the side towards Phyle are blocked with clouds during a north wind, it is a sign of storm.

When there is severe heat, generally there is compensation and a severe winter follows. If there is much rain in spring, it is followed by severe heat in low-lying districts and valleys; so that one should mark how the season begins. If the autumn is where Aias Oileus perished. The word is missing in the MSS. of T.

<sup>2</sup> *δμοιον* has perhaps dropped out after *δμόχρων ᾗ*; the adjective seems to agree with *νέφος*.

<sup>3</sup> cf. Arist. *H.A.* 9. 40 *ad fin.*

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 18. 363: presumably gulls, etc.

## THEOPHRASTUS

σφόδρα, τὸ ἔαρ ὥς τὰ πολλὰ γίνεται ψυχρόν·  
ἐὰν δὲ τὸ ἔαρ ὄψιον γένηται καὶ ψυχρόν, ἢ ὅπωρα  
ὀψία γίνεται καὶ <τὸ> μετόπωρον ὥς τὰ πολλὰ  
πνιγρόν.

49 Οἱ πρίνοι ὅταν εὐκαρπῶσι σφόδρα, ὥς μὲν τὰ  
πολλὰ χειμῶνα ἰσχυρὸν σημαίνουν, ἐνίστε δὲ  
καὶ αὐχμούς φασι γίνεσθαι. καὶ ἐὰν τις σπά-  
λακα λαβὼν ὑποπάσας ἄργιλον εἰς πιθάσπην  
θῇ, σημαίνει ταῖς φωναῖς αἷς ἀφίησιν ἄνεμον καὶ  
εὐδίαν. καὶ τὸ πανταχοῦ δὲ λεγόμενον σημεῖον  
δημόσιον χειμέριον, ὅταν μῦες περὶ φορυτοῦ  
μάχωνται καὶ φέρωσιν.

50 IV. Εὐδίας δὲ σημεῖα τάδε. ἥλιος μὲν ἀνιὼν  
λαμπρὸς καὶ μὴ καυματίας καὶ μὴ ἔχων σημεῖον  
μηδὲν ἐν ἑαυτῷ εὐδίαν σημαίνει. ὥς δ' αὐτως  
σελήνη πανσελήνῳ. καὶ δυόμενος ἥλιος χει-  
μῶνος εἰς καθαρὸν εὐδιεινός, ἐὰν μὴ ταῖς προτέραις  
ἡμέραις εἰς μὴ καθαρὸν δεδυκῶς ἢ ἐξ εὐδιῶν·  
οὕτω δὲ ἄδηλον. καὶ ἐὰν χειμάζοντος ἢ δύσις  
γένηται εἰς καθαρὸν, εὐδιεινόν· καὶ ἐὰν δύνων  
χειμῶνος ὠχρὸς ἢ, εὐδίαν σημαίνει.

51 Καὶ ὁ μείς ἐὰν τριταῖος ὦν λαμπρὸς ἢ, εὐδι-  
εινόν. καὶ ἡ τοῦ ὄνου Φάτνη ὅτε ἂν καθαρὰ καὶ  
λαμπρὰ φαίνεται, εὐδιεινόν. ἄλλως δὲ ἐὰν ὁμαλῶς

<sup>1</sup> τὸ add. Sch.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 45.

<sup>3</sup> σπάλακα Vulg.; σπάκα Bas. Ald.; σκολόπακα (woodcock ?)  
conj. Furl.

<sup>4</sup> i.e. (reading σκολόπακα) for the bird to find worms in  
with its long beak (Sch.). It is hard to say, without illus-

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 48-51

exceedingly fine, generally the spring is cold: if the spring is late and cold, the summer goes on late and the <sup>1</sup> autumn is usually scorching hot.

When the kermes-oak <sup>2</sup> fruits exceedingly well, it generally indicates a severe winter, and sometimes they say that this sign is followed by droughts. If one takes a mole<sup>3</sup> and puts it in a tub, the bottom<sup>4</sup> of which has been covered with clay, it indicates by the sounds which it utters wind or fine weather. There is also the sign of storm which is popularly recognized everywhere, namely when mice fight for the possession of chaff and carry it about.

### *The signs of fair weather.*

IV. The following are signs of fair weather. <sup>5</sup> If the sun rises brilliant but without scorching heat and without showing any special sign in his orb, it indicates fair weather. The same may be said of the moon when it is full. If in winter that part of the sky into which the sun goes down is clear, it is a sign of fair weather, unless on the preceding days that part has not been clear, though it was clear above the horizon: in that case the prospect is uncertain. It is also a sign of fair weather, if during stormy conditions that part of the sky into which the sun sets is clear; and also if, in winter at the time of setting, the sun has a pale colour.

Again, it indicates fair weather if the outline of the moon on the third day is bright; also if the 'Ass's <sup>6</sup> Manger' is clear and bright. If the halo<sup>7</sup> forms and disappears evenly, it is a sign of fair

tration, which is the more convincing of the creatures suggested. <sup>5</sup> Plin. 18. 342. <sup>6</sup> cf. 23, 43.

<sup>7</sup> cf. 22, 31; Plin. 18. 345; Arist. *Meteor.* 3. 3.

## THEOPHRASTUS

παγῇ καὶ μαρανθῇ, εὐδίαν σημαίνει. αἱ κηλάδες νεφέλαι χειμῶνος εὐδιεῖναί. "Ολυμπος δὲ καὶ "Αθως καὶ ὅλως τὰ ὄρη τὰ σημαντικὰ ὅταν τὰς κορυφὰς καθαρὰς ἔχωσιν, εὐδίαν σημαίνει. καὶ ὅταν τὰ νέφη πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν αὐτὴν παραζωνύη, εὐδιεῖνόν. καὶ ὅταν ὕσαντος πρὸς δυσμὰς χαλκῶδες τὰ νέφη χρώμα ἔχῃ· εὐδία γὰρ ὡς τὰ πολλὰ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ.

52 "Οταν δὲ ὁμίχλη γένηται, ὕδωρ οὐ γίνεται ἢ ἔλαττον. ὅταν γέρανοι πέτουνται καὶ μὴ ἀνακάμπωσιν, εὐδίαν σημαίνει· οὐ γὰρ πέτουνται πρὶν ἢ ἂν πετόμενοι καθαρὰ ἴδωσι. γλαυῆς ἡσυχαῖον φθειγγομένη ἐν χειμῶνι εὐδίαν προσημαίνει· καὶ νύκτωρ χειμῶνος ἡσυχαῖον ἄδουσα. θαλαττία δὲ γλαυῆς ἄδουσα χειμῶνος μὲν εὐδίαν σημαίνει, εὐδίας δὲ χειμῶνα. καὶ κόραξ δὲ μόνος μὲν ἡσυχαῖον κράζων, καὶ ἐὰν τρεῖς κράξῃ μετὰ τοῦτο πολλάκις κράξῃ, εὐδιεῖνός. . . .

53 Καὶ κορώνη ἔωθεν εὐθύς ἐὰν κράξῃ τρεῖς, εὐδίαν σημαίνει, καὶ ἐσπέρας χειμῶνος ἡσυχαῖον ἄδουσα. καὶ ὄρχιλος ἐξ ὁπῆς ἐκπετόμενος καὶ ἐξ ἐρκίων καὶ ἐξ οἰκίας ἔξωθεν εὐδίαν σημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν χειμῶνος βορεύοντος βορρᾶθεν ὑπόλαμψις γένηται λευκή, νοτόθεν δὲ ἐναντία τεταγμένη ἢ νεφέλη ὀγκώδης, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ εἰς εὐδίαν σημαίνει μεταβολήν. καὶ ὅταν βορέας νεφέλας πολλὰς κινῇ ἐκπνέων μέγας, εὐδίαν σημαίνει.

<sup>1</sup> κηλάδες I conj. cf. 31, to which this statement answers. κοιλάδες MSS.

<sup>2</sup> Plin. 18. 356. <sup>3</sup> Plin. 18. 357. cf. Verg. Georg. 1. 401.

<sup>4</sup> Plin. 18. 362.

<sup>5</sup> ἐν χειμῶνι. ? 'in winter.' The same ambiguity occurs in many places : the sense seems fixed here by the next sentence.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 51-53

weather. Light<sup>1</sup> clouds in winter are a sign of fine weather. It is a sign of fine weather when Olympus Athos and in general the mountains which give signs have their tops<sup>2</sup> clear: so too is it, when clouds encompass them at the sea-level.<sup>3</sup> Also when after rain the clouds have a bronze colour towards sundown: in that case there will generally be fine weather the next day.

When there is mist, little or no rain follows. When cranes<sup>4</sup> take flight and do not come back, it is a sign of fair weather: for they do not do so till they see a clear sky before them as they fly. It is a sign of fair weather when during a storm<sup>5</sup> an owl makes a low hoot, or at night during a storm it utters a low sound. If the sea-owl utters its note during a storm, it indicates fair weather, if during fair weather, it indicates a storm. It is a sign of fair weather if a solitary raven makes a low croak, and, after croaking three times, repeats the sound again and again. . . .<sup>6</sup>

If the crow caws thrice directly the dawn appears, it indicates fair weather, as also if it makes a low note in the evening during a storm. It is a sign of fair weather if a goldcrest flies out abroad from a hole or from a hedge or from its nest. Again, if during a storm from the north there is a white gleam from that quarter, while in the south a solid mass of cloud has formed, it generally signifies a change to fair weather. Again when the north wind (Boreas) as it begins to blow violently stirs up a number of clouds, it indicates fair weather.

<sup>6</sup> I have marked a lacuna: the answer to  $\mu\epsilon\nu$  is missing, presumably a statement about the significance of more than one raven. cf. Verg. *Georg.* l. 410.

## THEOPHRASTUS

- 54 Πρόβατα ὀψὲ ὀχευόμενα εὐδιεινὸν ἀποτελοῦσι τὸ σημεῖον. καὶ βοῦς ἐπὶ τὸ ἀρίστερον ἰσχύον κατακλινόμενος εὐδίαν σημαίνει· καὶ κύων ὡσαύτως· ἐπὶ δεξιὸν δὲ χειμῶνα. τέττιγες πολλοὶ γινόμενοι νοσῶδες τὸ ἔτος σημαίνουνσι. λύχνος χειμῶνος καιόμενος ἡσυχαιὸς εὐδίαν σημαίνει. καὶ ἐὰν ἐπ' ἄκρῳ οἶον κέγχρους ἔχη λαμπράς· καὶ ἐὰν ἐν κύκλῳ τὴν μύξαν περιγράφη λαμπρὰ γραμμή.
- 55 Ὁ τῆς σχίνου καρπὸς σημαίνει τοὺς ἀρότους· ἔχει δὲ τρία μέρη καὶ ἔστιν ὁ πρῶτος τοῦ πρώτου ἀρότου σημεῖον, ὁ δεύτερος τοῦ δευτέρου, ὁ τρίτος τοῦ τρίτου· καὶ ὡς ἂν τούτων ἐκβαίνει κἄλλιστα καὶ γένηται ἀδρότατος, οὕτως ἔξει καὶ ὁ κατὰ τοῦτον ἄροτος.
- 56 Λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοιάδε σημεῖα ὅλων τε τῶν ἐνιαυτῶν γίνεσθαι καὶ τῶν μορίων. ἐὰν ἀρχομένου τοῦ χειμῶνος ζόφος ἦ καὶ καύματα γίνηται καὶ ταῦτα ἄνευ ὕδατος ὑπ' ἀνέμων διαλυθῇ, πρὸς τὸ ἔαρ σημαίνει χάλαζαν ἐσομένην. καὶ ἐὰν μετὰ τὴν ἑαρινὴν ἰσημερίαν ὀμίχλαι πίπτωσι, πνεύματα καὶ ἀνέμους σημαίνουνσιν εἰς ἑβδομον μῆνα ἀμφοτέρων ἀριθμουμένων. ὅσαι μὲν ἅμα μνηνοειδὲ τῇ σελήνῃ πίπτουσιν, αὗται μὲν πνεύματα σημαίνουνσιν εἰς ἐκείνον τὸν χρόνον, ὅσαι δ' ἀμφικύρτου οὕσης τῆς σελήνης ὕδατα. καὶ ὅσῳ

<sup>1</sup> cf. 41.

<sup>2</sup> cf. 14, 25, 42.

<sup>3</sup> H.P. 7. 13. 6 the same is said of σκίλλα.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 54-56

When sheep begin to breed late, it is a sign which fulfils itself in fair weather. So is it when an ox lies<sup>1</sup> on his left side, and also when a dog does the same: if they lie on the right side, it indicates storm. The appearance of a number of cicadas indicates that the season will be unhealthy. If a lamp burns quietly during a storm, it indicates fair weather. So also if it has on the surface an appearance like shining millet-seeds:<sup>2</sup> also if a bright line surrounds the lamp-nozzle.

The fruiting of the mastich<sup>3</sup> gives signs as to the seasons of sowing:<sup>4</sup> it takes place at three several periods, which indicate respectively the time for the first the second and the third sowing: and according as one or other of these fruiting-times turns out<sup>5</sup> best and produces the most abundant fruit, so too will be the success of the corresponding time of sowing.

### *Miscellaneous signs.*

The following signs are said to affect either the whole year or whole periods<sup>6</sup> of it. If at the beginning of winter there is dull weather followed by heat, and these conditions are dispersed by wind without rain, it indicates that towards the spring there will be hail. Again, if after the spring equinox mists come down, it is an indication of breezes and winds by the seventh month, reckoning inclusively. Those mists which come down when the moon is in its first quarter indicate breezes for that period, those which come down when the moon is in its third quarter indicate rain. And the more mists

<sup>4</sup> cf. *H.P.* 7. 1. 1 foll.

<sup>5</sup> ἐκβαίνῃ I conj.: cf. *H.P.* 7. 13. 6; κλίνῃ MSS.

<sup>6</sup> cf. 6.



## THEOPHRASTUS

ἀν μᾶλλον ἐφ' ἐκατέρῳ τῷ σχήματι ὁμίχλαι πίπτωσι, μᾶλλον τὰ εἰρημένα σημαίνει.

- 57 Σημαίνει δὲ καὶ τὰ πνεύματα ἅμα ταῖς ὁμίχλαις ἐπιπιπτούσαις γινόμενα· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἀπ' ἡοῦς καὶ μεσημβρίας γίνηται τὰ πνεύματα, ὕδατα σημαίνει· ἐὰν δ' ἀφ' ἐσπέρας καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἄρκτου πνεύματα καὶ ψύχη. οἷς δὲ κομήτας Αἰγύπτιοι λέγουσιν οὐ μόνον τὰ προειρημένα σημαίνουσιν ὅταν φαίνωνται ἀλλὰ καὶ ψύχη· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς ἄστροις εἶωθεν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ σημαίνειν καὶ ταῖς ἰσημερίαις καὶ τροπαῖς, οὐκ ἐπ' αὐταῖς ἀλλ' ἢ πρὸ αὐτῶν ἢ ὕστερον μικρῶ.

---

<sup>1</sup> cf. 34 ; Arist. *Meteor.* 1. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Text seems doubtful, as cold weather was included above.

## CONCERNING WEATHER SIGNS, 56-57

come down when the moon is assuming either shape, the more certainly is the result just mentioned indicated.

Also the winds which accompany the falling of the mists are significant: if the breezes come from the east or south, rain is indicated; if from the west or north, breezes and cold weather. And the stars which the Egyptians<sup>1</sup> call 'comets' indicate not only the conditions just mentioned but also cold<sup>2</sup> weather. <sup>3</sup> In the case of the rising of the stars the indication, as in the case also of the equinoxes and solstices, is given not at the actual time but a little earlier or later.

<sup>1</sup> The text of this sentence can hardly be sound. *σημαίνειν* has no subject and *ταῖς ἡσημερίαις καὶ τροπαῖς* no construction.



## INDEX OF PLANTS

## NOTE TO THE INDEX OF PLANTS

SPRENGEL made the first comprehensive attempt to determine in modern nomenclature the plants mentioned by Theophrastus: Wimmer gives the result in the Introduction to his 1842 edition. Sprengel adopted the most probable identifications of earlier botanists, supplemented by his own conjectures and Sibthorp's exploration of the Greek flora. The ambitious but uncritical *Conspectus Florae Classicae* of Fraas did not add much to our knowledge, which throughout had been vitiated by failure to recognise the fact that the Mediterranean flora differed from that of Western and Central Europe. Halacsy's *Conspectus Florae Graecae* now gives us a scientific enumeration of the native plants of Greece; a Greek plant-name can be wedded to a plant which at any rate is Greek. Incidentally much has been cleared up by special research at the hands of De Candolle, Hanbury, Yule, Schweinfurth, Bretzl, and others.

The identifications in the following Index are drawn from various sources; for their selection in view of the botanical data available I am indebted to Sir William Thiselton-Dyer. A considerable number may be accepted as certain, many are probable, some no more than possible.

## INDEX OF PLANTS

comp.=compared.

= denotes a synonym. Where a reference is added (see e.g. ἀτρακτυλ(ίς)), it indicates that Theophrastus himself states that the names are synonymous.

ἀβρότονον, southernwood, *Artemisia arborescens*

1. 9. 4. evergreen; 6. 1. 1. in list of under-shrubs; 6. 3. 6. an unnamed plant comp.: see App. (23); 6. 7. 3. propagation; 6. 7. 4. much seed: roots described.

ἄγνος (= οἶσος), chaste-tree, *Vitex Agnus-castus*

1. 3. 2. a shrub which becomes tree-like; 1. 14. 2. bears fruit at the top; 3. 12. 1. growth of κράνεα comp.; 3. 12. 2. roots of θηλυκράνεα comp.; 4. 10. 2. ελαίανος comp.; 9. 5. 1. size of κινάμωνον and κασία comp.

ἀγριέλαιος (? = κότινος), wild olive, *Olea Oleaster*

2. 2. 5. comes from seed of ἐλάα.

ἀγρωστis, dog's tooth grass, *Cynodon Dactylon*

1. 6. 7. root jointed; 1. 6. 10. roots large and numerous; 2. 2. 1. propagation; 4. 6. 6. φύκος (6) comp.; 4. 10. 5-6 root described; 4. 11. 13. an unnamed form of κάλαμος comp.: root of κ, ὁ Ἰνδικός comp.; 9. 13. 6. habit of ἐρευνθιδανον comp.

ἄγχουσα, alkanet, *Achusa tinctoria*

7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground':

7. 9. 3. roots red.

ἀδιαντον, maiden-hair, *Adiantum Capillus-Veneris*, etc.

7. 10. 5. evergreen; 7. 14. 1. leaf cannot be wetted: two kinds

(see below): medicinal use: grows in damp places.

ἀδιαντον τὸ λευκόν (= τριχομανές 7. 14. 1), English maiden-hair, *Asplenium Trichomanes*

7. 14. 1. described by comparison with ἀ. το μελαν: medicinal use: likes shady places.

ἀδιαντον τὸ μέλαν, maiden-hair, *Adiantum Capillus Veneris*

7. 14. 1. comp. with ἀ. τὸ λευκόν.

ἀδράφαξ, orach, *Atriplex rosea*

1. 14. 2. bears fruit both on top and at sides; 3. 10. 5. seeds of φύλυρα comp.; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 2. 6. root described; 7. 2. 7-8. root of βάλανον comp.; 7. 2. 8. root: 7. 3. 2. seeds; 7. 3. 4. seed borne both at top and at side; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 5. 5. seed does not keep well.

αἰζῶνον, house-leek, *Sempervivum tectorum*

1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 7. 15. 2. always moist and green: habitat.

ἀθραγένη, traveller's joy, *Clematis Vitalba*

5. 9. 6. wood makes good fire-sticks: described; 5. 9. 7. the stationary piece should be made of this or κίττος.

αἰγιόρος, black poplar, *Populus nigra*

1. 2. 7. bark; 1. 5. 2. bark fleshy; 2. 2. 10. Cretan form bears fruit; 3. 1. 1. propagation; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 4. a question if it bears fruit; etc.;

## INDEX OF PLANTS

3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 1. quick growing; 3.14 2. described; 4. 1. 1. likes wet ground; 4. 7. 4. size of unnamed Arabian tree, see App. (12a), comp.; 4. 13. 2. shorter-lived by water; 5 9. 4. wood makes an evil smoke when burnt for charcoal
- αἰγίλωψ (1) (= ἄσπρις), Turkey oak, *Quercus Cerris*
3. 8. 2. one of the five (Idaeon) kinds of oak: fruit; 3 8. 4. habit and timber; 3. 8. 6. galls: φάσκος (q.v.).
- αἰγίλωψ (2) (grass), *Aegilops orata*
7. 13. 5. seed sometimes takes two years to germinate; 8. 7. 1. comp. with αἶρα; 8. 8. 3. grows specially among κριθαί; 8. 9. 2. like a wild plant; 8. 9. 3. greatly exhausts the soil; 8. 11. 8-9. peculiarities about seed.
- αἰμόδωρον, broom-rape, *Orobanche cruenta*
- 8.8.5. parasitic on βουκέρας (only): described.
- αἶρα, darnel, *Lolium temulentum*
- 1.5.2. 'bark' in one layer; 2.4.1. πυρός turns into α.; 4. 4. 10. ἄρυσον comp.; 8. 4. 6. does not infest certain kinds of πυρός: contrasted with μελάμπυρον; 8. 7. 1. κριθή and especially πυρός said to change into α., under certain conditions: described: λίνον also said to change into α.: comp. with αἰγίλωψ (2); 8. 8. 3. produced possibly by degeneration of κριθή and πυρός, or else specially affects such crops; 8. 9. 3. altogether a wild plant.
- ἀκαλύφη, nettle, *Urtica urens*
7. 7. 2. a λάχανον; needs cooking.
- ἄκανθα (1) ἡ Αἰγυπτία, acacia, *Acacia arabica* (and *albida*)
4. 2. 1. peculiar to Egypt; 4. 2. 8. described: two kinds (ἡ λευκή and ἡ μέλαινα) distinguished (see below); 9. 1. 2. sap gummy.
- ἄκανθα (ἡ Αἰγυπτία) ἡ λευκή, acacia, *Acacia albida*
4. 2. 3. distinguished from α. ἡ μέλαινα.
- ἄκανθα (ἡ Αἰγυπτία) ἡ μέλαινα, acacia, *Acacia arabica*
4. 2. 8 distinguished from α. ἡ λευκή.
- ἄκανθα (2) ἡ ἀκανώδης (see 4.10.6. n.), corn-thistle, *Carduus arvensis*
4. 10. 6. root etc. described.
- ἄκανθα (3) ἡ διψάς, *Acacia tortilis*
4. 7. 1. the only tree which grows on part of the 'Red Sea' coast.
- ἄκανθα (4) ἡ Ἰνδική (see App. (9)), *Balsamodendron Mukul*
9. 1. 2. sap gummy: gum like σμύrna.
- ἄκανθα (5) ἡ λευκή Ἑρακλέους (= ἄκανθα (6)), *Euphorbia anti-quorum*
4. 4. 12. described: uses of wood
- ἄκανθα (6) (peculiar to Gedrosia), = ἄκανθα (5), *Euphorbia anti-quorum*
4. 4. 13. described: has a blinding juice.
- ἄκανθα (7) τις, gum arabic, *Acantha arabica*
9. 13. 1. said to have the property of thickening water.
- ἄκανθα (?) (8) (= ἄκανος = ἰξία (2) = ἰξίνη = χαμαιλέων ὁ λευκός 9.12.1.), pine-thistle, *Atractylis gummifera*.
- ἄκανος (= ἄκανθα(8)=ἰξία(2)=ἰξίνη=χαμαιλέων ὁ λευκός), pine-thistle, *Atractylis gummifera*
1. 10. 6. spinous-leaved; 1. 13. 3. flower attached above each seed; 6. 1. 3. has spines on the leaves: a wild under-shrub; 6. 4. 4. many stalks and side-growths; 6. 4. 5. one form only; 6. 4. 8. root of σόγκος contrasted: χαμαιλέων comp.; 6. 4. 11. fruit-case of κάκτος (1) comp.; 6. 6. 6. seed of ῥόδον comp.; 9. 12. 1. 'head' of χαμαιλέων ὁ λευκός comp.: another name for χαμαιλέων(?); 9. 12. 2. leaf of χαμαιλέων ὁ μέλας comp.
- ἄκόνιτον (= θηλύφονον = μυόφονον = σκορπιός (3)), wolf's bane, *Aconitum Anthora*
9. 16. 4. localities: described: habitat: eaten by no animal; 9. 16. 6. difficulty of compounding drug: effects: has no anti-

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- dote; 9. 16. 7. use requires expert knowledge: legal restrictions: proportion between times of gathering and of administering.
- ἀκοννα, *Cnicus Acarna*  
1. 10. 6. spinous-leaved; 7. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant; 6. 4. 6. described.
- ἀκτέος(?) (= ἀκτῆ), elder, *Sambucus nigra*  
3. 4. 2. time of budding.
- ἀκτῆ (= ἀκτέος), elder, *Sambucus nigra*  
1. 5. 4. wood without knots;  
1. 6. 4. core fleshy: has no core, according to some; 1. 8. 1. few knots; 4. 13. 2. shorter-lived by water; 5. 3. 3. character of wood.
- ἀλθαία (= μαλάχη ἢ ἄγρία 9. 15. 5.), marsh-mallow, *Althaea officinalis*  
9. 15. 5. a drug, called in Arcadia μαλάχη ἢ ἄγρία; 9. 18. 1. roots said to thicken water: described: medicinal use.
- ἀλμυρον, *Atriplex Halimus*  
4. 16. 5. Very dangerous to trees. ἀλιφλοιος (δρύς), see δρύς (3).
- ἀλσίνη, *Parietaria cretica*  
9. 13. 3. leaf of ἀριστολοχία comp.
- ἀλμπέκουρος, *Polypogon monspeliensis*  
7. 11. 2. flowers in a spike: described.
- ἀμάρακον (ἀμάρακος), sweet marjoram, *Origanum Majorana*  
1. 9. 4. evergreen; 6. 1. 1. In list of under-shrubs; 6. 7. 4. propagation: roots described; 6. 8. 3. flowering time; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- ἀμπελος (1) (leaf οἶναρον 9. 13. 5.), vine, *Vitis vinifera*  
1. 2. 1. has tendrils; 1. 2. 7. bark; 1. 3. 1. a typical 'tree'; 1. 3. 5. evergreen at Elephantine; 1. 5. 2. bark cracked and fibrous: bark in layers; 1. 6. 1. core fleshy; 1. 6. 3. roots thin; 1. 6. 5. roots branching upwards; 1. 8. 5. highest shoots 'roughest': 'eye' analogous to knot in other trees; 1. 9. 1. effect of pruning; 1. 10. 4. leaves broad; 1. 10. 5. leaf divided; 1. 10. 7. long leaf stalk: attachment of leaf-stalk; 1. 10. 8. leaves made of 'bark' and flesh; 1. 11. 4. seeds all together in a single case; 1. 11. 5. each grape separately attached; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 1. 13. 1. flower 'downy'; 1. 13. 3. flower surrounds fruit; 1. 13. 4. some kinds sterile; 1. 14. 1. bears on new shoots; 1. 14. 4. many cultivated forms; 2. 1. 3. propagation; 2. 2. 4. degenerates from seed; 2. 3. 1. sometimes spontaneously changes character; 2. 3. 2. ἀ. ὁ κάπνυτος varies in colour of grapes on same bunch; 2. 3. 3. sometimes bears fruit on the stem; etc.; 2. 5. 3. propagation: cannot be grafted; 2. 5. 4. propagation; 2. 5. 7. low ground suitable: great variety of kinds according to soil; 2. 6. 12. cuttings set upside down; 2. 7. 1. water-loving; 2. 7. 2. needs much pruning; 2. 7. 5. use of dust; 2. 7. 6. root-pruning; 3. 5. 4. autumn budding; 3. 17. 3. bark of κοκορία (2) comp.; 3. 18. 5. flower and fruit of ρόυς comp.; 3. 18. 12. cluster of berries of σμίλαξ (2) comp.; 4. 4. 8. unnamed Indian tree (cotton-plant) planted in rows like ἀ.; 4. 4. 11. In India confined to hill-country; 4. 5. 4. grows on Mount Tmolus and Mysian Olympus; 4. 7. 7. leaf of δένδρον τὸ ἐριόφορον comp.; 4. 7. 8. occurs on island of Tylos; 4. 13. 2. some kinds short-lived; 4. 13. 4-6. said to be longest-lived of trees: reason: method of prolonging life artificially; 4. 14. 2. young plants liable to 'sun-scorch'; 4. 14. 6. other diseases; 4. 14. 7. effects of injury to roots; 4. 14. 8. effect of rain on fruiting; 4. 14. 9. a special pest at Miletus; 4. 14. 10. effect of hot winds; 4. 14. 13. effects of frost; 4. 15. 1. outer bark can be stripped; 4. 16. 1. survives



## INDEX OF PLANTS

- splitting of stem; 4. 16. 6. natural antipathy of *α. το ράφανος*;  
5. 3. 4. character of wood;  
5. 4. 1. the less fruitful trees produce more solid wood; 5.9.4. wood, if damp, makes an evil smell when burnt for charcoal;  
5. 9. 6. *ἀθραγένη* comp.; 8. 2. 8. *α.* in Melos; 9. 1. 6. time of tapping; 9. 13. 5. leaf and time of growth of *πενταπερές* comp.; 9. 18. 11. peculiar properties of certain local kinds.
- ἀμπελος* (2) (Mt. Ida), currant grape, *Vitis vinifera*, var. *corinthiaca*  
3. 17. 4. a local Idaean kind;  
3. 17. 6. do. described.
- ἀμπελος* (3) *ἡ ποντία*, *Fucus spiralis*  
4. 6. 2. peculiar to certain waters;  
4. 6. 9. described.
- ἀμπελος* (4), *ἡ ἀγρία* (= *μήλωθρον*), bryony, *Bryonia cretica*  
3. 18. 12. fruit of *σμίλας* (2) comp.  
9. 14. 1. how long drug prepared from it will keep; 9. 20. 3. properties of root: medicinal use.
- ἀμνυδαλή*, almond, *Prunus Amygdalus*  
1. 6. 3. large central root; 1. 9. 6. leaves produced early, but not shed early; 1. 11. 1. seed immediately within envelope; 1. 11. 3. seed in a woody shell; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 13. 1. flower 'leafy': flower of some kinds reddish; 1. 14. 1. bears on last year's wood; 2. 2. 5. degenerates from seed; etc.; 2. 2. 9. effects of cultivation; 2. 2. 11. do.: effect of tapping gum; 2. 5. 6. trees should be planted far apart; 2. 7. 6. 'punishing' the tree; 2. 7. 7. tapping the gum; 2. 8. 1. apt to shed immature fruit; 3. 11. 4. fruit of *μελία* comp.; 3. 12. 1. leaf of *κράνεια* comp.; 4. 4. 7. fruit of *τέρμινθος* ἢ *Ἰνδική* comp.; 4.7.5. fruit of unnamed Persian tree (see App. (13)), comp.; 4.14.12. uninjured by special winds; 5.9.5. wood-ashes make pungent smoke; 7. 13. 6. flower appears before leaves and (new growth of) stem; 8. 2. 2. germination described; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy; 9. 1. 3. gum scentless; 9. 1. 5. gum useless; 9. 19. 1. leaf of *ὀνοθήρας* comp.
- ἄμωμον*, Nepaul cardamom, *Amomum subulatum*  
9. 7. 2. an *ἀρώμα*, Median or Indian.
- ἀνδράχλη*, andrachne, *Arbutus Andrachne*  
1. 5. 2. bark readily drops off; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 4. 6. do.; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?); 3. 16. 5. described; 3. 16. 6. leaf of *κοκκυνγία* comp.; 4. 4. 2. leaf of *μηλία* ἢ *Περσική* comp.; 4.7.5. an unnamed Persian tree (see App. (14)), comp.; 4. 15. 1. does not perish if bark is stripped; 4. 15. 2. bark cracks; 5. 7. 6. wood used for parts of loom; 9. 4. 3. bark of *σμύρνα* comp.
- ἀνδράχνη*, purslane, *Portulaca oleracea*  
7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7.2.9. root described.
- ἀνεμώνη*, anemone, *Anemone* spp.  
7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground.'
- ἀνεμώνη*, anemone, *Anemone coronaria*  
7. 7. 3. puts forth flower soon after season of growth begins; 7. 10. 2. flowers in winter.
- ἀνεμώνη ἡ λειμωνία*, *Anemone pavonina*  
6. 8. 1. flowering-time.
- ἀνεμώνη ἡ ὀρεία*, *Anemone blanda*  
6. 8. 1. flowering-time.
- ἀνηθον* (= *ἀννητος*), dill, *Anethum graveolens*  
1. 11. 2. seeds naked; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 6. 2. 8. fruit of *νάρθηξ* and *ναρθεκία* comp.; also setting of flowers and fruit; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7. 2. 8. root described; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 6. 4. fruit of *ὀρειοσέλιον* comp.
- ἄνθιμον*, *Anthemis chia*, etc. (see below)  
1. 13. 3. flower attached above

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- each seed; 7. 14. 2. flowering begins at top: flower and fruit: several kinds (*see below*).
- ἀνθεμον τὸ ἀφύλλανθος, wild chamomille, *Matricaria Chamomilla*
7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground.'
- ἀνθεμον τὸ φυλλῶδες, *Anthemis chia*
7. 8. 3. leaves on the stem.
- ἀνθήρικος, *see* ἀσφόδελος.
- ἀννησον, anise, *Pimpinella Anisum*
1. 12. 1. scent.
- ἀννητος (= ἄνηθον.) dill, *Anethum graveolens*
9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- ἀντίρρινον, snapdragon, *Antirrhinum Orontium*
9. 19. 2. alleged magic properties: described.
- ἀπάπη, dandelion, *Taraxacum officinale*
6. 4. 8. (?) flower of χαμαιλίων comp.; 7. 7. 1. a λάχανον: classed as 'chicory-like' from its leaves; 7. 7. 3. season of growing; 7. 7. 4. prolonged flowering-time; 7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground'; 7. 10. 2. (?) flowers in winter, earliest of all; 7. 10. 3. flowers borne in succession; 7. 11. 3. flowering time; 7. 11. 4. inedible: growth described.
- ἀπαργία, hawk's beard, *Crepis Colymnae*
7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground.'
- ἀπαρίνη, bedstraw, *Galium Aparine*
7. 8. 1. stem 'clasping,' but, for want of support, 'on the ground'; 7. 14. 3. clings to clothes: peculiar setting of flower described; 8. 8. 4. grows specially among φακοί; growth described; 9. 19. 2. ἀντίρρινον comp.
- ἄπιος (1), pear, *Pyrus communis*, var. *sativa*
1. 2. 7. bark; 1. 3. 3. a tree whose stem is not single; 1. 8. 2. has less knots than ἀχράς; 1. 10. 5. leaves round; 1. 11. 4. seeds all together in a single case; 1. 11. 5. seeds in a membrane; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 1. 13. 1. flower 'leafy'; 1. 13. 3. flower above fruit-case; 1. 14. 1

- bears on last year's wood;
1. 14. 4. a cultivated form of ἀχράς; many cultivated forms;
2. 1. 2. propagation; 2. 2. 4. degenerates from seed; 2. 2. 5. seed produces wild form; 2. 2. 12. cannot be made out of ἀχράς by cultivation; 2. 5. 3. grafting; 2. 5. 6. trees should be planted rather far apart; 2. 7. 7. 'punishing' the tree; 2. 8. 1. apt to shed immature fruit; 3. 2. 1. produces less fruit than ἀχράς, but ripens more; 3. 3. 2. has better fruit and timber in lowlands; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 11. 5. mountain and lowland forms comp.; 3. 12. 8. fruit of ὄη comp. as to keeping; 3. 14. 1. leaf of πελέα comp.; 3. 14. 3. leaf of κλήθρα comp.; 3. 18. 7. does not differ in kind from ἀχράς; 4. 2. 5. περσέα comp.; 4. 3. 1. size of λωτός (4) comp.; 4. 4. 2. thorns of μηλέα ἡ Περσική comp.; 4. 5. 3. abundant in Pontus; 4. 13. 1. shorter-lived than ἀχράς; 4. 14. 2. apt to get worm-eaten; 4. 14. 10. fruit gets worm-eaten; 4. 14. 12. uninjured by special winds; 5. 3. 2. leaf of an unnamed tree comp. (*see* App. (20)); 9. 4. 2. leaf of λιβανωτός comp.
- ἄπιος (2) (= ἰσχάς 9. 9. 5. = ῥάφανος ἡ ὄρεία), spurge, *Euphorbia Arisa*
9. 9. 5. medicinal use; 9. 9. 6. described.
- ἄρακος, *Vicia Sibthorpii*
1. 6. 12. an unnamed plant (*see* App. (1)) comp.; 8. 8. 3. ('the rough hard kind') grows specially among φακοί
- ἀρίχιδνα, *Lathyrus amphicarpus*
1. 1. 7. fruit underground; 1. 6. 12. root like a second fruit.
- ἄρία (= ἵψος = φελλοδρυς 3. 16. 3.), holm-oak, *Quercus Ilex* var. *agrifolia*
3. 3. 8. doubt whether it has a flower; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 16. 3. Dorian name for φελλοδρυς;

## INDEX OF PLANTS

3. 17. 1. acorn of *φελλός* comp.; 4. 7. 2. (?) leaf of *δάφνη* (6) comp.; 5. 1. 1. time of cutting timber; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5.4.2. wood proof against decay; 5. 5. 1. wood hard to work; 5.9. 1. wood makes good charcoal.
- ἀριστολοχία*, birthwort, *Aristolochia rotunda*
9. 13. 2. described: medicinal use; 9. 14. 1. how long drug will keep; 9.15.5. grows in Arcadia; 9. 20. 4. cf. 9. 13. 2.
- ἀρκευθος* (= *κέδρας* (3)), Phoenician cedar, *Juniperus phoenicea*
1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 8. doubt whether it has a flower; 3. 4. 1. takes a year to ripen fruit; 3. 4. 5. time of fruiting; etc.; 3. 4. 6. do.; 3. 6. 1. slow-growing (?); 3. 6. 5. shallow-rooting according to Arcadians; 3.12.3-4. described: distinguished from *κέδρος* (1): 4. 1. 3. grows high on mountains, but not tall; 5. 7. 4. use of wood in house-building; 5. 7. 6. other uses of wood: does not decay; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy.
- ἀρνόγλωσσον* (= *στελέφουρος* 7. 11. 2., according to some, = *ὄρνυξ* 7. 11. 2., according to some), plantain, *Plantago maior*
7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground'; 7. 10. 3. flowers borne in succession; 7. 11. 2. flowers in a spike: described by comparison with *ἀλωπέκουρος*.
- ἀρον*, cuckoo-pint, *Arum italicum*
1. 6. 7. root fleshy; 1. 6. 8. has a stout root and also fibrous roots: roots not tapering; 1. 6. 10. cultivation; 1.16.10.(?) flower made of flesh; 7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 9. 4. root described; 7.12.2. root and leaves edible: use in surgery: special treatment to promote growth of root: one kind inedible (see *δρακόντιον*); 7. 13. 1. leaves described; 7. 13. 2. no stem or flower
- ἀρρενόγονον* (= *θηλύγονον*), dog mercury, *Mercurialis perennis*
9. 19. 5. properties: described.
- ἀσπάλαθος*, *Calycotome villosa*
9. 7. 3. in list of *ἀρώματα*.
- ἄσπρις* (= *αιγίλωψ* (1)), Turkey oak, *Quercus Cerris*
- 3.8.2. one of the four Macedonian kinds of oak: acorns and timber.
- ἀστέρισκος*, Michaelmas daisy, *Aster Amellus*
4. 12. 2. seed of *μελαγκρανίς* comp.
- ἄσταφίς*, *Delphinium Staphisagria*
9. 12. 1. medicinal use.
- ἀσβράγος*, asparagus, *Asparagus acutifolius*
1. 10. 6. spines for leaves; 6. 1. 3. do.; a wild under-shrub; 6. 4. 1. one of very few plants which are altogether spinous; 6. 4. 2. described
- ἀσφόδελος* (stem *ἀνθήρικος*), (= *πόθος* (2)), asphodel, *Asphodelus ramosus*
1. 4. 3. belongs to 'ferula-like' plants; 1. 10. 7. attachment of leaves; 6. 6. 9. leaves of *νάρκισσος* (1) comp.; 7. 9. 4. root acorn-shaped; 7. 12. 1. root edible; 7.13.1. leaves described; 7. 13. 2-3. stem of *ἵρις* comp.: largest stem of herbaceous plants: fruit inflorescence etc. described; worm which infests it: uses for food of stem and roots; 7.13.4. grown from seed; 9. 9. 6. leaf of *ἰσχας* comp.; 9.10.1. stem of *ἐλλέβορος* comp. by some.
- ἄσχιον*, puff-ball, *Lycoperdon giganteum*
1. 6. 9. not a root, though underground.
- ἀτρακτυλῖς* (= *φόνος* 6. 4. 6.), distaff-thistle, *Carthamus lanatus*
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant; 6. 4. 6. described: also called *φόνος*: reason; 9. 1. 1. juice blood-coloured.
- ἀφάκη*, tare, *Vicia sativa* var. *angustifolia*
- 8.1.4. (a pulse) sown late; 8. 5. 3. shape of pod; 8. 8. 3. *πελεκίνος*

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- grows specially among  $\alpha$ .; 8.11.1. seed does not keep.
- $\alpha\phi\acute{\alpha}\rho\eta$  (a natural hybrid between  $\alpha\upsilon\delta\rho\acute{\alpha}\chi\lambda\eta$  and  $\kappa\omicron\mu\alpha\rho\omicron\varsigma$ ), hybrid arbutus, *Arbutus hybrida*
1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 5. 7. 7. uses of wood.
- $\alpha\phi\acute{\iota}\alpha$ , lesser celandine, *Ranunculus Ficaria*
7. 7. 3. puts forth flowers at season of growth.
- $\alpha\chi\rho\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$ , wild pear, *Pyrus amygdaliformis*
1. 4. 1. more fruitful than cultivated kind; 1. 8. 2. has more knots than  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$ ; 1. 9. 7. time of shedding leaves; 1. 14. 4. a wild form of  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$ ; 2. 2. 5. produced from seed of  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$ ; 2. 2. 12. cannot be made into  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$  by cultivation; 3. 2. 1. produces more fruit than  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$ , but ripens less; 3. 3. 1. a tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 2. has better fruit and timber in lowlands; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?); 3. 11. 5. mountain and lowland forms comp.; 3. 12. 8. fruit of  $\delta\eta$  comp. as to keeping; 3. 14. 2. bark of  $\lambda\epsilon\upsilon\kappa\eta$  comp.; 3. 18. 7. does not differ in kind from  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$ ; 4. 13. 1. longer lived than  $\acute{\alpha}\pi\iota\omicron\varsigma$ ; 5. 5. 1. cobblers' strops made of the wood.
- $\alpha\phi\acute{\iota}\sigma\iota\theta\iota\omicron\nu$ , wormwood, *Artemisia Absinthium*
1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 4. 5. 1. seeks cold regions; 7. 9. 5. leaves and stem bitter, yet wholesome; 9. 17. 4. said to become by use non-poisonous to sheep.
- $\beta\acute{\alpha}\lambda\alpha\nu\omicron\varsigma$ , *Balanites aegyptiaca*
4. 2. 1. peculiar to Egypt; 4. 2. 6. described.
- $\beta\acute{\alpha}\lambda\sigma\alpha\mu\omicron\nu$  (gum  $\delta\iota\pi\omicron\beta\acute{\alpha}\lambda\sigma\alpha\mu\omicron\nu$ ), balsam of Mecca, *Balsamodendron Orobalsamum*
9. 1. 2. sap gummy; 9. 1. 7. time of tapping; 9. 4. 1. collection of gum; 9. 6. 1-4. described; habitat; method of collection; nowhere found wild; 9. 7. 3. in list of  $\alpha\rho\omega\mu\alpha\tau\alpha$ .
- $\beta\acute{\alpha}\tau\omicron\varsigma$ , bramble, *Rubus ulmifolius*
1. 3. 1. a typical 'shrub'; 1. 5. 3. thorns on wood; 1. 9. 4. evergreen; 1. 10. 6. leaf with spinous projections; 1. 10. 7. stem presently spinous; 3. 18. 3. grows in wet and dry places alike; 3. 18. 4. kinds distinguished; 3. 18. 12. cluster of berries of  $\sigma\mu\acute{\iota}\lambda\alpha\zeta$  (2) comp; 4. 8. 1. to some extent grows in marshes; 4. 12. 4. to some extent aquatic; 6. 1. 3. has spines on the shoots.
- $\beta\lambda\eta\chi\acute{\omega}$ , pennyroyal, *Mentha Pulegium*
9. 16. 1. leaf etc. of  $\delta\acute{\iota}\kappa\tau\alpha\mu\omicron\nu$  comp.
- $\beta\lambda\acute{\iota}\tau\omicron\nu$ , blite, *Amaranthus Blitum*
1. 14. 2. bears fruit both on top and at sides; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 2. 7-8. root described; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 7. 3. 4. seed borne both on top and at side; 7. 4. 1. only one kind.
- $\beta\omicron\lambda\beta\acute{\iota}\eta$ , star-flower, *Ornithogalum umbellatum*
7. 13. 9. belongs to  $\tau\alpha$   $\beta\omicron\lambda\beta\acute{\omega}\delta\eta$ .
- $\beta\omicron\lambda\beta\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ , purse-tassels, *Muscari comosum* etc. (see below).
1. 6. 7. root in scales; 1. 6. 8. root not tapering; 1. 6. 9. no side roots: (part of) stem underground; 1. 10. 7. no leaf-stalk: attachment of leaves; 6. 8. 1. flowering time: used as a coronary plant; 7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 2. 2. root makes offsets; 7. 2. 3. offsets specially numerous; 7. 4. 12. formation of roots of  $\kappa\rho\acute{\omicron}\mu\omicron\nu$  comp.; 7. 9. 4., cf. 1. 6. 7.; 7. 12. 1. example of an edible root; 7. 12. 2. special treatment to promote growth of root; 7. 13. 1. leaves described; 7. 13. 2. flower-stem not the only stem; 7. 13. 4-5. grown from seed: seed sometimes takes two years to germinate; 7. 13. 7. root of  $\nu\acute{\alpha}\rho\kappa\iota\sigma\omicron\varsigma$  (1) comp.; 7. 13. 8.

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- several kinds; 7. 13. 9. roots of various plants comp.; 8. 8. 3. grows specially among πυρός.
- βολβός ὁ ἐριόφορος, *Pancratium maritimum*
7. 13. 8. grows on beach: described: uses for food and clothing.
- βουκέρας, (= τῆλιν), fenugreek. *Trigonella Foeniculum*
4. 4. 10. an Indian plant (see App. (8)), comp. 8. 8. 5. αἰμόδωρον parasitic on β.
- βουμέλιος, ash, *Fraxinus excelsior*
3. 11. 4-5. described; 4. 8. 2. common in Egypt.
- βουπρηστis, ?
7. 7. 3. season of growing.
- βούτομος, sedge, *Carex riparia*
1. 5. 3. stem very smooth; 1. 10. 5. leaves end in a point: further described; 4. 8. 1. in list of τὰ λοχωῶδη; 4. 10. 4. described; 4. 10. 6. grows both on land and in water: grows on the floating islands of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 7. part used for food; 4. 11. 12. foliage of some κάλαμοι comp.
- βρόμος, oats, *Avena sativa*
8. 4. 1. seed has more coats than other cereals; 8. 9. 2. exhausts the soil: reason: like a wild plant.
- βρόνον, oyster-green, *Ulva Lactuca*
4. 6. 2. occurs generally in Greek waters; 4. 6. 6. described.
- γῆθρον, long onion, *Allium Cepa* var.
1. 6. 9. part of stem underground; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 1. 6. germination; 7. 1. 7. bears fruit in second year: has single stem; 7. 2. 2-3. root makes offsets; 7. 5. 1. likes water; 7. 5. 3. bears transplanting; 7. 5. 5. seed does not keep well; 7. 9. 4. root in scales; 7. 12. 3. root of φάσγανον comp.; 9. 11. 6. 'head' of στρύχνος ὁ μονικός comp.
- γῆταιον (Attic for γῆθρον), horn-onion, *Allium Cepa* var.
1. 10. 8. leaves hollow; 7. 4. 10. described: cultivation (classed as a form of κρόμμον).
- γλείνος, *Acer creticum*
3. 3. 1. name for lowland form of σφένδαμος; 3. 11. 2. timber
- γλυκεία (sc. ῥίζα) (= ῥίζα Σκυθική q.v.), 9. 13. 2., liquorice, *Glycyrrhiza glabra*.
- γλυκυσίδη (= παιωνία q.v.), 9. 8. 6., peony, *Paeonia officinalis*.
- γογγυλís, turnip, *Brassica Rapa*
1. 6. 6. root fleshy; 1. 6. 7. root of bark and flesh; 7. 1. 2. time of sowing; 7. 1. 7. germination; 7. 2. 5. survives and increases in size under a heap of soil: root described; 7. 2. 8. do; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 7. 3. 4. seed borne at side; 7. 4. 3. doubtful if more than one kind: seed, method of sowing, effect of weather; 7. 5. 3. bears transplanting; 7. 6. 2. wild form distinguished; 7. 9. 4. root has 'bark.'
- δαῦκον (1), carrot, *Daucus Carota*
9. 15. 5. Arcadian drug: described (see note).
- δαῦκον (2), *Malabaila aurea*
9. 15. 8. grows about Patral: properties: root black; 9. 20. 2. cf. 9. 15. 8.
- δάφνη (1) (ἡ ἡμερος), (berry δαφνís, 1. 11. 3.), sweet bay, *Laurus nobilis*
1. 5. 2. bark thin; 1. 6. 2. roots both stout and fine; 1. 6. 4. roots crooked; etc.; 1. 8. 1. few knots; 1. 9. 3. evergreen (cultivated and wild forms, see below); 1. 11. 3. fleshy seed in a shell (δαφνís); 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 14. 4. many cultivated forms; 2. 1. 3. propagation; 2. 2. 6. sometimes improves from seed; 2. 5. 6. trees should be planted close together; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 7. 3. (one kind) produces a cluster; 3. 11. 3. leaves of μελία comp.; 3. 11. 4. winter-buds of μελία comp.; 3. 12. 7. leaf of ὅη comp. to that of δ. ἡ λεπτόφυλλος; 3. 13. 5. leaflet of ἀκτῆ comp. to

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- leaf of δ. ἡ πλατύφυλλος; 3.14.3. flower (?) of κλήθρα comp.; 3.15.4. leaf of τερμινθος comp.; 3.16.4. leaf of κομαρος comp.; 3.17.3. leaf of κ. λείτεια (2) comp. to δ. ἡ πλατύφυλλος; 4.4.12 leaf of an unnamed Arian shrub comp. (see App. (10)); 4.4.13. leaf of an unnamed Gedrosian tree comp. (see App. (11)); 4.5.3. does not thrive in cold regions; 4.5.4. grows in Propontis; 4.7.1. a class of marine Atlantic plants comp.; 4.7.4. leaf of an unnamed Arabian tree (see App. (12b)) comp.; 4.13.3. after decaying shoots again from same stock; 4.16.6. spoils flavour of grape; 5.3.3-4. character of wood; 5.7.7. wood used for walking-sticks; 5.8.3. grows in lowland parts of Latium: abundant on Circelan promontory; 5.9.7. fire-drills made of the wood, because it does not wear away; 9.4.2. bark of λιβανωτός comp.; 9.4.3. leaf of λιβανωτός comp. (by some); 9.4.9. do.; 9.10.1. leaf of ἐλλέβορος ὁ μέλας comp. (by some); 9.15.5. δαύκον (1) comp.; 9.20.1. one kind of πέπερι (fruit comp.).
- δάφνη (2) ἡ ἀγρία (= ὀνοθήρας), oleander, *Nerium Oleander*
- 1.9.3. distinguished from δ. ἡ ἡμερος.
- δάφνη (3) ἡ Ἀλεξανδρεία, Alexandrian laurel, *Ruscus Hypophyllum*
- 1.10.8. bears fruit on leaves; 3.17.4. do.
- δάφνη (4) ἡ λεπτόφυλλος, sweet bay, *Laurus nobilis*
- 3.12.7. (see under δάφνη).
- δάφνη (5) ἡ πλατύφυλλος, sweet bay, *Laurus nobilis*
- 3.11.3., 3.13.5., 3.17.3. (see under δάφνη).
- δάφνη (6) (= ἐλάα (3) = App. (14)), white mangrove, *Avicennia officinalis*
- 4.7.1. grows in 'Red Sea'; 4.7.2. described: produces a drug for stanching blood.
- δίκταμον, dittany, *Origanum Dictamnus*
- 9.10.1-2. described: medicinal use; popular belief about its use to goats: comp. with ψευδο-δίκταμον; 9.16.3. habitat.
- δίκταμον (ἑτερον), *Ballota Pseudodictamnus*
- 9.16.3. Cretan: has nothing in common with true δ. except the name: described: properties different.
- διόσανθος, carnation, *Dianthus odoratus*
- 6.1.1. in list of under-shrubs; 6.6.2. a cultivated under-shrub: a coronary plant: scentless; 6.6.11. grown from seed: woody; 6.8.3. flowering time.
- διοσβάλανος (fruit κάρνον κασταναικόν), 4.8.11., chestnut, *Castanea vesca*
- 1.12.1. taste of fruit; 3.2.3. evidence that it is really wild; 3.3.1. a mountain tree; 3.3.8. doubt whether it has a flower; 3.4.2. time of budding; 3.4.4. time of fruiting; 3.5.5. winter-buds; 4.5.1. in list of northern trees; 4.5.4. abundant on Mount Tmolus and Mysian Olympus; 4.8.11. bark of root of λωτός (2) comp. to shell of chestnut.
- διόσπυρος, *Diospyros Lotus*
- 3.13.3. fruit of κέρασος comp.
- δόλιχος, calavance, *Vigna sinensis*
- 8.3.2. stem; 8.11.1. seed does not keep.
- δόναξ (= κάλαμος ὁ λακωνικός = κ. ὁ αὐλητικός = κ. ὁ συριγγιάς = κ. ὁ τοξικός), pole-reed, *Arundo Donax*
- 4.11.11. a kind of κάλαμος: habit and habitat.
- δρακόντιον, edderwort, *Dracunculus vulgaris*
- 7.12.2. an inedible and poisonous kind of ἄρον; 9.20.3. medicinal use: described.
- δρυπίς, *Drypis spinosa*
- 1.10.6. spinous-leaved.
- δρῦς (1), oak, *Quercus Robur*
- 1.2.1. has galls (κηκίς); 1.2.7. bark; 1.5.2. bark thick: bark fleshy; 1.5.3. wood fleshy; 1.5.5.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

wood heavy because it contains mineral matter; 1.6.1. core hard and close; 1.6.2. core called 'oak-black': core large and conspicuous; 1.6.3. roots many and long; 1.6.4. roots fleshy: deep-rooting; 1.8.5. diseased formation (κραδή); 1.9.5. an evergreen specimen; 1.10.6. leaves notched: leaves with spinous projections; 1.10.7. attachment of leaves; 1.11.3. seed in a leathery shell; 2.2.3. propagation; 2.2.6. deteriorates from seed; 3.3.1. tree of mountain and plain; 3.3.3. evergreen in some places; 3.3.8. doubt whether it has a flower (βρύον); 3.4.2. time of budding; 3.4.4. time of fruiting; 3.5.1. periods of budding; etc.; 3.5.2. galls; 3.5.5. winter-buds; 3.6.1. quick growing; 3.6.5. instance of a deep-rooting tree; 3.7.4-6. various galls; etc.; 3.8.2. four or five kinds, viz. *ήμερίς* or *ετυμόδρυν*, *αιγίλων*, *πλατύφυλλος*, *φηγός*, *άλιφλοιός* or *εὐθύφλοιός* (five recognised by inhabitants of Mt. Ida); 3.16.1. leaf growth and bark of *πρίνος* comp.; 3.16.3. *φελλόδρυν* *δρῦς* and *πρίνος* comp.; 4.2.8. common in Thebaid; 4.5.1. in list of northern trees; 4.5.3. grows in Pontus; 4.14.10. infested by *knips*; 4.15.2. survives stripping of bark for some time; 4.15.3. effect of stripping bark in winter; 5.1.2. time of cutting timber: reasons; 5.1.4. do.; 5.3.1. core very close and heavy; 5.3.3. character of wood; 5.4.1. wood hard and heavy; 5.4.2. wood proof against decay; 5.4.3. wood does not decay if buried or soaked in water: rots in sea-water; 5.4.8. effect of salt water on different parts; 5.5.1. wood hard to work; 5.6.1. wood contains mineral matter and so gives under weight: apt to split; 5.7.2. used for keel of triremes and for merchantmen to make

extra keel for hauling: does not glue well on to *ἐλάτη* or *πεύκη*; 5.7.4. use of wood in house-building; 5.8.3. grows in Latium on Circean promontory; 5.9.1. wood makes good charcoal, but inferior to *ἀρία* and *κόμαρος*; 5.9.2. charcoal of this wood less esteemed by smiths than that of *πεύκη*; 8.2.2. germination from acorn described; 9.9.5. leaf of *χαμαίδρυν* comp.

*δρῦς* (2) ἡ *ἀγρία* (= *φηγός* 3.8.2.), *Valonia oak*, *Quercus Aegilops* 1.5.2. rough bark; 3.8.2. see under *δρῦς*.

*δρῦς* (3) ἡ *άλιφλοιός* (= *δ.* ἡ *εὐθύφλοιός* 3.8.2.), sea-bark oak, *Quercus Pseudo-Robur* 3.8.2. one of the five kinds of oak (Mt. Ida): = *δ.* ἡ *εὐθύφλοιός*; 3.8.3-4. acorns; 3.8.5. habit and timber; 3.8.6. *φάσκος* (*q.v.*) grows on it; 3.8.7. timber; 5.1.2. time of cutting timber.

*δρῦς* (4) ἡ *εὐθύφλοιός* (= *δ.* ἡ *άλιφλοιός* 3.8.2.), sea-bark oak, *Quercus Pseudo-Robur* 3.8.2. one of the five kinds of oak (Mt. Ida).

*δρῦς* (5) ἡ *ήμερός* (= *ετυμόδρυν q.v.* = *ήμερίς* (2)), true oak, *Quercus Robur* 3.8.2. one of the five kinds of oak (Mt. Ida).

*δρῦς* (6) ἡ *πλατύφυλλος*, broad-leaved oak (scrub oak), *Quercus lanuginosa*

3.8.2. one of the five kinds of oak (Mt. Ida): fruit; 3.8.5. habit and timber; 3.8.6. galls: one of the four Macedonian oaks: has bitter acorns.

*δρῦς* (7) (*φύκος*), *Cystoseira ericoides* 4.6.2. peculiar to certain waters; 4.6.7-8. described.

*δρῦς* (8) (*ποθρία*), *Sargassum vulgare* 4.6.9. distinguished from *δρῦς* (7); has a useful *βάλανος*.

*ἔβην* (*ἔβερος*) (1), ebony, *Diospyros Ebenum*

1.5.4. wood heavy; 1.5.5. do. because of close grain; 1.6.1.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

core hard and close; 4. 4. 6. described: two kinds distinguished (see below); 5. 3. 1. wood very close and heavy, especially the core; 5. 3. 2. colour of wood of *τέρμινθος* comp.; wood of an unnamed tree (see App. (20)) comp. to a variegated i.; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay; 9. 20. 4. colour and medicinal use of wood.

ἑβὲν (2), *Diospyros melanoxydon*

4. 4. 6. a kind with inferior wood.

εἰλετία, see κάλαμος ὁ εἰλετίας

ἐκτομον τὸ μελαμπόδιον see ἑλλέβορος ὁ μέλας

ἐλάα, olive, *Olea Europea*

1. 3. 1. a typical 'tree'; 1. 5. 4. wood easily broken, not split; wood has many knots; 1. 5. 5. wood easily broken, because tough and not of straight grain; 1. 6. 2. core not conspicuous; 1. 6. 3. roots both stout and thin; 1. 6. 4. roots branching; etc.: shallow rooting; roots crooked; etc.; 1. 8. 2. has less knots than *κότινος*; 1. 8. 6. liable to excrescences; etc.; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 1. leaves inverted in summer; 1. 10. 2. colour of leaves; 1. 10. 4. leaves narrow; 1. 10. 7. leaf-stalk short; etc.; 1. 11. 1. seed enveloped in flesh and stone; 1. 11. 3. fleshy seed in a stone; 1. 11. 4. effect on fruit of rich feeding; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 13. 2. flower consists of one 'leaf' only partly divided; 1. 13. 3. flower surrounds fruit; etc.; 1. 14. 1. bears on last year's wood; 1. 14. 2. bears fruit both on top and at side; 1. 14. 4. a cultivated form of *κότινος*; 2. 1. 2. propagation; 2. 1. 4. do.; 2. 2. 5. seed produces wild form; 2. 2. 12. cannot be made out of *κότινος* by cultivation; 2. 3. 1. sometimes changes to *κότινος* spontaneously; etc.; 2. 5. 3. grafting; 2. 5. 4. propagation; 2. 5. 6. do.: trees should be planted far apart; 2. 5. 7. low ground suitable; 2. 7. 2. needs much pruning; 2. 7. 3.

requires pungent manure and much water; 3. 2. 1. produces less fruit than *κότινος* but ripens more; 3. 12. 2. flower and fruit of *θηλυκράνεια* comp.; 3. 17. 5. size of fruit of *σική* ἢ *Ἰδαία* comp.; 4. 2. 8. common in Thebaid; 4. 2. 9. character in Thebaid; 4. 3. 1. grows and bears well in Cyrenaica; 4. 4. 1. (?) distribution in Asia; 4. 7. 2. leaf and fruit of ἐλάα (3) comp.; 4. 7. 4. size of fruit of unnamed Arabian tree comp. (see App. (12b)); 4. 13. 1. shorter-lived than *κότινος*; 4. 13. 2. story of a very old tree at Athens; 4. 13. 5. explanation of longevity; 4. 14. 2. diseases; 4. 14. 8. effect of rain on fruiting; 4. 14. 9. specially apt to shed fruit at Taras; 4. 14. 10. other diseases; effect of hot winds; 4. 4. 11. suffers much from special winds; 4. 16. 1. improved by lopping branches; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5. 3. 7. images made from the root; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay; 5. 4. 4. wood not eaten by *teredon*; 5. 5. 2. core not obvious; wherefore wood not apt to 'draw'; 5. 5. 3. core not obvious but exists; 5. 6. 1. wood apt to split under pressure; 5. 9. 6. wood good for kindling furnaces; 5. 9. 7. wood not suitable for fire-sticks; reason; 5. 9. 8. articles made of the wood have been known to produce shoots; instances; 6. 2. 1. leaf of *κνέωρος* ὁ *λευκός* comp.; 6. 2. 4. will not grow more than a short distance from the sea; 8. 2. 8. abundant in Melos; 9. 18. 5. fruit of *θηλυκράνεια* comp. to *βρύνον* of i.; fruit of *ἀρπενόγονον* comp. to undeveloped olive.

ἐλάα (2), *Olea cuspidata*

4. 4. 11. Indian (in hill-country only).

'ἐλάα' (3) (= *δάφνη* (6) = App. (14)), white mangrove, *Avicennia officinalis*

4. 7. 1. grows in 'Red Sea'; 4. 7. 2. described.



## INDEX OF PLANTS

ἐλαίαιρος (properly ἐλέανρος), goat willow, *Salix Caprea*

4. 10. 1-2. in list of plants of L. Copais: described.

ἐλάτη (1), silver-fir, *Abies cephalonica*

1. 1. 8. branches opposite; 1. 3. 6. refuses cultivation; 1. 5. 1. erect and tall; 1. 5. 2. bark in layers; 1. 5. 3. wood fibrous; 1. 5. 4. wood easily split; 1. 5. 5. do. because of straight grain; 1. 6. 3. root single; 1. 6. 4. roots fibrous; 1. 6. 5. roots not branching; 1. 8. 1. many knots; 1. 8. 2. 'male' has more knots than 'female'; 1. 8. 3. branches at right angles; 1. 9. 1. growth chiefly upwards; 1. 9. 2. growth affected by position; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 5. leaves described; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 1. 13. 1. flower yellow; 2. 2. 2. propagated only by seed; 2. 7. 3. requires pungent manure; 3. 1. 2. grows only from seed; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 5. time of flowering and fruiting; 3. 5. 1. period of budding; 3. 5. 3. do.; 3. 5. 5. winter-buds; 3. 6. 1. quick growing: even young tree fruits; 3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 6. 4. not deep-rooting; 3. 6. 5. deep-rooting according to Arcadians; etc.; 3. 7. 1-2. dies if topped: formation of *callus*; 3. 9. 5. timber compared with *πεύκη*; etc.; 3. 9. 6. differences between 'male' and 'female': described; 3. 9. 7. further comparison with *πεύκη*: produces *λούσσαν*; 3. 9. 8. do.: core and *callus*; 4. 1. 1. likes shade; 4. 1. 2. grows tall in shade but has inferior timber; 4. 1. 3. grows high on mountains, but not tall; 4. 4. 1. (?) distribution in Asia; 4. 5. 1. in list of Northern trees; 4. 5. 3. does not grow in Pontus; 4. 15. 3. effects of stripping bark at various seasons; 4. 16. 1. topping fatal; 4. 16. 1-2. not injured by cut-

ting for resin; 4. 16. 4. said to perish if entirely deprived of its heart-wood; 5. 1. 1. time when timber is of best colour; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 1. 4. do.; 5. 1. 5-6. timber comp. with *πίτυς*; 5. 1. 7. uses of timber; 5. 1. 8. growth and character; 5. 1. 9-10. methods of cleaving; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5. 3. 5. used for doors; 5. 4. 4. less eaten by *teredon* than *πεύκη*; 5. 4. 6. wood, if barked just before time of budding, does not decay in water: story in proof of this; 5. 5. 1. knotty parts of wood hard to work; 5. 5. 2. core most obvious in *ε*; 5. 6. 1. wood good for struts: behaviour under pressure; 5. 6. 2. strongest of all woods; 5. 7. 1-2. use of wood in ship-building; 5. 7. 4-5. uses of wood in house-building and crafts: the most generally useful of woods: more so than *πεύκη*; 5. 9. 8. wood has a peculiar exudation; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy; 9. 2. 1. production of resin (*ρητίνη*); 9. 2. 2. quality of resin.

ἐλάτη (2), silver-fir, *Abies pectinata*

5. 8. 1. grows to great size in Latium, but finer still in Corsica; 5. 8. 3. grows in hill-country of Latium.

\* ἐλάτη (3), 'sea-fir', *Cystoseira Abies-marina*

4. 6. 2. peculiar to certain waters; 4. 6. 7-8. described.

ἐλατήριον, see σίκκος ὁ ἄγριος

4. 5. 1. in list of northern plants.

ἐλειοσέλινον (= σέλινον τὸ ἐλειον), marsh celery, *Apium graveolens*

7. 6. 3. comp. with σέλινον: medicinal use.

ἐλεώχρυσος, gold-flower, *Helichrysum siculum*

6. 8. 1. flowering time; 9. 19. 3.

alleged magic properties: described; medicinal use.

ἐλελίσφακος, salvia, *Salvia triloba*

6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6. 2. 5. like wild σφακος: leaf described.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

ἐλένιον, calamint, *Calamintha incana*

2. 1. 3. propagation; 6. 1. 1. in list of under-shrubs; 6. 6. 2. a cultivated under-shrub: a coronary plant: the whole plant scented; 6. 6. 3. woody: only one form; 6. 7. 2. said by some to have no fruit; 6. 7. 4. roots described.

ἐλικη, crack willow, *Salix fragilis*

- 3.13.7. Arcadian name for willow.

ἐλιξ, ivy, *Hedera Helix*

3. 18. 7-8. described: does not develop into κίττος; 3. 18. 8. kinds; 7. 8. 1. stem 'clasping.'

ἐλιξ ἡ λευκή, white-berried ivy, *Hedera Helix*

3. 18. 8. several kinds.

ἐλιξ ἡ ποικίλη (= ἐ. ἡ θρακία, 3.18.8.), ivy, *Hedera Helix*

3. 18. 8. several kinds.

ἐλιξ ἡ χλοερά, ivy, *Hedera Helix*

3. 18. 8. described.

ἐλλεβορίνη, rupture-wort, *Herniaria glabra*

- 9.10 2. seed mixed with ἐλλέβορος ὁ λευκός to make an emetic.

ἐλλέβορος, hellebore, *Helleborus cyclophyllus* and *Veratrum album*

4. 5. 1. seeks cold regions; 6. 2. 9. belongs to 'ferula-like' plants: has a hollow stem; 9. 8. 4. what part of root cut for medicinal use: 'bulbous' part a purge for dogs; 9. 8. 6. poisonous effect on those who dig it; precautions; 9. 9. 2. medicinal use; 9. 10. 1-4. kinds distinguished (see below); 9. 14. 1. how long drug will keep; 9. 17. 1-3. the drug can be made ineffectual by use: instances.

ἐλλέβορος ὁ λευκός, white hellebore, *Veratrum album*

9. 10. 1. has nothing in common with ἐ. ὁ μέλας except the name: divergent accounts given of the resemblances between the two plants: described; 9. 10. 2. not poisonous to sheep; when in season: distribution; 9. 10. 3-4. very local: local varieties, Οἰταῖος, Ποντικός, Ἐλεάτης, Μαλιώτης, Παρνάσιος, Αἰτωλικός;

Οἰταῖος the best: properties of Ἐλεάτης; 9. 15. 5. grows in Arcadia; 9. 18. 2. restores scorpion to life when it has been killed with σκορπίος (3).

ἐλλέβορος ὁ μέλας (drug σήσαμοειδές 9. 14. 4.), hellebore, *Helleborus cyclophyllus*

9. 8. 8. superstition as to gathering; 9. 10. 1. (see under ἐ. ὁ λευκός); described; 9. 10. 2. poisonous to animals; 9. 10. 3. grows everywhere: some localities specified; 9. 10. 4. called by some ἔκτομον τὸ μελαμπόδιον: uses for purification and as charm; 9. 14. 4. use of fruit in medicine; 9. 15. 5. grows in Arcadia; 9.16.6. leaf of ἐφήμερον comp.

ἐλυμος, Italian millet, *Setaria italica*

4. 4. 10. inflorescence of ὄρνυον comp.; 8. 1. 1. in list of 'summer crops' distinct from cereals and pulses; 8. 11. 1. seed keeps well.

ἐνθρυσκον, chervil, *Scandix australis*

7. 7. 1. a λάχανον.

ἐπετίνη (?) (?) πιτυίνη, *Ajuga reptans*

7. 8. 1. stem 'clasping,' but, for want of support, 'on the ground.'

Ἐπιμενίδειος, see σκίλλα ἡ 'Ε.

ἐπίπετρον, stone-crop, *Sedum anopetalum*

7. 7. 4. flowerless.

ἐρέβυνθος, chick-pea, *Cicer arietinum*

2. 4. 2. seed soaked before sowing; 2. 6. 6. size of some dates comp.; 4. 4. 4. size of fruit of σικκή ἡ Ἰνδική comp.; 4. 4. 9. not found in India; 6. 5. 3. leaf of a kind of τρίβολος comp.; 8. 1. 1. in list of pulses; 8. 1. 4. sown both early and late; 8. 2. 1. germination described; 8. 2. 3. comes up with several leaves: deep-rooting; 8. 2. 5. flowering time; 8. 2. 6. time of maturing seed; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 5. 1. several kinds: three mentioned, κριοί, ὑροβιαῖοι, οἱ ἀνὰ μέσον: white forms sweetest; 8. 5. 2. pod round: seeds comparatively few; 8.5.4. attachment of seed;

# INDEX OF PLANTS

8. 6. 5. rain hurtful when  $\delta$ . is in flower: three kinds mentioned, *μύλας*, *πυρρός*, *λευκός*; 8. 7. 2. comp. with other pulses: destroys weeds: suitable soil: grows well after *κύαμος*; 8. 9. 1. exhausts the soil most of pulses; 8. 10. 1. diseases and pests; 8. 10. 5. infested by caterpillars; 8. 11. 2. only seed which does not engender 'worms' etc.: seed keeps well; 8. 11. 6. do. especially in hill country.
- ἐρείκη*, heath, *Erica arborea*  
1. 14. 2. bears fruit on the top; 9. 11. 11. *λίβανος* ή *άκαρπος* grows where  $\delta$ . is abundant.
- ἐρενθεδανόν*, madder, *Rubia tinctorum*  
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 7.9.3. roots red; 9.13.4. do.; 9. 13. 6. described: habit: habitat: medicinal use.
- ἐρινός*, wild fig, *Ficus Carica*  
1. 8. 2. has more knots than *συκή*; 1. 14. 4. wild form of *συκή*; 2. 2. 12. cannot be made into *συκή* by cultivation; 2. 3. 1. sometimes changes to *συκή* spontaneously; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 4. 2. 3. fruit of *συκή* ή *Κυπρία* comp.; 4. 13. 1. longer-lived than *συκή*; 4. 14. 4. not liable to diseases of *συκή*; 5. 6. 2. wood tough and easy to bend: uses; 5. 9. 5. wood makes pungent smoke.
- (*δένδρον τὸ ἐριόφορον*, cotton-plant, *Gossypium arboreum*  
4. 4. 8. (not named) clothes made from it; 4. 7. 7-8. described.
- ἐρπυλλος* (1) ( $\delta$ .  $\delta$  *ἡμερος*), tufted thyme, *Thymus Sibthorpii*  
1. 9. 4. evergreen; 2. 1. 3. propagation; 6. 1. 1. in list of under-shrubs; 6. 6. 2. a cultivated under-shrub: a coronary plant: the whole plant scented; 6. 6. 3. woody: only one form; 6. 7. 2. said by some to have no fruit; 6. 7. 4. roots described; 6. 7. 5. growth peculiar: wild forms (see *ἐρπυλλος* (2)); 6. 7. 6. cultivation.
- ἐρπυλλος* (2)  $\delta$  *ἄγριος*, Attic thyme, *Thymus atticus*  
6. 7. 2. produces seeds, unlike  $\delta$ . (1); brought from Hymettus; sometimes quite like *θύμος*; 6. 7. 5. has various forms.
- ἐρύσιμον*, *Sisymbrium polyceratum*  
8. 1. 4. sown later than cereals and pulses, a 'summer crop'; 8. 3. 1. leaf; 8. 3. 3. flower; 8. 6. 1. rain not beneficial after sowing; 8. 7. 3. doubtful if eaten green by animals: described.
- ἐρυσίβη* (cf. *ἐρυσιβᾶν*, *ἐρυσιβώδης* 8. 3. 2.), wheat-rust, *Puccinia graminis*  
8. 10. 1. a pest common to all crops (cereals, pulses etc.).
- ἐτυμόδρυς* (= *ἡμερίς* (2) 3. 8. 2. = *δρῦς* ή *ἡμερος*), true oak, *Quercus Robur*  
3. 8. 2. one of the five kinds of oak (Mt. Ida) = *ἡμερίς*: fruit; 3. 8. 7. one of the four Macedonian kinds: has sweet acorns.
- Εὐβοϊκόν*, see *καρπία* ή *Εὐβοϊκή*.
- εὐζωμον*, rocket, *Bruca sativa*  
1. 6. 6. root woody; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7. 2. 8. root described; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 4. 2. leaf of a kind of *ραφανίς* comp.; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well; 9. 11. 6. leaf of *στρυχνός*  $\delta$  *μανικός* comp.
- εὐθύφλοιος* (*δρῦς*), see *δρῦς* (4).
- εὐώνυμος*, spindle-tree, *Euonymus europaeus*  
[3. 18. 18. described].
- ἐφήμερον* (= *σπάλας* (?)), meadow saffron, *Colchicum parnassicum*  
9. 16. 6. a poison which has an antidote: described: effects.
- ζαΐά*, rice-wheat, *Triticum dicoccum*  
2. 4. 1. seed, unless bruised, produces *πυρός*; 4. 4. 10. *δρυζον* comp.; 8. 1. 1. in list of cereals; 8. 1. 2. sown early; 8. 8. 3.  $\zeta$ . and *τίφη* only plants which can change into something quite different (cf. 2. 4. 1.); 8. 9. 2. exhausts the soil: reason: likes rich soil:  $\zeta$ . and *τίφη* the cereals most like *πυρός*.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

ζυγία, maple, *Acer campestre*

3. 3. 1. a mountain tree: name for mountain form of σφένδαμνος; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?); 3. 11. 1-2. described; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 1. 4. do.; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5. 7. 6. uses of wood.  
ζωστήρ, see φύκος (1) τὸ πλατύφυλλον.

ἡδύσμον, (= μίνθη), green mint, *Mentha viridis*

7. 7. 1. a λάχανον.  
ἡλιοτρόπιον, *Heliotropium villosum*  
7. 3. 1. length of flowering season of ὤκιμον comp.; 7. 8. 1. stem 'on the ground'; 7. 9. 2. long in flower; 7. 10. 5. evergreen; 7. 15. 1. flowering depends on the heavenly bodies.

ἡμέρις (1), gall-oak, *Quercus infectoria*

3. 8. 2. one of the five 'Idaeon' kinds of oak: fruit; 3. 8. 4. habit and timber; 3. 8. 6. galls.  
ἡμέρις (2), (so-called by some) (= δρῦς ἡ ἡμέρος = ἐτυμόδρυσ 3.8.2.), true oak, *Quercus Robur*

3. 8. 2. bears sweet fruit.  
ἡμεροκαλλές, Martagon lily, *Lilium Martagon*

6. 1. 1. in list of under-shrubs (see note); 6. 6. 11. grown from seed: a coronary plant.

ἡμιόνιον, milt-waste, *Asplenium Ceterach*

9. 18. 7. properties of leaf: described: habitat: mules fond of it.

ἡρακλεία (= μήκων ἡ 'Ηρακλεία), *Silene venosa*

9. 15. 5. an Arcadian drug.  
ἡρακλεωτική (καρύα), see καρύα ἡ 'Ηρακλεωτική.

ἡριγέρων, groundsel, *Senecio vulgaris*

7. 7. 1. a λάχανον, classed as 'chicory-like' from its leaves: 7. 7. 4. prolonged flowering-time; 7. 10. 2. flowers in winter.

ἡρύγγιον, eryngo, *Eryngium campestre*

6. 1. 3. has spines on the leaves: a wild under-shrub.

θαλία, *Thapsia garganica*

9. 8. 3. most powerful juice from root; 9. 8. 5. superstition as to method of cutting; 9. 9. 1. root and juice used; 9. 9. 5. medicinal use; 9. 9. 6. described; 9. 11. 2. leaf of πάνακες το 'Ασκληπίειον comp.; 9. 20. 3. medicinal use: grows specially in Attica: properties; effect on foreign and native cattle.

θέρμος, lupin, *Lupinus alba*

1. 3. 6. refuses cultivation; 1.7.3. seed roots through undergrowth; 3. 2. 1. fruits better in wild state; 4. 7. 5. fruit of an unnamed Arabian tree (see App. (13)) comp.; 4. 7. 6. fruit of an unnamed Persian tree (see App. (13)) comp.; 4. 7. 7. fruit of a tree of the island of Tylos (see App. (13)) comp.; 8. 1. 3. sown early; 8. 2. 1. germination described; 8. 5. 2. seeds in compartments; 8. 5. 4. attachment of seed; 8. 7. 3. not eaten green by any animal; 8. 11. 2. seed keeps well: like a wild plant; 8. 11. 6. seed keeps specially well in hill country; 8. 11. 8. peculiarities about sowing seed.

θηλύγονον (= ἀρρενόγονον), dog-mercury, *Mercurialis perennis*

9. 18. 5. properties: described.

θηλυκράνεια, cornel, *Cornus sanguinea*

1. 8. 2. has less knots than κράνεια; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 3. time of fruiting; 3. 4. 6. fruit inedible; 3. 12. 1-2. described; 5. 4. 1. less fruitful than κράνεια.

θηλύπερις, bracken, *Pteris aquilina*

9. 18. 8. properties: distinguished from περίς.

θηλύφονον (= ἀκόνιτον = μυόφονον = σκορπίος (3) 9. 18. 2.), wolf's bane, *Aconitum Anthora*

9. 18. 2. properties: habit: fatal to the scorpion.

θήσαιον *Corydalis densiflora*

7. 12. 3. root bitter: medicinal use.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

θραύπαλος, joint-fr, *Ephedra campylo-poda*

3. 6. 4. very shallow-rooting: many roots; 4.1.3. likes shade

θριδακίνη (properly, but not always, distinguished from θριδαξ), wild lettuce, *Lactuca scariola*

1. 10. 7. time of leaf-growth: stem presently spinous; 1.12.2. taste of sap; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 3. 2. seeds; 7. 4. 1. several kinds; 7. 4. 5. do. viz. λευκή, πλατύκανλος, στρογγυλόκανλος, Δακωνική; differences; 7. 5. 4. pests; 7. 6. 2. wild form distinguished: medicinal use; 9. 8. 2. juice of stalk collected, with a piece of wool; 9. 11. 10. leaf of λιβανωτίς ή άκαρπος comp. to θ. ή πικρά.

θριδαξ, lettuce, *Lactuca sativa*

7. 2. 4. grows again when stem is cut: effect on flavour; 7. 2. 9. root described; 7. 5. 3. bears transplanting.

θρυαλλίς, *Plantago crassifolia*

7. 11. 12. flowers more or less in a 'spike.'

θρύον, (a grass), *Imperata arundinacea*

4. 11. 12. foliage of some κάλαμοι comp.

θρύορον (?) (= στρυχνός ό μανικός 9. 11. 6.), thorn-apple, *Datura Stramonium*.

θρία (θύεα), odorous cedar, *Juniperus foetidissima*

1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 6. time of fruiting; 4. 1. 3. grows on hill-tops.

(θύμα, ? a madrepora

4. 7. 1. grows in Atlantic: turns to stone).

θύμβρα (θύμβρον), savory, *Satureia Thymbra*

1. 3. 1. (?) a typical under-shrub; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6. 2. 3. seed conspicuous: not, like θύμος, particular as to situation; 6.7.5. a wild form of έρπυλλος comp.; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 1. 6. germina-

tion; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well; 7. 6. 1. wild form distinguished.

θύμον (1) (θύμος), Cretan thyme, *Thymbra capitata*

1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 3. 1. 3. reproduces itself without seed; 6. 2. 3. two forms, black and white: seed inconspicuous; 6. 2. 4. requires sea-breezes.

('θύμον' (2), ? a madrepora

4. 7. 2. a marine plant which turns to stone: described).

θύον (θύα), thyme-wood, *Callitris quadrivalvis*

5. 3. 7. described: character and use of wood; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay.

ιασιώνη, bindweed, *Convolvulus sepium*

1. 13. 2. flower consists of one 'leaf.'

ίκμη, ? duckweed, *Lemna minor*

4. 10. 1-2. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4.10.4. requires further investigation

ιξία (1), oak-mistletoe, *Loranthus europaeus*

3. 7. 6. grows on oak and other trees; 3. 16. 1. grows on πρίνος.

ιξία (2) (= άκανθα (9) = άκανος = ιξίνη= χαμαιλέον ό λευκός), pine-thistle, *Atractylis gummifera*

9. 1. 3. Cretan: produces a gum.

ιξίνη (gum (άκανθική) μαστίχη 6. 4. 9., 9. 1. 2.) (= άκανθα (9) = άκανος = ιξία (2) = χαμαιλέον ό λευκός), pine-thistle, *Atractylis gummifera*

6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant; 6. 4. 4. time of growing; 6. 4. 9. described; 9. 1. 2. produces a gum called μαστίχη.

ιον (= ιωνία = ιον τό λευκόν), gilliflower, *Matthiola incana*

1. 9. 4. evergreen; 2. 1. 3. propagation; 4. 7. 4. colour and scent of unnamed Arabian tree (see App. (12a)) comp.; 6. 1. 1. in list of under-shrubs; 6. 6. 1. a cultivated under-shrub: a coronary plant; sweet-scented; 6.6.5. sweetest-scented at Cyrene; 6. 6. 11. grows from

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- seed; woody; 6. 8. 5. position and climate important for fragrance: flowers very early in Egypt; 6. 8. 6. on mountains blooms well, but has inferior scent; 7. 6. 4. wild form quite distinct, alike only in leaf.
- ιον τὸ λευκόν (= λευκόιον (1) = ἰωνία ἡ λευκή), gilliflower, *Matthiola incana*
3. 18. 13. flower of εὐώνυμος comp.; 4. 7. 8. flower of an Arabian tree (see App. (15)) comp.; 6. 6. 3. several colour forms; 6. 6. 7. distinguished from ἰ. τὸ μέλαν; 6. 8. 1-2. flowering-time; 6. 8. 5. plant lives three years at most: degenerates with age: 7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the stem.'
- ιον τὸ μέλαν (= ἰωνία ἡ μέλαινα), violet, *Viola odorata*
1. 13. 2. has a 'twofold' flower; 6. 6. 3. only one form; 6. 6. 7. distinguished from ἰ. τὸ λευκόν; 6. 8. 1-2. a coronary plant: flowering time.
- ἰππὺν, ♀ mare-tail, *Hippuris vulgaris*
4. 10. 1-2. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 4. requires further investigation.
- ἰππομάραθον (= μαγύδαρις), *Prangos ferulacea*
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub: belongs to 'ferula-like' plants.
- ἰπποσέλινον, Alexanders, *Smyrniolum Olusatrum*
1. 9. 4. evergreen; 2. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 2. 6. root of τεύτλιον comp.; 7. 2. 8. root; 7. 6. 3. comp. with ἑλισσέλινον: medicinal use; 9. 1. 3. root produces a gum: which is like σμύρνα; 9. 1. 4. propagated from a δάκρυον: a popular error about ε. and σμύρνα; 9. 15. 1. grows in Arcadia.
- ἰπποφαές, see τιθύμαλλος.
- ἰππόφως, spurge, *Euphorbia acanthathamnus*
6. 5. 1. in list of spinous plants which have leaves as well as spines; 6. 5. 2. has no spines on the leaves.
- ἰρις, iris, *Iris pallida*, etc.
1. 7. 2. root fragrant; 4. 5. 2. grows best in Illyria on shores of Adriatic; 6. 8. 3. a coronary plant: flowering time; 7. 13. 1. leaves described; 7. 13. 2. flower-stem not the only stem: stem comp. with ἀσφόδελος: 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα; 9. 7. 4. only European ἀρώμα: best in Illyria: preparation; 9. 9. 2. perfume.
- ἰσχαιμός, *Andropogon Ischaemum*
9. 15. 3. Thracian: properties.
- ἰσχάς (= ἄπιος (2) 9. 9. 5. = ῥάφανος ἡ ὀρεία), spurge, *Euphorbia Apios*.
- ἰτέα, willow, *Salix* spp.
1. 4. 2. lives near water; 1. 4. 3. 'amphibious'; 1. 5. 1. crooked and low; 1. 5. 4. wood light; 3. 1. 1. propagation; 3. 1. 2. seems to have no fruit, yet reproduces itself: instance; 3. 1. 3. sheds its fruit unripened; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 4. a question if it bears fruit; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 1. quick or slow grower?; 3. 13. 7. described: kinds (see below): called in Arcadia ἐλίκη; 3. 14. 4. leaf of κολυτέα comp.; 4. 1. 1. likes wet ground; 4. 5. 7. common in some Mediterranean regions; 4. 8. 1. grows partially in water; 4. 10. 1. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 6. grows both on land and in water; 4. 13. 2. shorter-lived by water; 4. 16. 2. grows again after being cut or blown down; 4. 16. 3. instance of a tree which survived the lopping of its branches; 5. 3. ♀ character of wood; 5. 7. 7. uses of wood; 5. 9. 4. wood makes an evil smoke when burnt for charcoal
- ἰτέα ἡ λευκή, white willow, *Salix alba*
3. 13. 7. described.
- ἰτέα ἡ μέλαινα, *Salix amplexicaulis*
3. 13. 7. described.
- ἰφύον, spike-lavender, *Lavandula Spica*
6. 6. 11. a coronary plant: grown

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- from seed; 6. 8. 3. flowering time.
- ψος, ? cork-oak, *Quercus Suber* (G. from Plin. 16. 98. Hesych. has ἰψος = κισσός)
3. 4. 2. time of budding.
- ἰωνία (= ἰον q.v. = ἰωνία ἡ λευκή = ἰόν τὸ λευκόν = λευκοῖον (1)), gillflower, *Matthiola incana*.
- ἰωνία ἡ λευκή (= ἰωνία = ἰον q.v.), gillflower, *Matthiola incana*.
- ἰωνία ἡ μέλαινα (= ἰον τὸ μέλαν q.v.), violet, *Viola odorata*.
- κάκτος (1), cardoon, *Cynara Cardunculus*
6. 4. 10-11. a 'thistle-like' plant: described: peculiar to Sicily.
- κάκτος (2), artichoke, *Cynara Scolymus*
6. 4. 11. has erect 'stalk' called πτέρνιξ: described; edible; base of receptacle called σκαλιάς.
- κάλαμος, reed
1. 5. 2. bark fibrous: bark in one layer; 1. 5. 3. stem jointed; 1.6.2. core membranous; 1. 6. 7. root jointed; 1. 6. 10. roots large and numerous; 1. 8. 3. joints regular; 1. 8. 5. joints analogous to 'knots'; 1. 9. 4. evergreen; 1. 10. 5. leaves end in a point; further described; 1.10.9. leaves made of fibre: leaf-stalk made of fibre; 2. 2. 1. (a kind of) propagation; 4. 8. 1. in list of τὰ λοχμώδη; 4. 8. 7. κύαμος ὁ Αἰγύπτιος comp.; 4. 8. 8. thickness of root of κύαμος ὁ Αἰγύπτιος comp.; 4. 9. 1. class of rivers in which κ. grows; 4. 9. 3. has 'side-growths'; 4. 10. 1. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4.10.6. grows both on land and in water; 4.10.7. effect of drought; 4. 11. 1. distinguished from κ. ὁ αὐλητικός (see below): a stout and a slender form (ὁ χαρακίας and ὁ πλόκιμος) (see below); 4. 11. 10-13. other forms; 6. 2. 8. setting of leaves of νάρθηξ and νερθηκία comp.; 9.16.1. δίκταμνον kept ἐν καλάμῳ
- κάλαμος ὁ αὐλητικός (= κ. ὁ Δακωνικός
- = κ. ὁ συριγγίας = κ. ὁ τοξικός = κ. ὁ χαρακίας = δόναξ, pole-reed, *Arundo Donax*
4. 10. 1. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 6. grows only in water; 4. 11. 1. distinguished from the ordinary form of κ.; 4. 11. 2. not true that it takes nine years to grow; 4. 11. 3. conditions of growth; 4. 11. 4. described by contrast with other κάλαμοι; 4. 11. 4-7. manufacture of the mouthpieces of pipes; 4. 11. 8-9. distribution in region of Lake Copais.
- κάλαμος ὁ εἰλετίας, *Ammophila arundinacea*
4. 11. 13. the 'male kind' of κ. ἐπίγειος, so called by some.
- κάλαμος (ἐπίγειος), bush-grass, *Calamagrostis Epigeios*
4. 11. 13. described: growth comp. to ἄγρωστις.
- κάλαμος ὁ εὐώδης, sweet flag, *Acorus Calamus*
4. 8. 3. grows in a Syrian lake; 9.7.1. habitat (east of Lebanon): described: fragrance; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- κάλαμος ὁ Ἰνδικός, bamboo, *Bambusa arundinacea*
4. 11. 13. described.
- κάλαμος ὁ Ἰνδικός ('male'), Male bamboo, *Dendrocalamus strictus*
4. 11. 13. distinguished as solid.
- κάλαμος ὁ Δακωνικός (= κ. ὁ αὐλητικός = κ. ὁ συριγγίας = κ. ὁ τοξικός = κ. ὁ χαρακίας = δόναξ), pole-reed, *Arundo Donax*
4. 11. 12. colour.
- κάλαμος ὁ πλόκιμος, spear-grass, *Phragmites communis*
4. 11. 1. plant reed; compared with κ. ὁ χαρακίας; grows on floating islands of Lake Copais.
- κάλαμος ὁ συριγγίας (= κ. ὁ αὐλητικός = κ. ὁ Δακωνικός = κ. ὁ τοξικός = κ. ὁ χαρακίας = δόναξ), pole-reed, *Arundo Donax*
4. 11. 10 described.
- κάλαμος ὁ τοξικός (Κρητικός) (= κ. ὁ αὐλητικός = κ. ὁ Δακωνικός = κ. ὁ συριγγίας = κ. ὁ χαρακίας = δόναξ), pole-reed, *Arundo Donax*
4. 11. 11. described.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

κάλαμος ὁ χαρακίτης (= κ. ὁ Λακωνικός etc.), pole-reed, *Arundo Donax*

4. 11. 1. stout form: described: grows in reed-beds of Lake Copais.

κάλαμος (other kinds)

4. 11. 10. briefly described.

κάππαρις, caper, *Capparis spinosa*

1. 3. 6. refuses cultivation; 3. 2. 1. fruits better in wild state; 4. 2. 6. fruit of βάλανος comp.; 6. 1. 3. has spines on the shoots; 6. 4. 1. has spines on leaves as well as on stem; 6. 5. 2. described; 7. 8. 1. stem 'on the ground'; 7. 10. 1. grows and flowers entirely in summer.

κάρδαμον, cress, *Lepidium sativum*

1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7. 1. 6. germination; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well.

καρδάμωμον, cardamom, *Elettaria Cardamomum*

9. 7. 2. an ἄρωμα, Median or Indian; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.

καρύα (fruit κάρνον), hazel, *Corylus avellana*

1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 3. 2. 3. evidence that it is really wild; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 4. 5. 4. abundant on Tmolus and Mysian Olympus; 8. 2. 2. germination described.

καρύα ἡ Εὐβοϊκή, sweet chestnut, *Castanea vesca* var. (improved form)

1. 11. 3. seed in a leathery shell; 4. 5. 4. common in Euboea and Magnesia; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay; 5. 4. 4. wood does not decay in water (?) 5. 6. 1. wood makes a noise when about to split: instance; 5. 7. 7. uses of wood: does not rapidly decay; 5. 9. 2. charcoal of this wood used in iron-mines.

καρύα ἡ Ἡρακλεωτική ('Ἡρακλεώτης) (fruit κάρνον), filbert, *Corylus avellana* vars.

1. 3. 3. effect of not pruning; 1. 10. 6. leaves notched; 1. 11. 1. seed immediately within enve-

lope; 1. 11. 3. seed in a woody shell; 3. 3. 8. doubt whether it has a flower (ἰουλος); 3. 5. 5-6. catkins; 3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 6. 5. deep-rooting according to Arcadians; etc.; 3. 7. 3. catkins; 3. 15. 1-2. described: kinds.

καρύις ἡ Περσική, walnut, *Juglans regia*

3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 14. 4. leaf of σημύδα comp.

κασία, cassia, *Cinnamomum iners*

4. 4. 14. in list of oriental aromatic plants; 9. 4. 2. Arabian; 9. 5. 1. and 3. described: method of collection; 9. 7. 2. Arabian; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.

κανκαλῖς, *Tordylium apulum*

7. 7. 1. a λάχανον.

κέγχρος, millet, *Panicum miliaceum*

1. 11. 2. seeds in a husk; 4. 4. 10. inflorescence of ὄρυζον comp.; 4. 8. 10. fruit of λωτός (2) comp.; 4. 10. 3. size of seeds of σιδή comp.; 8. 1. 1. in list of 'summer crops' distinct from cereals and pulses; 8. 1. 4. sown later than cereals and pulses; 8. 2. 6. time of maturing seed; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 3. 3. flower; 8. 3. 4. seed abundant; 8. 7. 3. needs little water: comp. with μέλι-νος; 8. 9. 3. reasons why it might have been expected to exhaust the soil: contrasted with pulses as to 'lightness'; 8. 11. 1. seed keeps well; 8. 11. 6. do. specially in hill country; 9. 18. 6. fruit of κραταιγών comp.

κέδρις, juniper, *Juniperus communis*

1. 9. 4. evergreen: a dwarf kind (cf. κέδρος 3. 13. 7.); 1. 10. 6. leaf spinous at tip; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit.

κέδρος (1) (= ὀξύκεδρος 3. 12. 3.), prickly cedar, *Juniperus Oxycedrus*

1. 5. 3. wood not fleshy; 1. 10. 6. leaf spinous at tip; 3. 6. 5. shallow-rooting according to Arcadians; 3. 10. 2. μέλιτος comp.; 3. 12. 3-4. described: two kinds, ἡ Δυκίη and ἡ Φοινικῇ (? Φοινί-



## INDEX OF PLANTS

- κική) (*see* κέδρος (3)); distinguished from ἄρκευθος; 3. 13. 7. has a dwarf form (? κεδρίς, cf. 1. 9. 4.); 4. 3. 3. size of fruit of παλιούρος ὁ Αἰγύπτιος comp.; 4.5.2. grows on Thracian and Phrygian mountains; 4. 16. 1. some think topping fatal; 5.3.7. images made from the wood; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay; 5. 9. 8. wood exudes moisture: hence 'sweating' statues; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy.
- κέδρος (2), Syrian cedar, *Juniperus excelsa*
3. 2. 6. characteristic of mountains of Cilicia and Syria; 4. 5. 5. grows in Syria and is used for ships; 5. 7. 1-2. use of wood in ship-building; 5. 7. 4. use of wood in house-building; 5. 8. 1. remarkably fine in some regions e.g. Syria.
- κέδρος (3), ἡ Φοινικική (= ἄρκευθος), Phoenician cedar, *Juniperus phoenicea*
3. 12. 3. *see* κέδρος (1); 9. 2. 3. said to be burnt for pitch in Syria.
- κέδρος (4) ἡ Λυκίη
3. 12. 3. a kind so distinguished by some from κέδρος (3).
- κενταύριον, centaury, *Centaurea salnitana*
1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 3. 3. 6. only bears fruit in hill country; 4.5.1. seeks cold regions; 7.9.5. leaves and stems bitter, yet wholesome; 9. 1. 1. juice blood-red; 9. 11. 6. juice mixed with στρύχνος ὁ μανικός to make a potion.
- κενταυρίς, feverwort, *Erythraea Centaurium*
9. 8. 7. superstition as to gathering; 9. 14. 1. how long drug will keep.
- κεντρομυρρίνη (= μνάκανθος), butcher's broom, *Ruscus aculeatus*
3. 17. 4. bears fruit on its leaves.
- κεραίς (= ράφανος ἡ ἀγρία 9. 15. 5.), charlock, *Raphanus Raphanistrum*.
- κέρασος (= λακάρη), bird-cherry, *Prunus avium*
3. 13. 1-3. described 4. 15. 1. bark can be stripped; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy.
- κεραύνιον, 'thunder-truffle,' *Tuber aestivum*
1. 6. 5. has no roots.
- κερκίς (1), Judas-tree, *Cercis Siliquastrum*
1. 11. 2. seeds in a pod.
- κερκίς (2), aspen, *Populus tremula*
3. 14. 3. described.
- κερωνία (= συκή ἡ Αἰγυπτία 1. 11. 2.), carob, *Ceratonia Siliqua*
1. 11. 2. seeds in a pod; 1. 13. 2. bears on stem and branches; 4. 2. 4. described.
- κήλαστρος (κήλαστρον), holly, *Ilex Aquifolium*
1. 3. 6. refuses cultivation; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 5-6. time of fruiting; said to lose fruit in winter; 4. 1. 3. grows in very cold positions; 5. 6. 2. colour of wood of φιλυκη comp.; 5. 7. 7. wood used for walking-sticks.
- κινάμωμον, cinnamon, *Cinnamomum Cassia*
4. 4. 14. in list of oriental aromatic plants; 9. 4. 2. Arabian; 9. 5. 1-2. two kinds, white and black, described: habitat: method of collection: a story; 9. 7. 2. in list of ἀρώματα.
- κίσθος, rock-rose, *Cistus* spp.
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6. 2. 2. described: two forms (*see below*).
- κίσθος ὁ ἄρρην, *Cistus villosus*
6. 2. 1. described.
- κίσθος ὁ θήλυς, *Cistus salvifolius*
6. 2. 1. described.
- κιττός, ivy, *Hedera Helix*
1. 3. 2. a shrub which becomes tree-like; 1. 9. 4. evergreen; 1. 10. 1. leaves change shape with age of plant; 1. 10. 7. long leaf-stalk; 1. 13. 1. flower 'downy'; 1. 13. 4. attachment of flower; 3. 4. 6. time of fruiting; 3. 10. 5. fruit and leaf of φίλυρα comp.; 3. 14. 2. leaf of κερκίς (2) comp.; 3. 18. 6. kinds distinguished (*see below*); 3. 18. 7. distinguished from

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- ἔλιξ; 3. 18. 9-10. described: habit etc.; 3. 18. 11. cluster of berries of *σμίλαξ* (2) comp.: described; 4. 4. 1. distribution in Asia; 4. 16. 5. overgrowth of κ. dangerous to trees; 5. 3. 4. character of wood; 5. 9. 6. wood said to make best fire-sticks; 5. 9. 7. the stationary fire-stick should be made of κ. or ἄθρα-γένη; 9. 13. 6. leaf of ἐρευθεανόν comp.
- κιττός ὁ ἐλιξ, see ἔλιξ
- κιττός ὁ λευκός, white-berried ivy, *Hedera Helix*
3. 18. 6. described: several kinds: one = κορυμβίας, one = κ. ὁ Ἀχαρνικός; 3. 18. 9. roots; 3. 18. 10. fruit; 9. 18. 5. properties of fruit.
- κιττός ὁ μέλας, black-berried ivy, *Hedera Helix*
3. 18. 6. several kinds; 3. 18. 9. roots; 3. 18. 10. fruit.
- κιχώριον (κιχώρη), chicory, *Cichorium Intybus*
1. 10. 7. attachment of leaves; 7. 7. 1. a λαχανόν; a class of plants called 'chicory-like' from their leaves; 7. 7. 3. season of growing; 7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground' and 'on the stem'; etc.; 7. 9. 2. long in flower; 7. 10. 3. flowers borne in succession; 7. 11. 3. root, inflorescence and seed-vessel described; 9. 12. 4. μήκων ἢ ροιᾶς comp. to κ. τὸ ἄγριον; 9. 16. 4. leaf of ἀκόνιτον comp.
- κλήθρα, alder, *Alnus glutinosa*
1. 4. 3. 'amphibious'; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 6. does not always fruit; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?); 3. 6. 5. roots slender and 'plain,' according to Arca-  
dians; 3. 14. 3. described; 3. 15. 1. leaf of καρβᾶ ἢ Ἡρακλεω-  
τική comp.; 4. 8. 1. grows partially in water.
- κλινότροχος (?), *Acer Pseudo-platanus*
3. 11. 1. a form of σφένδαμνος.
- κλύμενον, honeysuckle, *Lonicera etrusca*
9. 8. 5. superstition as to time of cutting; 9. 18. 6-7. properties of fruit.
- κνέωιον (berry Κνίδιος κόκκος), *Daphne Gnidium*
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 9. 20. 2. berry described; medicinal use and properties.
- κνέωρος ὁ λευκός, *Daphne oleoides*
6. 2. 2. distinguished from κ. ὁ μέλας; use of root.
- κνέωρος ὁ μέλας, *Thymelaea hirsuta*
1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 6. 2. 2. see κ. ὁ λευκός.
- κνήκος (= κ. ὁ ἡμερος = κρόκος ὁ ἀκαν-  
θαῖος), safflower, *Carthamus tinctorius* etc. (see below)
1. 13. 3. flowers attached above each seed; 6. 1. 3. a wild under-shrub; has spines on the leaves; 6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant; 6. 4. 4. no side-growths; 6. 4. 5. three forms distinguished and described, one cultivated (see below); 6. 6. 6. seed of ῥόδον comp.
- κνήκος ἢ ἀγρία, *Carthamus leucocaulos*
6. 4. 5. distinguished from κ. ἢ ἡμερος.
- κνήκος ἢ ἀγρία (ἐτέρα), *Cnicus benedictus*
6. 4. 5. described.
- κνήκος ἢ ἡμερος, *Carthamus tinctorius*
6. 4. 5. distinguished from wild kinds.
- Κνίδιος κόκκος, see κνέωρον
- κνίξ (= κουκίοφορον), doum-palm, *Hyphaene thebaica*
1. 10. 5. reedy leaves; 2. 6. 10. a shrubby palm; Ethiopian.
- κοκκυνέα, wig-tree, *Rhus Cotinus*
3. 16. 6. described.
- κοκκυνηλέα (fruit κοκκύνηλον), plum-tree, *Prunus domestica*
1. 10. 10. fruit made of flesh and fibre; 1. 11. 1. seed enveloped in flesh and stone; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 13. 1. flower 'leafy'; 1. 13. 3. flower above fruit-case; 3. 6. 4. very shallow-rooting; few roots; 3. 6. 5. deep-rooting according to Idaeans; etc.; 4. 2. 3. size of fruit of συκή ἢ Κυπρία comp.; 4. 2. 5. fruit-stone of περσέα comp.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

κοκκυμυλλά (ή Αιγυπτία) (sebesten),

*Cordia Myxa*

4. 2. 10. described.

κολοιτία (1) (κολούττα 3. 17. 2.: cf.

3. 17. 3. n.), *Cytisus aeolicus*

1. 11. 2. tree of Lipari islands: seeds in a pod; 3. 17. 2. described.

κολοιτία (2), *Salix cinerea*

3. 17. 3. Idaean: described

κολοκύντη, gourd, *Cucurbita maxima*

1. 11. 4. seeds in a row: 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 1. 13. 3. flower attached above fruit: 2. 7. 5. use of dust; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 1. 6. germination; 7. 2. 9. root described; 7. 4. 1. several kinds; 7. 5. 5. seed does not keep well.

κολυτέα, bladder-senna, *Colutea arborescens*

[3. 14. 4. described.]

κόμαρος (fruit μεμαίκυλον 3. 16. 4.), arbutus, *Arbutus Unedo*

1. 5. 2. bark readily drops off; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 16. 4. described; 3. 16. 6. leaf of κοκκυμυλλά comp.; 5. 9. 1. wood makes good charcoal.

κομμή = τραγοπύγων 7. 7. 1. q.v.

κόνυζα, *Inula* spp.

6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6. 2. 5. two kinds described and compared ('male' and 'female') (see below); 7. 10. 1. grows and flowers entirely in summer.

κόνυζα ή άρρην, *Inula viscosa*

6. 2. 5.

κόνυζα ή θήλεια, *Inula graveolens*

6. 2. 5.

κορίαννον, coriander, *Coriandrum sativum*

1. 11. 2. seeds naked; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7. 1. 6. germination; 7. 2. 8. root described; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 5. 4. effect of hot weather; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well.

κορυμβίας, see κιντός ό λευκός.

κόρχορος, blue pimpernel, *Anagallis caerulea*

7. 7. 2. a λάχανον: proverbial for bitterness.

κορωνόπους, hartshorn, *Plantago*

*Coronopus*

7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the ground.'

κόστος, *Saussurea Lappa*

9. 7. 3. in list of άρώματα

κότινος (? = άγριέλαιος), wild olive, *Olea Oleaster*

1. 4. 1. more fruitful than έλάα; 1. 8. 1. many knots; 1. 8. 2. more knots than έλάα; 1. 8. 3. knots regular: knots opposite; 1. 8. 6. liable to excrescences; 1.14.4. wild form of έλάα; 2.2.11. cannot be made into έλάα by cultivation: effect of transplanting and removing top-growth; 2. 3. 1. occasionally changes to έλάα spontaneously; 3. 2. 1. produces more fruit than έλάα but ripens less; 3. 6. 2. knots opposite; 3. 15. 6. size of fruit of κράταιγος comp.; 4. 4. 11. Indian olive between κ. and έλάα; 4. 13. 1. longer-lived than έλάα; 4. 13. 2. story of a very old κ. at Olympia; 4. 14. 12. suffers less than έλάα from special winds; 5. 2. 4. story of a tree at Megara; 5. 3. 8. character of wood; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay; 5. 4. 4. wood not eaten by *teredon*; 5. 7. 8. uses of wood for carpenter's tools.

κουκιόφορον (= κούξ), doum-palm, *Hyphaene thebaica*

2. 6. 9. (not named) described; 4. 2. 7. described.

κράνεια (fruit κράνεον 4. 4. 5), cornelian cherry, *Cornus mas*

1.6.1. core hard and close; 1.8.2. has more knots than θηλυκράνεια; 3. 2. 1. fruit sweeter and better ripened in wild than in cultivated form; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 3. time of fruiting; 3. 6. 1. slow-growing (?); 3. 12. 1-2. described; 4. 4. 6. fruit of an unnamed Indian tree (see App. (6)) comp.; 5. 4. 1. more fruitful than θηλυκράνεια; 5. 6. 4. wood very strong.

## INDEX OF PLANTS

κραταίγονος, willow-weed, *Polygonum Persicaria*

9. 13. 6. properties: described.

κραταίγος (= κραταίγων 3. 15. 6.), *Crataegus Heldreichii*

3. 15. 6. described: perhaps a wild form of μεσπilah.

κρηπίς, ox-tongue, *Helminthia echinoidea*

7. 8. 3. leaves on the stalk.

κριθή, barley, *Hordeum sativum*

1. 6. 5. roots numerous; 1. 6. 6. do.; 1. 11. 5. each seed separately attached; 2. 2. 9. said to turn sometimes into wheat; 2. 4. 1. wild κ turns into cultivated with cultivation; 4. 4. 9. India has a corresponding cereal and a wild form of κ; 8. 1. 1. in list of cereals; 8. 1. 3. sown early, before πυρός; 8. 1. 5-6. time of germination in Hellas (and in Egypt?); 8. 2. 1. germination described; 8. 2. 3. single leaf first appears: roots described; 8. 2. 6. time of maturing seed; 8. 2. 7. time of harvest in Hellas and in Egypt; 8. 2. 9. crop very early in island of Chalkia; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 4. 1-2. comp. in detail with other cereals: kinds distinguished (see below); 8. 6. 1. conditions for sowing; 8. 6. 4. suitable soil; 8. 6. 5-6. rain hurtful when κ. is in flower: and when it is ripe; 8. 7. 1. said to change into αίρα under certain conditions; 8. 7. 5. in many places comes up again next year; etc.; 8. 8. 2. favourable localities; 8. 8. 3. αϊγίλωψ (2) grows specially among κ; 8. 9. 1. exhausts the soil, but less than πυρός: reason; 8. 10. 2. wheat-rust; 8. 10. 3. effects of weather; 8. 11. 1. seed keeps less well than πυρός; 8. 11. 3. grain stored without drying; 8. 11. 7. at Babylon grain jumps on the threshing-floor: reason; 9. 11. 9. τιθύμαλλος ὁ μυρτίτης gathered at time of barley-harvest; 9. 12. 4. μήκων ἡ ροιὰς grows in fields of κ.

κριθαὶ αἱ ἀγρίαι (Indian), *Sorghum halepense*

4. 4. 9. can be used for bread.

κριθαὶ αἱ Ἀχιλλεῖαι, barley, *Hordeum sativum* var.

8. 4. 2. ear close to leaf; 8. 10. 2. specially liable to wheat-rust.

κριθαὶ αἱ Ἰνδικαί, barley, *Hordeum sativum* var.

8. 4. 2. branching.

κριθῶν γένος τρίμηνον, barley, *Hordeum sativum* var.

8. 1. 4. sown late.

κρίνον (= κρινωνία, cf. λείριον (1)), lily, *Lilium candidum* etc.

1. 13. 2. has a 'twofold' flower; 2. 2. 1. propagation from exudation; etc.; 4. 8. 6. an unnamed Egyptian plant (see App. (18)) comp.; 4. 8. 9. petals of flower of λωτός (2) comp.; 6. 6. 3. several colour forms; 6. 6. 8. do.; a coronary plant: described: propagation; 6. 6. 9. leaves of νάρκισσος (1) comp.; 6. 8. 3. flowering time; 9. 1. 4. cf. 2. 2. 1.

κρίνον τὸ πορφυροῦν, Turk's cap lily, *Lilium chalcidonicum*

6. 6. 3. (see κρίνον).

κριοί, see ἐρέβινθος.

κρόκος, crocus, *Crocus* spp. etc. (see below)

1. 6. 6. root fleshy; 1. 6. 7. do. 1. 6. 11. large fleshy root; 7. 7. 1. leaf of τραγοπώγων comp.; 7. 7. 4. flowering time short: three kinds mentioned, εὐσμος, λευκός, ἀκανθώδης (see below). 7. 9. 4. root acorn-shaped; 7. 10. 2. flowers in winter; 7. 13. 1. leaves described; 7. 13. 2. no stem except flower-stem.

κρόκος ὁ ἀκανθώδης (= κνήκος = κ ἡ ἡμερος), safflower, *Carthamus tinctorius*

7. 7. 4. (see κρόκος).

κρόκος ὁ εὐσμος, saffron crocus, *Crocus sativus*

4. 3. 1. abundant in Cyrenaica; 6. 6. 5. sweetest-scented at Cyrene; 6. 6. 10. a coronary plant: described: propagation; 6. 8. 3. flowering time: a wild (scentless) and a cultivated

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- kind; 7. 7. 4 *see* κρίκος; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- κρόκος ὁ λευκός, *crocus, crocus cancellatus*
7. 7. 4; 7. 10. 2. (*see* κρίκος).
- κρομογγήτειον, onion, *Allium Cera* var.
4. 6. 2. root of φύκος τὸ πλατύ comp.
- κρόμμον, onion, *Allium Cera*
1. 5. 2. 'bark' in layers; 1. 6. 7. root in scales; 1. 6. 9. no side roots; 1. 10. 7. attachment of leaves; 1. 10. 8. leaves hollow; 7. 1. 7. stem single; 7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 2. 3. growth of γήθρον and πράσον comp.: offsets specially numerous; 7. 3. 4. seed borne at top; 7. 4. 7-10. kinds distinguished, Σάρδιον, Κνίδιον, Σαμοθράκιον, σπέντιον, σχιστόν, Ἀσκαλώνιον: cultivation and special points of σχιστόν (*see below*), Ἀσκαλώνιον: further local varieties; 7. 4. 12. formation of roots of σκόροδον contrasted; 7. 5. 1. likes water; 7. 5. 2. said to dislike rain-water; 7. 8. 2. stem smooth, not branched; 7. 9. 4. *cf.* 1. 6. 7; 7. 13. 4. grows in colonies because of offsets; 9. 15. 7. root of μώλυ comp.
- κρόμμον τὸ σχιστόν, shallot, *Allium Cera* var.
7. 4. 7-10. distinguished from other varieties of κρόμμον: cultivation.
- κρότων, castor-oil plant, *Ricinus communis*
1. 10. 1. leaves change shape with age of plant; 3. 18. 7. do.
- κύαμος, bean, *Vicia Faba*
3. 13. 3. size of fruit of κέρασος comp.; 3. 15. 3. fruit of τέρμινθος comp.; 3. 17. 6. size of berry of ἀμπελος (2) comp.; 4. 3. 1. size of fruit of λωτός (4) comp.; 7. 3. 1. length of flowering of ὤκιμον comp.; 8. 1. 1. in list of pulses; 8. 1. 3-4. sown early, but can be sown late; 8. 1. 5. time of germination: very slow; 8. 2. 1. germination described; 8. 2. 3. comes up with several leaves: roots and side-growths contrasted with other pulses; 8. 2. 5. flowering time; 8. 2. 6. time of maturing seed; 8. 3. 1. leaf; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 5. 1. more than one kind: white form sweetest; 8. 5. 4. attachment of seed; 8. 6. 1. rain not beneficial after sowing; 8. 6. 5. likes water when in flower, but not later; 8. 7. 2. makes ground fertile for ἐρέβινθος; 8. 8. 6. causes etc. of κ. becoming 'cookable' or 'uncookable'; 8. 9. 1. improves the soil (*cf.* 8. 7. 2.); 8. 10. 5. infested by lves; 8. 11. 1. seed does not keep; 8. 11. 3. seed keeps well in some localities.
- κύαμος (ὁ Αἰγύπτιος), *Nelumbium speciosum*
4. 8. 7-8 described; 4. 8. 9. stalk, leaves and growth of fruit of λωτός (2) comp.
- κυδώνιος (fruit μῆλον κυδωνίων) (= στρούθιον (1)), quince, *Cydonia vulgaris*
2. 2. 5. produced from seed of στρούθιον; 4. 8. 11. size of root of λωτός (2) comp. to μῆλον κυδωνίων.
- κυιξ, ?
7. 13. 9. (in defective sentence): belongs to τὰ βολβώδη.
- κυκλάμιнос, cyclamen, *Cyclamen graecum*
7. 9. 4. root has 'bark'; 9. 9. 1. root and juice used; 9. 9. 3. use in medicine and as charm; 9. 18. 2. leaf of σκορπίος (3) comp.
- κύμινον, cummin, *Cuminum Cyminum*
1. 11. 2. seeds naked; 7. 3. 2-3. seeds described: popular belief about sowing; 7. 4. 1. several kinds; 8. 3. 5. seed very abundant and small; 8. 6. 1. rain not beneficial after sowing; 8. 8. 5. a plant parasitic on root (*see* App. (25)); 8. 10. 1. diseases; 9. 8. 8. *cf.* 7. 3. 2-3.
- κυνόρροδον, dog-rose, *Rosa canina*
4. 4. 8. an unnamed Indian tree (cotton plant) comp.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

κυνόσβατος, wild rose, *Rosa sempervirens*

3. 18. 4. described; 9. 8. 5. superstitious as to method of cutting.

κύνωψ, rib-grass, *Plantago lanceolata*

7.7.3. time of growing; 7.11.2. (?) flowers in a spike.

κυνάριτος, cypress, *Cupressus sempervirens*

1. 5. 1. erect and tall; 1. 5. 3. wood not fleshy; 1. 6. 4. shallow rooting; 1. 6. 5. roots not branching; 1. 8. 2. 'male' has more knots than 'female'; 1. 9. 1. growth chiefly upwards; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 2. 2. 2. propagation; 2. 2. 6. seed of 'female' produces 'male' trees; 2. 7. 1. dislikes manure and water; 3. 1. 6. comes up spontaneously in Crete; 3. 2. 3. evidence that it is really wild (at least 'male' form); 3. 2. 6. characteristic of the Cretan Ida; 3. 12. 4. bark of κέδρος (1) comp.; 4.1.3. grows very high on Cretan mountains; 4. 3. 1. grows in Cyrenaica; 4. 5. 2. abounds in Crete, Lycia, Rhodes; 4. 18. 12. beer (βρυτός) made from κ. in Egypt; 4.16. 1. some think topping fatal; 5.3.7. θύον comp.: images made from the wood; 5. 4. 1. the 'male' form the more fruitful; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay: an instance; takes a fine polish; 5. 7. 4. use of wood in house-building.

κύπειρον, *Cyperus rotundus*

9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.

κύπειρος, galingale, *Cyperus longus*

1. 5. 3. stem very smooth; 1. 6. 8. a stout root and also fibrous roots; 1. 8. 1. no knots; 1.10. 5. leaves end in a point; further described; 4. 8. 1. in list of τὰ λοχμώδη; 4. 8. 12. leaves of μαλινάλλα comp.; 4.10. 1. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 5. described; 4. 10. 6. grows both on land and in water; grows on the floating islands of Lake Copais

4. 11. 12. foliage of some κάλαμοι comp.

κύτινος, see ρόα.

κύτισος (1), laburnum, *Laburnum vulgare*

1. 6. 1. core hard and close; 4. 4. 6. habit of ἐβένη comp.; 5. 3. 1. wood of the core very close and heavy.

κύτισος (2), tree-medick, *Medicago arborea*

4. 16. 5. dangerous to trees.

κώμακον, *Ailanthus malabarica*

9. 7. 2. an Arabian ἀρωμα (i.e. imported through Arabia: mixed with other ἀρώματα:

[name also given to fruit of a different plant].

κώμειον, hemlock, *Conium maculatum*

1. 5. 3. stem fleshy; 6. 2. 9. belongs to 'ferula-like' plants: has a hollow stem; 7. 6. 4. leaf of δρειοσέλινον comp.; 9. 8. 3. most powerful juice from root; 9.15. 8. localities; 9. 16. 8. medical experience; 9. 16. 9. treatment in Keos; 9. 20. 1. πέπερι an antidote to κ.

κωνόφορος, see [πενίκη ή] κωνόφορος

λάθυρος, *Lathyrus sativus*

8. 3. 1. leaf; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 10. 5. infested by 'worms.'

λακάρη (λάκαρα) (= κέρατος? Macedonian name), bird-cherry, *Prunus avium*

3. 3. 1. a tree of mountain and plain; 3. 6. 1. slow-growing (?)

λάπαθος (λάπαθον), monk's rhubarb, *Rumex Patientia*

1. 6. 6. root single; 7. 1. 2. time of sowing; 7. 2. 7-8. root described; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 6. 1. wild form distinguished (see below); 9. 11. 1. leaf of πάνακες τὸ Χειρῶντειον comp.

λάπαθον τὸ ἄγριον, dock, *Rumex conglomeratus*

7. 6. 1. distinguished from λ. τὸ ἡμερον; 7.7.2. & λάχανον; needs cooking.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- λειμωνία*, (? = *σκόλυμος* 6. 4. 3.), golden thistle, *Scolymus hispanicus*  
 6. 4. 3. a thistle-like plant: leaves spinous.  
*λείριον* (1) (= *κρίνον* *q.v.*) Madonna lily, *Lilium candidum*  
 3. 13. 6. flower of ἀκτῆ has the heavy scent of λ.; 3. 18. 11. scent of flower of *σμίλαξ* (2) comp.; 9.16.6. (?) leaf of ἐφήμερον comp.  
*λείριον* (2), narcissus, *Narcissus* spp. (see below)  
 1. 13. 2. flower consists of one 'leaf' only partly divided.  
*λείριον*, polyanthus narcissus, *Narcissus Tazetta*  
 6. 8. 1. flowering time; 7. 13. 4. grown from seed.  
*λείριον* (τὸ ἕτερον 6. 8. 3.) (= *νάρκισσος* (1) 6.6.9), narcissus, *Narcissus serotinus*  
 6. 6. 9. a coronary plant: described; flowering time.  
*λέμνα*, water chickweed, *Callitriche verna*  
 4. 10. 1. in list of plants of Lake Copais.  
*λευκάκανθα*, milk-thistle, *Silybum marianum*  
 6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant.  
*λεύκη*, abele, *Populus alba*  
 1. 10. 1. leaves change shape with age of tree: leaves inverted in summer; 3. 1. 1. propagation; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 1. quick-growing; 3. 14. 2. described; 3. 18. 7. cf. 1. 10. 1.; 4. 1. 1. likes wet ground; 4. 2. 8 stem of *συκὴ* ἢ *Κυπρία* comp.; 4. 8. 1. grows partially in water; 4. 8. 2. scarce on Nile; 4. 10. 2 flower of *ἐλνιάγνος* comp.; 4.13. 2. shorter-lived by water; 4. 16. 3. instance of a tree which grew again after falling down; 5. 9. 4. wood makes an evil smoke when burnt for charcoal.  
*λευκόνιον* (1) (= *ἵον τὸ λευκόν* = *ιωνία* ἢ *λευκή*), gilliflower, *Matthiola incana*  
*λευκδῖον* (2), snowdrop, *Galanthus nivalis*  
 7. 13. 9. (in defective sentence) belongs to τὰ βολεῶδη.  
*λιβανωτὶς*  
 9. 9. 5. medicinal use; 9.11.10-11. two kinds (see below).  
*λιβανωτὶς ἡ ἄκαρπος*, *Laciuca graeca*  
 9. 11. 10-11. described: medicinal use: habitat.  
*λιβανωτὶς ἡ κάρπιμος*, (fruit *κάχρον* 9. 11. 10.), *Lecokia cretica*  
 9. 11. 10. described: medicinal use: habitat: prevents moth in clothes.  
*λιβανωτός*, (gum *λίβανος*, frankincense: also *λιβανωτός* 9. 4. 4-9 etc.), frankincense-tree, *Boswellia Carteri*  
 4. 4. 14 in list of oriental ἀρώματα; 9. 1. 6. time of tapping; 9. 4. 1. collection of gum; 9. 4. 2. Arabian: described: habitat; 9.4.3. another account; 9.4.4-10 accounts of travellers; 9. 11. 3 scent of *πάνακες* τὸ *Ἡράκλειον* comp.; 9. 11. 10. scent of root of *λιβανωτὶς* ἡ *κάρπιμος* comp.; 9. 20. 1. an antidote to *κώνειον*.  
*λίνον*, flax, *Linum usitatissimum*  
 3. 18. 3. seeds oily; 8. 7. 1. said to change into *αἶρα*.  
*λίνον πύρινον* ?  
 9. 18. 6. growth of *κραταίγονος* comp.  
*λινόσπартон*, Spanish broom, *Spartium juncetum*  
 1. 5. 2. bark in layers.  
*λυχνίς*, rose-campion, *Lychnis coronaria*  
 6. 8. 3. a coronary plant: flowering time.  
 (Λωτός)  
 7. 15. 3. many plants called by this name which have nothing in common but the name.  
*λωτός* (1), nettle-tree, *Celtis australis*  
 1. 5. 3. wood not fleshy; 1. 6. 1. core hard and close; 1. 8. 2. few knots; 4. 2. 5. colour of wood of *περσέα* comp.; 4. 2. 9. wood of olive of Thebaid comp.; 4. 2. 12. wood of an unnamed tree (? *κοκκυμηλέα* ἢ *Αἰγυπτία*)

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- comp.; 5. 3. 1. wood very close and heavy; 5. 3. 7. images made from the wood; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay: turns black when old; 5. 5. 4. core not obvious but exists; 5. 5. 6. treatment of core for making door-hinges; 5. 8. 1. grows in some places exceptionally fine.
- λωτός (2) (aquatic) (root κόρσιον), Nile water-lily, *Nymphaea stellata*  
4. 8. 9-11. described.
- λωτός (3) (herb), trefoil, *Trifolium fragiferum*  
7. 8. 3. leaves 'on the stem';  
7. 13. 5. seed sometimes takes two years to germinate.
- λωτός (4) (Libyan tree), *Zizyphus Lotus*  
4. 3. 1. common in Libya; 4. 3. 1-2 described; 4. 3. 4. further described.
- λωτός (5) (aromatic) (= μελίλωτος), *Trigonella graeca*  
9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- μαγύδαρις (= ιππομάραθον), *Prangos ferulacea*  
1. 6. 12. root most characteristic part; 6. 3. 7. distinct from σίλφιον: described: distribution.  
[6. 3. 4. name also given to seed of σίλφιον].
- μαδωνάις (= νυμφαία 9. 13. 1.), yellow water-lily, *Nuphar luteum*
- μαλάχη (1), mallow, *Lavatera arborea*  
1. 3. 2. a herb which becomes tree-like under cultivation; 1. 9. 2. do.; 4. 15. 1. outer bark can be stripped; 9. 18. 1. leaf fruit and taste of stem of ἀλθαία comp.
- μαλάχη (2), cheese-flower, *Malva sylvestris*  
7. 7. 2. a λάχανον; needs cooking;  
7. 8. 1. stem 'on the ground'
- μαλάχη (3) ἡ ἀγρία (= ἀλθαία 9. 15. 5.), marsh-mallow, *Althaea officinalis*
- μαλιναβάλλη (= μνάσιον), *Cyperus esculentus*  
4. 8. 12. described.
- μανδραγόρας (1), mandrake, *Mandragora officinarum*  
9. 8. 8. superstition as to gathering; 9. 9. 1. root and juice used: medicinal use of leaf and root.
- μανδραγόρας (2), ? deadly nightshade, *Atropa Belladonna*  
6. 2. 9. belongs to 'ferula-like' plants: has hollow stem: fruit described.
- μάραθον, fennel, *Foeniculum vulgare*  
1. 11. 2. seeds naked; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 4. 6. 3. φύκος τὸ τριχόφυλλον comp.; 6. 1. 4. aspineless wild under-shrub: belongs to 'ferula-like' plants; 6. 2. 9. do.: has a fibrous stem; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 9. 9. 6. leaf of θαψία comp.
- μάσπετον, see σίλφιον
- μελαγκρανίς (= σχοίνος ὁ κάρπιμος 4. 12. 1.), bog-rush, *Schoenus nigricans*
- μελάμπυρον (μελάμπυρος), *Neslia paniculata*  
8. 4. 6. infests πυρὸς ὁ Σικελός: contrasted with αἶρα; 8. 8. 3. (μελάμπυρος ὁ Ποντικός), specially affects crops of πυρὸς.
- μελία, manna-ash, *Fraxinus Ornus*  
3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?); 3. 6. 5. roots numerous matted and run deep, according to Arcadians; 3. 11. 3-4. described: two kinds, see βουμέλιος; 3. 17. 1. leaf of φελλός comp.; 4. 5. 3. grows in Pontus; 4. 8. 2. common on Nile; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 6. 4. wood 'moist': used for elastic bedsteads; 5. 7. 3. wood used for bent-wood work: use in shipbuilding; 5. 7. 8. uses of wood for carpenter's tools.
- μελίλωτος (= λωτός (5)), *Trigonella graeca*  
7. 15. 3. one of the many diverse plants called λωτός.
- μελίνος, (in other authors μελίνη:



# INDEX OF PLANTS

- see 8. 1. 1. n.), Italian millet, *Setaria italica*
8. 1. 4. sown later than cereals and pulses; 8. 2. 6. time of maturing seed; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 3. 3. flower; 8. 7. 3. needs little water: comp with κέγχρος.
- μελισσόφυλλον, balm, *Melissa officinalis*
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub.
- μεμαίκυλον, see κόμαρος
- μεσπίλη (fruit μέσπιλον) (= μ. ή σατάνειος), medlar, *Mespilus germanica*
3. 12. 5-6. described: three kinds (Idaeon account, see below); 3. 13. 1. leaf of κέρασος comp; 3. 15. 6. leaf, bark and taste of fruit of κράταιγος comp.; 3. 17. 5. flower of συκή ή 'Ιδαία comp. also taste of fruit; 4. 2. 10. fruit of κοκκυμηλέα comp.; 4. 8. 12. μαλινάβλλη comp.; 4. 14. 10. fruit gets worm-eaten.
- μεσπίλη ή άνθηδονοειδής, hawthorn, *Crataegus Oxycantha*
3. 12. 5. described.
- μεσπίλη ή άνθήδων, oriental thorn, *Crataegus orientalis*
3. 12. 5. described.
- μεσπίλη ή σατάνειος, medlar, *Mespilus germanica*
3. 12. 5. described.
- Μηδική (πόα), lucerne, *Medicago sativa*
8. 7. 7. destroyed by sheep sleeping on it.
- μήκων, poppy etc., *Papaver* spp. etc. (see below)
1. 9. 4. evergreen; 1. 11. 2. seeds in a vessel; 4. 8. 7. size of flower of κύαμος ό Αιγύπτιος comp.; 4. 8. 10. size of 'head' of λωτός (2) comp.; 4. 10. 3. σιδη comp. (?); 9. 8. 2. juice of 'head' collected; 9. 12. 3-5. kinds (see below) having nothing in common but the name; 9. 16. 9. medical experience; 9. 20. 1. seeds of one kind of πέπερι comp.
- μήκων ή 'Ηρακλεία (= 'Ηρακλεία), *Silene venosa*
9. 12. 5. described: medicinal use.

- μήκων ή κερατίτις, horned poppy, *Glaucium flavum* var. *Serpiern*
9. 12. 3. described: medicinal use; habitat.
- μήκων ή μέλαινα, *Papaver Rhoeas*
9. 11. 9. mixed with τιθύμαλλος ό μυρτίτης to make a medicine.
- μήκων (ή όπωδης), opium poppy, *Papaver somniferum*
1. 12. 2. juice.
- μήκων ή ροιάς, *Papaver hybridum*
9. 12. 4. described: edible: habitat: medicinal use.
- μηκάνιον (= τιθύμαλλος 9. 8. 2), spurge, *Euphorbia Peplus*
9. 8. 2. collection of juice.
- μηλέα (fruit μήλον), apple, *Pyrus Malus*
1. 3. 3. a tree whose stem is not single; 1. 5. 2. bark smooth: bark readily drops off; 1. 6. 1. core fleshy; 1. 6. 3. few roots; 1. 6. 4. shallow rooting; 1. 8. 4. knots peculiar; 1. 9. 1. trunk divides low down; 1. 10. 4. (?) leaves fleshy; 1. 10. 5. leaves oblong; 1. 11. 4. seeds all together in a single case; 1. 11. 5. seeds in a membrane; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 1. 13. 1. flower 'leafy'; 1. 13. 3. flower above fruit-case; 1. 14. 1. bears on last year's wood: some kinds bear also on new wood; 1. 14. 4. many cultivated forms; 2. 1. 2. propagation; 2. 2. 4. degenerates from seed; 2. 2. 5. seed produces wild form; 2. 5. 3. grafting; 2. 5. 6. trees should be planted fairly close together; 2. 6. 6. some dates round like μήλα; 2. 8. 1. apt to shed immature fruit; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 2. has better fruit and timber in lowlands; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 11. 5. mountain and lowland forms compared; 4. 5. 3. abundant in Pontus; 4. 5. 4. grows on Mount Tmolus and Mysian Olympus; 4. 7. 7. size of fruit of δένδρον το έριόφορον comp.; 4. 10. 2. leaf of ελαίαιγος comp. (?); 4. 10. 3.

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- size of flower of *σίδη* comp.; 4. 13. 2. short-lived, especially certain kinds; 4. 13. 3. after decaying shoots again from same stock; 4. 14. 2. apt to get worm-eaten; 4. 14. 10 fruit gets worm-eaten; 4. 14. 12 uninjured by special winds; 4. 16. 1. survives splitting of stem; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5. 4. 1. the less fruitful trees produce more solid wood; 6. 4. 9 'head' of *ιξίνη* comp. to *μήλου*.
- μηλέα* ή *γλυκεία*, *Pyrus Malus* var.?  
4. 13. 2. specially short-lived;  
4. 14. 7. has specially weak constitution; a form of *μ. ή έαρινή*;  
9. 11. 5. leaf of *στρύχνος* ο *υπνώδης* comp.
- μηλέα* ή *έαρινή*, *Pyrus Malus* var.?  
2. 1. 3. propagation; 4. 7. 7. size of cotton-bearing vessel comp.;  
4. 13. 2. specially short-lived;  
4. 14. 7. has weak constitution;  
(cf. *μ. ή γλυκεία*).
- μηλέα* ή *οξεία*, *Pyrus Malus* var.?  
4. 13. 2. comparatively long-lived.
- μηλέα* ή *Περσική* (*Μηδική*) citron, *Citrus Medica*  
1. 11. 4. seeds in a row; 1. 13. 4. only plstillate flower fruitful;  
4. 4. 2. peculiar to Media and Persia: described.
- μήλον* τὸ *Κυδώνιον*, see *Κυδώνιος*  
*μήλωθρον* (= *άμπελος* (4)), bryony, *Bryonia cretica*  
3. 18. 11. fruit of *σμίλαξ* (2) comp.;  
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub
- μήνανθος*, *Limnanthemum nymphoides*  
4. 10. 1-2. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 4. requires further investigation.
- μίλαξ* (= *σμίλαξ* (2)), *Smilax aspera*  
1. 10. 5. leaf described; 1. 10. 6. leaf with spinous projections;  
6. 8. 3. flower used in garlands.
- μίλος*, yew, *Taxus baccata*  
1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 5. time of flowering and fruiting; 3. 4. 6. time of fruiting; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?)  
3. 10. 2. described; 4. 1. 3. likes shade; 5. 7. 6. uses of wood.
- μίνθη* (*μίνθα*) (= *ήδυόσμον*), green mint, *Mentha viridis*  
2. 4. 1. *σισύμβριον* turns into *μ.* unless often transplanted; 6. 7. 2. said by some to have no fruit.
- μνάσιον* (= *μαλιναθάλλη*), *Cyperus esculentus*  
4. 8. 2. used for food in Egypt;  
4. 8. 6. described.
- μυάκανθος* (= *κεντρομυρρίνη*), butcher's broom, *Ruscus aculeatus*  
6. 5. 1. in list of spinous plants which have leaves as well as spines.
- μύκης*, mushroom etc., *Fungus*  
1. 1. 11. has not all the 'parts' of a plant; 1. 5. 3. stem very smooth; 1. 6. 5. no roots;  
3. 7. 6. grows on roots of trees.  
[4. 7. 2. marine growths which turn to stone];  
[4. 14. 3. name given to a disease of *έλάα*].
- μύκονον* (= *άκόνιτον* = *θηλύκονον* = *σκορπίος* (3)), wolf's bane, *Aconitum Anthora*  
6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub: belongs to 'ferula-like' plants; 6. 2. 9. do; has a fibrous stem.
- μυρίκη* (1), tamarisk, *Tamarix tetrandra*  
1. 4. 3. 'amphibious'; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 16. 4. bark of *κόμαρος* comp.;  
4. 2. 6. (?) leaf of *βαλανος* comp.;  
4. 6. 7. leaf of *δρύς* (7) comp;  
6. 2. 1. leaf of *κνέωρος* ο *μέλας* comp.; 6. 4. 8. flower of *χαμαιλέων* comp.
- μυρίκη* (2), tamarisk, *Tamarix articulata*  
5. 4. 8. Arabian: wood very strong.
- μυρρίνη* (*μύρρινος*, *μύρτος*) (fruit *μύρτον*), myrtle, *Myrtus communis*  
1. 3. 3. effect of not pruning;  
1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 2. leaves close-set and opposite;  
1. 10. 4. leaves narrow; 1. 10. 8.

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- leaves regular; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 13. 3. flower above fruit-case; 1. 14. 1. bears on last year's wood: flowers borne on new wood not fertile; 1.14.4. many cultivated forms; 2. 1. 4. propagation; 2. 2. 6. sometimes improves from seed; 2. 5. 6. propagation: trees should be planted close together; 2. 7. 2. needs much pruning; 2. 7. 3. requires pungent manure and much water; 3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 12. 4. fruit of κέδρος (1) comp.; 3. 15. 5. leaf of πύξος comp.; 3. 16. 4. flower of κόμαρος comp.; 4. 2. 6. (?) leaf of βάλανος comp.; 4. 3. 1. arrangement of fruit of λωτός (4) comp.; 4. 5. 3. does not thrive in cold regions; 4. 5. 4. grows in Pro-pontis; 5. 8. 3. grows in low-land parts of Latium: and on Circæan promontory (a dwarf kind); 6. 8. 5. very fragrant in Egypt; 9. 11. 9. leaf of τιθύμαλλος ὁ μυρτίτης comp.
- μῶλυ, moly, *Allium nigrum*
9. 15. 7. localities in Arcadia: said to be like the μ. of Homer: described: use as charm.
- ναῖρον ?
9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- νάπυ, white mustard, *Brassica alba*
1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 7. 1. 2-3; time of sowing and of germination; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well.
- νάρδον, spikenard, *Nardolachys Jaltamansi*
9. 7. 2. an Indian ἀρωμα; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα; 9. 7. 4. an unnamed Thracian plant (see App. (25)) comp.
- ναρθηκία (= νάρθηξ see 6.2.7.), ferula, *Ferula communis*
- 6.1.4. spineless: belongs to 'ferula-like, plants; 6. 2. 7. perhaps differs only in size from νάρθηξ; 6. 2. 8. described.
- νάρθηξ (= νάρθηκία see 6. 2. 7.), ferula, *Ferula communis*
1. 2. 7. flesh turns to wood; 1.6.1. core fleshy; 1. 6. 2. core mem-branous; 6. 2. 7. perhaps differs only in size from νάρθηκία; 6. 2. 8. described; 6. 3. 1. stalk of σιλφιον comp.; 9. 9. 6. stem of θαψία comp.; 9. 10. 1. leaf of both ἐλλέβοροι comp. by some; 9. 16. 2. δίκταμνον kept ἐν νάρθηκι.
- νάρκισσος (1) (= λείριον (2) 6. 6. 9.), narcissus, *Narcissus serotinus*
- 6.6.9. a coronary plant: described; 7.13.1. leaves described; 7.13.2. no stem except the flower-stem; 7. 13. 5-7. stem appears before leaves, viz. flower-stem: sequence described and comp with σκύλλα.
- νάρκισσος (2), pheasant's eye nar-cissus, *Narcissus poeticus*
6. 8. 1. flowering time.
- νάρτη ?
9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- (νηπενθές) = μήκων ἡ ὑπώδης, opium poppy, *Papaver somniferum*.
9. 15. 1. mythical: supposed effects.
- νυμφαία (= μαδωναῖς 9.13.1.), yellow water-lily, *Nuphar luteum*
9. 13. 1. fragrant: habitat and localities: leaf described: medicinal use: called μαδωναῖς in Boeotia.
- ξύρις, gladwyn, *Iris foetidissima*
- 9.8.7. superstition as to gathering.
- ξύριον (= ξίφος 7.13.1. = φάσγανον), corn-flag, *Gladiolus segetum*
6. 8. 1. flowering time; 7. 13. 2. flower-stem not the only stem.
- ξύρις (= ξίφιον 7. 13. 1. = φάσγανον), corn-flag, *Gladiolus segetum*.
- ὄχνη, wild pear, *Pyrus communis* var. *Pyraster*
2. 5. 6. trees should be planted rather far apart.
- ὄη (οῖη), sorb, *Sorbus domestica*
2. 2. 10. becomes sterile in a warm place; 2. 7. 7. 'correcting' the tree; 3. 2. 1. fruit sweeter and better ripened in wild than in cultivated form; 3. 5. 5. winter-buds; 3. 6. 5. roots shallow but strong: thick according to Arcadians; 3. 11. 3. leaf of μελία

## INDEX OF PLANTS

comp.; 3 12. 6-9. described;  
3. 15. 4. leaf of *τέρμινθος* comp.  
*οινάνθη* (1), drop-wort, *Spirea Filipendula*  
6. 6. 11. a coronary plant: grown from seed; 6. 8. 1-2. flowering time: flower described.  
*οινάνθη* (2) ἡ ἀγρία, wild vine, *Vitis silvestris*  
5. 9. 6. ἀπαγένη comp.  
*οἶσος* (= ἄγνος), withy, *Vitex Agnus-castus*  
3. 18. 1-2. has two forms, 'white' and 'black'; 6. 2. 2. used for tying-up.  
*ολόσχοινος*, see *σχοῖνος* ὁ ὅλ.  
*ολύρα*, (cultural variety of *ξεία*), rice-wheat, *Triticum dicoccum*  
8. 1. 3 sown early; 8. 4. 1. comp. in detail with other cereals;  
8. 9. 2. does not exhaust the soil much: reason.  
*ονοθήρας* (= δάφνη ἡ ἀγρία), oleander, *Nerium Oleander*  
9. 19. 1. effect on 'mind': described.  
*ονόπυθος*, *Onopordon illyricum*  
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant.  
*ονοχειλές*, bugloss, *Echium diffusum*  
7. 10. 3. flowers borne in succession.  
*ονωνίς*, rest-harrow, *Ononis antiquorum*  
6. 1. 3. has leaves as well as spines: a wild under-shrub;  
6. 5. 1. in list of spinous plants which have leaves as well as spines; 6. 5. 3-4. described: troublesome to farmers.  
*οξανάκανθος*, cotoneaster, *Cotoneaster Pyracantha*  
1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting;  
4.4.2. thorns of *μηλέα* ἡ *Περσική* comp; 6 8 3. fruit used in garlands.  
*οξύν* (ὀξύα), beech, *Fagus silvatica*  
3. 3. 8. doubt whether it has a flower; 3. 6. 5. roots few slender and 'plain' according to Arcadians: shallow - rooting;  
3. 10. 1. described; 3. 11. 5. mountain and lowland forms

compared; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 1. 4. do.; 5. 4. 4. wood does not decay in water;  
5. 6. 4. wood 'moist': used for elastic bedsteads; 5. 7. 2. wood used for keel etc. of small vessels;  
5. 7. 6. other uses of wood;  
5. 8. 3. grows very fine in lowland part of Latium.  
*οξύκεδρος* (= κέδρος (1) 3. 12. 3.), prickly cedar, *Juniperus Oxycedrus*  
3. 12. 3. some, who call ἄρκυθος a κέδρος, distinguish κέδρος (1) as *οξύκεδρος*.  
*ὀπιτιών*, ?  
7. 13. 9. (in defective sentence) belongs to τὰ βολεβώδη.  
*ὀποβάλασμον*, see *βάλασμον*.  
*ὀρειοσέλινον*, parsley, *Petroselinum sativum*  
7. 6. 3-4. distinguished from other forms of σέλινον: medicinal use.  
*ὀρειπτελέα*, wych-elms, *Ulmus montana*  
3 14.1. distinguished from *πτελέα*.  
*ὀρίγανον* (ὀρίγανος) (= ὁ. ἡ μέλαινα), marjoram, *Origanum viride* etc.  
1. 9. 4. evergreen (partly); 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6. 2. 3. two forms, 'black' and 'white' (see below): seed conspicuous: not, like *θύμος*, particular as to situation; 7. 1. 3. time of germination; 7. 1. 6. germination;  
7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 6. 1. wild form distinguished.  
*ὀρίγανος* ἡ *λευκή*, marjoram, *Origanum heracleoticum*  
6. 2. 3. distinguished from ὁ. ἡ μέλαινα.  
*ὀρίγανος* ἡ μέλαινα (= ὀρίγανον), marjoram, *Origanum viride*  
6. 2. 3. distinguished from ὁ. ἡ *λευκή*.  
*ὄρμινον*, *Salvia Horminum*  
8. 1. 4. sown later than cereals and pulses; 8. 7. 3. doubtful if eaten green by animals: described: sown at same time as *σησάμη*.  
*ὄροβίσχην*, dodder, *Cuscuta europaea*  
8. 8. 4. grows specially among ὄροβοι: reason: ἀπαρίνη comp.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

ὄροβος, bitter vetch, *Ervum Ervilia*

2. 4. 2. more digestible if sown in spring; 7. 5. 4. used to prevent ψύλλα in ραφανίς; 7. 6. 3. size of fruit of ἵπποσέλινον comp.; 8.1.4. sown both early and late; 8.2.5. flowering time; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 5. 1. more than one kind: white form sweetest; 8. 5. 2. seeds not in compartments; 8. 5. 3. shape of pod; 8. 8. 4. ὀροβάγχη grows specially among δ.; 8. 10. 1. a pest; 8. 11. 2. seed keeps well; 8. 11. 6. do. specially in hill-country; 9.20.1. shape of one kind of πῆπερι (fruit) comp.

ὄρνυξ (= στελέφουρος according to some, 7. 11. 2.), plantain, *Plantago Lagopus*.

ὄρυζον, rice, *Oryza sativa*

4. 4. 10. described.

ὄρχις (1) (μέγας), orchis, *Orchis papilionacea*

- 9.18.3. properties: leaf and stalk.

ὄρχις (2) (μικρός), orchis, *Orchis longicruris*

- 9.18.3. properties: leaf and stalk.

ὄστρνα (ὄστρνις) (ὄστρνις = ὄστρυς 3.10.3.), hop-hornbeam, *Ostrya carpinifolia*

- 1 8. 2. 'male' has more knots than 'female'; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 6. 1. slow-growing(?); 3. 10. 3. described.

ὄστρυς (= ὄστρνα 3.10.3.), hop hornbeam, *Ostrya carpinifolia*

- 3 10 3. described.

οὔγγον, *Colocasia antiquorum*

- 1.1.7. 'fruit' underground; 1.6.9. grows underground; 1. 6. 11. described.

πάδος (?=πηδός(?)), *Prunus Mahaleb*

4. 1. 3. likes shade.

παιωνία (= γλυκυσιδη 9. 8. 6.), peony, *Paeonia officinalis*

9. 8. 6. superstition as to time of digging.

παλιούρος (1), Christ's thorn, *Paliurus australis*

1. 3. 1. a typical 'shrub'; 1. 3. 2. becomes tree-like; 1.5.3. thorns on wood; 1. 10. 6. leaf with

spinous projections; 1. 10. 7. stem presently spinous; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 11. 2. fruit of σφένδαμνος comp.; 3. 18. 3. kinds: described; 4. 8. 1. to some extent grows in marshes; 4.12.4. to some extent aquatic; 6.1.3. has spines on the shoots.

παλιούρος (2) (ὁ Αἰγύπτιος), *Zizyphus Spina-Christi*

4. 3. 1-2. common in Libya; 4. 3. 3. described: distinguished from π. of Hellas.

πανάκεια (= πάνακες τὸ 'Ηράκλειον), *Oporanax hispidus*

9. 15. 7. localities.

πάνακες (τὸ Σύριον ? 9. 7. 2; 9. 10. 1.), (juice) χαλβάνη (?) 9.7.2; 9.9.2., see note), all-heal, *Ferulago galbanifera*

9. 1. 2. in list of plants whose juice is a gum; 9. 7. 2. Syrian: χαλβάνη made from π.; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα; 9. 9. 1. root fruit and juice used; 9. 9. 2. uses for medicine and perfume; 9. 11. 1. kinds (see below); 9. 11. 4. two further kinds, one fine-leaved, the other not: medicinal use.

πάνακες τὸ Ἀσκληπίειον, *Ferula nodosa*

9. 8. 7. superstition as to gathering; 9. 11. 1. described: medicinal use.

πάνακες τὸ Ἡράκλειον (= πανάκεια), *Oporanax hispidus*

9. 11. 1. in list of kinds of π.; 9. 11. 3. described: medicinal use.

πάνακες τὸ Χειρώνειον, elecampane, *Inula Helenium*

9. 11. 1. described: habitat: medicinal use.

παντάδουσα, star-thistle, *Centaurea Calciatrapa*

6. 5. 1. in list of spinous plants which have leaves as well as spines.

πάπυρος (stalk πάπυρος), papyrus, *Cyperus Papyrus*

4. 8. 2. useful for food in Egypt; 4 8 3-4. described: uses;

## INDEX OF PLANTS

4. 8. 5. stem of *σάρι* comp;  
6. 3. 1. belongs to 'ferula-like'  
plants.  
*παρθένιον*, bachelor's buttons, *Pyrethrum Parthenium*  
7. 7. 2. a *λάχανον*: needs cooking  
*πέσις*, bullfist, *Lycoperdon Bovista*  
1. 6. 5. no roots.  
*πελεκίνος*, axe-weed, *Securigera Coronilla*  
8. 8. 3. grows specially among  
*άβάκη*: name explained.  
*πενταπέτες* (= *πεντάφυλλον* 9. 13. 5.),  
cinquefoil, *Potentilla reptans*  
9. 13. 5. described.  
*πεντάφυλλον* (= *πενταπέτες* 9. 13. 5.),  
cinquefoil, *Potentilla reptans*.  
(*πέπερι*), pepper, *Piper nigrum*  
9. 20. 1. a fruit: two forms: described:  
properties: antidote to *κώνειον*; 9. 20. 2. size of  
*Κνίδιος κόκκος* comp.  
*περδίκιον*, 'partridge-plant,' *Polygonum maritimum*  
1. 6. 11. large fleshy roots.  
*περιττός* (? *στρύχνος* ὁ *περιττός*) (= *στρύχνος* ὁ *μανικός* 9. 11. 6.),  
thorn-apple, *Datura Stramonium*.  
*περσεία* (= *πέρσιον*), *Mimusops Schimperi*  
3. 3. 5. not-fruitful everywhere;  
4. 2. 1. peculiar to Egypt;  
4. 2. 5. described; 4. 2. 8. common  
in Thebaid.  
*πέρσιον* (= *περσεία*), *Mimusops Schimperi*  
2. 2. 10. effects of climate.  
*πενκέδανον*, sulphur-wort, *Peucedanum officinale*  
9. 14. 1. how long drug will keep;  
9. 15. 1. grows in Arcadia;  
9. 20. 2. properties of root: use  
in medicine: grows in Arcadia.  
*πέυκη*, fir, *Pinus* spp.  
1. 3. 6. refuses cultivation; 1. 5. 1.  
erect and tall; 1. 5. 4. wood has  
many knots; 1. 6. 1. core woody;  
1. 6. 3. root single; 2. 6. 5. roots  
not branching; 1. 8. 1. many  
knots; 1. 9. 3. evergreen (the  
wild and one cultivated kind);  
1. 10. 4. leaves like teeth of  
comb (?); 1. 10. 6. leaf spinous at  
tip; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit;  
1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 2. 2. 2.

propagated only by seed; 2. 5. 2.  
instance of very long roots;  
3. 1. 2. grows only from seed;  
3. 2. 3. evidence that it is really  
wild; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree;  
3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 8. doubt  
whether it has a flower; 3. 4. 5.  
time of budding and fruiting;  
3. 4. 6. time of fruiting; 3. 5. 1.  
periods of budding; 3. 5. 3. do.;  
3. 5. 5. winter-buds; 3. 5. 6.  
cone; 3. 6. 1. quick growing:  
even young tree fruits; 3. 6. 4.  
not deep-rooting; 3. 7. 1. dies if  
topped; 3. 7. 3. produces a  
'tuft' (*κύνταρος*); 3. 9. 1-8.  
kinds according to various  
authorities (*see below*): distinction  
from *πίτυς*; 3. 9. 4. timber,  
foliage; 3. 9. 5. further distinction  
from *πίτυς*: the disease  
'pitch-glut'; 3. 9. 7. comparison  
with *ελάτη*; 3. 9. 8. do.: core  
and callus; 4. 1. 1. likes sun;  
4. 1. 2. in shade has inferior  
timber; 4. 5. 1. in list of Northern  
trees; 4. 5. 3. does not grow  
in Pontus; 4. 15. 3. effects of  
stripping bark at various seasons;  
4. 16. 1. topping fatal;  
4. 16. 1-2. not injured by cutting  
for tar; 4. 16. 4. said to perish  
if entirely deprived of its heart-  
wood; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting  
timber; 5. 1. 4. do.; 5. 1. 9-10.  
methods of cleaving; 5. 4. 2.  
wood (when resinous) proof  
against decay; 5. 4. 4. more  
eaten by *teredon* than *ελάτη*;  
5. 4. 8. effect of salt water on  
different parts; 5. 5. 1. knotty  
parts of wood hard to work;  
5. 6. 1. wood good for struts;  
behaviour under pressure; 5. 6. 2.  
takes glue best of all woods;  
5. 7. 1-2. uses of wood in ship-  
building; 5. 7. 4-5. uses in  
house-building and crafts; 5. 8. 1.  
grows to great size in Latium,  
but finer still in Corsica; 5. 8. 3.  
grows in hill-country of Latium;  
5. 9. 3. charcoal of this wood  
preferred by smiths to that of  
*δρῦς*; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy; 9. 1. 6.  
time of tapping; 9. 2. 1. pro-

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- ductive of resin (ῥητίνη); 9. 2. 2; quality of resin; 9. 2. 3-4. Macedonians only burn the 'male' for pitch (πίττα), and the roots of the 'female'; aspect etc. required for production of good pitch; 9. 2. 5. Idaean account different (see π. ἡ 'Ιδαία and π. ἡ παραλία); 9. 2. 6. filling up the holes; 9. 2. 7. do. Idaean account; 9. 2. 8. further rules for collecting pitch: age of tree; etc.; 9. 3. 1-3. method of preparing pitch; 9. 1. 4. does not grow in Syria.
- πεύκη ἡ ἄκαρπος (= π. ἡ θήλεια = π. ἡ 'Ιδαία), Corsican pine, *Pinus Laricio*
3. 9. 2. described; 3. 9. 4. one of three wild kinds (Idaean account).
- πεύκη ἡ ἄκαρπος ('male'), Corsican pine, *Pinus Laricio*
3. 9. 2. comp. with 'female.'
- πεύκη ἡ ἄκαρπος ('female'), Aleppo pine, *Pinus halepensis*
3. 9. 2. comp. with 'male.'
- πεύκη ἡ ἄρρη (= π. ἡ παραλία = πίνυς in 3. 9. 5.), Aleppo pine, *Pinus halepensis*
3. 9. 3. timber: produces σικῆ (Mt. Ida); 3. 9. 4. one of three wild kinds (Idaean account).
- πεύκη ἡ ἡμερος (= [π. ἡ] κωνόφορος), stone pine, *Pinus Pinea*
3. 9. 1. distinguished from other kinds; 3. 9. 4. Arcadians say it is a πίνυς: timber, foliage, resin.
- πεύκη ἡ θήλεια (= π. ἡ ἄκαρπος = π. ἡ 'Ιδαία), Corsican pine, *Pinus Laricio*
3. 9. 3. timber: contains αἰγίς; 3. 9. 4. one of three wild kinds (Idaean account).
- πεύκη ἡ 'Ιδαία (= π. ἡ ἄκαρπος = π. ἡ θήλεια), Corsican pine, *Pinus Laricio*
3. 9. 1-2, described; 9. 2. 5. Idaean account of pitch (πίττα).
- [πεύκη ἡ] κωνόφορος (= π. ἡ ἡμερος), stone pine, *Pinus pinea*
2. 2. 6. seeds true; 3. 9. 4. foliage: pitch (πίττα): Arcadians say it is a πίνυς.
- πεύκη ἡ παραλία (= π. ἡ ἄρρη = πίνυς in 3. 9. 5.), Aleppo pine, *Pinus halepensis*
3. 9. 1. described; 9. 2. 5. Idaean account of pitch (πίττα).
- πήγανον (πηγάνιον), rue, *Ruta graveolens*
1. 3. 1. a typical under-shrub; 1.3.4. becomes tree-like; 1.9.4. evergreen; 1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 2. 1. 3. propagation; 6. 1. 1. may be classed as an under-shrub; 6. 5. 3. leaf of ὀνωρίς comp.; 6. 7. 3. strong plants of ἀβρότονον comp.; 7.2.1. propagation: seed slow to germinate; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 5. 1. dislikes manure; 7. 6. 1. wild form distinguished; 9. 4. 2. colour of leaf of λιθανωτός comp.; 9. 5. 1. leaf of βύλαμον comp.; 9. 9. 6. leaf of ἰσχάς (ἀπιος (2)) comp.
- πηδός (?) (= πάδος 4. 1. 3.), *Prunus Mahaleb*
5. 7. 6. uses of wood.
- πικρίς, *Urospermum microeides*
7. 11. 4. inedible: flowers in spring, but also throughout winter and summer.
- πίλος, *Polyporus igniarius* (?)
3. 7. 4. produced by δρύς; described.
- πισός, pea, *Pisum sativum*
8. 1. 1. in list of pulses; 8. 1. 4. sown late; 8. 2. 3. comes up with several leaves; 8. 3. 1. leaf; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 5. 2. seeds not in compartments; 8. 5. 3. shape of pod; 8. 10. 5. infested by 'worms.'
- πίνυς (= πίνυς ἡ ἀγρία = πεύκη ἡ ἄρρη in 3. 9. 5. = πεύκη ἡ παραλία in 3. 9. 5.), Aleppo pine, *Pinus halepensis*
1. 6. 1. core woody; 1. 10. 4. leaves like teeth of comb; 1. 10. 5. leaf spinous at tip; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 2. 2. 2. propagated only by seed; 3.1.2. do.; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 8. doubt whether it has a flower (κύνταρος); 3. 4. 5. time of budding and fruiting; 3.5.5. winter-buds; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?):

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- even young tree fruits; 3.9 4-8. *πεύκη* and *πίτυς*; 3.9.6. distinction from *πεύκη*; 3.11.1. bark of *σφένδαμνος* comp.; 3.17.1. bark of *φελλός* comp.; 4.5.3. does not grow in Pontus; 4.14.8. if topped, becomes barren, but is not destroyed; 4.16.1. topping fatal; 5.1.2. time of cutting timber; 5.1.4. do.; 5.1.5-6. timber comp. with *ἐλάτη*; 5.7.1. used in Cyprus for ship-building instead of *πεύκη*; 5.7.3. wood used for bent-wood work in triremes; 5.7.5. use of wood in ship-building and house-building; soon rots; 5.7.8. use of wood for carpenter's tools; 5.9.2. charcoal of this wood used in silver mines; 9.1.2. sap gummy; 9.2.1. production of resin (*ῥητίνη*); 9.2.2. quality of resin; 9.2.3. said to be burnt for pitch (*πίττα*) in Syria.
- πίτυς* ἡ *ἀγρία* (= *πίτυς* = *πεύκη* ἡ *ἄρρη* = *πεύκη* ἡ *παραλία* in 3.9.5.) *Pinus halepensis* (mountain form)
- 1.9.3. evergreen; 3.3.1. a mountain tree (Macedonian).
- πίτυς* ἡ *φθειροποιός*, *Pinus brutia*
- 2.2.6. seeds come true.
- πλάτανος*, plane, *Platanus orientalis*
- 1.4.2. lives near water; 1.6.3. roots many and long; 1.7.1. example of long roots; 1.8.5. diseased formation (*κραδή*); 1.9.5. evergreen specimens; 1.10.4. leaves broad; 1.10.7. attachment of leaf-stalk; 3.1.1. propagation; 3.1.3. produces seed and seedlings; 3.3.3. evergreen in some places; 3.4.2. time of budding; 3.6.1. quick growing; 3.11.1. leaf of *σφένδαμνος* comp.; 3.11.4. has a sort of winter-bud like that of *μελία*; 4.5.6. found at only one place on Adriatic coast: rare in Italy; 4.5.7. common in some Mediterranean regions; 4.7.4. size of unnamed Arabian tree (see App. 12a) comp.; 4.8.1. grows partially in water; not common on Nile; 4.13.2. trees said to have been planted by Agamemnon; 4.15.2. bark cracks; 4.16.2. grows again after being cut or blown down: instances; 5.3.4. character of wood; 5.7.3. wood used for bent-wood work: soon decays; 5.9.4. wood makes an evil smoke when burnt for charcoal; 9.11.6. 'head' of *στρύχνης* ὁ *μανικός* comp. to fruit of *π.*

*πλατύφυλλος* (*δρύς*) see *δρύς* (6).

*πόα*, grass

    - 7.8.3. leaves 'on the ground.'

*πόα* ἡ *Μηδική*, see *Μηδική*.

*πόθος* (1), larkspur, *Delphinium orientale*

    - 6.8.3. a coronary plant: flowers in summer: flower like *ὑάκινθος*.

*πόθος* (2) (= *ἀσφόδελος*), *asphodel*, *Asphodelus ramosus*

    - 6.8.3. a coronary plant: flowers in summer: flower white: used in connexion with funerals.

*πόλιον*, hulkwort, *Teucrium Polium*

    - 1.10.4. leaves fleshy: prevents moth in clothes; 2.8.3. used for caprification; 7.10.5. evergreen.

*πολύκανθος*, *Carduus acanthoides*

    - 6.4.3. a 'thistle-like' plant.

*πολυπόδιον*, polypody, *Polypodium vulgare*

    - 9.13.6. peculiar shape: described: named from cuttle-fish (*πολύπους*), and used as charm to prevent polyp (*πολύπους*): other medicinal use: habitat; 9.20.4. comes up after rain: has no seed.

*πράσιον*, *Marrubium* spp.

    - 6.1.4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6.2.5. two kinds; see below.

*πράσιον* (1), horehound, *Marrubium peregrinum*

    - 6.2.5. leaf described: used by druggists.

*πράσιον* (2), horehound, *Marrubium vulgare*

    - 6.2.5. leaf described.

*πράσον* (1), leek, *Allium Porrum*

    - 7.1.2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7.1.6. germina-



# INDEX OF PLANTS

- tion; 7. 1. 7. bears fruit in second year; stem single; 7. 2. 2. 3. root makes offsets; 7. 3. 4. seed borne at top: method of sowing; 7. 4. 10. coat often like γήτειον; 7. 4. 11. size of 'head' of one year old σκόροδον comp.; 7. 5. 3. improved by transplanting; 7. 5. 4. pests; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well; 7. 8. 2. stem smooth, not branched; 9. 10. 1. leaf of ἐλλέβορος ὁ λευκός comp. by some.
- πράσον (2) (= ζώστηρ 4. 6. 2. = φύκος (1)); grass-wrack, *Posidonia oceanica*
4. 6. 2. = ζώστηρ, q.v.
- πράσον (3) (= φύκος (2)), ribband-weed, *Laminaria saccharina*
4. 6. 4. carried by current from Atlantic into Mediterranean: described; 4. 7. 1. refers to 4. 6. 4.
- πρίνος, kermes-oak, *Quercus coccifera*
1. 6. 1. core hard and close; 1. 6. 2. core large and conspicuous; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 6. leaves with spinous projections; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 6. does not always fruit; 3. 4. 1. takes a year to ripen fruit; 3. 4. 4-6; time of fruiting; 3. 6. 4. deep rooting; 3. 7. 3. produces a scarlet 'berry'; 3. 16. 1. described; 3. 16. 2. σμίλαξ (1) comp.; 3. 16. 3. φελλόδρυς δρύς and π. comp.; 3. 16. 4. leaf of κόμαρος comp.; 4. 3. 1. leaf of λωτός (4) comp; effect of stripping bark in winter; 5. 4. 8. wood of μυρική (2) comp. for strength; 5. 5. 4. core not obvious, but exists; 5. 7. 6. uses of wood; 5. 9. 7. wood used for fire-sticks; 9. 4. 3. leaf of σμύρνα comp. by some.
- προύμνη (= σποδίας), bullace, *Prunus insititia*
9. 1. 2. sap gummy.
- πτελέα, elm, *Ulmus glabra*
1. 8. 5. diseased formation (κραδή); 1. 10. 1. leaves inverted in summer; 1. 10. 6. leaves notched; 3. 1. 1. propagation; 3. 1. 2. seems to have no fruit yet re-
- produces itself: instance; 3. 1. 8. do.: proof; 3. 3. 1. tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 4. a question if it bears fruit; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 1. quick growing; 3. 7. 3. produces a βότρυν and leaf-galls; 3. 11. 5. mountain and lowland forms comp.; 3. 14. 1. description: kinds; 3. 15. 4. leaf-galls of τέρμινθος comp.; 3. 17. 3. leaf of Idaean κολοῖτία comp.; 3. 17. 5. leaf of συκὴ ἡ Ἰδαία comp.; 3. 18. 5. leaf of ῥοῦς comp.; 4. 2. 3. leaf of συκὴ ἡ Κυπρία comp.; 4. 5. 3. grows in Pontus; 4. 5. 7. common in some Mediterranean regions; 4. 9. 2. leaf of τρίβολος (3) comp.; 4. 15. 2. survives stripping of bark; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 3. 4. character of wood; 5. 3. 5. method of making door-hinges of the wood; 5. 4. 3. wood does not decay if exposed to air; 5. 6. 4. wood strong: used for door-hinges; 5. 7. 3. wood used for bent-wood work: use in shipbuilding; 5. 7. 6. other uses of wood; 5. 7. 8. uses of wood for carpenter's tools; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy: gum contained in the 'bag'; 9. 4. 3. leaf of σμύρνα comp. (by some).
- πτερίς, fern, *Nephrodium Filix-mas*
1. 10. 5 frond described; 4. 2. 11. leaf of an unnamed Memphian shrub (see App. (2)) comp.; 8. 7. 7. destroyed by manure or by sheep sleeping on it; 9. 13. 6. leaf of πολυπόδιον comp. to π. ἡ μεγάλη; 9. 18. 8. distinguished from θηλύπτερις; 9. 20. 5. root only of use: medicinal use: time of gathering.
- πύθος, box, *Buxus sempervirens*
1. 5. 4. wood heavy; 1. 5. 5. do. because of close grain; 1. 6. 2. core not conspicuous; 1. 8. 2. few knots; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 6. time of fruiting: fruit inedible; 3. 6. 1. slow growing (?); 3. 15. 5. described; 4. 4. 1. hard to grow in Baby-

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- lon; 4. 5. 1. in list of Northern trees; 5. 3. 1. wood very close and heavy; 5. 3. 7. images made from the wood; 5. 4. 1. wood hard and heavy; 5. 4. 2. wood proof against decay; 5. 4. 5. wood not attacked by σκώληξ; 5. 5. 2. core not obvious: wherefore wood not apt to 'draw'; 5. 5. 4. core not obvious but exists; 5. 7. 7. uses of wood: that grown on Mount Olympus useless; 5. 7. 8. uses of wood for carpenter's tools; 9. 20. 4. wood of έβενος comp.
- πυρός, wheat, *Triticum vulgare*
- 1 5.2. 'bark' fibrous; 1.6.5. roots numerous; 1.6.6. do.; 1.11.2. seeds in a husk; 1.11.5. each seed separately attached; 2.2.9. said to turn sometimes into κριθή; 2.4.1. turns into αἶρα: wild π. turns into cultivated with cultivation; 4.4.9. πυροί grow in India; 4.10.3. taste of seeds of σίδη comp.; 7.11.2. inflorescence and general appearance of στελέφονος comp.; 8. 1. 1. in list of cereals; 8. 1. 3. sown early, but after κριθή; 8. 1. 4. one kind sown late; 8. 1. 5. time of germination; 8. 2. 1. germination described; 8. 2. 3. single leaf first appears; roots described; 8. 2. 6. time of maturing seed; 8. 2. 7. time of harvest in Hellas and in Egypt; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 4. 1-2. compared in detail with other cereals; 8. 4. 3-5. kinds distinguished, local and other (see below); 8. 6. 1. conditions for sowing; 8. 6. 4. suitable soil; 8. 6. 5-6. rain hurtful when π. is in flower: and when it is ripe, but less so than to κριθή; 8. 7. 1. said to change into αἶρα under certain conditions; 8. 7. 4. effect of cutting down or grazing young crop in Thessaly and in Babylon; 8.7.5. in many places comes up again next year; etc.; 8.8.2. favourable localities; 8. 8. 3. degenerates into αἶρα,—or else αἶρα is specially apt to grow among π.;
8. 9. 1. exhausts the soil most of cereals; 8. 10. 1. a pest of π.; 8. 10. 2. wheat-rust; 8 10 3. effects of weather; 8.10.4. effects of 'worms' in various localities; 8. 11. 1. seed keeps better than κριθή; 8. 11. 3. grain stored without drying; 8. 11. 7. effect of mixing earth with the grain in some places: at Babylon grain jumps on the threshing-floor: reason.
- πυρός ό Αιγύπτιος, *Triticum vulgare* var.
8. 4. 3. in list of varieties of π.;
8. 4. 6. escapes αἶρα.
- πυρός ό Άλεξάνδρειος, *Triticum vulgare* var.
8. 4. 3. in list of varieties.
- πυρός ό Άσσύριος, *Triticum vulgare* var.
8. 4. 3. in list of varieties.
- πυρός ό Βοιωτίος, *Triticum vulgare* var.
8. 4. 5. heaviest grain.
- πυρός ό Θράκιος, *Triticum vulgare* var.
8. 4. 3. grain has many coats.
- πυρός ό καχυρδίας
8. 4. 3. thick stem.
- πυρός ό κριθανίας
8. 2. 3. branching.
- πυρός ό Λακωνικός
8. 4. 5. grain light.
- πυρός ό Λιβυικός
8. 4. 3. grain not long in husk: thick stem.
- πυρός ό Ποντικός
8. 4. 3.-4. lightest grain; 8. 4. 5. variation in grain; 8.4.6. escapes αἶρα.
- πυρός ό σιτανίας
8. 2. 3. branching.
- πυρός ό Σικελός
8. 4. 3., 8. 4. 5. heaviest grain of kinds imported to Hellas; 8.4.6. fairly free from αἶρα, especially that of Akragas: infested with μελάμπυρον.
- πυρός ό σπλεγγύς
8. 4. 3. in list of varieties, see note
- ράμνος, buckthorn, *Rhamnus* spp.
- 1 5. 3. stem fleshy; 1. 9. 4. evergreen; 3. 18. 12. cluster of ber-

# INDEX OF PLANTS

ries of *συμλαξ* (2) comp.; 5. 9. 7. wood used for fire-sticks, especially for the stationary piece.

*ράμνος ἡ λευκή*, buckthorn, *Rhamnus graeca*

3. 18. 2. distinguished from *ρ. ἡ μέλαινα*.

*ράμνος ἡ μέλαινα*, buckthorn, *Rhamnus oleoides*

3. 18. 2. distinguished from *ρ. ἡ λευκή*.

*ράφανίς*, radish, *Raphanus sativus*

1. 2. 7. flesh of root turns to wood; 1. 6. 6. root fleshy; 1. 6. 7. root of 'bark' and fleshy; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 1. 5. do.; 7. 1. 7. germination; 7. 2. 5. survives and increases in size under a heap of soil; 7. 2. 5-6. root described; 7. 2. 8. do.; 7. 3. 2. seeds described; 7. 3. 4. seed borne at side; 7. 4. 1-2. several kinds (described) *Κορινθία*, *Κλεωναία*, *Λειοθασία*, (or *Θρακία*), *ἀμωρέα* (see below), *Βοιωτία*, and one with leaf like *εὐζωμον*; 7. 4. 3. effects of weather; 7. 5. 3. improved by transplanting; 7. 5. 4. pests; 7. 6. 2. root of wild *γογγυλίσ* comp.; 7. 6. 3. root of *ἵπποσέλινον* comp.; 7. 8. 2. stem branched; 9. 9. 1. method of cutting root of *μανδραγόρας* (1) comp.; 9. 12. 1. method of cutting up *χαμαιλέον* ὁ *λευκός* for medicinal use comp.

*ράφανίς ἡ ἀμωρέα*, horse-radish (?)

7. 4. 2. in list of varieties of *ρ.*

*ράφανος*, cabbage, *Brassica cretica*

1. 3. 4. becomes tree-like; 1. 6. 6. root single; 1. 9. 4. evergreen; 1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 1. 14. 2. bears fruit on top and at side; 4. 4. 12. size of an unnamed Asian shrub (see App. (10)) comp.; 4. 18. 6. spoils flavour of grape: vine-shoot turns away from *ρ.*; whence use of *ρ.* as cure for effects of wine; 6. 1. 2. may be classed as an under-shrub; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and of germination; 7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 2. 4. grows again when stem is cut: effect on flavour;

7. 4. 1. several kinds; 7. 4. 4. three kinds distinguished, *οὐλόφυλλος*, *λειόφυλλος*, *ἀγρία* (see below); 7. 5. 3. bears transplanting; 7. 5. 4. pests; 7. 6. 1-2. wild form distinguished.

*ράφανος ἡ ἀγρία* (= *κεραίς* 9. 15. 5.), charlock, *Raphanus Raphanistrum*

7. 4. 4. see *ράφανος*; 7. 6. 1-2. see *ράφανος*; 9. 15. 5. Arcadian: a drug: also called *κεραίς*.

*ράφανος ἡ ὀρεία* (= *ἀπίος* (2) = *ἰσχάς*), spurge, *Euphorbia Aπῖος*

9. 12. 1. used to kill a pig, mixed with *χαμαιλέον* ὁ *λευκός*.

*ρόά* (*ροά*), (flower *κύνινος*), pomegranate, *Punica Granatum*

1. 3. 3. a tree which has not however a single stem; 1. 5. 1. crooked and low; 1. 6. 1. core fleshy; 1. 6. 3. few roots; 1. 6. 4. shallow rooting; 1. 6. 5. roots branching upwards; 1. 9. 1. much branched; 1. 10. 4. leaves narrow; 1. 10. 10. fruit made of fibre and skin; 1. 11. 4. seeds all together in a single case; 1. 11. 5. each fruit separately attached (?); 1. 11. 6. arrangement of stones; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 13. 1. flower red; 1. 13. 3. flower above fruit-case; 1. 13. 4. some kinds sterile; 1. 13. 5. flower described; 1. 14. 1. bears on last year's wood; 1. 14. 4. many cultivated forms; 2. 1. 2-3. propagation; 2. 2. 4. degenerates from seed; 2. 2. 5. do. details; 2. 2. 7. in some places improves from seed; 2. 2. 9. effects of cultivation; 2. 2. 10. ref. to 2. 2. 9.; 2. 2. 11. effect of good cultivation; 2. 3. 1. sometimes changes character; 2. 3. 2. ref. to 2. 2. 7.; 2. 3. 3. sometimes bears fruit on the stem; 2. 5. 5. propagation; 2. 5. 6. trees should be planted close together; 2. 6. 8. size of fruit of a kind of *φοινίξ* (1) comp.; 2. 6. 12. cuttings set upside down; 2. 7. 1. water-loving; 2. 7. 3. requires pungent manure and much water; 2. 8. 1. apt to

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- shed immature fruit; 3. 5. 4. autumn budding; 3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 18. 4. fruit and growth of *κυνόσβατος* comp.; 3.18.13. size and leaf of *ἐνώνυμος* comp.; 4. 3. 3. stones eaten with fruit; 4. 5. 3. grows well in Pontus with shelter; 4. 5. 4. grows on Mt. Timolus and Mysian Olympus; 4. 10. 3. flower of *σίδη* comp.; seeds of *σίδη* contrasted; 4. 13. 2. short-lived, especially the stoneless form (*see below*); 4. 13. 3. after decaying shoots again from same stock; 4. 14. 10. fruit gets worm-eaten; 4. 14. 12. uninjured by special winds; 4. 16. 1. survives splitting of stem; 6.1.3. has spines on the shoots; 7.13.4. fruit kept by inserting stalk in bulb of *σκόλλα*; 9. 5. 2. size of *βάλσαμον* comp.
- ρόα ἢ ἀπύρηνος, *Punica Granatum* var.
4. 13. 2. specially short-lived.
- ρόδωνία (flower *ρόδον*, fruit *μήλον* 6. 6. 6.), rose, *Rosa centifolia* etc.
1. 9. 4. evergreen; 1. 13. 1. colour alluded to; 1. 13. 2. has a 'two-fold' flower; 1. 13. 3. flower above fruit-case; 1.13.5. flower of *ρόα* comp.; 2. 2. 1. propagation; 4. 8. 7. colour of flower of *κύαμος* ὁ Αἰγύπτιος comp.; 4.10.3. sepals of *σίδη* comp.; 6. 1. 1. in list of under-shrubs; 6.1.3. has spines on the shoots; 6. 6. 4-6. a cultivated under-shrub: a coronary plant; many kinds: localities: propagation and cultivation; 6.8.2. flowering time; 6. 8. 5. bush lives five years and then degenerates unless pruned: position and climate important for fragrance: flowers very early in Egypt; 6. 8. 6. blooms well on mountains, but has inferior scent; 9. 19. 1. colour of flower of *ὀνοθής* comp.
- ρόδον τὸ ἄγριον, wild rose, *Rosa dumetorum*
6. 2. 1. flower of *κίσθος* comp.
- ρόυς (drug *ρόυς* 3. 18. 5.), sumach, *Rhus Coriaria*
3. 18. 1. has more than one form (*see below*); 3. 18. 5. 'male' and 'female' forms: described: used for dyeing: produces a drug called *ρόυς*.
- ρόυς ἢ λευκή
3. 18. 2. distinguished from *ρ.* ἢ μέλαινα.
- ρόυς ἢ μέλαινα
3. 18. 2. distinguished from *ρ.* ἢ λευκή
- ρύτρος, globe-thistle, *Echinops spinosus*
6. 4. 4. a 'thistle-like' plant: branches from the top.
- σάρι (stalk *σάρι*), *Cyperus auricomus*
4. 8. 2. useful for food in Egypt; 4. 8. 5. described.
- σέλιον, celery, *Apium graveolens*
- 1.2.2. takes two years to mature; 1. 6. 6. root single, but with large side-growths; 1.9.4. evergreen (partly); 1. 10. 7. time of leaf-growth; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 2. 4. 3. effect of trampling and rolling in seed; 6. 3. 1. leaf of *σίλφιον* comp.; 7. 1.2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7. 1. 6. germination; 7. 1. 7. bears fruit in second year; 7. 2. 2. root makes offsets; 7. 2. 5. root described; 7. 2. 8. do.; 7. 3. 4-5. methods of sowing and transplanting; 7. 4. 6. kinds distinguished; 7. 5. 3. bears transplanting; 7.6.3. wild forms (*ἵπποσέλιον*, *ἐλαιοσέλιον*, *ὄρειοσέλιον*) distinguished.
- σέλιον τὸ ἔλειον (= *ἐλαιοσέλιον*), marsh celery, *Apium graveolens*
4. 8. 1. in list of marsh plants; 9. 11. 1. leaf of *λίβανωτις* ἢ *κάρπιμος* comp.
- σίσελι, hartwort, *Tordylium officinale*
9. 15. 5. an Arcadian drug.
- σημύδα (?), Judas-tree, *Cercis Siliquastrum*
3. 14. 4. described; 5. 7. 7. (?) wood used for walking-sticks.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

**σήσαμον** (seed *σήσαμη*), sesame, *Sesamum indicum*

- 1.11.2. seed-vessel; 3.13.6. seeds of berry of *ἀκτῆ* comp.; 3.18.13. fruit of *εὐώνυμος* comp.; 4.8.14. size of fruit of an unnamed Egyptian plant (see App. (20)) comp.; 6.5.3. seed of a kind of *τριβόλος* comp.; 8.1.1. in list of 'summer crops' distinct from cereals and pulses; 8.1.4. sown later than cereals and pulses; 8.2.6. time of maturing seed; 8.3.1. leaf; 8.3.2. stem; 8.3.3. flower; 8.3.4. seed abundant; 8.5.1. a white kind, which is the sweetest; 8.5.2. seeds in compartments; 8.6.1. rain not beneficial after sowing; 8.7.3. not eaten green by any animal: *ἐρύσιμον* comp.: sown at same time as *ὄρμιον*; 8.9.3. exhausts the soil; 9.9.2. fruit of *ἐλλέβορος* comp.; 9.14.4. do.

**σίδη**, waterlily, *Nymphaea alba*

- 4.10.1-2. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4.10.3-4. described: size of fruit of *βούτομος* comp. (to seed of *σ.*); 4.10.6. grows only in water; 4.10.7. part used for food.

**σκύα**, bottle-gourd, *Lagenaria vulgaris*

- 1.11.4. seeds in a row; 1.13.3. flower attached above fruit; 7.2.9. root described; 7.3.5. takes shape of vessel in which it is grown.

**σίκνος** (*σίκνον*), cucumber, *Cucumis sativus*

- 1.10.10. fruit made of flesh and fibre; 1.12.2. taste of sap; 1.13.3. flower attached above fruit; 1.13.4. some flowers sterile; 2.7.5. use of dust; 7.1.2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7.1.6. germination; 7.2.9. root described; 7.3.1. long in flower; flower described; 7.3.5. effect of soaking seed in milk; 7.4.1. several kinds; 7.4.6. do. viz. *Δακωνικός*, *σκυταλίας*, *Βούτιος*; 7.5.2. said to dislike rain-water; 7.5.3. bears trans-

planting; 7.5.5. seed does not keep well; 7.5.6. seed not liable to pests; 7.13.1. leaf of *ἄρον* comp.

**σίγκνος ὁ ἄγιος**, (drug *ελατήριον* 9.9.4.), squirting cucumber, *Ecballium Elaterium*

- 4.5.1. in list of Northern plants; 7.6.4. quite distinct from cultivated *σ.*; 7.8.1. stem 'on the ground'; 9.9.4. medicinal use: *ελατήριον* made from seed; 9.4.1-2. how long drug will keep: conditions; 9.15.6. grows in Arcadia.

**σίλφιον** (leaf *μάσπετον* 6.3.1), (seed *φύλλον*, *μαγύδαρις* 6.3.4), silphium, *Ferula tingitana*

- 1.6.12. root most characteristic part; 3.1.6. comes up spontaneously; 3.2.1. fruits better in wild state; 4.3.1. grows in Cyrenaica; 4.8.7. consideration postponed; 6.3.1-2. described: belongs to 'ferula-like' plants: rules as to cutting and treatment; 6.3.3. distribution; 6.3.4-6. another account, inconsistent in some points; 6.5.2. grows in mountain country; 7.3.2. seeds of *ἀδρά- φαξς* comp.; 9.1.3. stem and root produce a gum; 9.1.4. gum pungent; 9.1.7. time of tapping: details about juices of stem and root.

**σισύμβριον**, bergamot-mint, *Mentha aquatica*

- 1.3.1.(?) a typical 'under-shrub'; 2.1.3. propagation; 2.4.1. turns into *μίνθη*, unless often transplanted; 6.1.1. in list of under-shrubs; 6.6.2. a cultivated under-shrub; a coronary plant: the whole plant scented; 6.6.3. woody: only one form; 6.7.2. said by some to have no fruit: but the wild form certainly seeds; 6.7.4. roots described; 6.7.6. cultivation; 9.16.3. leaf of *δίκταμνον* (*ἕτερον*) comp.

**σισυρήγγιον**, Barbary nut, *Iris Sisyrinchium*

- 1.10.7. attachment of leaves;

## INDEX OF PLANTS

7. 13. 9 (in defective sentence) belongs to τὰ βολβώδη: peculiar growth of root: upper part edible.
- σκαλίας, see κάκτος (2).
- σκαμμωνία, scammony, *Convolvulus Scammonia*
4. 5. 1. seeks cold regions; 9. 1. 3. root produces a gum; 9. 1. 4. gum has medicinal properties; 9. 9. 1. root and juice used; 9. 20. 5. juice only used.
- σκάνδιξ, wild chervil, *Scandix Pecten-Veneris*
- 7.7.1 a λάχανον; a class of plants called σκανδικώδη; 7. 8. 1. stem 'on the ground.'
- σκόλλα, squill, *Urginea maritima*
1. 6. 7. root in scales; 1. 6. 8. root fleshy and bark-like: root not tapering; 1. 6. 9. no side roots; 1. 10. 7. no leaf-stalk: attachment of leaves; 2. 5. 5. cuttings of σκῆ etc. set in the bulb. of σ; 7. 2. 2. root makes offsets; 7. 4. 12. formation of roots of κρόμμον comp.; 7. 9. 4., cf. 1.6.7.; 7.12.1. root edible (of the kind called ἡ Ἐπιμενίδειος) (see below); 7. 13. 1. leaves described; 7. 13. 2. flower-stem not the only stem; 7. 13. 3. 'successive' flowering of ἀσφόδελος comp.; 7. 13. 4. very tenacious of life: hence various uses: use as a charm; 7.13.5-7. stem appears before leaves: sequence described and comp. with that of νάρκισσος (1); 9. 18. 3. leaf of ἔργις comp.
- σκόλλα ἡ Ἐπιμενίδειος, French sparrow-grass, *Ornithogalum pyrenaicum*
7. 12. 1. see above.
- σκόλυμος (= ? λειμωνία 6.4.3.), golden thistle, *Scolymus hispanicus*
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant: leaves spinous; 6.4. 4. time of flowering; 6. 4. 7. described; 7. 4. 5. leaf of θριδακίνη ἡ Λακωνική comp.; 7. 10. 1. grows and flowers entirely in summer; 7. 15. 1. flowering depends on the heavenly bodies; 9. 12. 1. leaf of χαμαιλέων ὁ λευκός comp.; 9. 13. 4. an unnamed plant of Tegea comp.
- σκολόπενδρον, hart's tongue, *Scolopendrium vulgare*
9. 18. 7. leaf of ἡμίονον comp.
- σκόροδον (σκόροδον), garlic, *Allium sativum*
1. 6. 9. no side-roots; 1. 10. 7. attachment of leaves; 7. 1. 7. stem single; 7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 2. 3. offsets specially numerous; 7. 4. 1. several kinds; 7. 4. 7. do.; 7. 4. 11. do.; e.g. τὸ Κύπριον: cultivation etc.; 7. 4. 12. formation of roots of κρόμμον contrasted; 7. 8. 2. stem smooth, not branched; 7. 13. 4. grows in colonies because of offsets; 9. 8. 6. eaten as precaution by diggers of ἑλλέβορος
- σκορπίος (1), *Genista acanthoclada*
6. 1. 3. has spines for leaves; 6. 4. 1. one of very few plants which are altogether spinous; 6. 4. 2. described.
- σκορπίος (2), leopard's bane, *Doronicum cordatum*
9. 18. 6. peculiar shape, resembles scorpion, and is useful against its sting.
- σκορπίος (3) (? σκορπίον) (= ἀκονίτον = θηλύφονον 9.18.2. = μύσφονον), wolf's bane, *Aconitum Anthora*
9. 18. 2. properties: habitat: fatal to scorpion.
- σκυθική (= γλυκεία, sc. ρίζα 9.13.2.), liquorice, *Glycyrrhiza glabra*
9. 13. 2. fragrant: grows on Lake Malotis: medicinal use: use against thirst.
- σμίλαξ (1), holm-oak, *Quercus Ilex tyrica*
3. 16. 2. described.
- σμίλαξ (?) (2) (= μίλαξ), smilax, *Smilax aspera*
3. 18. 11-12. described; 7. 8. 1. stem clasping.
- σμύρνα (gum σμύρνα 9.1. 2.), myrrh, *Balsamodendron Myrrha*
- 4.4.12. gum of an Arian ἄκανθα (see App. (9)) comp.; 4. 4. 14. in list of Oriental ἀρώματα; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy (called σμύρνα); 9. 1. 6. time of tapping; 9. 4. 1. collec-

## INDEX OF PLANTS

- tion of gum; 9. 4. 2. Arabian: habitat; 9. 4. 3. described (two accounts); 9. 4. 4-10. accounts of travellers; 9. 7. 3. in list of *ἀρώματα*.
- σόνχος*, sow-thistle, *Sonchus Nymanii*  
4. 6. 10. growth of *φαινίξ* (2) comp.;  
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant, but has not the characteristic 'head' of such plants; 6. 4. 5. stalk of a kind of *ἄκανος* comp.; 6. 4. 8. root.
- σπάλαξ* (?) (= *ἐφήμερον*), meadow saffron, *Colchicum parnassicum*  
1. 6. 11. large fleshy roots.
- σπειραία*, privet, *Ligustrum vulgare*  
1. 14. 2. bears fruit at top; 6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub.
- (*σπογγία*, sponge  
4. 6. 5. found on North Coast of Crete; 4. 6. 10. distinguished from 'plants'.)
- σποδιάς* (= *προύμνη*), bullace, *Prunus insititia*  
3. 6. 4. very shallow rooting: few roots.
- σταλέφουρος* (= *ἀρνόγλωσσον* 7. 11. 2. according to some) (= *ὄρνυξ* 7. 11. 2. according to some), plantain, *Plantago Lagopus*
- στοιβή* (= *φέως* 6. 1. 3.), *Poterium spinosum*  
1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 6. 1. 3. has leaves as well as spines: a wild under-shrub; 6. 5. 1. in list of such plants; 6. 5. 2. has no spines on the leaves.
- στρουθίον* (1) = (*κυδώνιος*), quince, *Cydonia vulgaris*  
2. 2. 5. seed produces *κυδώνιος*.
- στρουθίον* (2) (= *στρούθος*), soap-wort, *Saponaria officinalis*  
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant, but has not the characteristic 'head' of such plants; 6. 8. 3. a coronary plant: flowering time: scentless.
- στρούθος* (= *στρουθίον* (2)), soap-wort, *Saponaria officinalis*  
9. 12. 5. leaf of *μήκων* ἢ *Ἡρακλεία* comp.
- στρύχνος*  
7. 15. 4. several plants called by this name, which have nothing in common but the name: three mentioned (*see below*); 9. 11. 5-6. kinds (*see below*); 9. 15. 5. two kinds grow in Arcadia.
- στρύχνος ὁ ἐδώδιμος*, garden nightshade, *Solanum nigrum*  
3. 18. 11. fruit of *σμίλαξ* (2) comp.; 7. 7. 2. a *λάχανον*: can be eaten raw; 7. 15. 4. more or less cultivated: has berries.
- στρύχνος ὁ μανικός* (= *θρύσος* 9. 11. 6. = *περιττός* 9. 11. 6) thorn-apple, *Datura Stramonium*  
7. 15. 4. causes madness, or, in a large dose, death; 9. 11. 6. described: medicinal use; 9. 19. 1. effect on 'mind'.
- στρύχνος ὁ ὑπνώδης*, *Withania somnifera*  
7. 15. 4. induces sleep; 9. 11. 5. described: medicinal use: habitat.
- στύραξ*, storax, *Storax officinalis*  
9. 7. 3. in list of *ἀρώματα*.
- συκάμινος*, mulberry, *Morus nigra*  
1. 6. 1. core hard and close: 1. 9. 7. time of leafing; 1. 10. 10. fruit made of fibre and skin; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 13. 1. flower 'downy'; 1. 13. 4. attachment of flower; 5. 3. 4. character of wood; 5. 4. 2. do: wood little liable to decay: turns black when old; 5. 6. 2. wood tough and easy to bend: uses; 5. 7. 3. wood used for bent-wood work: use in ship-building.
- συκάμινος ἡ Αἰγυπτία*, sycamore, *Ficus Sycomorus*  
1. 1. 7. position of fruit; 1. 13. 2. bears on stem; 4. 1. 5. barren in uncongenial climate; 4. 2. 1-2. peculiar to Egypt: described; 4. 2. 4. *κερώνια* distinguished.
- συκὴ* (1) (fruit *σῦκον*), fig, *Ficus Carica*  
1. 3. 1. a typical 'tree'; 1. 3. 5. evergreen at Elephantine; 1. 5. 1. crooked and low; 1. 5. 2. bark smooth: bark in one layer; 1. 5. 3. wood fleshy; 1. 5. 3. wood not fibrous; 1. 6. 1. core fleshy; 1. 6. 3. roots many and long; 1. 6. 4. roots crooked; 1. 7. 2. roots very long; 1. 8. 1.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

no knots; 1. 8. 2. has less knots than *ἐρινεός*; 1. 8. 5. young branches 'roughest'; 1. 9. 7. time of shedding leaves; 1. 10. 4. leaves broad; 1. 10. 5. leaf divided; etc.; 1. 10. 8. leaves made of 'bark' and flesh; 1. 11. 4. seeds all together in a single case; 1. 11. 6. arrangement of seeds; 1. 12. 1. taste of fruit; 1. 12. 2. taste of sap; 1. 14. 1. bears on new shoots: sometimes also on old wood (?); 1. 14. 4. cultivated form of *ἐρινεός*: many cultivated forms; 2. 1. 2. propagation; 2. 2. 4. degenerates from seed: etc.; 2. 2. 12. cannot be made out of *ἐρινεός* by cultivation; 2. 3. 1. sometimes changes to *ἐρινεός* spontaneously; 2. 3. 3. sometimes bears fruit from behind the leaves: other anomalies; 2. 5. 3. grafting; 2. 5. 4. propagation; 2. 5. 5. cuttings set in a bulb of *σκόλλη*; 2. 5. 6. easily propagated: trees should be planted far apart; 2. 5. 7. low ground suitable; 2. 6. 6. dates said to vary as much as figs in colour etc.; 2. 6. 12. cuttings set upside down; 2. 7. 1. effects of watering; 2. 7. 5. use of dust; 2. 7. 6. root-pruning etc.; 2. 8. 1. apt to shed immature fruit: capriflication; 2. 8. 2-4. do. and pseudocapriflication; 3. 3. 8. sheds *ἐρινά*; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 5. 4. autumn budding; 3. 6. 2. formation of buds; 3. 7. 3. produces *ἐρινά* and *ὀλυνθοί*; [3. 17. 4. a local Idaean kind (see below); 3. 17. 5. do. described;] 4. 2. 3. taste of fruit of σ. ἢ *Κυπρία* comp.; 4. 4. 4. fruit of ἢ *συκὴ* 'Ἰνδική' comp.; 4. 5. 3. grows well in Pontus with shelter; 4. 7. 7. size of marine trees of island of Tylos comp.; 4. 13. 1. shorter-lived than *ἐρινεός*; 4. 13. 2. short-lived; 4. 14. 2. apt to get worm-eaten: young plants liable to 'sunsorch'; 4. 14. 3. destroyed by 'worms'

which breed in it: gets scab in some regions; 4. 14. 4-5. other diseases; 4. 14. 8. efforts on fruit of rain and drought; 4. 14. 10. infested by *ἀνίπες*; 4. 14. 12. suffers most from special winds; 4. 15. 2. survives stripping of bark for some time; 4. 15. 2. instance of bark growing again; 4. 16. 1. survives splitting of stem; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5. 6. 1. wood strong only against a vertical strain; 5. 9. 5. wood makes pungent smoke; 5. 9. 6. wood good for kindling furnaces; 7. 13. 2. root of *ασφόδελος* eaten with figs.

- συκὴ* (2) ἢ *Αἰγυπτία* (= *κερώνια* 1. 11. 2.), carob, *Ceratonia Siliqua*  
*συκὴ* (3) ἢ *Ἰδαία* (fruit *σῦκον*), *Ame-lanchier vulgaris*  
 3. 17. 4-5. described.  
*συκὴ* (4) ἢ *Ἰνδική*, banyan, *Ficus bengalensis*  
 1. 7. 3. roots again from branches; 4. 4. 4-5. described.  
*συκὴ* (5) ἢ *Κυπρία*, sycamore, *Ficus Sycomorus* var.  
 4. 2. 3. described.  
*συκὴ* (6) ἢ *Λακωνική*, *Ficus Carica* var.  
 2. 7. 1. water-loving; 2. 8. 1. caprifaction not used.  
*συκὴ* (7) (ἢ *Ἀραβική*), *Ficus Carica* var.?  
 4. 7. 8. an evergreen Arabian kind.  
*(συκὴ* (8) (?) an alcyonidian polyp)  
 4. 6. 2. peculiar to certain waters; 4. 6. 9. described).  
*σφάκος*, sage, *Salvia calycina*  
 6. 1. 4. a spineless wild under-shrub; 6. 2. 5. like cultivated *ελελίσφακος*: leaf of one kind of *πράσιον* comp.  
*σφένδαμνος*, maple, *Acer monspesulanum*  
 3. 3. 1. a tree of mountain and plain; 3. 3. 8. doubt whether it has a flower; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 6. 1. slow-growing (?); 3. 6. 5. roots shallow and few according to Arcadians; 3. 11. 1-2. described; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 1. 4.



## INDEX OF PLANTS

- do.; 5. 3. 3. character of timber; 5. 7. 6. uses of wood.
- σχίνος* (fruit *σχινίς* 9.4.7.), mastich, *Pistacia Lentiscus*
9. 1. 2. produces a gum; 9. 4. 7. λιθανωτός comp. by some.
- σχοίνος* (1), rush, *Juncus* spp. etc.
1. 5. 3. not jointed; 1. 8. 1. no knots; 4. 8. 1. in list of τὰ λοχυώδη; 4. 12. 1-3. kinds distinguished.
- σχοίνος* (2) (ὁ εὐώδης?), ginger-grass, *Cymbopogon Schoenanthus*
9. 7. 1. habitat (E. of Lebanon): described: fragrance; 9. 7. 3. in list of ἀρώματα.
- σχοίνος* (3) ὁ κάρπιμος, (= μελαγκρανίς, 4.12.1.), bog-rush, *Schoenus nigricans*
4. 12. 1-3. described.
- σχοίνος* (4) ὁ ὀλόσχοινος, *Scirpus Holoschoenus*
4. 12. 2. described; 9. 12. 1. used for stringing pieces of χαμαιλέον ὁ λευκός.
- σχοίνος* (5) ὁ ὀξύς, *Juncus acutus*
4. 12. 1-2. described.
- σχοίνος* (6)
4. 7. 3. stone 'σχοῖνοι' in 'Red Sea'.)
- τέρμινθος* (τερέβινθος), terebinth, *Pistacia Terebinthus*
1. 9. 3. evergreen (wild form); 3. 2. 6. characteristic of Syria; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 3. 15. 3-4. described; 4. 4. 7. τ. ἡ Ἰνδική comp.; 4. 16. 1-2. not injured by cutting for resin; 5.3.2. character of wood: uses; 5. 7. 7. fruit and resin useful, wood not used in crafts; 9. 1. 2. sap gummy; 9. 1. 6. time of tapping; 9. 2. 1. method of tapping; 9. 2. 2. produces best resin (ρητίνη); 9. 2. 2. said to be burnt for pitch (πίττα) in Syria; cf. 3. 2. 6.; 9. 3. 4. method of preparing pitch in Syria; 9. 4. 7. σμύρνα comp. by some; 9. 4. 8. some say σμύρνα = τ.; 9. 5. 1. fruit of βάλλσαμον comp
- τετραγωνία*, *Euphymus latifolius*
3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 6. time of fruiting.
- τετράλιξ*, yellow star-thistle, *Centaurea solstitialis*
6. 4. 4. a 'thistle-like' plant: time of growing.
- τεῦτλις* (= τεῦτλον)
7. 7. 2. a λάχαρον; needs cooking.
- τεῦτλον* (τεῦτλιον) = τεῦτλις, beet, *Beta maritima*
1. 3. 2. becomes large in cultivation; 1.5.3. stem fleshy; 1.6.6. root single, but with large side-growths; 1. 6. 7. root fleshy; 1. 9. 2., cf. 1. 3. 2.; 1. 10. 4. leaves fleshy; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7.1.5. do.; 7. 1. 6. germination; 7.2.2. root makes offsets; 7. 2. 5-6. root described; 7. 2. 7. root of λάπαθον comp.; 7. 2. 8. root; 7. 3. 2. seeds; 7. 4. 1. several kinds; 7. 4. 4. two kinds, τὸ λευκόν (Σικελικόν) and τὸ μέλαν; 7. 5. 5. seed keeps well.
- τῆλις* (= βουκέρας), fenugreek, *Trigonella Foeniculum*
3. 17. 2. leaf of κολουτέα (κολοιτία (1) comp.
- τιθύμαλλος* (produces ἵπποφαές? 9. 15. 6. see note) (= μηκώνιον 9. 8. 2.), spurge, *Euphorbia Peplus* etc.
9. 8. 2. juice of stalk, how collected; 9. 11. 1. several kinds; 9. 11. 5. do.; leaf of στρύχνος ὁ ὑπνώδης comp.; 9. 11. 7-9. kinds (see below); 9. 15. 6. Arcadian: localities.
- τιθύμαλλος* ὁ ἄρρην, *Euphorbia Sibthorpii*
9. 11. 8. described: medicinal use.
- τιθύμαλλος* ὁ μυρτίτης (fruit κάρνον 9. 11. 9.), *Euphorbia Myrsinites*
9. 11. 9. described: habitat: time of gathering: medicinal use.
- τιθύμαλλος* ὁ παράλιος, sea-spurge, *Euphorbia Paralias*
9. 11. 7. described: medicinal use
- τίφη*, one-seeded wheat, *Triticum monococcum*
1. 6. 5. roots numerous; 2. 4. 1.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- seed, unless bruised, produces πυρός; 8. 1. 1. in list of cereals; 8. 1. 3. sown early; 8. 2. 1. germination described; 8. 2. 6. time of ripening seed; 8. 4. 1. comp. in detail with other cereals; 8. 8. 3. τ. and ζειά only plants which can change into something quite different (cf. 2. 4. 1.); 8. 9. 2. exhausts the soil less than any other cereal: reason: likes light soil: τ. and ζειά the cereals most like πυρός.
- τίφουν, autumn squill, *Scilla autumnalis*
7. 13. 7. flower appears before leaves and stem.
- τραγάκανθα (1), tragacanth, *Astragalus creticus*
9. 1. 3. produces a gum: now known to grow not only in Crete (see τ. (2)); 9. 8. 2. no cutting needed to collect gum.
- τραγάκανθα (2), tragacanth, *Astragalus Parnassi*
9. 15. 8. abundant in Achala and not inferior to the τ. of Crete.
- τραγοπόγων (= κόμη 7. 7. 1.) goat's beard, *Tragopogon porrifolius*
7. 7. 1. described: a λάχανον.
- τρίβολος (1), caltrop, *Tribulus terrestris*
3. 1. 6. comes up spontaneously in damp places; 6. 1. 3. has leaves as well as spines: has spines on the fruit-vessel; 6. 5. 3. distinguished from τρίβολος (2); 7. 8. 1. stem 'on the ground'; 8. 7. 2. (as a weed) destroyed by έρεβινθος.
- τρίβολος (2), caltrop, *Fagonia cretica*
6. 1. 3. has leaves as well as spines; 6. 4. 1. do.: 6. 5. 1. in list of such plants; 6. 5. 3. distinguished from τρίβολος (1); grows near enclosures.
- τρίβολος (3), water chestnut, *Trapa natans*
4. 9. 1-3. described.
- τριπόλιον (?), *Aster Tripolium*
9. 19. 2. use as charm.
- τριχομανές (? = άδιαντον τὸ λευκόν)
7. 14. 1., English maidenhair, *Asplenium Trichomanes*
- τύφή, bulrush, *Typha angustata*
1. 5. 3. not jointed; 1. 8. 1. no knots; 4. 10. 1. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 5. described; 4. 10. 6. grows both on land and in water: some doubt this; 4. 10. 7. part used for food.
- υάκινθος ή άγρία, *Scilla bifolia*
6. 8. 1-2, flowering time.
- υάκινθος ή σπαρτή, larkspur, *Delphinium Ajacis*
6. 8. 2. flowering time: flower of πόθος (1) comp.
- υδνον, truffle, *Tuber cibarium*
1. 1. 11. has not all the 'parts' of a plant; 1. 6. 5. no roots; 1. 6. 9. underground.
- υποχοίρις, cat's ear, *Hypochoeris radicata*
7. 7. 1. a λάχανον; classed as 'chicory-like' from its leaves; 7. 11. 4. growth contrasted with χονδρύλλα.
- υφεαρ, mistletoe, *Viscum album*
3. 16. 1. grows on πρίνος.
- φακός, lentil, *Ervum Lens*
2. 4. 2. seed sown in dung; 3. 15. 3. fruit of τέρμινθος comp.; 3. 17. 2. size of fruit of κολοιτία (1) comp.; 3. 18. 5. arrangement of fruit of ρούς comp.; 4. 4. 9. not found in India; 4. 4. 10. a so-called φ. in India; 8. 1. 4. sown late; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 3. 4. seed; 8. 5. 1. several kinds; white form sweetest; 8. 5. 2. seeds comparatively few; 8. 5. 3. shape of pod; 8. 8. 3. άρακος grows specially among φ.; 8. 8. 4. so also άπαρίνη; 8. 8. 6. causes etc of φ. becoming 'cookable' or 'uncookable.'
- φάσγανον (= ξίφιον = ξίφος 7. 13. 1), corn-flag, *Gladiolus segetum*
7. 12. 3. use of root in food: root described; 7. 13. 1. leaves described; 7. 13. 4. grown from seed.
- φάσκος, tree-moss, *Usnea barbata*
3. 8. 6. borne only on αϊγίλωψ (1).
- φελλόδωρος (= άρία 3. 16. 3.), holm-oak, *Quercus Ilex var. agrifolia*
1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 8. 3. do.:

# INDEX OF PLANTS

3. 16. 3. described: called *ἀρία* by Dorians.  
*φελλός*, (? = *ἴφος* cf. Plin. 16. 98.), cork-oak, *Quercus Suber*  
 1. 2. 7. bark; 1. 5. 2. bark rough and fleshy; 1. 5. 4. wood light;  
 3. 17. 1. grows in Tyrrhenia: described; 4. 15. 1. is the stronger for having its bark stripped; 5. 3. 6. wood of *φοῖνιξ* (1) comp.  
*φέως* (= *στοιβή* 6. 1. 3.), *Poterium spinosum*.  
*φηγός* (= *δρύς* ἡ *ἀγρία*), *Valonia oak*, *Quercus Aegilops*  
 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 6. 1. slow-growing (?); 3. 8. 2. one of the five 'Idaeon' kinds of oak: described; fruit; 3. 8. 3-4. acorns; 3. 8. 4. timber; 3. 8. 7. one of the four 'Macedonian' kinds of oak; 4. 13. 2. ancient trees at Ilium; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber.  
*φιλόκη, alaternus, Rhamnus Alaternus*  
 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 3. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 4. time of fruiting; 5. 6. 2. easiest wood for turning.  
*φίλνρα* (= *φίλνρα* ἡ *θήλεια*), lime (or silver lime), *Tilia platyphyllos*, (or *tomentosa*)  
 1. 5. 2. bark thin: bark in layers; 1. 5. 5. wood pliable; 1. 10. 1. leaves inverted in summer; 1. 12. 4. leaves, but not fruit, eaten by animals; 3. 3. 1. a mountain tree; 3. 4. 2. time of budding; 3. 4. 6. time of fruiting: fruit inedible; 3. 5. 5-6. winter-buds; 3. 10. 4-5. described: 'male' and 'female' forms distinguished (see below); 3. 11. 1. bark of *σφένδαμος* comp.; 3. 13. 1. bark of *κέρσας* comp.; 3. 13. 3. grows where *κέρσας* grows; 3. 17. 5. leaf of *συκὴ* ἡ *Ἰδαία* comp.; 4.4.1. hard to grow in Babylon; 4. 5. 1. in list of Northern trees; 4. 8. 1. grows partially in water; 4.15.1. outer bark can be stripped;  
 4. 15. 2. survives stripping of bark for some time; 5. 1. 2. time of cutting timber; 5. 1. 4. do.; 5. 3. 3. character of wood; 5. 5. 1. wood easy to work; blunts tools; 5. 6. 2. wood soft and easy to work; 5.7.5. various uses of wood and bark; 5. 9. 7. wood used for fire-sticks.  
*φίλνρα ἡ ἄρρη* (= *φιλνρέα*), mock-privet, *Phillyrea media*  
 3. 10. 4-5. distinguished from φ. ἡ *θήλεια*.  
*φίλνρα ἡ θήλεια* (= *φίλνρα*), silver-lime, *Tilia tomentosa*  
 3. 10. 4-5. distinguished from φ. ἡ *ἄρρη*.  
*φιλνρέα*, mock-privet, *Phillyrea media*  
 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 3. 4. 6. (?) time of fruiting.  
*φλώ* (φλεώς), *Erianthus Ravennae*  
 4.8.1. in list of τὰ λοχμώδη; 4.10.1. in list of plants of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 4. described; 4. 10. 6. grows both on land and in water; grows on the floating islands of Lake Copais; 4. 10. 7. part used for food; 4. 11. 12. foliage of some *καλαμοί* comp  
*φλόγιον* (= φλόξ), wall-flower, *Cheiranthus Cheiri*  
 6. 8. 1-2, a coronary plant: flowering time.  
*φλόμος ἡ μέλαινα*, mullein, *Verbascum sinuatum*  
 9. 12. 3. leaf of *μήκων* ἡ *κερατῆς* comp  
*φλόξ* (= φλόγιον), wall-flower, *Cheiranthus Cheiri*  
 6. 6. 2. a cultivated under-shrub; a coronary plant: scentless; 6. 6. 11. grown from seed.  
*φοῖνιξ* (1), date-palm, *Phoenix dactylifera*  
 1. 2. 7. 'flesh' turns to wood; 1. 4. 3. (?) tolerant of sea-water; 1. 5. 1. few branches; 1. 5. 2. rough bark; 1. 5. 3. wood fibrous; 1. 6. 2. core not distinguishable; 1. 9. 1. growth chiefly upwards; 1. 9. 3. evergreen; 1. 10. 5. reedy leaves; 1.11.1. seed immediately within envelope: envelope not single

# INDEX OF PLANTS

1. 11 8. seed solid and 'dry' throughout; 1. 13 5. 'male' only flowers; 1.14.2. bears fruit at top; 2. 2. 2. propagation; 2. 2. 6 seeds come true; 2. 2. 8. effect of locality; 2.2.10. effects of climate; 2. 6. 1. propagation from fruit; 2. 6. 2. propagation from 'head'; 2. 6. 3. cultivation; 2. 6. 4. do.; 2. 6. 5. cultivation in Syria; 2. 6. 8. various kinds; [2. 6. 9. branching kind: see *κουκιοφόρον*]; [2. 6. 10. shrubby kind: see *κοίξ*]; 2.6.12. cuttings set upside down; 2. 8. 1. apt to shed immature fruit; 2. 8. 4. artificial fertilisation; 3. 3. 5. not fruitful wherever it grows; 3. 13. 7. dwarf form (? φ. ὁ χαμαιριφής); 4.1.5. cf. 2. 2. 10; 4. 2. 7. *κουκιοφόρον* comp.; 4. 3. 1. grows in parts of Libya; 4. 3. 5. grows well in waterless Libya: salt in soil, water supply; 4. 3. 7. kept alive by dew in dry regions; 4. 4. 3. sown in pots; 4.4.13. dangerous to eat unripe dates (in Gedrosia); 4. 7. 8. occurs on the island of Tylos; 4. 13. 2. story of the very old φ. on Delos; 4. 14. 8. if topped, becomes barren, but is not destroyed; 4. 15. 2. survives stripping of bark; 5. 3. 6. character of wood: used for images; 5. 6. 1. wood strong: behaviour under pressure; 5. 9. 4. wood makes a very evil smoke when burnt for charcoal; 6. 4. 11. seed-vessel of *κάκτος* (1), when stripped of seeds, comp. to 'brain' of φ.; 9. 4. 4. mats in Arabia made of leaves of φ.
- φοίνιξ (2), *Nannorhops ritchiana*  
4. 4. 8. Bactrian.
- φοίνιξ (3), ὁ χαμαιριφής, dwarf palm, *Chamaerops humilis*  
2. 6. 11. described; 3. 13. 7. (?).
- φοίνιξ (4), *Calophyllis laciniata*  
4. 6. 2. peculiar to certain waters;  
4. 6. 10. described.
- φόνος (= ἀτρακτυλὶς 6. 4. 6.), distaff-thistle, *Carthamus lanatus*  
6. 4. 6. reason for name
- φῦκος (1) τὸ πλατύφυλλον (= ζώστηρ 4. 6. 2. = πράσον (2)), grass-wrack, *Posidonia oceanica*  
4. 6. 2. occurs generally in Greek waters: root described.
- φῦκος (2) θανμαστόν τὸ μέγεθος, ribband-weed, (= πράσον (3)), *Laminaria saccharina*  
4. 6. 4. described: grows in Atlantic: washed into Mediterranean;  
4. 7. 1. refers to 4. 6. 4.
- φῦκος (3) τὸ πόντιον  
4.6.4. collected by sponge-fishers.
- φῦκος (4) τὸ τριχόφυλλον, *Cystoseira foeniculosa*  
4. 6. 3. described.
- φῦκος (5), litmus, *Roccella tinctoria*  
4. 6. 5. Cretan: dye described.
- φῦκος (6), grass-wrack, *Cymodocea nodosa* (and *Zostera marina*)  
4. 6. 6. described: comp. to ἄγρωστις.
- χαλβάνη, see *πάνακες* (τὸ Σύριον)
- χάλκειος, *Carlina corymbosa*  
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant.
- χαμαιβάτος (= βάτος), *Rubus ulmi-folius*  
3. 18. 4. described.
- χαμαιδάφνη, periwinkle, *Vinca herbacea*  
3. 18. 13. leaf of εὐώνυμος comp.
- χαμαίδρυς, gerdmander, *Teucrium Chamaedrys*  
9. 9. 5. medicinal use: described.
- χαμαιλέον, chamaeleon  
6. 4. 3. a 'thistle-like' plant, but leaves not spinous (see n. on 6. 4. 8.); 6.4.8. flower turns into 'down'; 9. 12. 1-2, turns (see below).
- χαμαιλέον ὁ λευκός (= ἄκανθα (9)  
9. 12. 1. = ἄκανθος = ἰξία (2) = ἰξίνη), pine-thistle, *Atractylis gummifera*  
9. 12. 1. described: medicinal use: fatal to dogs and pigs: how administered: grows everywhere.
- χαμαιλέον ὁ μέλας, *Cardopatum corymbosum*  
9. 12. 2. described: medicinal use: habitat: fatal to dogs;  
9. 14. 1. how long drug will keep.

## INDEX OF PLANTS

χελιδόνιον, greater celandine, *Chelidonium majus*

7. 15. 1. flowering depends on the heavenly bodies.

χόνδρυλλα, *Chondrilla juncea*

7. 7. 1. a λάχανον: classed as 'chicory-like' from its leaves;  
7. 11. 4. growth of ὑποχοίρις contrasted

ψευδοδίκταμνον, *Ballota acetabulosa*

9. 16. 2. comp with δίκταμνον as to appearance and properties: said by some to be only a degenerate form of δίκταμνον: method of keeping.

ώκιμον, basil, *Ocimum basilicum*

1. 6. 6-7. root woody; 1. 10. 7.

time of leaf-growth; 7. 1. 2-3. time of sowing and germination; 7. 2. 1. propagation; 7. 2. 4. grows again when stem is cut; 7. 2. 7-8. root described; 7. 3. 1. long in flower; 7. 3. 2-3 seeds described; 7. 3. 4. seed very abundant; seed borne at top; 7. 4. 1. only one kind; 7. 5. 2. watered at mid-day; 7. 5. 4. effect of hot weather; 7. 5. 5. seed does not keep well; 7. 7. 2. leaf of κόρχορος comp.; 7. 9. 2. flowers borne in succession, cf. 7. 3. 1.; 9. 18. 5. leaf of ἀρρενόγονον and of θηλυγόγονον comp.

ώχρος, *Lathyrus Ochrus*

8. 1. 3. sown early; 8. 3. 1. leaf; 8. 3. 2. stem; 8. 10. 5. infested by 'worms.'

## APPENDIX OF UNNAMED PLANTS

The following plants (arranged in the order of mention) which are described or indicated, but not named, in the Enquiry, seem possible to identify:—

1. (ὅμοιον τῷ ἀράκῳ), tine-tare, *Lathyrus tuberosus*

1. 6. 12. root described.

2. (ὕλημα ἴδιον τι περὶ Μέμφιν), *Mimosa asperata*

4. 2. 11. described: 'sensitive.'

3. (δένδρον . . . μεγαλόκαρπον), Jack-fruit, *Artocarpus integrifolia*

4. 4. 5. used for food by Indian sages.

4. (φύλλον . . . τοῖς τῶν στρονθῶν πτεροῖς ὅμοιον), banana, *Musa sapientum*

4. 4. 5. described.

5. (καρπὸς σκολιὸς ἐσθιόμενος δὲ γλυκύς), mango, *Mangifera indica*

4. 4. 5. fruit described: causes dysentery.

6. (καρπὸς ὅμοιος τοῖς κρανέοις), jujube, *Zizyphus Jujuba*

4. 4. 5.

7. (ὅμοιον τερμίνθῳ), pistachio-nut, *Pistacia vera*

4. 4. 7. described.

8. (ὅμοιον τῇ ὄψει καὶ τῷ βούκερας), *Phaseolus Mungo*

4. 4. 9-10. called by Hellenes φακός, and similarly used.

9. (ἀκανθα ἐφ' ἧς γίνεται δάκρυον) (= ἀκανθα (4) ἡ Ἰνδική), *Balsamodendron Mukul*

4. 4. 12. grows in Aria: described.

10. (ὕλημα ἥλικον ῥάφανος), *Asafoetida*, *Escherosma foetidum*

4. 4. 12. described: fatal to horses.

11. (ὅμοιον τῇ δάφνι φύλλον ἔχον), *Nerium odoratum*

4. 4. 13. effect on animals.

12a. (δένδρα μέγала), mangrove, *Bruguiera gymnorhiza*

4. 7. 4. described.

# INDEX OF PLANTS

- 12b. (δένδρον φύλλον ἔχον ὅμοιον τῇ δάφνῃ) mangrove, *Rhizophora mucronata*
  4. 7. 4. described (as if identical with 12a.).
13. (καρπὸς ὅμοιος τοῖς θέρμοις), *Aegiceras maitus*
  4. 7. 5, 6, and 7. described.
14. (δένδρα ὅμοια τῇ αἰδράχλῃ (= δάφνῃ (6) = ἐλάα (3)), white mangrove, *Avicennia officinalis*
  4. 7. 5. described.
15. (δένδρα τὸ ἄνθος ἔχοντα ὅμοιον τῷ λευκοίῳ) (= (16)), tamarind, *Tamarindus indica*
  4. 7. 8. grows in the island of Tylos.
16. (δένδρον πολύφυλλον) (= (15)), tamarind, *Tamarindus indica*
  4. 7. 8. grows in the island of Tylos; opening and closing of flower.
17. (συκὴ οὐ φυλλοροοῦσα), *Ficus laccifera*
  4. 7. 8. grows in the island of Tylos.
18. (ὅμοιον τοῖς κρίνοις) *Ottelia alismoides*
  4. 8. 8. Egyptian marsh-plant: habitat and leaves: medicinal use.
19. (ἐν τι γένος ἐν ταῖς λίμναις), *Saccharum biflorum*
  4. 8. 13. use for fodder.
20. (γένος παραφύομενον ἐν τῷ σίτῳ), *Corchorus trilocularis*
  4. 8. 14. treatment as fodder: fruit described.
21. (δένδρον), Sissoo-wood, *Dalbergia Sissoo*
  5. 3. 2. wood described: use for making furniture.
22. (ξύλον), teak, *Tectona grandis*
  5. 4. 7. wood stands sea-water well
23. (δένδρον), calamander wood, *Diospyros quaesita*
  5. 4. 7. wood described.
24. (ὅμοιον ἀβροτόνῳ), *Artemisia camphorata*
  - 6.3.6. properties: effect on sheep.
25. (τὸ τῇ νάρδῳ προσεμφερῇ τὴν ὁσμὴν ἔχον), *Valeriana Dioscoridis*
  9. 7. 4. a Thracian ἄρωμα.
26. (ὑποφύομενον εὐθὺς ἐκ τῆς ρίζης τῷ κυμίνῳ), broom-rape, *Orobanche versicolor*
  8. 8. 5. parasitic on κύμινον.
27. (ρίζα θανατηφόρος), Somali arrow-poison, *Acokanthera Schimperii*
  9. 15. 2. Aethiopian: used for poisoning arrows.



# KEY TO THE INDEX

## I.—LIST OF PLANTS MENTIONED IN THE ENQUIRY UNDER BOTANICAL NAMES

<i>Abies cephalonica</i>	ἐλάτη (1)	<i>Anagallis caerulea</i>	κόρχορος
— <i>pectinata</i>	ἐλίτη (2)	<i>Anchusa tinctoria</i>	ἄγχουσα
<i>Acacia albida</i>	ἄκανθα(1), etc.	<i>Andropogon Ischaemum</i>	ἰσχαίμος
— <i>arabica</i>	ἄκανθα(1), etc.	<i>Anemone blanda</i>	ἀνεμώνη ἡ ὄρεϊα
— <i>tortilis</i>	ἄκανθα (3)	— <i>coronaria</i>	ἀ. ἡ λειμωνία
<i>Acantha arabica</i>	ἄκανθα (7)	— <i>pavonina</i>	ἀ. ἡ λειμωνία
<i>Acer campestre</i>	ζυγία	— spp.	ἀνεμώνη
— <i>creticum</i>	γλεῖνος	<i>Anethum graveolens</i>	ἀνηθον, ἄνη- τος
— <i>monspessulanum</i>	σφένδαμνος	<i>Anthemis chia</i>	ἀνθεμον, ἀ. τὸ φυλλώδες
— <i>pseudo-Platanus</i>	κλινότροχος	<i>Antirrhinum Oron- tium</i>	ἀντίρρινον
<i>Acokanthera Schim- peri</i>	App. (27)	<i>Apium graveolens</i>	ἐλειοσέλινον, σέλινον, σ. τὸ ἐλειον
<i>Aconitum Anthora</i>	ἀκόνιτον, θηλύ- φονον, μνύ- φονον, σκορ- πίος (3)	<i>Arbutus Andrachne</i>	ἀνδράχλη
<i>Acorus Calamus</i>	κάλαμος ὁ εὐώ- δης	— <i>hybrida</i>	ἀφάρκη
<i>Adiantum Capillus- Veneris</i>	ἀδιαντον, ἀ. τὸ μέλαν	— <i>Unedo</i>	κόμαρος
<i>Aegiceras majus</i>	App. (13)	<i>Aristolochia rotunda</i>	ἀριστολοχία
<i>Aegilops ovata</i>	αἰγίλωψ (2)	<i>Artemisia Absinthium</i>	ἀψίνθιον
<i>Ailanthus malabarica</i>	κώμακον	— <i>arborescens</i>	ἀβρότονον
<i>Ajuga Ira</i>	ἐπετίνη	— <i>camphorata</i>	App. (24)
<i>Allium Cepa</i> and vars.	γήθνον, γήτει- ον, κρομμυον, κ. τὸ σχισ- τόν, κρομμο- γίτειον	<i>Artocarpus integri- folia</i>	App. (3)
— <i>nigrum</i>	μώλυ	<i>Arum italicum</i>	ἄρον
— <i>Porrum</i>	πράσον (1)	<i>Arundo Donax</i>	δόναξ, κάλαμος ὁ αὐλητικός etc.
— <i>sativum</i>	σκόροδον	<i>Asparagus acutifolius</i>	ἀσφάραγος
<i>Alnus glutinosa</i>	κλήθρα	<i>Asphodelus ramosus</i>	ἀσφόδελος, πό- θος (2)
<i>Althaea officinalis</i>	ἀλθαία, μαλά- χη ἡ ἀγρία	<i>Asplenium Ceterach</i>	ἡμιόλιον
<i>Amaranthus Blitum</i>	βλίτον	— <i>Trichomanes</i>	ἀδιαντον τὸ λευκόν, τρι- χομανές
<i>Amelanchier vulgaris</i>	συνή ἡ Ἰδαία		
<i>Amomum subulatum</i>	ἄμωμον		



# KEY TO THE INDEX

<b>Aster Amellus</b>	ἀστέρισκος	<b>Carthamus leucocaulos</b>	κνήκος ἡ ἀγρία
— Tripollum	τριπόλιον	— tinctorius	κνήκος, κ. ἡ
<b>Astragalus creticus</b>	τραγάκανθα (1)		ἡμερος, κρό-
— Parnassi	τραγάκανθα (2)		κος ὁ ἀκαν-
<b>Attractylis gummifera</b>	ἀκανθα (8), ἀκανος, ἰξία (2), ἰξίην, χαμαιλέον ὁ	<b>Castanea vesca</b>	θώδης
	λευκός	— — var.	διοςβάλανος
<b>Atriplex Halimus</b>	ἄλιμον		καρύα ἡ Εὐ-
<b>Atropa Belladonna</b>	ἀδράφαξυς μανδραγόρας (2)	<b>Celtis australis</b>	βοϊκή
<b>Avena sativa</b>	βρόμος	<b>Centaurea calcitrapa</b>	λωτός (1)
<b>Avicennia officinalis</b>	δᾶφνη (6), ἐλάα (3), App. (14)	— salonitana	παντάδουσα
		— solstitialis	κενταύριον
<b>Balanites aegyptiaca</b>	βάλανος	<b>Ceratonja Siliqua</b>	τετράλιξ
<b>Ballota acetabulosa</b>	ψευδοδίκταμ- νον	<b>Cerris Siliquastrum</b>	κερκίς (1) ση-
— pseudo-Dictam- nus	δίκταμνον (ἐτε- ρον)	<b>Chamaerops humilis</b>	μύδα
<b>Balsamodendron Mu- kul</b>	ἄκανθα (4), App. (9)	<b>Cheiranthus Cheiri</b>	φοινίξ (3)
— Myrrha	σμύρνα	<b>Chelidonium majus</b>	φλόγιμον, φλόξ
— Opobalsamum	βάλσαμον	<b>Chondrilla juncea</b>	χιλιδόβιον
<b>Bambusa arundinacea</b>	κάλαμος ὁ Ἰν- δικός	<b>Cicer arietinum</b>	χόνδρυλλα
	τευτόλον	<b>Cichorium Intybus</b>	ἐρέβινθος
<b>Beta maritima</b>	νάπυ	<b>Cinnamomum Cassia</b>	κιχόριον
<b>Brassica alba</b>	ράφανος	— iners	κιννάμωμον
— cretica	γογγυλὶς	<b>Cistus salvifolius</b>	κασία
— Rapa	App. (12a)	— villosus	κίσθος ὁ θήλυς
<b>Brugulera gymnorhiza</b>	ἀμπελος ἡ ἀγ- ρία, μῆλωθρον		κίσθος, κ. ὁ
<b>Bryonia cretica</b>	πύξος	<b>Citrus medica</b>	ἄρρη
<b>Buxus sempervirens</b>			μηλέα ἡ Περσι- κή (Μηδική)
<b>Calamintha incana</b>	ἐλένιον	<b>Clematis vitalba</b>	ἀθραγένη
<b>Calamagrostis Epi- gelos</b>	κάλαμος (ἐπί- γειος)	<b>Cnicus Acarna</b>	ἄκοννα
<b>Callitriche verna</b>	λέμνα	— benedictus	κνήκος ἡ ἀγρία (ἐτέρα)
<b>Callitris quadrivalvis</b>	θύον		ἐφήμερον, σπά- λαξ
<b>Calophylla laciniata</b>	φοινίξ (4)	<b>Colchicum parnassi- cum</b>	οὐίγγον
<b>Calycotome villosa</b>	ἀσπάλαθος	<b>Colocasia antiquorum</b>	κολυτέα
<b>Capparis spinosa</b>	κάππαρις	<b>Colutea arborescens</b>	κώνειον
<b>Cardopatum corym- bosum</b>	χαμαιλέον ὁ	<b>Conium maculatum</b>	σκαμμωνία
<b>Carduus arvensis</b>	μέλας	<b>Convolvulus Scam- monia</b>	
— acanthoides	ἀκανθα (2)	— sepium	ἰασιώνη
<b>Carex riparia</b>	πολύακανθος	<b>Corchorus trilocularis</b>	App. (20)
<b>Carlina corymbosa</b>	βούτομος	<b>Cordia Myxa</b>	κοκκυμηλέα (ἡ
<b>Carthamus lanatus</b>	χάλκειος		Λιγυπτία)
	ατρακτυλὶς, φόνος	<b>Coriandrum sativum</b>	κορίαννον
		<b>Cornus Mas</b>	κράνεια
		— sanguinea	θηλυκράνεια
		<b>Corydalis densiflora</b>	θήσειον
		<b>Cotoneaster<sup>e</sup> Pyra- cantha</b>	ὀξνάκανθος
		<b>Corylus avellana</b>	καρύα
		— — var.	καρύα ἡ Ἑρα-
		<b>Crataegus Heldreichii</b>	κλεωτική
		— orientalis	κράταιγος
			μεσπίλη ἡ ἀ-
			θηδών

# KEY TO THE INDEX

<i>Crataegus oxyacantha</i>	μεσπύλη ἡ ἀν- θηρονοειδής	<i>Elettaria Cardamo- mum</i>	καρδάμων
<i>Crepis Columnae</i>	ἀπαργία	<i>Ephedra campylo- poda</i>	θραύπαλος
<i>Crocus cancellatus</i>	κ. ὁ λευκός	<i>Erianthus Ravennae</i>	φλεώ
— <i>sativus</i>	κ. ὁ εὖσμος	<i>Erica arborea</i>	ερείκη
— spp.	κρόκος	<i>Eruca sativa</i>	εὐζωμον
<i>Cucumis sativus</i>	σίκυος	<i>Eryum Lens</i>	φακός
<i>Cucurbita maxima</i>	κολοκύνθη	<i>Eryngium campestre</i>	ηρύγγιον
<i>Cuminum Cyminum</i>	κύμιον	<i>Erythraea Centau- rium</i>	κενταυρίς
<i>Cupressus semper- virens</i>	κυπάριττος	<i>Euonymus europaeus</i>	εὐώνυμος
<i>Cuscuta europaea</i>	ὀροβάγχη	— <i>latifolius</i>	τετραγωνία
<i>Cyclamen graecum</i>	κυκλάμινος	<i>Euphorbia antiquo- rum</i>	ἀκανθα (5), (6)
<i>Cydonia vulgaris</i>	κυδώνιον, στρουβίον (1) σχόινος (2)	— <i>Aplos</i>	ἄπιος (2), ἰσ- χάς, ράφανος ἡ ὀρεία
<i>Cymbopogon Schoen- anthus</i>	φύκος (6)	— <i>Myrsinites</i>	τιθύμαλλος ὁ μυρτίτης
<i>Cymodocea nodosa</i>	κάκτος (1)	— <i>paralias</i>	τιθύμαλλος ὁ παράλιος
<i>Cynara Cardunculus</i>	κάκτος (2)	— <i>Peplus</i>	μηκώνιον, τιθύ- μαλλος
— <i>Scolymus</i>	ἀγρωστis	— <i>Sibthorpii</i>	τιθύμαλλος ὁ ἄρρη
<i>Cynodon Dactylon</i>	σαρι	— spp.	μηκώνιον, ἰπ- ποφείως, τι- θύμαλλος
<i>Cyperus auricomus</i>	μαλιναθάλλη, μνάσιον	<i>Fagonia cretica</i>	τρίβολος (2)
— <i>esculentus</i>	κύπειρος	<i>Fagus silvatica</i>	ὄξυ
— <i>longus</i>	πάπυρος	<i>Ferula communis</i>	ναρθηκία, νάρ- θηξ
— <i>Papyrus</i>	κύπειρον	— <i>nodosa</i>	πάνακες τὸ Ἀσκληπίειον
— <i>rotundus</i>	ἐλάτη (3)	— <i>tingitana</i>	σίλφιον
<i>Cystoseira Abies ma- rina</i>	δρῦς (7)	<i>Ferulago galbanifera</i>	πάνακες
— <i>ericoides</i>	φύκος (4)	<i>Ficus bengalensis</i>	συκὴ ἡ Ἰνδική
— <i>foeniculosa</i>	κολοιτία (1)	— <i>Carica</i>	συκὴ (1)
<i>Cytisus aeolicus</i>	App. (21)	— — var.	συκὴ ἡ Ἀρα- βικὴ
<i>Dalbergia Sissoo</i>	κνέωρον	— <i>laccifera</i>	App. (17)
<i>Daphne Gnidium</i>	κνέωρος ὁ λευ- κός	— <i>Sycamorus</i>	συκάμιος ἡ Αἰγυπτία
— <i>oleoides</i>	θρύσoron, περι- τός, στρύχ- νος ὁ μανικός	— — var.	συκὴ ἡ Κυπρία
<i>Datura Stramonium</i>	δαύκον (1)	<i>Fraxinus excelsior</i>	βουμέλιος
<i>Daucus Carota</i>	ὑάκινθος ἡ σπαρτή	— <i>Ornus</i>	μελία
<i>Delphinium Ajacis</i>	πόθος (1)	<i>Fucus spiralis</i>	ἀμπελος (3)
— <i>orientale</i>	ἀσταφίς	<i>Fungi</i>	μύκης
— <i>Staphisagria</i>	κάλαμος ὁ Ἰν- δικός	<i>Galanthus nivalis</i>	λευκίον (2)
<i>Dendrocalamus stric- tus</i>	ἐβένη (1)	<i>Gallum Aparine</i>	ἀπαρίνη
<i>Diospyros Ebenum</i>	ἐβένη (2)	<i>Genista acanthoclada</i>	σκορπίος (1)
— <i>Melanoxydon</i>	δρακόντιον		
<i>Dracunculus vulgaris</i>	δρυνίς		
<i>Drypis spinosa</i>	σίκυος ὁ ἄγριος		
<i>Ecballium Elaterium</i>	ρύττος		
<i>Echinops spinosus</i>	δοχειλές		
<i>Echium diffusum</i>			

# KEY TO THE INDEX

<i>Gladiolus segetum</i>	ξίφιον, ξίφος, φάσγανον	<i>Lagenaria vulgaris</i>	σίκυα
<i>Glaucium flavum</i> var. <i>Serpieri</i>	μήκων ή κερα-τίτις	<i>Laminaria saccharina</i>	φύκος (2)
<i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i>	γλυκερία (ρίζα), Σκυθική	<i>Lapidium sativum</i>	κάρδαμον
<i>Gossypium arboreum</i>	(δένδρον τὸ ἐριόφορον)	<i>Lathyrus amphicar- pus</i>	ἀράχιδνα
		— <i>Ochrus</i>	ῥωχος
		— <i>sativus</i>	λαθύρος
		— <i>tuberosus</i>	App. (1)
<i>Hedera Helix</i>	ἔλιξ, κιττός	<i>Laurus nobilis</i>	δάφνη (1)
<i>Helichrysum siculum</i>	ἐλειόχρυσος	<i>Lavandula spica</i>	ἴφνον
<i>Heliotropium villos- um</i>	ἡλιοτρόπιον	<i>Lavatera arborea</i>	μαλάχη (1)
<i>Helleborus cyclo- phyllus</i>	ἐλλέβορος, ἔ. ὁ μέλας ἐλλεβορίνη	<i>Lecokia cretica</i>	λιβανωτός ή κάρπιμος
<i>Herniaria glabra</i>	ἵπνον κριθή		ἱκμη
<i>Hippuris vulgaris</i>		<i>Lemna minor</i>	σπειραία
<i>Hordeum sativum</i> and vars.		<i>Ligustrum vulgare</i>	κρίνον, κρινω- νία, λείριον (1)
<i>Hyphaene thebaica</i>	κόιξ, κουκιάφο- ρον	<i>Lilium candidum</i> etc.	κρίνον τὸ πορ- φυροῦν
		— <i>chalcedonicum</i>	ήμεροκαλλές
		— <i>Martagon</i>	μήγανθος
<i>Ilex Aquifolium</i>	κήλαστρος	<i>Limnanthemum nym- phoides</i>	λίνον
<i>Imperata arundi- nacea</i>	θύσον	<i>Linum usitatissimum</i>	αῖρα
<i>Inula Helenium</i>	πάνακες τὸ Χειρώνειον	<i>Lolium temulentum</i>	κλύμενον
— <i>graveolens</i>	κόννυα ή θή- λεια	<i>Lonicera etrusca</i>	ἱξία (1)
— <i>viscosa</i>	κόννυα ή ἄρρην	<i>Loranthus europaeus</i>	θερμός
— <i>spp.</i>	κόννυα	<i>Lupinus alba</i>	λυχνίς
<i>Iris foetidissima</i>	ξίρις	<i>Lychnis coronaria</i>	πέξις
— <i>pallida</i> etc.	ἱρις	<i>Lycoperdon Bovista</i>	ἄσχιον
— <i>Sisyrinchium</i>	σισυρίγχιον	— <i>giganteum</i>	
		<i>Malaballa aurea</i>	δαῦκον (2)
<i>Juglans regia</i>	καρύα ή Περ- σική	<i>Malva silvestris</i>	μαλάχη (2)
<i>Juncus acutus</i>	σχοίνος ὁ ὀξύς	<i>Mandragora offic- inarum</i>	μανδραγόρας (1)
— <i>spp.</i>	σχοίνος	<i>Mangifera indica</i>	App. (5)
<i>Juniperus communis</i>	κέδρις	<i>Marrubium peregr- inum</i>	πράσιον
— <i>excelsa</i>	κέδρις (2)	<i>Matthiola incana</i>	ἴον τὸ λευκόν, ἰωνία (ή λευ- κή), λευκοῖον (1)
— <i>foetidissima</i>	θυία	<i>Matricaria Chamo- milla</i>	ἀνθεμον τὸ ἀφύλλανθες
— <i>phoenicea</i>	ἄρκευθα, κέ- δρος (3)	<i>Medicago arborea</i>	κύνισος (2)
— <i>Oxycedrus</i>	κέδρος (1), ὀξύ- κέδρος	— <i>sativa</i>	(πόα) ή Μηδική
		<i>Melissa officinalis</i>	μελισσόφυλ- λον
<i>Laburnum vulgare</i>	κύνισος (1)	<i>Mentha aquatica</i>	σισύμβριον
<i>Lactuca graeca</i>	λιβανωτίς	— <i>Pulegium</i>	βληχώ
— <i>sativa</i>	θρίδαξ	— <i>viridis</i>	ἡδύσμον, μίν- θη
— <i>scariola</i>	θριδακίνη	<i>Mercurialis perennis</i>	ἀρρενόγονον, θηλύγονον

# KEY TO THE INDEX

Mespilus germanica etc.	μεσπύλη, μεσ- πίλη ή σατά- νιος	Orobanche cruenta — versicolor	αϊμόδωρον App. (26).
Mimosa asperata	App. (2)	Oryza sativa	ὄρυζον
Mimusops Schimperl	περσέα, πέρ- σιον	Ostrya carpinifolia	ὄστρνα, ὄστρνε
Musa sapientum	App. (4)	Ottelia alismoides	App. (18)
Muscari comosum etc.	βολβός	Paeonia officinalis	γλυκυσίδη, παιωνία
Myrtus communis	μυρρίνη	Pallurus australis	παλιούρος
Nannorhops ritchiana	φοῖνιξ (2)	Pancratium mariti- mum	βολβός ὁ ἐριό- φορος
Narcissus poeticus	νάρκισσος (2)	Panicum millaceum	κέγχρος
— serotinus	λείριον (2), νάρκισσος (1)	Papaver hybridum	μήκων ή ροιάς
- Tazetta	λείριον (2)	— Rhoeas	μήκων ή μέ- λαινα
- spp.	λείριον (2)	— somniferum	μήκων (ή ὀπώ- δης), νηπεν- θές
Nardostachys Jata- mansl	νάρδον	— spp.	μήκων
Nelumbium specio- sum	κύαμος ὁ Αἰ- γύπτιος	Parietaria cretica	ἀλσίνη
Nephrodium Filix- mas	πτερίς	Petroselinum sativum	ὀρειοσέλινον
Nerium Oleander	δάφνη ή ἀγρία, ὀνοθώρας	Peucedanum offic- inale	πενκέδανον
— odorum	App. (11)	Phillyrea media	φιλυρέα
Neslia paniculata	μελάμπυρον	Phoenix dactylifera	φοῖνιξ (1)
Nuphar luteum	μαδωνάις, νυμ- φαία	Phragmites commu- nis	κάλαμος ὁ χα- ρακίας
Nymphaea alba	σίδη	Pinus brutia	πίτυς ή φθειρό- ποιος
— stellata	λωτός (2)	— halepensis	πίτυς; see also under πίτυς ή ἀγρία
Ocimum basilicum	ὠκμον	- Laricio	πενή ή ἀκαρ- πος, π. ή
Olea cuspidata	ἐλάα (2)	— pinea	θήλεια, π. ή 'Ιδαία
europaea	ἐλάα (1)	— spp.	πενή ή ἡμε- ρος, π. ή κω- νόφορος
— Oleaster	ἀγριέλαιος, κό- τινος	Pimpinella Anisum	πενή
Ononis antiquorum	ὀνωνίς	Piper nigrum	ἀνησον
Onopordon illyricum	ὀνόφυξος	Pistacia Lentiscus	πέπερι
Opoponax hispidus	πανάκεια, πάν- ακες τὸ 'Ηρ- άκλειον	- Terebinthus	σχίνος
Orchis longicruris	ὄρχις	— vera	τέρμινθος
— papilionacea	ὄρχις	Pisum sativum	App. (7)
Origanum Dictamnus	δίκτημνον	Plantago Coronopus	πισός
— heracleoticum	ὀρίγανος ή λευκή	— crassifolia	κορωνόπους
— Majorana	ἀμάρακον	— Lagopus	θρυαλλίς
— viride etc	ὀρίγανος, ἰρί- γανος ή μέ- λαινα	- lanceolata	ὄρντιξ, στελέ- φουρος
Ornithogalum pyre- nalcum	σκίλλα ή 'Επι- μενίδειος	— major	κύνωψ
— umbellatum	βολβίγη	Platanus orientalis	ἀρνόγλωσσον
		Polygonum mariti- mum	πλάτανος περδίκιον

# KEY TO THE INDEX

Polygonum Persicaria	κραταίγονος	Ranunculus Ficaria	ἀφία
Polypodium vulgare	πολυπόδιον	Raphanus Raphanistrum	κεράσις, ῥάφα- νος ἢ ἀγρία
Polypogon monspeliensis	ἀλωπέκουρος	— sativus	ραφανίς
Polyporus igniarius	πῖλος	Rhamnus alaternus	φιλύκη
Populus nigra	αἰγιερός	— graeca	ράμνος ἢ λευκή
— tremula	κερκίς (2)	— oleoides	ράμνος ἢ μέ- λαινα
Portulaca oleracea	ἀνδράχνη	— spp.	ράμνος
Potentilla reptans	πενταπέτης, πεντάφυλλον	Rhizophora mucro- nata	App. (12b)
Poterium spinosum	στοιβή, φεύς	Rhus Coriaria	·ρούς
Prangos ferulacea	ἵππομαραθόν, μαγύδαρις	— Cotinus	κοκκυνγέα
Prunus Amygdalus	ἀμυγδαλή	Ricinus communis	κρότων
— avium	κέρασος, λα- κάρη	Rosa canina	κυνόροδον
— domestica	κοκκυμηλέα	— centifolia var.	ρόδωνία
— insititia	προύμνη, σπο- διάς	— dumetorum	ρόδον τὸ ἄγριον
— Mahaleb	πάδος (πηδός ?)	— sempervirens	κυνόσβατος
Pteris aquilina	θηλύπτερις	Rubus ulmifolius	βάτος, χαμαί- βατος
Puccinia graminis	ἔρυσσιβη	Roccella tinctoria	φύκος (5)
Punica Granatum	ρόα	Rumex conglomer- tus	λάπαθον τὸ ἄγ- ριον
— — var.	ρόα ἢ ἀπύρηνος	— Patientia	λάπαθος
Pyrethrum Parthe- nium	παρθένιον	Ruscus aculeatus	κεντρομυρρίνη,
Pyrus amygdalifor- mis	ἀχράς	— Hypophyllum	μνάκανθος
— communis	ἄπιος (1)	Ruta graveolens	δάφνη ἢ Ἄλεξ- ανδρεία
— var. Pyraster	ὄγχνη	Saccharum biflorum	πήγανον
— Malus	μηλέα	Salix alba	App. (19)
— — vars.	μηλέα ἢ γλυ- κειά, μ. ἢ ἐαρινή, μ. ἢ ὕξια	— amplexicaulis	ἰτέα ἢ λευκή
Quercus Aegilops	δρύς ἢ ἀγρία, φηγός	— cinerea	ἰτέα ἢ μέλαινα
— Cerris	αἰγίλωψ (1), ἀσπρις	— fragilis	κολοιτία (2)
— coccifera	πρίνος	— spp.	ἐλίκη
— Ilex typica	σμίλαξ (1)	Salvia calycina	ἰτέα
— — var.	ἀρία, ἴψος, φελλόδρυς	— Horminum	σφάκος
— agrifolia	ἡμερίς (1)	— triloba	ὄρμινον
— infectoria	δρύς ἢ πλατύ- φυλλος	Sambucus nigra	ἐλελίσφακος
— lanuginosa	δρύς ἢ ἀλί- φλοιος, δ. ἢ εὐθύφλοιος	Saponaria officinalis	ἀκτέος, ἀκτὴ
— Pseudo-Robur	δρύς, δ. ἢ ἡμε- ρος, ἐτυμό- δρυς, ἡμερίς (2)	Sargassum vulgare	στρουθίον (2), στρούθος
— Robur	φελλός, ἴψος (?)	Satureia Thymbra	δρύς (8)
— Suber		Saussurea Lappa	θύμβρα
		Scandix australis	κόστος
		— Pecten-Veneris	ἐνθρυσκον
		Schoenus Haemoschoe- nus	σκάνδιξ
		— nigricans	σχοῖνος ὁ ὀλό- σχοῖνος
		Scilla autumnalis	μελαγκρανίς,
		— bifolia	σχοῖνος ὁ κάρπιμος
			τίφνον
			νάκινθος ἢ ἀγ- ρία

## KEY TO THE INDEX

<i>Scolopendrium vulgare</i>	σκολοπένδριον	<i>Trapa natans</i>	τρίβολος (3)
<i>Scolymus hispanicus</i>	λειμωνία σκόλυμος	<i>Tribulus terrestris</i>	τρίβολος (1)
<i>Scorodosma foetidum</i>	App. (10)	<i>Trifolium fragiferum</i>	λωτός (3)
<i>Securigera Coronilla</i>	πελεκίνος	<i>Trigonella Foenugraecum</i>	βουκέρας, τή- λεις
<i>Sedum anopetalum</i>	ἐπιπέτρον	— <i>graeca</i>	μελίλωτος, λωτός (5)
<i>Sempervivum tectorum</i>	αείζων	<i>Triticum dicoccum</i>	ζειά, δλύρα
<i>Senecio vulgaris</i>	ήριγέρων	— <i>monococcum</i>	τίφή
<i>Sesamum indicum</i>	σήσαιον	— <i>vulgare</i>	πυρός
<i>Setaria italica</i>	έλνμος, μέλι- νος	— vars.	πυρός
<i>Silene venosa</i>	Ἡρακλεία, μή- κων ἡ Ἡρα- κλεία	<i>Tuber aestivum</i>	κεραύνιον
		— <i>cibarium</i>	ὑδνον
		<i>Typha angustata</i>	τύφη
<i>Silybum marianum</i>	λευκάκανθα	<i>Ulmus glabra</i>	πτελέα
<i>Smilax aspera</i>	σμίλαξ (2)	— <i>montana</i>	ὄρειπτελέα
<i>Smyrnum Olusatrum</i>	ἱπποσέλιον	<i>Ulv lactuca</i>	βρόνον
<i>Solanum nigrum</i>	στρύχνος ὁ ἐδώκιμος	<i>Urginea maritima</i>	σκίλλα
<i>Sonchus Nymani</i>	σόγκος	<i>Urtica urens</i>	ἀκαλύνφη
<i>Sorbus domestica</i>	ὦη	<i>Usnea barbata</i>	φάσκος
<i>Sorghum halepense</i>	κριθαίαι ἀγρίαί (Indian)	<i>Valeriana Dioscoridis</i>	App. (25)
<i>Spartium junceum</i>	λινόσπαρτον	<i>Veratrum album</i>	ἐλλέβορος ὁ λευκός
<i>Spiraea filipendula</i>	οἰνάνθη (1)	<i>Verbascum sinuatum</i>	φλόμος ἡ μέ- λαινα
<i>Storax officinalis</i>	στύραξ	<i>Vicia angustifolia</i>	ἄφακη
<i>Tamarindus indica</i>	App. (15) (16)	— <i>Ervilia</i>	ὄροβος
<i>Tamarix articulata</i>	μυρική (2)	— <i>Faba</i>	κύαμος
— <i>tetrandra</i>	μυρική (1)	— <i>Sibthorpii</i>	ἀρακος
<i>Taraxacum officinale</i>	ἀπάγη	<i>Vigna sinensis</i>	δόλιχος
<i>Taxus baccata</i>	μίλος	<i>Vinca herbacea</i>	χαμαιδάφνη
<i>Tectona grandis</i>	App. (22)	<i>Viola odorata</i>	ιον τὸ μέλαν, ιωνία ἡ μέ- λαινα
<i>Teucrium Pollum</i>	πόλιον	<i>Viscum album</i>	ὑφεαρ
<i>Thapsia gargarica</i>	θαψία	<i>Vitex Agnus-castus</i>	ἄγνος, οἶσος
<i>Thymelaea hirsuta</i>	κνίωρος ὁ μέ- λας	<i>Vitis vinifera</i>	ἀμπελος (1)
<i>Thymbra capitata</i>	θύμον (1)	— var. <i>corin-</i>	ἀμπελος (2)
<i>Thymus atticus</i>	ἐρπυλλος (2)	— <i>thiaca</i>	οἰνάνθη ἡ ἀγρία
— <i>Sibthorpii</i>	ἐρπυλλος (1)	— <i>silvestris</i>	
<i>Tilia platyphyllos</i>	φίλυρα	<i>Zizyphus Jujuba</i>	App. (6)
— <i>tomentosa</i>	φίλυρα, φ. ἡ θή- λεια	— <i>Lotus</i>	λωτός (4)
<i>Tordylium apulum</i>	καυκαλῆς	— <i>Spina-Christi</i>	παλῖουρος ὁ Αἰ- γύπτιος
— <i>officinale</i>	ἑσέλι		
<i>Tragopogon porrifolius</i>	τραγοπόγων		

# KEY TO THE INDEX

## II.—LIST OF PLANTS MENTIONED IN THE ENQUIRY UNDER POPULAR NAMES

Abele	λεύκη	Bog-rush	μελαγκρανίς,
Acacias	ἄκανθα (1), (3)		σχίνος ὁ
Alaternus	φιλύκη	Bottle-gourd	κάρπιμος
Alder	κλήθρα	Box	σικύα
Alexanders	ἵπποσέλινον	Bracken	πύξος
Alkanet	ἄγχουσα	Brambles	θηλύπτερις
Allheal	πάνακες		βάτος, χαμαί-
Almond	ἀμυγδαλή	Broadleaved oak	βάτος
Andrachne	ἀνδράχλη		δρύς ἢ πλατύ-
Anemones	ἀνεμώνη	Broom-rapes	φυλλος
Apples	μηλέα		αἰμόδωρον,
Arbutus	κομαρός	Brooms	App. (26)
— hybrid	ἀφάρκη		λινόσπαρτον,
Arrow-poison (So-	App. (27)	Bryony	σκορπίος (1)
mal)			ἄμπλος ἢ ἀγ-
Artichoke	κάκτος (2)	Buckthorns	ρία, μῆλωθ-
Asafoetida	App. (10)	Bugloss	ρον
Ashes	βουμβλιος, με-	Bullfist	ῥάμνος, φιλύκη
	λία	Bulrush	ονοχειλές
Asparagus	ἀσφάραγος	Bush-grass	πέξις
Aspen	κερκίς (2)		τύφη
Asphodel	ἀσφάδελος, πό-	Butcher's broom	κάλαμος (ἐπι-
	θος (2)		γειος)
Axe-weed	πελεκίνος		κεντρομυρρίνη,
			μυάκανθος
Bachelor's buttons	παρθένιον	Cabbage	ράφανος
Balm	μελισσόφυλ-	Calamander-wood	App. (23)
	λον	Calamint	ἐλένιον
Balsam of Mecca	βάλσαμον	Calavance	δόλιχος
Bamboos	κάλαμος ὁ 'Ιν-	Caltrop	τριβόλος(1),(2)
	δικός	Caper	κάππαρις
Banyan	συκή ἢ 'Ινδική	Cardamom	καρδάμωμον
Barbary nut	σισυρήχιον	— Nepaul	ἁμωμον
Barley	κριθὴ	Cardoon	κάκτος (1)
Basil	ὠκίμον	Carnation	διόσανθος
Bay (sweet)	δάφνη (1)	Carob	κερωνία, συκή
Bean	κύαμος		ἢ Αἰγυπτία
Bedstraw	ἀπαρίνη	Cassia	κασία
Beet	τεῦτλον,	Castor-oil plant	κρότων
Bergamot-mint	σισύμβριον	Cat's ear	ὑποχοίρις
Bind weed	ἰασιώνη	Cedar, odorous	θυία
Bird-cherry	κέρασος, λα-	— prickly	κέδρος (1), δξύ-
	κάρη		κέδρος
Birth-wort	ἀριστολοχία	— Syrian	κέδρος (2)
Bladder-senna	κολυτρία		
Blite	βλίτον		

# KEY TO THE INDEX

Celandine, greater	χελιδόνιον	Dittany	δίκταμον
— lesser	αφία	Dock	λάπαθον τὸ ἄγ- ριον
Celery	σέλινον	Dodder	ὀροβάγχη
Centaury	κενταύριον	Dog-mercury	ἀρρενόγονον, θηλύγονον
Chamaeleon	χαμαιλέον	Dog-rose	κυνόροδον
Chamomile, wild	ἀνθεμον τὸ ἀφύλλανthes	Dog's tooth grass	ἀγρωστis
Charlock	κεράis, ῥαφανis ἡ ἀγρία	Doum-palm	κόϊξ, κουκιδ- φορον
Chaste-tree	ἄγιος (οἶσος)	Dropwort	οἰνάνθη (1)
Cheese-flower	μυλάχη (2)	Duckweed	ἱκμη
Chervil	ἐνθρυσκον	Dwarf palm	φοῖνιξ ὁ χα- μαιρριφής
— wild	σκάνδιξ		
Chestnuts	δισσβάλανος, καρύα ἡ Εὐ- βοική	Ebony	ἐβείη
Chick-pea	ἐρέβινθος	Edder-wort	δρακόντιον
Chicory	κιχώριον	Elder	ἀκτέος, ἀκτῇ
Christ's thorn	παλιουρος	Elecampane	πάνακες τὸ Χει- ρώνειον
Cinnamon	κιννάμωμον	Elms	πτελέα, ὄρει- πτελέα
Cinquefoil	πενταπέτες, πεντάφυλλον	Eryngo	ἡρύγγιον
Citron	μηλέα ἡ Ἰερ- σική	Fenugreek	βουκέρας, τῆ- λις
Clematis	ἄθραγένη	Ferns	ἀδιδαντον, ἡμιό- νιον, θηλυ- πτερίς, πολυ- πόδιον, πτε- ρίς, τριχομα- νές, σκολο- πένδριον
Cork-oak	ἱψος (?), φελ- λός	Ferula	ναρῆκία, νάρ- θηξ
Coriander	κορίαννον	Feverwort	κεινταυρίς
Cornel	θηλυκράνεια	Fig, wild	ἐρινός
Corneian cherry	κράνεια	Figs	συκῇ, σ. ἡ Ἀραβική, σ. ἡ Ἰνδική, App. (17)
Corn-flag	ξίφιον, ξίφος, φάσγανον	Filbert	καρύα ἡ Ἡρα- κλεωτική
Corn-thistle	ἄκανθα (2)	Firs	πεύκη, ἐλάτη
Cotoneaster	δενάκανθος	Flax	λίνον
Cotton-plant	(δένδρον τὸ) ἐριόφορον	Frankincense-tree	λιβανωτός
Crack willow	ἐλίκη	French sparrow- grass	σκέλλα ἡ Ἐπι- μενίδειος
Cress	κάρδαμον	Fungi	ἄσχιον, μύκης, πέζις
Crocus	κρόκος		
Cuckoo-pint	ἄρον	Galingale	κύπειρος
Cucumber	σίκυος	Gall-oak	ἡμερίς (1)
— squirting	σίκυος ὁ ἄγριος	Garden nightshade	στρύχνος ὁ ἐδώδιμος
Cummin	κύμινον		
Currant-vine	ἀμπελος (2)		
Cyclamen	κυκλάμινος		
Cypress	κυπάριττος		
Dandelion	ἀπάγη		
Darnel	αἶρα		
Date-palm	φοῖνιξ (1)		
Dill	ἀνηθον, ἀννη- τος		
Distaff-thistle	ἀτρακτυλῖς, φόνος		



# KEY TO THE INDEX

<b>Garlics</b>	μῶλυ, σκόρο- δον	<b>Junipers</b>	ἄρκευθος, θνία, κεδρίς, κέ- δρος, ὀξύκε- δρος
<b>Germander</b>	χαμαιἰδρυς		
<b>Gilliflower</b>	ἰὸν τὸ λευκόν		
<b>Ginger-grass</b>	σχοῖνος ὁ εὐώ- δης (?)	<b>Kermes-oak</b>	πρῖνος
<b>Gladwyn</b>	ξίρις		
<b>Globe-thistle</b>	ρύτρος	<b>Laburnum</b>	κύτισος (1)
<b>Goat's beard</b>	τραγοπώγων	<b>Larkspurs</b>	ἄσταφίς, πόθος (1), ὑάκινθος ἡ σπαρτή
<b>Goat willow</b>	ἐλαιαγνος	<b>Leek</b>	πράσον (1)
<b>Gold flower</b>	ἐλειόχρυσος	<b>Lentil</b>	φακός
<b>Golden thistle</b>	λειμωνία (2), σκόλυμος	<b>Leopard's bane</b>	σκορπίος (2)
<b>Gourd</b>	κολοκύντη	<b>Lettuce</b>	θριδαξ, θριδα- κίνη
<b>Grasses</b>	αἰγίλωψ (2), θρύον, πόα	<b>Lilies</b>	ἡμεροκαλλές, κρίνον, κ. τὸ πορφυ- ροῦν, λεί- ριον (1)
<b>Groundsel</b>	ἡριγέρων		
<b>Gum arabic</b>	ἀκανθα (7)	<b>Liquorice</b>	γλυκεία (ρίζα) Σκύθικη
<b>Hartshorn</b>	κορωνόπους	<b>Limes</b>	φίλυρα, φ. ἡ θήλεια
<b>Hart's tongue</b>	σκολοπένδριον	<b>Litmus</b>	φύκος (5)
<b>Hartwort</b>	σέσελι	<b>Lucerne</b>	(πόα) ἡ Μηδική
<b>Hawk's beard</b>	ἀπαργία	<b>Lupin</b>	θέρμος
<b>Hawthorn</b>	μεσπίλη ἡ ἀν- θηδονοειδής		
<b>Hazel</b>	καρύα	<b>Madder</b>	ἐρυθθεδανόν
<b>Heath</b>	ἐρείκη	<b>Madonna lily</b>	κρίνον, λείριον (1)
<b>Hellebores</b>	ἐλλέβορος	<b>Maiden-hair</b>	ἀδίατον, ἀ. τὸ μέλαν
<b>Hemlock</b>	κώνειον	<b>— English</b>	ἀδίατον τὸ λευκόν
<b>Holly</b>	κῆλαστρος	<b>Mallow</b>	μαλάχη (1)
<b>Holm-oaks</b>	ἁρία, ἰψος, σμι- λαξ (1), φελ- λόδρυς	<b>Mandrake</b>	μανδραγόρας (1)
<b>Honeysuckle</b>	κλύμενον	<b>Mango</b>	App. (5)
<b>(Greek)</b>		<b>Mangroves</b>	App. (12)
<b>Hop-hornbeam</b>	ὄστρυνά, ὄστρυς	<b>— white</b>	δάφνη (6), ἐλάα (3), App. (14)
<b>Horehounds</b>	πράσιον	<b>Manna-ash</b>	μελία
<b>Horned poppy</b>	μήκων ἡ κερα- τίτις	<b>Maples</b>	γλεῖνος, ζυγία, κλινότροχος, σφένδαμνος
<b>Horseradish</b>	ράφανις ἡ ἀμ- ωρέα (?)		
<b>House-leek</b>	αἰζώων	<b>Marehall</b>	ἵππον
<b>Hulwort</b>	πόλιον	<b>Marjorams</b>	ὀρίγανον
		<b>— sweet</b>	ἀμάρακον
<b>Iris</b>	ἴρις, ξίρις, σι- συρίγχιον	<b>Marsh celery</b>	ἐλειοσέλινον
<b>Ivies</b>	ἐλιξ, κιττός	<b>Marsh mallow</b>	ἀλθαία, μαλά- χη ἡ ἀγρία
<b>Jack-fruit</b>	App. (3)		
<b>Joint-flr</b>	θραύπαλος		
<b>Jujube</b>	App. (6)		
<b>Judas-tree</b>	κερκίς (1), ση- μύδα		

# KEY TO THE INDEX

<b>Martagon lily</b>	ήμεροκαλλές	<b>Onions</b>	γήθουν, γή- τειον, κρόμ- μυον, κρο- μνογήτειον
<b>Mastich</b>	σχίνος		μηκων (ή όπω- δης), (νηπεν- θές)
<b>Meadow saffron</b>	εφήμερον, σπά- λαξ	<b>Opium poppy</b>	αδράφαξυς
<b>Medlar</b>	μεσπίλη, μ. ή σατάνειος		όρχις
<b>Michaelmas daisy</b>	αστέρισκος, (τριπόλιον	<b>Orach</b>	μεσπίλη ή αν- θηδών
<b>Milk-thistle</b>	λευκάκανθα	<b>Orchis</b>	βρύσον
<b>Milt-waste</b>	ημιόνιον	<b>Oriental thorn</b>	κρηπίς
<b>Millet</b>	κέγγρος		
<b>— Italian</b>	έλυμος	<b>Oyster-green</b>	
<b>Mints</b>	ηδύοσμον, μίν- θη, σισύμ- βριον	<b>Ox-tongue</b>	
<b>Mistletoes</b>	ιξία (1), ύφεαρ		
<b>Mock-privet</b>	φύληρα ή άρρην	<b>Palms</b>	κούξ, κουκιά- φόρον, φοίνιξ
<b>Moly</b>	μώλυ	<b>Papyrus</b>	πάπυρος
<b>Monk's rhubarb</b>	λάπαθος	<b>Parsley</b>	πάρσιος
<b>Mulberry</b>	σικάμινος	<b>Pea</b>	όρειοσέλινον
<b>Mullein</b>	φλόμος ή μέ- λαινα	<b>Pear</b>	πίσος
<b>Mushroom</b>	μύκης	<b>— wild</b>	άπιος (1)
<b>Mustard, white</b>	νάπυ	<b>Pennyroyal</b>	άχράς, όγχυν
<b>Myrrh</b>	σμύρνα	<b>Peony</b>	βληχώ
<b>Myrtle</b>	μυρρίνη		γλυκυσιδή, παιωνία
		<b>Pepper</b>	πέπερι
<b>Narcissus</b>	λείριον (2), νάρκισσος	<b>Periwinkle</b>	χαμαιδάφνη
<b>Nepaul cardamom</b>	άμωμον	<b>Pimpernel, blue</b>	κόρχορος
<b>Nettle</b>	άκαλύφη	<b>Pines</b>	πέυκη, πίτυς
<b>— tree</b>	λωτός (1)	<b>Pine-thistle</b>	άκανθα (8), άκανος, ιξία (2), ιξίονη, χαμαιλεων ό λευκός
<b>Nightshade, deadly</b>	μανδραγόρας (2) ?		πλάτανος
<b>garden</b>	στρύχνος ό εδώ- διμος	<b>Plane-tree</b>	άρόσγλωσσον, θρυαλλίς, κο- ρωνόπους, κύ- νωψ, όρνυξ, στελέφουρος
		<b>Plantains</b>	κοκκυμηλέα, πάδες, προύα- μνη, σποδίας
<b>Oaks</b>	αίγίλωψ (1), αρία, άσπρις, δρύς, έτυμό- δρυς, ήμερίς, ίψος, πρινος, συμλαξ (1), φηγός, φελ- λόδρυς, φελ- λός	<b>Plums</b>	πολυπόδιον
			δόναξ, κάλαμος ό Λακωνικός ετό.
<b>Oak-mistletoe</b>	ιξία (1	<b>Polypody</b>	ρόα
<b>Oats</b>	βρόμος	<b>Pole-reed</b>	μήκων
<b>Oleander</b>	δάφνη ή άγρία. ονοθήρας		αίγειρος
	ελάα (1), (2)	<b>Pomegranate</b>	λεύκη
<b>Olives</b>	άγριέλαιος, κό-	<b>Poppies</b>	σπειραία
<b>Olive, wild</b>		<b>Poplar, black</b>	άσχιον
		<b>— white (abele)</b>	ανδράχνη
		<b>Privet</b>	βολβός
		<b>Puff-ball</b>	
		<b>Purslane</b>	
		<b>Purse-tassels</b>	

# KEY TO THE INDEX

Quince	κυδώνιον, στρούθιον (2)	Soapwort	στρούθιον (2), στρούθος
Radish	ράφανις	Sorb	δη
Reeds	δόναξ, κάλα- μος, πάπυρος	Southernwood	ἀβρότονον
Restharrow	δωνινίς	Spanish broom	λινόσπαρτον
Rib-grass	κύνωψ	Spear-grass	κάλαμος ὁ πλό- κιμος, κ. ὁ χαρακίας
Rice	ὄρυζον	Sow-thistle	σόγκος
Rice-wheat	ζεΐα, ὄλυρα	Spike-lavender	ἰφύνον
Rocket	εὐζωμον	Spikenard	νάρδον
Rock-roses	κίσθος	Spindle-tree	εὐώνυμος (τε- τραγωνία)
Rose-campion	λυχνίς	Spurges	ἀκανθα (5), (8), ἄπιος (2), ἰπ- ποφύως, ἰσ- χάς, μηκώ- νιον, ραφανίς ἢ ὄρεϊα, τιθύ- μαλλος
Roses	κυνόροδον, κυ- νόσβατος, ῥο- δωνία	Squills	σ κ ἰ λ λ α, τί- φυον, νάκιν- θος ἢ ἀγρία
Rue	πήγανον	Star-flower	βολβίνη
Rupture-wort	ἐλλαβορίνη	Star-thistle	παντάδουσα
Rushes	μελαγκρανίς, σχοίνος	—— — yellow	τετράλιξ
Safflower	κνήκος, κρόκος ὁ ἀκανθώδης	Stonecrop	ἐπίπετρον
Saffron crocus	κρόκος, κ. ὁ εὐώδης	Storax	στύραξ
Sage	σφάκος	Sulphur-wort	πενκέδανον
Salvia	ἐλελίσφακος	Sumachs	ῥοῦς
Savory	θύμβρα	Sweet bay	δάφνη (1)
Scammony	σκαμμωνία	Sweet flag	κάλαμος ὁ εὐώ- δης
Scrub oak	δρῦς ἢ πλατύ- φυλλος	Sycamore	συκάμινος ἢ Αἰγυπτία, σ. ἢ Κυπρία
Sea-bark oak	δρῦς ἢ ἀλί- φλοιος, δ. ἢ εὐθύφλοιος	Tamarind	App. (15), (16)
Sea spurge	τιθύμαλλος ὁ παράλιος	Tamarisks	μυρική
Sea-weeds	ἄμπελος (3), βρόνον, δρῦς (7), (8), ἐλά- τη (3), φοίνιξ (4), φύκος	Tare	ἀπάκη
Sebasten	κοκκυμηλία ἢ Αἰγυπτία	Teak	App. (22)
Sedge	βούτομος	Terebinth	τερμινθος
Sesame	σήσαμον	Thistles	ἀκανθα (2), (8), ἀκανός, ἀκορνα, ἰξία (2), ἰξίνη, κάκτος, λει- μωνία (2), λευκάκανθα, πολύακανθος, ρύτρος, σκό- λυμος, σόγ- κος, χάλ- κειος, χαμαι- λέων
Shallot	κρόμμυον τὸ σχιστόν		
Silphium	σίλφιον		
Silver-fir	ἐλάτη		
Silver-lime	φίλυρα, φ. ἢ θήλεια		
Sissoo	App. (21)		
Smilax	σμίλαξ (2)		
Snowdrop	λευκόδιον (2)		
Snapdragon	ἀντίρρινον		

# KEY TO THE INDEX

Thorn, oriental	μεσπίλη ἡ ἀν- θηδών	Vine, wild	οἰνάνθη ἡ ἀγρία
Thorn-apple	θρύσoron, περι- τός, στρυχ- νος ὁ μανικός	Violet	ἱὸν τὸ μέλαν
Thyine-wood	θύον	Wall-flower	φλόγινον, φλόξ
Thyme, Attic	ἔρφυλλος ὁ ἄγ- ριος	Walnut	καρύα ἡ Περ- σικὴ
— Cretan	θύμον (1)	Water chestnut	τρίβολος (3)
— tufted	ἔρφυλλος (ὁ ἡμερος)	Water chickweed	λέμνα
Tine-tare	App. (1)	Water-lily, Nile	λωτός (2)
Tragacanth	τραγάκανθα	— white	σίδη
Traveller's joy	ἀθραγένη	— yellow	μαδωνάϊς, νυμ- φαία
Tree-medick	κύτισος (2)	Wheats	πυρός
Tree-moss	φάσκος	— one-seeded	τίφη
Trefoil	λωτός (3)	Wheat-rust	ἐρυσίβη
Truffles	κεραύνιον, ὕδ- νον	Wig-tree	κοκκυγέα
Turk's cap lily	κρίνον τὸ πορ- φυροῦν	Willows	ἐλαίαγνος, ἐλί- κη, ἰτέα, κο- λοιτία (2)
Turkey oak	αἰγίλωψ (1), ἀσπρις	Willow-weed	κραταίγονος
Turnip	γογγυλὶς	Withy	οἶσος
Valonia oak	δρῦς ἡ ἀγρία, φηγός	Wolf's bane	ἀκόνιτον, θηλύ- φονον, μυό- φονον, σκορ- πίος (3)
Vetch, bitter	ὄροβος	Wormwood	ἀψίνθιον
Vine	ἀμπελος (1)	Wych-elm	ὄρειπτελέα
		Yew	μίλος

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY  
RICHARD CLAY AND COMPANY, LTD.,  
BUNGAY, SUFFOLK

# THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

---

## VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED

---

### *Latin Authors*

- AMMIANUS MARCELLINUS. Translated by J. C. Rolfe.  
3 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. *2nd Imp. revised.*)
- APULEIUS: THE GOLDEN ASS (METAMORPHOSES).  
W. Adlington (1566). Revised by S. Gaselee. (*7th Imp.*)
- ST. AUGUSTINE, CONFESSIONS OF. W. WATTS (1631).  
2 Vols. (Vol. I. *6th Imp.*, Vol. II. *5th Imp.*)
- ST. AUGUSTINE, SELECT LETTERS. J. H. Baxter.
- AUSONIUS. H. G. Evelyn White. 2 Vols. (Vol. II. *2nd Imp.*)
- BEDE. J. E. King. 2 Vols.
- BOETHIUS: TRACTS AND DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIAE. Rev. H. F. Stewart and E. K. Rand. (*4th Imp.*)
- CAESAR: CIVIL WARS. A. G. Peskett. (*4th Imp.*)
- CAESAR: GALLIC WAR. H. J. Edwards. (*9th Imp.*)
- CATO AND VARRO: DE RE RUSTICA. H. B. Ash and  
W. D. Hooper. (*2nd Imp.*)
- CATULLUS, F. W. Cornish; TIBULLUS. J. B. Postgate;  
AND PERVIGILIUM VENERIS. J. W. Mackail. (*11th Imp.*)
- CELSUS: DE MEDICINA. W. G. Spencer. 3 Vols. (Vol.  
I. *3rd Imp. revised.*)
- CICERO: BRUTUS, AND ORATOR. G. L. Hendrickson and  
H. M. Hubbell. (*2nd Imp.*)
- CICERO: DE FINIBUS. H. Rackham. (*3rd Imp. revised.*)
- CICERO: DE NATURA DEORUM AND ACADEMICA. H.  
Rackham.
- CICERO: DE OFFICIIS. Walter Miller. (*4th Imp.*)
- CICERO: DE ORATORE. 2 Vols. E. W. Sutton and H.  
Rackham. (*2nd Imp.*)
- CICERO: DE REPUBLICA AND DE LEGIBUS. Clinton  
W. Keyes. (*3rd Imp.*)
- CICERO: DE SENECTUTE, DE AMICITIA, DE DIVINATIONE.  
W. A. Falconer. (*5th Imp.*)
- CICERO: IN CATILINAM, PRO FLACCO, PRO MURENA,  
PRO SULLA. Louis E. Lord. (*2nd Imp. revised.*)
- CICERO: LETTERS TO ATTICUS. E. O. Winstedt.  
3 Vols. (Vol. I. *6th Imp.*, Vol. II. *3rd Imp.* and Vol. III.  
*3rd Imp.*)

- CICERO: LETTERS TO HIS FRIENDS. W. Glynn Williams. 3 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. *2nd Imp. revised.*)
- CICERO: PHILIPPICS. W. C. A. Ker. (*2nd Imp. revised.*)
- CICERO: PRO ARCHIA, POST REDITUM, DE DOMO, DE HARUSPICUM RESPONSIS, PRO PLANCIO. N. H. Watts. (*2nd Imp.*)
- CICERO: PRO CAECINA, PRO LEGE MANILIA, PRO CLUENTIO, PRO RABIRIO. H. Grose Hodge. (*2nd Imp.*)
- CICERO: PRO MILONE, IN PISONEM, PRO SCAURO, PRO FONTEIO, PRO RABIRIO POSTUMO, PRO MARCELLO, PRO LIGARIO, PRO REGE DEIOTARO. N. H. Watts.
- CICERO: PRO QUINCTIO, PRO ROSCIO AMERINO, PRO ROSCIO COMOEDO, CONTRA RULLUM. J. H. Freese. (*2nd Imp. revised.*)
- CICERO: TUSCULAN DISPUTATIONS. J. E. King, (*2nd Imp.*)
- CICERO: VERRINE ORATIONS. L. H. G. Greenwood. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*)
- CLAUDIAN. M. Platnauer. 2 Vols.
- COLUMELLA: DE RE RUSTICA. H. B. Ash. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*)
- CURTIUS, QUINTUS: HISTORY OF ALEXANDER. Translated by J. C. Rolfe. 2 Vols.
- FLORUS. E. S. Forster, and CORNELIUS NEPOS. J. C. Rolfe. (*2nd Imp.*)
- FRONTINUS: STRATAGEMS AND AQUEDUCTS. C. E. Bennett and M. B. McElwain. (*2nd Imp.*)
- FRONTO: CORRESPONDENCE. C. R. Haines. 2 Vols.
- GELLIUS. J. C. Rolfe. 3 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. *2nd Imp.*)
- HORACE: ODES AND EPODES. C. E. Bennett. (*13th Imp. revised.*)
- HORACE: SATIRES, EPISTLES, ARS POETICA. H. R. Fairclough. (*8th Imp. revised.*)
- JEROME: SELECTED LETTERS. F. A. Wright.
- JUVENAL AND PERSIUS. G. G. Ramsay. (*6th Imp.*)
- LIVY. B. O. Foster, F. G. Moore, Evan T. Sage, and A. C. Schlesinger. 14 Vols. (Vol. I. *3rd Imp.*, Vols. II., III., IV., V., VII., IX., X., XI. and XII. *2nd Imp.*)
- LUCAN. J. D. Duff. (*2nd Imp.*)
- LUCRETIUS. W. H. D. Rouse. (*6th Imp. revised.*)
- MARTIAL. W. C. A. Ker. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *5th Imp.*, Vol. II. *3rd Imp. revised.*)
- MINOR LATIN POETS: from PUBLILIUS SYRUS to RUTILIUS NAMATIUS, including GRATIUS, CALPURNIUS SICULUS, NEMESIANUS, AVIANUS, and others with "Aetna" and the "Phoenix." J. Wight Duff and Arnold M. Duff. (*2nd Imp.*)
- OVID: THE ART OF LOVE AND OTHER POEMS. J. H. Mozley. (*3rd Imp.*)
- OVID: FASTI. Sir James G. Frazer.
- OVID: HEROIDES AND AMORES. Grant Showerman. (*4th Imp.*)

- ÓVID : METAMORPHOSES.** F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 9th Imp., Vol. II. 7th Imp.)  
**ÓVID : TRISTIA AND EX PÓNTO.** A. L. Wheeler. (2nd Imp.)  
**PERSIUS.** Cf. JUVENAL.  
**PETRONIUS.** M. Heseltine ; **SENECA : APOCOLOCYN-TOSIS.** W. H. D. Rouse. (7th Imp. revised.)  
**PLAUTUS.** Paul Nixon. 5 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. 4th Imp., Vol. III. 3rd Imp.)  
**PLINY : LETTERS.** Melmoth's Translation revised by W. M. L. Hutchinson. 2 Vols. (5th Imp.)  
**PLINY : NATURAL HISTORY.** H. Rackham and W. H. S. Jones. 10 Vols. Vols. I.-V. H. Rackham. (Vols. I.-III. 2nd Imp.)  
**PROPERTIUS.** H. E. Butler. (5th Imp.)  
**QUINTILIAN.** H. E. Butler. 4 Vols. (2nd Imp.)  
**REMAINS OF OLD LATIN.** E. H. Warmington. 4 Vols. Vol. I. (ENNIUS AND CAECILIUS.) Vol. II. (LIVIUS, NAEVIUS, PACUVIUS, ACCIUS.) Vol. III. (LUCILIUS AND LAWS OF XII TABLES.) Vol. IV. (ARCHAIC INSCRIPTIONS.) (Vol. IV. 2nd Imp.)  
**SALLUST.** J. C. Rolfe. (3rd Imp. revised.)  
**SCRIPTORES HISTORIAE AUGUSTAE.** D. Magie. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp. revised.)  
**SENECA : APOCOLOCYNTO-SIS.** Cf. PETRONIUS.  
**SENECA : EPISTULAE MORALES.** R. M. Gummere. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. 3rd Imp., Vols. II. and III. 2nd Imp. revised.)  
**SENECA : MORAL ESSAYS.** J. W. Basore. 3 Vols. (Vol. II. 3rd Imp., Vol. III. 2nd Imp. revised.)  
**SENECA : TRAGEDIES.** F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 3rd Imp., Vol. II. 2nd Imp. revised.)  
**SIDONIUS : POEMS AND LETTERS.** W. B. Anderson. 2 Vols. Vol. I.  
**SILIUS ITALICUS.** J. D. Duff. 2 Vols (Vol. I. 2nd Imp., Vol. II. 3rd Imp.)  
**STATIUS.** J. H. Mozley. 2 Vols.  
**SUETONIUS.** J. C. Rolfe. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 6th Imp., Vol. II. 5th Imp. revised.)  
**TACITUS : DIALOGUS.** Sir Wm. Peterson. **AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA.** Maurice Hutton. (6th Imp.)  
**TACITUS : HISTORIES AND ANNALS.** C. H. Moore and J. Jackson. 4 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. 2nd Imp.)  
**TERENCE.** John Sargeaunt. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 6th Imp., Vol. II. 5th Imp.)  
**FERTULLIAN : APOLOGIA AND DE SPECTACULIS.** T. R. Glover. **MINUCIUS FELIX.** G. H. Rendall.  
**VALERIUS FLACCUS.** J. H. Mozley. (2nd Imp. revised.)  
**VARRO : DELINGUALATINA.** R. G. Kent. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)  
**VELLEIUS PATERCULUS AND RES GESTAE DIVI AUGUSTI.** F. W. Shipley.  
**VIRGIL.** H. R. Fairclough. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 16th Imp., Vol. II. 13th Imp. revised.)



VITRUVIUS: DE ARCHITECTURA. F. Granger. 2 Vols.  
(Vol. I. 2nd Imp.)

### **Greek Authors**

ACHILLES TATIUS. S. Gaselee. (2nd Imp.)

AENEAS TACTICUS, ASCLEPIODOTUS AND ONASANDER,  
The Illinois Greek Club. (2nd Imp.)

AESCHINES. C. D. Adams. (2nd Imp.)

AESCHYLUS. H. Weir Smyth. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 5th Imp.,  
Vol. II. 4th Imp.)

ANDOCIDES, ANTIPHON. Cf. MINOR ATTIC ORATORS.

APOLLODORUS. Sir James G. Frazer. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)

APOLLONIUS RHODIUS. R. C. Seaton. (4th Imp.)

THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS. Kirsopp Lake. 2 Vols.  
(Vol. I. 7th Imp., Vol. II. 6th Imp.)

APPIAN'S ROMAN HISTORY. Horace White. 4 Vols.  
(Vol. I. 3rd Imp., Vols. II., III. and IV. 2nd Imp.)

ARATUS. Cf. CALLIMACHUS.

ARISTOPHANES. Benjamin Bickley Rogers. 3 Vols. Verse  
trans. (4th Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: ART OF RHETORIC. J. H. Freese. (3rd  
Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: ATHENIAN CONSTITUTION, EUDEMIAN  
ETHICS, VICES AND VIRTUES. H. Rackham. (2nd Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: GENERATION OF ANIMALS. A. L. Peck.  
(2nd Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: METAPHYSICS. H. Tredennick. 2 Vols.  
(3rd Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: MINOR WORKS. W. S. Hett. On Colours,  
On Things Heard, On Physiognomies, On Plants, On Mar-  
vellous Things Heard, Mechanical Problems, On Indivisible  
Lines, On Position and Names of Winds.

ARISTOTLE: NICOMACHEAN ETHICS. H. Rackham.  
(5th Imp. revised.)

ARISTOTLE: OECONOMICA AND MAGNA MORALIA.  
G. C. Armstrong; (with Metaphysics, Vol. II.). (3rd Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: ON THE HEAVENS. W. K. C. Guthrie.  
(2nd Imp. revised.)

ARISTOTLE: ON THE SOUL, PARVA NATURALIA, ON  
BREATH. W. S. Hett. (2nd Imp. revised.)

ARISTOTLE: ORGANON. H. P. Cooke and H. Tredennick.  
2 Vols. Vol. I. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: PARTS OF ANIMALS. A. L. Peck; MOTION  
AND PROGRESSION OF ANIMALS. E. S. Forster.  
(2nd Imp. revised.)

ARISTOTLE: PHYSICS. Rev. P. Wicksteed and F. M.  
Cornford. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)

ARISTOTLE: POETICS AND LONGINUS. W. Hamilton  
Fyfe; DEMETRIUS ON STYLE. W. Rhys Roberts. (4th  
Imp. revised.)

ARISTOTLE: POLITICS. H. Rackham. (3rd Imp. revised.)

- ARISTOTLE: PROBLEMS. W. S. Hett. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*)
- ARISTOTLE: RHETORICA AD ALEXANDRUM (with PROBLEMS, Vol. II.). H. Rackham.
- ARRIAN: HISTORY OF ALEXANDER AND INDICA. Rev. E. Iliffe Robson. 2 Vols. (*2nd Imp.*)
- ATHENAEUS: DEIPNOSOPHISTAE. C. B. Gulick. 7 Vols. (Vols. I., V. and VI. *2nd Imp.*)
- ST. BASIL: LETTERS. R. J. Deferrari. 4 Vols. (Vols. I., II. and IV. *2nd Imp.*)
- CALLIMACHUS AND LYCOPHRON. A. W. Mair; ARATUS. G. R. Mair. (*2nd Imp. revised.*)
- CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA. Rev. G. W. Butterworth. (*2nd Imp.*)
- COLLUTHUS. Cf. OPPIAN.
- DAPHNIS AND CHLOE. Thornley's Translation revised by J. M. Edmonds; AND PARTHENIUS. S. Gaselee. (*3rd Imp.*)
- DEMOSTHENES: II. DE CORONA AND DE FALSA LEGATIONE. C. A. Vince and J. H. Vince. (*2nd Imp. revised.*)
- DEMOSTHENES: III. MEIDIAS, ANDROTION, ARISTOCRATES, TIMOCRATES AND ARISTOGEITON, I. AND II. Translated by J. H. Vince.
- DEMOSTHENES: I. OLYNTHIACS, PHILIPPICS AND MINOR ORATIONS: I.-XVII. AND XX. J. H. Vince.
- DEMOSTHENES: IV.-VI. PRIVATE ORATIONS AND IN NEAERAM. A. T. Murray. 3 Vols. (Vol. IV. *2nd Imp.*)
- DIO CASSIUS: ROMAN HISTORY. E. Cary. 9 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. *2nd Imp.*)
- DIO CHRYSOSTOM. J. W. Cohoon and H. Lamar Crosby. 5 Vols. Vols. I.-IV. (Vols. I. and II. *2nd Imp.*)
- DIODORUS SICULUS: THE LIBRARY. 12 Vols. Vols. I.-IV. translated by C. H. Oldfather. Vol. IX. translated by C. H. Geer. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*)
- DIÖGENES LAERTIUS. R. D. Hicks. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *3rd Imp.*, Vol. II. *2nd Imp.*)
- DIONYSIUS OF HALICARNASSUS: ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. Spelman's translation revised by E. Cary. 7 Vols. Vols. I.-VI. (Vol. IV. *2nd Imp.*)
- EPICTETUS. W. A. Oldfather. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*)
- EURIPIDES. A. S. Way. 4 Vols. (Vols. I., II. and IV. *oth Imp.*, Vol. III. *5th Imp.*) Verse trans.
- EUSEBIUS: ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. Kirsopp Lake and J. E. L. Oulton. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*, Vol. II. *3rd Imp.*)
- GALEN: ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES. A. J. Brock. (*3rd Imp.*)
- THE GREEK ANTHOLOGY. W. R. Paton. 5 Vols. (Vols. I. and II. *4th Imp.*, Vols. III. and IV. *3rd Imp.*)
- GREEK ELEGY AND IAMBUS WITH THE ANACREONTEA. J. M. Edmonds. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. *2nd Imp.*)

- THE GREEK BUCOLIC POETS (THEOCRITUS, BION, MOSCHUS). J. M. Edmonds. (6th *Imp.* revised.)
- GREEK MATHEMATICAL WORKS. Ivor Thomas.  $\frac{1}{2}$  Vols. (2nd *Imp.*)
- HERODES. Cf. THEOPHRASTUS: CHARACTERS.
- HERODOTUS. A. D. Godley. 4 Vols. (Vol. I. 4th *Imp.*, Vols. II. and IV. 3rd *Imp.*)
- HESIOD AND THE HOMERIC HYMNS. H. G. Evelyn White. (6th *Imp.*, revised and enlarged.)
- HIPPOCRATES AND THE FRAGMENTS OF HERACLEITUS. W. H. S. Jones and E. T. Withington. 4 Vols. (Vol. I. 3rd *Imp.*, Vols. II., III. and IV. 2nd *Imp.*)
- HOMER: ILIAD. A. T. Murray. 2 Vols. (6th *Imp.*)
- HOMER: ODYSSEY. A. T. Murray. 2 Vols. (7th *Imp.*)
- ISAEUS. E. W. Forster. (2nd *Imp.*)
- ISOCRATES. George Norlin. 3 Vols.
- ST. JOHN DAMASCENE: BARLAAM AND IOASAPH. Rev. G. R. Woodward and Harold Mattingly. (2nd *Imp.* revised.)
- JOSEPHUS. H. St. J. Thackeray and Ralph Marcus. 9 Vols. Vols. I.-VII. (Vols. I., V. and VI. 2nd *Imp.*)
- JULIAN. Wilmer Cave Wright. 3 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd *Imp.*, Vol. II. 3rd *Imp.*)
- LUCIAN. A. M. Harmon. 8 Vols. Vols. I.-V. (Vols. I. and II. 3rd *Imp.*, Vol. III. 2nd *Imp.*)
- LYCOPHRON. Cf. CALLIMACHUS.
- LYRA GRAECA. J. M. Edmonds. 3 Vols. (Vols. I. and III. 3rd *Imp.*, Vol. II. 2nd *Ed.* revised and enlarged.)
- LYSIAS. W. R. M. Lamb. (2nd *Imp.*)
- MANETHO. W. G. Waddell: PTOLEMY: TETRABIBLOS. F. E. Robbins. (2nd *Imp.*)
- MARCUS AURELIUS. C. R. Haines. (3rd *Imp.* revised.)
- MENANDER. F. G. Allinson. (2nd *Imp.* revised.)
- MINOR ATTIC ORATORS (ANTIPHON, ANDOCIDES, DEMADES, DEINARCHUS, HYPEREIDES). K. J. Maidment and J. O. Burt. 2 Vols. Vol. I. K. J. Maidment.
- NONNOS. W. H. D. Rouse. 3 Vols. (Vol. III. 2nd *Imp.*)
- OPPIAN, COLLUTHUS, TRYPHIODORUS. A. W. Mair.
- PAPYRI. NON-LITERARY SELECTIONS. A. S. Hunt and C. C. Edgar. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd *Imp.*) LITERARY SELECTIONS. Vol. I. (Poetry). D. L. Page. (2nd *Imp.*)
- PARTHENIUS. Cf. DAPHNIS AND CHLOE.
- PAUSANIAS: DESCRIPTION OF GREECE. W. H. S. Jones. 5 Vols. and Companion Vol. (Vols. I. and III. 2nd *Imp.*)
- PHILO. 10 Vols. Vols. I.-V.; F. H. Colson and Rev. G. H. Whitaker. Vols. VI.-IX.; F. H. Colson. (Vols. I., II., V., VI. and VII., 2nd *Imp.* Vol. IV. 3rd *Imp.*)
- PHILOSTRATUS: THE LIFE OF APOLLONIUS OF TYANA. F. C. Conybeare. 2 Vols. (3rd *Imp.*)

- PHILOSTRATUS: **IMAGINES**; CALLISTRATUS: **DESCRIPTIONS**. A. Fairbanks.
- PHILOSTRATUS AND EUNAPIUS: **LIVES OF THE SOPHISTS**. Wilmer Cave Wright. (2nd Imp.)
- PINDAR. Sir J. E. Sandys. (7th Imp. revised.)
- PLATO: **CHARMIDES**, **ALCIBIADES**, **HIPPARCHUS**, **THE LOVERS**, **THEAGES**, **MINOS** AND **EPINOMIS**. W. R. M. Lamb.
- PLATO: **CRATYLUS**, **PARMENIDES**, **GREATER HIPPIAS**, **LESSER HIPPIAS**. H. N. Fowler. (3rd Imp.)
- PLATO: **EUTHYPHRO**, **APOLOGY**, **CRITO**, **PHAEDO**, **PHAEDRUS**. H. N. Fowler. (9th Imp.)
- PLATO: **LACHES**, **PROTAGORAS**, **MENO**, **EUTHYDEMUS**. W. R. M. Lamb. (2nd Imp. revised.)
- PLATO: **LAWS**. Rev. R. G. Bury. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)
- PLATO: **LYSIS**, **SYMPOSIUM**, **GORGAS**. W. R. M. Lamb. (4th Imp. revised.)
- PLATO: **REPUBLIC**. Paul Shorey. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 4th Imp., Vol. II. 3rd Imp.)
- PLATO: **STATESMAN**, **PHILEBUS**. H. N. Fowler; **ION**. W. R. M. Lamb. (3rd Imp.)
- PLATO: **THEAETETUS** AND **SOPHIST**. H. N. Fowler. (3rd Imp.)
- PLATO: **TIMAEUS**, **CRITIAS**, **CLITOPHO**, **MENEXENUS**, **EPISTULAE**. Rev. R. G. Bury. (2nd Imp.)
- PLUTARCH: **MORALIA**. 14 Vols. Vols. I.-V. F. C. Babbitt; Vol. VI. W. C. Helmbold; Vol. X. H. N. Fowler. (Vols. I., III. and X. 2nd Imp.)
- PLUTARCH: **THE PARALLEL LIVES**. B. Perrin. 11 Vols. (Vols. I., II. and VII. 3rd Imp., Vols. III., IV., VI., VIII., IX., X. and XI. 2nd Imp.)
- POLYBIUS. W. R. Paton. 6 Vols.
- PROCOPIUS: **HISTORY OF THE WARS**. H. B. Dewing. 7 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp.)
- PTOLEMY: **TETRABIBLOS**. Cf. MANETHO.
- QUINTUS SMYRNAEUS. A. S. Way. Verse trans. (2nd Imp.)
- SEXTUS EMPIRICUS. Rev. R. G. Bury. 4 Vols. (Vol. III. 2nd Imp.)
- SOPHOCLES. F. Storr. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 8th Imp., Vol. II. 5th Imp.) Verse trans.
- STRABO: **GEOGRAPHY**. Horace L. Jones. 8 Vols. (Vols. I. and VIII. 3rd Imp., Vols. II, V. and VI., 2nd Imp.)
- THEOPHRASTUS: **CHARACTERS**. J. M. Edmonds; **HERODES**, etc. A. D. Knox. (2nd Imp.)
- THEOPHRASTUS: **ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS**. Sir Arthur Hort, Bart. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)
- THUCYDIDES. C. F. Smith. 4 Vols. (Vol. I. 3rd Imp., Vols. II., III. and IV. 2nd Imp. revised.)
- TRYPHIODORUS. Cf. OPPIAN.
- XENOPHON: **CYROPAEDIA**. Walter Miller. 2 Vols. (Vol. I. 2nd Imp., Vol. II. 3rd Imp.)

XENOPHON: HELLENICA, ANABASIS, APOLOGY, AND  
 SYMPOSIUM. C. L. Brownson and O. J. Todd. } Vols.  
 (3rd Imp.)  
 XENOPHON: MEMORABILIA AND OECONOMICUS. E. C.  
 Marchant. (2nd Imp.)  
 XENOPHON: SCRIPTAMINORA. E. C. Marchant. (2nd  
 Imp.)

## IN PREPARATION

### *Greek Authors*

ALCIPHON. A. R. Benner and F. Fobes.  
 ARISTOTLE: DE MUNDO.  
 ARISTOTLE: HISTORY OF ANIMALS. A. L. Peck.  
 ARISTOTLE: METEOROLOGICA. H. P. Lee.  
 DEMOSTHENES: EPISTLES, etc. N. W. and N. J. De Witt.  
 PLOTINUS.

### *Latin Authors*

ST. AUGUSTINE: CITY OF GOD. W. S. Maguiness.  
 [CICERO]: AD HERENNIIUM. H. Caplan.  
 CICERO: DE INVENTIONE, etc. H. M. Hubbell.  
 CICERO: PRO SESTIO, IN VATINIUM, PRO CAELIO,  
 DE PROVINCIIS CONSULARIBUS, PRO BALBO. J. H.  
 Freese and R. Gardner.  
 PHAEDRUS AND OTHER FABULISTS. B. E. Perry.  
 PRUDENTIUS. J. H. Thomson.

## DESCRIPTIVE PROSPECTUS ON APPLICATION

London  
 Cambridge, Mass.

- WILLIAM HEINEMANN LTD  
 HARVARD UNIVERSITY PRESS





